



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



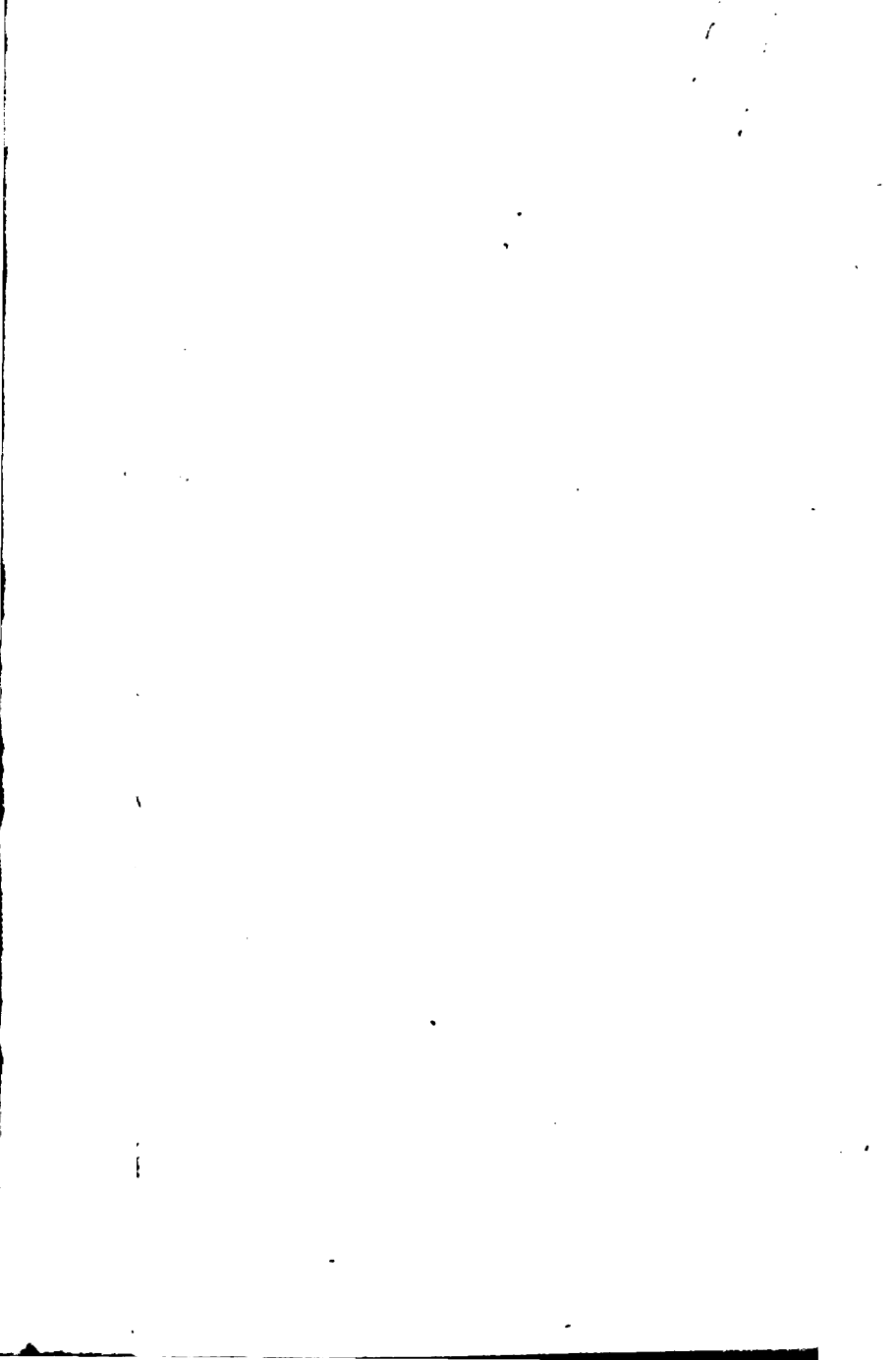
IN MEMORIAM

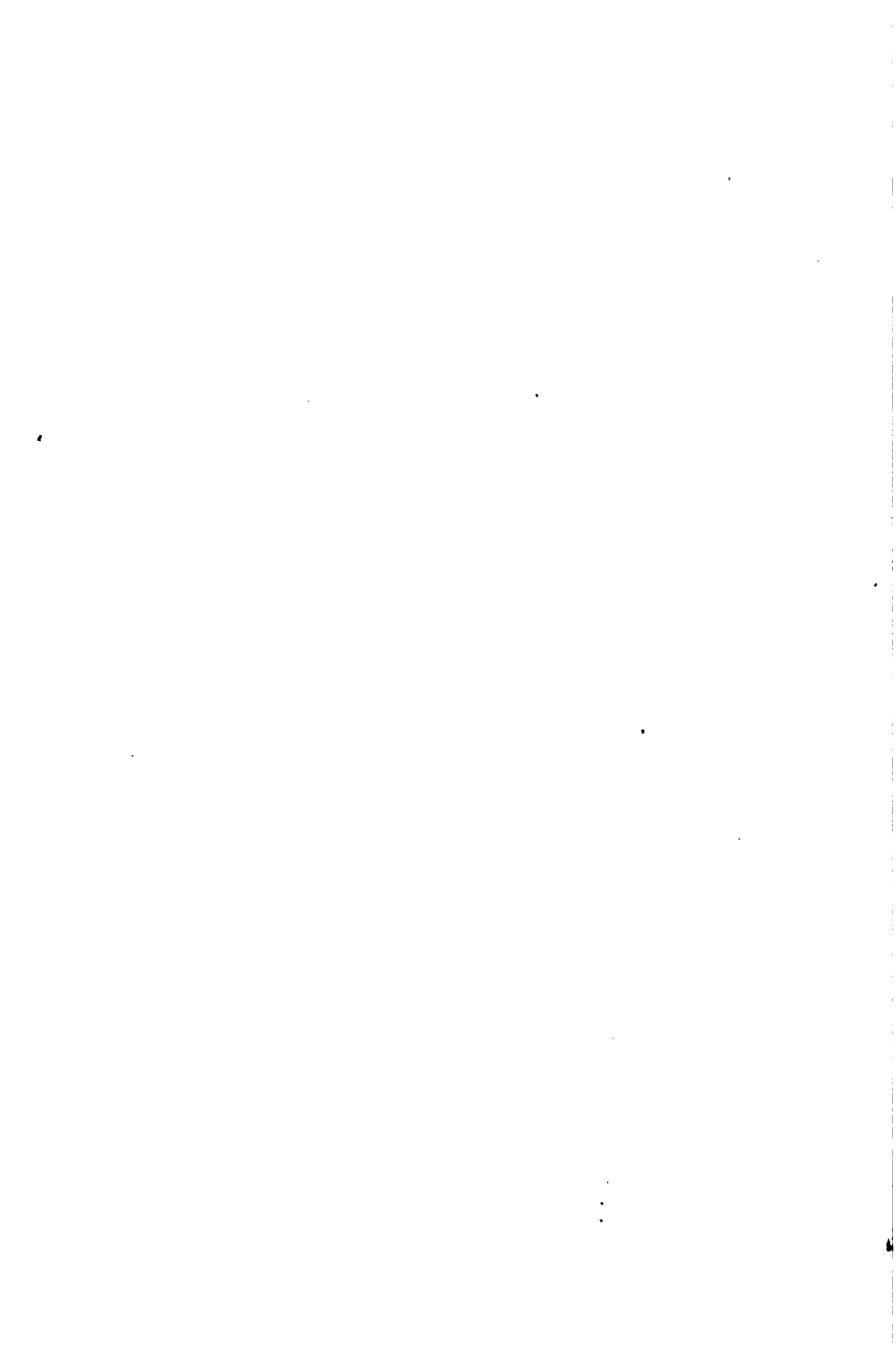
J. Henry Senger



849  
D596

7





**The Silver Series of Modern Language Text-Books**

---

A  
**GERMAN GRAMMAR**

**for High Schools and Colleges**

BY

**GEORGE THEODORE DIPPOLD, PH.D.**

FORMERLY PROFESSOR OF MODERN LANGUAGES IN THE MASSACHUSETTS  
INSTITUTE OF TECHNOLOGY



**SILVER, BURDETT AND COMPANY**

**NEW YORK    BOSTON    CHICAGO**

8

219

D596

8

**IN MEMORIAM**

*Prof. J. Henry Senger*

**COPYRIGHT, 1905, BY  
SILVER, BURDETT AND COMPANY**

70 1905  
ANNEX 13

## PREFACE

THE purpose of this book is to furnish a systematic, practical and thorough course in the essentials of German grammar, for use in high schools and colleges. The usual order of presenting the different parts of speech has been retained, with this important exception, that the treatment of the verb, the backbone, so to say, of any grammar, has been taken up immediately after the declension of nouns. In this manner, it is believed, a vital force is at once given to the whole subject.

The classification of strong verbs (pages 138-140) is presented in a simple and entirely modern way. This feature is further illustrated by Tabular Views (Appendix, **Classification of Verbs.** pages 332-339), showing at a glance not only to what class a verb belongs on account of the vowel of its infinitive, but also indicating how the infinitive is to be found when the preterit or past participle is given. There has also been added a list of all verbs changing their vowels of the infinitive in the second and third person singular of the present indicative with or without undergoing at the same time a corresponding change in the second person singular of the imperative (Appendix IV and V, pages 338, 339). The treatment of the somewhat complicated subject of modal auxiliaries is believed to be practical in its arrangement and exhaustive in its scope.

While no pretence whatever is made to introduce an original method of classifying nouns for the purpose of declension, there will be found in this book certain features of arrangement that are not met with elsewhere. The historical division of nouns into strong and weak has been retained, the classification of the strong nouns being based, as

**Classification  
of Nouns.**



in nearly all grammars, on their manner of forming the nominative plural. It has been the custom to classify all nouns taking no ending to form their nominative plural, under one heading, generally called Class I; similarly, all nouns taking the ending *e* to form their nominative plural have been included in one class, usually called Class II. According to this system no clear, incisive distinction is made between nouns taking the umlaut in the plural and those without it, although it is true that the former are usually given (in a list by themselves in the body of the book, or in an appendix) as exceptions to or modifications of the rule. But this method seems inadequate, as in this way no distinct dividing line can be drawn for the purpose of classification.

In this grammar it has therefore been deemed advisable to differentiate the nouns taking no ending to form their nominative plural, into two separate classes: Class I, nouns **without** umlaut in the plural, and Class II, nouns **with** umlaut. The same principle has been adopted in regard to the nouns taking the ending *e* to form their nominative plural; Class III contains the nouns **without** umlaut in the plural; Class IV those **with** the umlaut. As a necessary consequence of this system, the remaining strong nouns (with *er* in the nominative plural) form Class V.

As all practical teachers know, the strict classification of strong monosyllabic nouns is a subject of great difficulty. While, admittedly, such unsatisfactory, indefinite statements as "a *very large* number of monosyllabic nouns," "the *greater* number of masculine nouns," or "*many* neuters," cannot be avoided at the outset, a serious attempt has been made in this grammar to generalize as little as possible and to present clearly to what declension or to what class of the strong declension any given noun must belong. These remarks refer particularly to the third and fourth classes of the strong declension (§ 80-84; 86-90; also 98-101, and 109-111). Moreover, to facilitate

the purpose that has been kept in mind, a Tabular View of the declension of nouns has been added (between pages 70 and 71).

Among other novel features of a practical, pedagogical value will be found a method of treating vocabularies by reference.

**Vocabularies.** Thus, in the translations from German into English of Part I (pages 1-200), when a word has occurred in a previous exercise, the pupil is either referred directly to the vocabulary preceding the translation where it *first* appeared, or the word can be found in the German Vocabulary, pp. 201-214. This method will not hinder the progress of the pupil specially gifted for the acquisition of languages, or endowed with a good memory, for he will simply proceed without paying any attention to the references to previous vocabularies. But it is confidently believed that for the average pupil this aid to the memory will prove to be of great practical value.

At the end of Part I (pages 201-214), a vocabulary is inserted containing all the German words occurring in the previous translations, but **without** their equivalent in English; instead of the translation, the student is again referred to the place where the words occurred for the first time. In the subsequent exercises (Part II, pages 215-331), no vocabularies precede the translations; the **new** words in the text are printed in boldface type and their meaning is given in the German-English vocabulary (pages 341-350); the old words (in Part I), if not remembered, are to be looked up again in the German vocabulary (pages 201-214).

Substantives are not given in the vocabularies with the genitive singular and nominative plural; instead, their declensions and class are indicated by Roman figures; from these the student has to determine himself what are the declensional forms. Neither are the principal parts of the strong verbs given in the vocabularies; instead, the class to which the verb belongs is indicated by Roman figures.

In connection with the translations from English into German, attention is called to the omission of an English-German vocabulary in this Grammar. The omission is intentional, for whenever such a vocabulary is furnished in a grammar for beginners, there is obviously a danger that the student, at this stage of his acquaintance with the language, will use the vocabulary in a merely mechanical way and thus frequently forget the meaning of the word soon after he has looked it up. The power of memorizing, instead of being improved by this process, is much more liable to become impaired. Therefore, in the translations from English into German given in this book, the following plan has been adopted. The German equivalents (in meaning) of the English words are always to be found in the translations from German into English which precede the exercises for translation from English into German. In this manner, the student, while looking in the German-English translation for the words he wants, will be obliged to review, to some extent at least, this special translation. This in itself is an advantage. Moreover, since those words do not occur in the German-English translation in precisely the same forms, connections and combinations that are called forth by the English-German translations, the pupil's attention will again be directed to several grammatical points of importance and especially to the different declensions and conjugations. This method of procedure cannot fail to be of general practical value and at the same time assist, at least indirectly, the memorizing capacity of the student.

Besides the omission of an English-German vocabulary, there is another subject that has been purposely left out of consideration in this grammar. While realizing the importance of studying the relationship between the English and German languages and the great value of comparative philology in general, the author feels, however, that more or less danger results from beginning to specialize too soon

**Comparative  
Philology.**

before a general solid foundation has been built. In other words, he thinks that an attempt is sometimes made to introduce into elementary text-books matters that properly and exclusively belong to higher language study. Therefore, in this book, which deals only with the fundamental matters of grammatical science, all such subjects as cognates, Grimm's Law, etc. have been intentionally omitted. The student is expected to acquire first and above all a thorough knowledge of the essentials of German grammar, and it is believed to be worse than useless to burden his memory now by asking him, for instance, to associate *felig* with *silly* or *Baun* with *town*, etc. At a later stage of his studies, during the second or third year's course, advanced work including a proper consideration of the historical development of the language can gradually be taken up and then pursued with considerable advantage.

More space and attention has been given to the difficult subject of pronunciation than is ordinarily accorded to it in grammars for beginners. This procedure seemed un-

**Pronunciation,** avoidable for a clear presentation of the matter.

**Punctuation,** On the other hand, the subjects of punctuation and  
**Order of Words,** syllabication and certain others are treated more  
**etc.**

briefly, because, although by no means without importance, they are, relatively speaking, of less value to the beginner. The principal facts of the order of words have been given in the **Exercises**, and more specific statements are found, when necessary, in the sections belonging to the **Lessons**. It is believed that in this respect ample information has been provided for the needs of a first year's course, in which time the student is not expected to unravel the problems of intricate and complex sentence-construction.

The book is divided into thirty-five **Lessons**; each Lesson is followed by an **Exercise**. The first twenty Lessons and Exercises form Part I, the remaining fifteen constitute Part II. The Lessons, properly speaking,

**Arrangement  
of the book.**

deal successively, in the order indicated at the beginning of this Preface, with the different parts of speech. In the Exercises of Part I, as much of the subject-matter of the following Lessons is gradually anticipated as is necessary for the formation of complete and intelligible sentences. Some of the Exercises in Part I contain also idiomatic phrases and as much syntactical matter as ought to be known to the student at this time of his study. For instance, in connection with Lessons II, III and IV, we find in the corresponding Exercises 2, 3 and 4 the most common forms of *haben*, *sein*, *loben*, etc. as well as the most indispensable rules on the order of words. This absolutely necessary process of anticipating certain grammatical facts does not interfere with the systematic plan of the book as to the order in which the parts of speech follow one another, since such matters as must needs be presented, in part, at the earlier stages of the pupil's work are taken up in full in their proper place. Under the heading of Exercises will also be found ample material for translations from German into English and from English into German. In Exercises 12 and 16. II, and in most of the Exercises in Part II, these translations constitute the only subject-matter.

In conclusion, it will be seen that the aim throughout has been to furnish to the pupil beginning the study of German a text-book, which, on its positive side, offers him the means of becoming thoroughly grounded in the fundamental principles of the language, and on its negative side, endeavors to save him from the confusion arising from too much detail and to guard him against obstacles likely to hinder his progress.

GEORGE THEODORE DIPPOLD.

MAY, 1905.

# CONTENTS

## PART I

	PAGE
LESSON I. The Alphabet. — Pronunciation . . . . .	1-14
EXERCISE 1 <i>a.</i> Practice in Pronunciation . . . . .	7
EXERCISE 1 <i>b.</i> "     "     " . . . . .	14
EXERCISE 1 <i>c.</i> "     "     " . . . . .	15
LESSON II. Orthography. — Initial Capitals. — Punctuation. — Syllabication. — Accentuation. — Gender of Nouns . . . . .	15-23
EXERCISE 2.* Present and Preterit Indicative of <b>haben</b> , <b>sein</b> and <b>loben</b> . — Order of Words . . . . .	20
LESSON III. Declension and Use of the Article . . . . .	23-30
EXERCISE 3. Declension of <b>dieser</b> and <b>mein</b> . — Perfect and Pluperfect of <b>haben</b> and <b>loben</b> . — Order of Words . . . . .	25
LESSON IV. Declension of Nouns. — Strong and Weak Declensions. — Classification of Strong Declension. — Class I . . . . .	30-36
EXERCISE 4. Transposed Order. — Present Indicative of <b>werden</b> . — Future Indicative of <b>loben</b> . . . . .	33
LESSON V. Strong Declension. — Class II . . . . .	36-41
EXERCISE 5. Personal Pronouns. — <b>Sie</b> and <b>Du</b> . — Present Passive of <b>loben</b> . . . . .	37
LESSON VI. Strong Declension. — Class III . . . . .	41-49
EXERCISE 6. Perfect and Pluperfect Indicative of <b>sein</b> and <b>werden</b> . — Prepositions with Dative and Accusative . . . . .	46
LESSON VII. Strong Declension. — Class IV . . . . .	49-55
EXERCISE 7. Inseparable Verbs. — Prepositions with Dative or Accusative. — Preposition <i>by</i> with the Passive. — Verbs in <i>iteren</i> . — Expressions of Time and Place . . . . .	52

---

\* Each Exercise includes one or more translations. Exercises 12, 16, 11, and most of the Exercises in Part II contain translations only.

	PAGE
LESSON VIII. Strong Declension. — Class V. — Classification of Strong Nouns according to their Gender .	56-63
EXERCISE 8. Preterit of <b>werden</b> . — Conditional Present of <b>loben</b> . . . . .	60
LESSON IX. Weak Declension. — Distribution of Nouns among the two "Declensions" according to Gender. — Table of Declensional Endings . . . . .	63-70
Tabular View of Regular Declension of Nouns, between pages	70-71
EXERCISE 9. Preterit Passive. — Idiomatic Phrases with <b>wahr</b> and <b>wohl</b> . . . . .	65
LESSON X. Irregular or Mixed Declension . . . . .	71-79
EXERCISE 10. Idiomatic Phrases with <b>doch</b> , <b>ja</b> and <b>möchte</b>	75
LESSON XI. Auxiliary Verbs . . . . .	80-92
EXERCISE 11. Infinitive Active with <b>zu</b> . — Use of the Present Tense in German for the English Perfect. — Use of the Subjunctive in Conditional Sentences. — Position of the Infinitive . . . . .	89
LESSON XII. Verbs. — Inflection of Verbs. — Compound Forms. — Simple Tenses. — The Weak Conjugation . . . . .	92-106
EXERCISE 12. Translations . . . . .	101
LESSON XIII. The Connecting Vowel <b>e</b> . — Irregular Weak Verbs . . . . .	106-120
EXERCISE 13, I. Declension of Adjectives in Special Uses. — Comparatives and Superlatives . . . . .	110
EXERCISE 13, II. Declension of Participles. — Cardinal Numbers from 1 to 20. — Subjunctive in indirect statement. — Special Uses of the Definite Article, and of <b>es</b> and <b>das</b> . . . . .	116
LESSON XIV. The Modal Auxiliaries and <b>wissen</b> . . . . .	120-138
EXERCISE 14, I. <b>Dürfen</b> , <b>können</b> and <b>mögen</b> in Idiomatic Expressions . . . . .	127
EXERCISE 14, II. <b>Müssen</b> , <b>sollen</b> and <b>wollen</b> in Idiomatic Expressions . . . . .	131
EXERCISE 14, III. The Modal Auxiliaries without Dependent Infinitives . . . . .	136

# CONTENTS

xi

PAGE

LESSON XV. Strong Conjugation. — Class I. — Classification of Strong Verbs. — Class I. — Second and Third Persons Singular, Present Indicative. — Imperative. — Connecting Vowel <i>e</i> . — Conjugation of <i>tragen</i> and <i>raten</i> . . . . .	138-151
EXERCISE 15. Position of the Dative and Accusative. — Interrogative Pronouns . . . . .	145
LESSON XVI. Strong Conjugation. — Class II. — Second and Third Persons Singular, Present Indicative. — Imperative. — Connecting Vowel <i>e</i> . . . . .	151-168
EXERCISE 16, I. Idiomatic Use of <i>geben</i> . — Subjunctive to Express Possibility. — Position of Adverbs. — Position of <i>nicht</i> . . . . .	155
EXERCISE 16, II. Translations . . . . .	161
EXERCISE 16, III. Idiomatic Use of <i>gelten</i> . Present for Future . . . . .	166
LESSON XVII. Strong Conjugation. — Classes III and IV. — Second and Third Persons Singular, Present Indicative. — Imperative. — Connecting Vowel <i>e</i> . . . . .	169-177
EXERCISE 17. Declension of Adjectives when Preceded by <i>ein</i> , <i>kein</i> , etc. — Declension of Adjectives when not Preceded by the Definite or Indefinite Article. — Definite Article for the Possessive. — <i>So</i> = <i>as . . . as</i> or <i>however</i> . . . . .	172
LESSON XVIII. Strong Conjugation. — Class V . . . . .	178-184
EXERCISE 18. Reflexive Pronouns. — Infinitive with <i>zu</i> Governed by <i>um</i> . — German Past Participle for English Present Participle. — Participles Preceded by their Modifiers . . . . .	179
LESSON XIX. Strong Conjugation. — Class VI . . . . .	184-189
EXERCISE 19. Use of <i>ohne</i> , <i>statt</i> or <i>aufstatt</i> . . . . .	186
LESSON XX. I. Irregular Strong Verbs. — II. Strong Preterit Indicative. — III. Strong Preterit Subjunctive. — IV. Strong Past Participle . . . . .	190-200
EXERCISE 20, I. Practice in finding the Principal Parts and the Second and Third Persons Singular of the Present Indicative . . . . .	196
EXERCISE 20, II. Practice in giving the Perfect Indicative and Subjunctive, and also the Preterit Subjunctive of certain Verbs . . . . .	197
GERMAN VOCABULARY TO PART I . . . . .	201-214



## PART II

	PAGE
LESSON XXI. Inseparable Verbs . . . . .	215-221
EXERCISE 21. Translations . . . . .	220
LESSON XXII. Separable Verbs . . . . .	221-227
EXERCISE 22. Translations . . . . .	225
LESSON XXIII. Verbs, Separable <i>or</i> Inseparable . . . . .	227-232
EXERCISE 23. Use of <i>lassen</i> .— Review of the Conjugation of Compound Verbs . . . . .	230
LESSON XXIV. Reflexive Verbs . . . . .	232-242
EXERCISE 24. Use of <i>sich lassen</i> . . . . .	240
LESSON XXV. Impersonal Verbs . . . . .	242-246
EXERCISE 25. Translations . . . . .	244
LESSON XXVI. Passive Voice . . . . .	247-253
EXERCISE 26. Translations . . . . .	251
LESSON XXVII. Adjectives. — Attributive Adjectives. — Their Declension . . . . .	253-262
EXERCISE 27. Translations . . . . .	260
LESSON XXVIII. I. Comparison of Adjectives. — II. De- clension of Comparatives. — III. Declension of Superlatives . . . . .	262-273
EXERCISE 28 <i>a</i> . Translation . . . . .	266
EXERCISE 28 <i>b</i> . Translations . . . . .	271
LESSON XXIX. Pronouns. — Personal Pronouns . . . . .	273
EXERCISE 29. Translations . . . . .	279
LESSON XXX. Possessive Pronouns . . . . .	282-291
EXERCISE 30. Translations . . . . .	287
LESSON XXXI. Demonstrative and Interrogative Pronouns . . . . .	291-300
EXERCISE 31. Translations . . . . .	298
LESSON XXXII. Relative Pronouns . . . . .	301-305
EXERCISE 32. Translations . . . . .	304
LESSON XXXIII. Indefinite Pronouns and Adjectives . . . . .	306-313
EXERCISE 33. Translations . . . . .	311
LESSON XXXIV. Numerals . . . . .	314-322
EXERCISE 34. Translations . . . . .	320
LESSON XXXV. Adverbs. — Prepositions. — Conjunctions . . . . .	323-331
EXERCISE 35. Translations . . . . .	330

## APPENDIX

	PAGE
TABULAR VIEW OF THE STRONG VERBS . . . . .	332-339
I. Based on the Vowel of the Infinitive . . . . .	332, 333
II. Based on the Vowel of the Preterit . . . . .	334, 335
III. Based on the Vowel of the Past Participle . . . . .	336, 337
IV. Changing the Radical Vowel of the Infinitive in the Second and Third Persons Singular of the Present Indicative . . . . .	338
V. Changing the Radical Vowel of the Infinitive in the Second and Third Persons Singular of the Indicative Present and <b>also</b> in the Second Person Singular of the Imperative . . . . .	339
<hr/>	
GERMAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY TO PART II . . . . .	341-350
<hr/>	
INDEX . . . . .	351-360



# PART I

## LESSON I

### THE ALPHABET. — PRONUNCIATION.

#### THE ALPHABET

German form	German name	Roman form	German form	German name	Roman form
A a	ah	A a	N n	en	N n
B b	bay	B b	O o	oh	O o
C c	tsay	C c	P p	pay	P p
D d	day	D d	Q q	koo	Q q
E e	ay	E e	R r	er	R r
F f	eff	F f	S s	ess	S s
G g	gay	G g	T t	tay	T t
H h	hah	H h	U u	oo	U u
I i	ee	I i	V v	fow	V v
J j	yot	J j	W w	vay	W w
K k	kah	K k	X x	ix	X x
L l	el	L l	Y y	ipsilon	Y y
M m	em	M m	Z z	tset	Z z

1. The second small s, or final s, is used at the end of a word: *Hauss*, *house*; *Eis*, *ice*; also at the end of a syllable in compound words: *Eishaus*, *ice-house*; *Haustür*, *street-door*; and before suffixes, except inflectional endings, as in *Weisheit*, *wisdom*, but *des Hauses*, *of the house*; *die Weisen*, *wise (men)*. In all other instances use f.

NOTE. — Distinguish B from P; C from G; G from S; R from N and H; D from O and Q; and particularly f from s; and r from x.

A few letters are slightly changed in form by combination with one another: *ch*, *ck*, *tz* and *sz*. However *ß* is generally represented in Roman type by *ss*.

# GERMAN SCRIPT — CAPITALS

A B C D E F

G H I J K L

M N O P Q

R S T U V

W X Y Z.

## SMALL LETTERS

a b c d e f g

h i j k l m n

o p q r s (ß) t

u v w x y z.

2. Germans use Roman type in their scientific publications almost exclusively; yet the great majority of the old classical literature as well as the contemporaneous dramas, novels, and newspapers still appear in German type. Thus the student must be acquainted with the latter.

A writing knowledge of German script is not necessary, except as an aid to a reading knowledge of German script.

## PRONUNCIATION

## Vowels

3. 1. There are no silent vowels, except *e* in the combination *ie*: *die* (pronounce *dee*), *the* (6, 3).

2. A vowel doubled or followed by *h* in the same syllable is long: *ſal*, *eel*; *lahm*, *lame*.

3. The vowels *i* and *u* are never doubled.

4. Vowels followed by a single consonant, or at the end of a word, except unaccented *e*, are generally long: *mir*, *to me*; *bu*, *thou*.

*a*. There are exceptions; the vowel is short in some monosyllables: *ab*, *an*, *am*, *hin*.

5. A vowel is short before a double consonant\* and generally before two or more different consonants, unless the last one of the pair belongs to the following syllable: *Waffer*, *water*; *er bringt*, *he brings*; but *ſchlaf-loß*, *sleepless*.

*a*. Instances of a long vowel before two different consonants especially *rb* and *rt*, occur at times: *ſart*, *tender*; *Bart*, *beard*, *Erde*, *earth*.

*b*. A long radical vowel remains long even before two consonants, one or both of them being declensional or conjugational endings: *der Hut*, *hat*, *des Huts*, *of the hat*; *wagen*, *venture*, *er wagte*, *he ventured*; *laben*, *refresh*, *du labſt*, *you refresh*.

6. A vowel is called a **front** vowel when it is produced in the front part of the mouth (the hard palate) with the tongue pushed forward: *e*, *i*.

7. A vowel is called a **back** vowel, when it is produced in the back part of the mouth, with the tongue drawn back: *a*, *o*, *u*.

8. If the vowel is uttered quickly, it is called **short**; if the sound is drawn out to a greater length, it is called **long**.

4. 1. *ſ* *a*, when long, has the sound of *a* in the exclamation *ah*: *Vater* (*ſ* like *F*), *father*; *Tal*, *dale*, *valley*.

2. It is short in *dann*, *then*, *fann*, *can*; *hart*, *hard*. Short *a* has the same sound as long *a*, but is spoken quickly.

---

\* As to *ß*, cf. 41, *a*.

Note the difference in pronunciation of *a*, *ä*, between *hart* and *hard*.

The German short *a* has no exact equivalent in English. Guard against pronouncing it like short *a* in *can*, *hat*; its sound rather resembles that of short *o* in *hot*, *not*.

**5. & e.** & has three sounds:

1. A close long sound like that of French *é*, and similar to that of *a* in *late*: *Speer*, *spear*; *mehr*, *more*.

2. An open short sound like that of *e* in *mess*: *Geld*, *money*, *fest*, *firm*.

*a.* Guard against pronouncing the *e* before *r* like the *e* in *her*; it rather approaches very closely the sound of *e* in *heritage*, *herring*: *Herz*, *heart*; *Schmerz*, *pain*; *Schwert*, *sword*.

3. A "slurred" or obscure sound, only in unaccented syllables and especially at the end of a word: *en* in *gleiten*, *glide*, like *en* in *lighten*; *en* in *Polen*, *Poland*, like *en* in *stolen*. Final *es*, as in *gutes*, *schönes*, etc. sounds very much like *ous*, in *furious*. Final unaccented *e* approaches the sound of final *a* in *Asia*: *Strafe*, *punishment*, *Glaube*, *faith*.

**6. i.** *i*, when long, sounds like *i* in *machine*: *ihr*, *to her*; *wir*, *we*.

2. Short *i* has the sound of *i* in *it*: *hin*, *thither*; *Tinte*, *ink*.

*a.* Do not pronounce short *i* before *r* like *i* in *flirt*, *mirth*, etc. It sounds like *i* in *spirit* or *y* in *myriad*, *pyramid*: *Birke*, *birch-tree*; *Kirsche*, *cherry*, *Wirt*, *landlord*.

3. The digraph *ie* sounds like German long *i*: *wieder*, *again*; *Friede*, *peace*.

*a.* In some words of foreign origin with the accent on the last syllable but one, the two vowels are separated in sound: *ie*; the *e* is slurred (5, 3): *die Familie*, *die Vinie*.

*b.* If the accent rests on *ie*, the latter has the ordinary sound of German long *i*: *Geographie*; *Telegraphie*.

**7. o.** *o*, when long, sounds like *o* in *lone* or *prone*: *oben*, *above*; *Rose*, *rose*; *wohnen*, *dwell*; *Boot*, *boat*.

2. Short *o* has the same sound, only shortened as to the time of articulation: *Dorf*, *village*; *offen*, *open*; *kosten*, *cost*.

a. Guard against pronouncing short *o* like *o* in *spot*, *got*.

8. 1. *ü* *u*, when long, sounds like *oo* in *cool*: *Bruder*, *brother*; *Uhr*, *clock*; *Schuh*, *shoe*.

2. Short *u* has the sound of *u* in *full*: *Fluß*, *river*; *Mutter*, *mother*.

9. *ŷ* *η* is found chiefly in words of Greek origin and usually pronounced like German *i* in the same situation; it may be long or short. Some scholars prefer the sound of *ü* (13), particularly when *η* has the accent: *ly'riŷh*, *Mŷ'the*; *Aŷyl*, *asylum*; *Mŷrte*, *myrtle*.

### Modified Vowels

10. The modification or mutation in sound of the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, and the diphthong *au* is generally called *umlaut*. Its sign is a couple of dots (¨) over those vowels: *Ä*, *Ö*, *Ü*, *Äu*; *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, *äu*.

11. 1. *Ä*, *ä*, when long, is pronounced nearly like *a* in *care*: *Käse*, *cheese*; *ŷpät*, *late*.

2. Short *ä* sounds very much like *e* in *bet*: *Männer*, *men*; *kälter*, *colder*.

12. *Ö* *ö* has no exact equivalent in English. Round the lips as when *o* is pronounced; then, without moving them, articulate long, close *e* (as in *they*). Pronounce *Heer*, *army*; then round the lips and you have *hör*, root of *hören*, *hear*. *Ö* has the lip-position of *o* and the tongue-position of *e*. The difference between long and short *ö* is one of quantity; *i. e.* of duration of time in uttering the sound.

1. Long *ö* in *Flöte*, *flute*, *Höhle*, *hollow*, *cave*; *ŷchön*, *beautiful*.

2. Short *ö* in *Dörfer*, *villages*; *öffnen*, *open*.



**13.** *Ü ü* is the combined sound of *u* and *i*. Round the lips as when *u* is pronounced, and then, without moving them, articulate German long *i*. Pronounce *liegen, lie, be situated*; then round the lips, and you have *lügen, lie, tell a falsehood*. *Ü* has the lip-position of *u*, and the tongue-position of *i*.

1. Long *ü* in *Brüder, brothers*; *führen, lead*; *Tür, door*.
2. Short *ü* in *dünn, thin*; *Hütte, hut*.

**14.** Modified vowels or *umlauts* are never doubled. A double vowel in the singular, as in *Saal, hall*, is changed to a single vowel in the plural, if modification be required in the latter: *Cäle*. For *äu*, cf. 18.

### Diphthongs

**15.** *Ai ai* is a pure diphthongal sound, being a combination of short *a* and *i*; it greatly resembles the sound of *i* in *mine* or *fine*, with the first element (*a*) brought out more distinctly. *Ai* is of exceedingly rare occurrence: *Bai, bay*; *Kaiser, emperor*; *Waise, orphan*.

**16.** *Ei ei* is pronounced like *ai* and occurs very frequently: *bleiben, remain*; *ein, one, a*; *Eisen, iron*; *mein, my*.

Do not confound the sound of *ei* with that of *ie*. *Ei* is pronounced like *ei* in *eider-down*; *ie* like *ie* in *grief*.

Pronounce **only the last vowel** in either combination of *ei* and *ie* and give it the **long** sound as in **English**.

**17.** *Au au* is a combination of *a* and *u*; it sounds much like *ou, ow* as in *grouse, now*, the first element (*a*) being more conspicuous: *bauen, build*; *faul, lazy*; *Maus, mouse*.

**18.** *Äu äu* is the umlaut of *au*, corresponding to the latter as *ä* to *a*. It sounds very nearly like *oy*, in *oyster*: *Bäume, trees*; *Fräulein, young lady*.

**19.** *Eu eu* sounds like *äu*: *heute, to-day*; *neun, nine*; *neue, new*.

## PRACTICE IN PRONUNCIATION

## EXERCISE 1a

1. Neue Bilder waren im Saale<sup>1</sup> des Schlosses.<sup>2</sup> 2. Das  
New pictures were in the hall of the castle. The  
Fräulein kommt heute. 3. Er steht hinter der Thür. 4. Warte  
young lady comes to-day. He stands behind the door. Wait  
bei dem kleinen Thor. 5. Meine Bäume im Garten. 6. Eine  
near the little gate. My trees in the garden. A  
Blume auf der Wiese. 7. Dieser Mann wohnt in Berlin.  
flower on the meadow. This man lives in Berlin.  
8. Die Eule ist auf dem Aste des Baumes. 9. Die Äste  
The owl is on the branch of the tree. The branches  
der Bäume waren lang. 10. Liebe die kleinen Kinder. 11. Unser  
of the trees were long. Love the little children. Our  
Vater<sup>3</sup> liebt diese Dörfer. 12. Gestern war meine Mutter  
father loves (likes) these villages. Yesterday was my mother  
in eurem Hause. 13. Die Ehre gebietet es. 14. Der Kaiser  
in your house. (The) honor commands it. The emperor  
ist hier. 15. Auf diese Weise. 16. Auf dieser Wiese. 17. Ein  
is here. In this manner. On this meadow. A  
Ries Papier. 18. Eine kleine Reise. 19. Wie lange sind Sie  
ream (of) paper. A little journey. How long are you  
(have you  
schon<sup>4</sup> hier? 20. Wie viel<sup>5</sup> Uhr ist es? 21. Es ist schon<sup>4</sup> ein  
already here? What o'clock is it? It is already one  
been here?)  
Uhr. 22. Dieses Haus ist neu und schön.<sup>4</sup> 23. Dort ist eine  
o'clock. This house is new and beautiful. There is a  
Eisenbahn. 24. Wie alt sind Sie?<sup>6</sup>  
railroad. How old are you?

<sup>1</sup> Initial f = s.<sup>2</sup> Sch = sh.<sup>3</sup> B = f.<sup>4</sup> Cf. note 2 above.<sup>5</sup> Cf. note 3 above.<sup>6</sup> Cf. note 1 above.

## Consonants

20. 1. When a consonant is being sounded, and the vocal chords are at the same time vibrating, that consonant is called "voiced," or sonant; as, for instance, *b, d, g*, in *been, done, give*.

2. When the vocal chords are in a state of repose while the

consonant is being sounded, the latter is called "voiceless," or surd; as, for instance *p*, *t*, *k*,\* in *pair*, *tea*, *key*.

**21.** 1. Double consonants are pronounced like single consonants: *Ōtter*, *otter*, like *Ō-ter*; the vowel preceding a double consonant is generally short (3, 5).

2. The combinations *ch*, *sch*, and *v* and *w*, are never doubled.

3. If two consonants come together, each one belonging to a different syllable, as in compound words, both consonants are of course pronounced: *Gift-trant*, *poisonous draught*.

**22.** 1. *ß* *b*, when preceding a vowel or *l* or *r* in the same syllable, or when doubled, is a sonant (20, 1) like English *b*, and has the same sound: *Blut*, *blood*; *über*, *over*; *aber*, *but*, *however*.

2. Otherwise, *b* becomes a surd (20, 2) in sound and is pronounced like *p*: *er blieb*, *he remained*; *er schreibt*, *he writes*; *er schrieb*, *he wrote*.

*a.* A consonant is considered final not only when at the end of a word, but when at the end of a radical syllable followed by a suffix beginning with a consonant: *Lab-sal*, *refreshment*.

**23.** *ç* *c* as a single consonant occurs only in foreign words, or in words derived from foreign languages.

1. Before *a*, *o*, *u*, *ou* or a consonant, it sounds like *k*: *Ca'to*; *Cada'ver*; *Co'dex*; *Coupon'*; *Cle'mens*.

2. Elsewhere (before *e*, *i*, *ä*, *ö*, *η*), like *ts*: *Censur'*; *Circular'*; *Cä'far*; *Cölibat'*; *Cypres'je*.

*a.* *ç* before *e*, *i*, *ä*, *ö*, or *η* ought to be pronounced like *k* + *ts*, but frequently only half of the *k* and half of the *t* sound are heard, and sometimes the *t* sound is omitted altogether: *Accent'*, *accent* = *At-sent*; *Occident'*, *occident*.

**24.** *ch* *h* has two sounds:

1. One is the surd guttural spirant like *ch* in Scotch

---

\* G. Hempl: German Orthography and Phonology, page 101.

*loch*; it is heard after *a, o, u* or *au* and is sometimes called the *ach* sound. It is produced between the back of the tongue and the throat, where also the vowel *u* is formed: *ach!* *acht, eight*; *auch, also*; *Buch, book*; *Nacht, night*.\*

2. *Ch* in all other situations (that is, after *e, i, y, ä, ö, ü, ai, ei, eu, äu*, after a consonant and in the suffix *chen*), has a softer, palatal sound, and is sometimes called the *ich* sound.† It is produced between the front of the tongue and the roof of the mouth: *dich, thee*; *reich, rich*; *recht, right*; *feucht, moist*; *ich möchte, I might*; *nichts,‡ nothing*; *ich möchte, I should think*.

NOTE.—The *ch* in the suffix *chen* has this sound even after *a, o, u*, or *au*: *Mama'chen, Frauchen*.

3. *Ch* before *s* or *f*, when belonging to the stem, sounds like *k*, thus *chs* or *chf* = *x*: *Fuchs, fox*; *Füchje, foxes*.

25. *Cf, c* is pronounced like *k* being the written equivalent for a double *f*; the latter never occurs except in the division of syllables: *Ecke, corner*; *Glocke, bell*; *Hecke, hedge*; but *Heck-fe*, when divided.

26. 1. *D d*, when preceding a vowel or any consonant standing between it (*d*) and a vowel in the same syllable, or when doubled, is a sonant (20, 1) like English *d* and is pronounced in the same manner: *Adler, eagle*; *Kinder, children*; *reden, talk*; *Friedrich, Frederick*.

2. Otherwise (when at the end of a syllable or a word or immediately before a final consonant), *d* becomes a surd in

\* Hempl's German Orthography and Phonology: "The sound may best be learned by whispering 'koo,' 'ko' or 'ka' and dwelling on the sound that follows the *k*."

† Professor Hempl: "The sound may best be learned by whispering 'key' and dwelling on the sound that follows the *k*."

‡ When trying to pronounce this word, say first *niçh*, then add a distinct *t* sound: *niçh + t* and then *s*: *niçh + t + s*.

**sound** and is pronounced like *t*: *Lied*, *song*; *Leid*, *sorrow*; *Wald*, *wood, forest*; *Kind*, *child*; *vollends*, *entirely*.

*a.* Do not confound *Lied* with *Leid*.

3. **It** sounds like *t*: *Stadt*, *city*; *er sandte*, *he sent*.

27. **ſ** *f* as in English: *fallen*, *fall*; *Freiheit*, *freedom*.

28. 1. **G** *g*, when initial, medial, doubled, followed by a vowel, or by *l*, *n*, *r* in the same syllable, is a sonant like *b* and *d*, and sounds like *g* in *garden*, *green*: *Auge*, *eye*; *gut*, *good*; *groß*, *great*; *Glas*, *glass*.

2. At the end of a syllable or of a word, or before a surd, *g* becomes a surd (just as *b* and *d* become *p* and *t* in sound); however, as a rule, it is not pronounced like the corresponding surd *k*, but like *ç* under the same circumstances (24, 1, 2).

*a.* Like guttural *ç*, as in *auch*: *genug*, *enough*; *Tag*, *day*; *Magd*, *maid-servant*.

*b.* Like palatal *ç*, as in *ich*: *König*, *king*; *Burg*, *castle*.

29. 1. **H** *h* at the beginning of a word or syllable sounds like *h* in *hair*: *Hut*, *hat*; *vorher*, *before*.

2. Otherwise, it is silent, and serves to lengthen the preceding vowel: *Ehre*, *honor*; *Ohr*, *ear*: *Hef*, *deer*.

30. **J** *j* sounds like *y* consonant, as in *yes*, *year*: *Juli*, *July*; *jung*, *young*; *Jagd*, *chase*.

31. **K** *k* like *k* in *keen*: *klein*, *small*; *Königreich*, *kingdom*.

*a.* The *k* of initial *kn* is pronounced very distinctly: *Knie*, *knee*; *Knabe*, *boy*.

*b.* For *k* cf. 25.

32. **L** *l* like *l* in *lamb*: *laut*, *aloud*; *Lippe*, *lip*.

33. **M** *m* sounds like *m* in *man*: *Mund*, *mouth*; *Name*, *name*.

**34.** *N* *n* like English *n*: *wann*, *when*; *wenn*, *if*; *fann*, *can*; *nah*, *near*.

*a.* *N* before *t* sounds like *ng* as in *singer*: *Dank* (*Dang-t*), *thanks*.

*b.* *Ng* also sounds like *ng* in *singer*, not as *ng* in *finger*: *Sänger*, *singer*; *bringen*, *bring*; *Gesang*, *song*; *Finger*, *finger*.

**35.** *P* *p* like English *p*: *Papier*, *paper*: *Haupt*, *head*; *Preußen*, *Prussia*.

*a.* *Pf*. In this combination *p* is generally uttered by putting the lower lip and **upper teeth** together, instead of pressing the lower lip to the upper one, as is invariably the case in the ordinary pronunciation of *p*: *Pfund*, *pound*.

*b.* *Ph* occurs in the German word *Epheu*, *ivy*; otherwise only in words derived from foreign languages. It is pronounced like *f*: *Photographie*; *Phhfit*; *Philosophie*.

NOTE.—In *Sappho* the first *p* is silent.

**36.** *Q* *q* is always followed by *u*. The *v* sound following that of *k* is purely labial, being produced between the **lips only**, and **not** between the lower lip and the edge of the upper teeth, as in English *v*: *Qual*, *torture*; *Quelle*, *spring*, *well*; *Quittung*, *receipt*.

**37.** *R* *r* must be uttered very audibly and forcibly.

1. The “trilled” *r* is formed by vibrating the tip of the tongue, and is therefore often called the “lingual” *r*. This is the prevailing pronunciation on the stage, in artistic singing and in many parts of Germany.

2. The “guttural” or “uvular” *r* is formed by raising the back of the tongue until it almost touches the soft palate, while the tip of the tongue assumes a convex position. This *r* is used by the great majority of Germans.

NOTE.—Do not slur the *r* or drop it altogether after a vowel, as is often done in English: *bitter*, *bitter*; do **not** pronounce *bittah*.

**38. 1. S s.** S, when initial before a vowel or between two vowels, is generally and preferably pronounced like *z* as in *zone*: *Haſe, hare*; *ſieben, seven*; *Mäuſe, mice*.

*a.* In some parts of Germany, *ſ* in this situation sounds neither like English *s* nor exactly like English *z*; it begins like the surd *s* and ends like the sonant *z*.

2. When doubled (*ſſ* or *ß*), final or before a consonant, **not** at the beginning of a word, *ſ* or *ß* is surd and sounds like *s* in *sing, glass*: *laſſen, let, allow*; *Kreiß, circle*; *Klaſſe, class*; *Fluß, river*; *Last, burden*.

**39. Sch ſch** like *sh* in *shine*, but with the lips more protruded: *Schaf, sheep*; *Schiff, ship*; *ſchredlich, terrible*; *Schule, school*.

**40. 1. St ſt; Sp ſp** at the beginning of a word, or a syllable in compound words, sound like *shit* and *shp*: *Stab, staff*; *Staub, dust*; *verſtehen, understand*; *Spanien, Spain*.

2. Elsewhere, they sound like *st* or *sp* in *stone* or *spire*: *geſtern, yesterday*; *Maſt, mast*; *köſtlich, precious*.

**41. Sß ß** sounds like *ss* in *miss*, and occurs at the end of a word, medially after a long vowel or a diphthong and before a consonant; *ſſ* occurs only medially after short vowels: *Gruß, greeting*; *grüßen, greet*; *Haß, hatred*; *er haßt, he hates*; but *haſſen, hate*.

*a.* Since *ß* is always used at the end of a word, the quantity of the vowel before it cannot be ascertained unless an additional syllable (declensional or conjugational ending, etc.) is used in connection with it: *Faß, barrel* and *naß, wet* have short *a*, as the case forms of *Faß* are *Faſſes, Fäſſer*, etc. Of *naß* we have the noun *Näſſe, humility*, and the verb *näſſen, wet, moisten*. But *Gruß, greeting*, has a long *u*; the plural is *Grüße, the verb grüßen*.

42. 1. **T t** like English *t* in *tin*: *alt, old*; *Götter, gods*; *Seite, side, page* (of a book).

2. In the combinations *tia, tie, tio*, occurring in words taken from Latin or French, *t* sounds like *ts*: *Nation*; *Patient*; *martialisch, martial*.

When *tia, tie, tio* are immediately preceded by *f*, the *t* in the above combinations retains its ordinary sound: *Bastion'*, *Sebastian'*.

3. **Th th** always sounds like *t*, the sound of English *th* being unknown in German: *Thea'ter*; *Lithogra'ph*; *Athei's-mus*; *Thee, tea*.

43. 1. **B b** like *f* in *foam* in real German words, or words of foreign origin thoroughly naturalized, and **always** when final: *Bieh, cattle*; *Volk, people*; *Sklave, slave*.

2. Elsewhere, in foreign words not naturalized, *b* sounds like English *v*: *vulgär, vulgar*.

44. **W w**. The sound of English *w* is unknown in German.

1. After a consonant, which is generally *sch* or *z*, or in *qu*, *w* has a pure labial sound, being pronounced with the two lips only and therefore called "bilabial," *schweigen, be silent*; *zwingen, force*; *quer, cross, transverse*.

NOTE. — Guard against putting the lower lip to the upper teeth; this would result in uttering English *v*. On the other hand, avoid narrowing the cheeks, raising the back of the tongue and rounding the lips; else the sound will be like that of English *w*.

2. In other situations, *w* sounds like English *v*, in Northern Germany; it is "dentilabial." In Central and Southern Germany, it often has a pure labial sound, "bilabial": *Wacht, watch, guard*; *Wachs, wax*; *wer, who*; *weiß, white*.

45. **X x** like English *x* (*ks*) in *ox*: *Axt, axe*; *Nixe, water-nymph*; *Alexander*; *Xylographie, xylography, wood-engraving*.



46. *ß* like *ts*: Zahn, *tooth*; stolz, *proud*; Zeitung, *newspaper*.

## PRACTICE IN PRONUNCIATION

### EXERCISE 1b

Bald nahte die an'mutige Gestalt' eines kleinen Mädchens.  
 Soon approached the graceful figure of a little girl.  
 Sie hieß Elisabeth und war fünf Jahre alt; er selbst war  
 She was called Elizabeth and was five years old; he himself was  
 doppelt so alt. Ich erzähl' dir etwas, sagte er. Dann  
 double (twice) as old. I (will) relate to you something, said he. Then  
 erzählte er die Geschichte von dem armen Mann, der in die  
 related he the story of the poor' man who into the  
 Lö'wengru'be geworfen war. „Nun war es Nacht,“ sagte er,  
 lion's den thrown was. Now was it night, said he,  
 „ganz finster, und die Löwen schliefen. Mitun'ter aber gähnten  
 wholly dark, and the lions slept. Sometimes however yawned  
 sie im Schlaf und zeigten ihre roten Zungen; dann schauderte  
 they in sleep and showed their red tongues; then shuddered  
 der Mann und meinte, daß der Morgen komme. Da warf es  
 the man and supposed that the morning came. Then threw it  
 um ihn auf ein'mal einen hellen Schein und als er auf'sah,  
 about him at once a bright light and when he uplooked  
 stand ein Engel vor ihm. Der winkte ihm mit der  
 stood an angel before him. That one beckoned to him with the  
 Hand und ging gerade durch die Felsen.“ Das Mädchen  
 hand and went straight through the rocks. The maiden  
 hatte aufmerksam zu'gehört. „Ein Engel?“ sagte sie: „Hatte er  
 had attentively listened. „An angel?“ said she: „Had he  
 denn Flügel?“ „Es ist nur eine Geschichte,“ antwortete der  
 then wings?“ „It is only a story,“ answered the  
 Knabe; „es gibt keine Engel. Aber Löwen gibt es in  
 boy; „there are no angels. But lions are there, in  
 Indien; da spannen die Götzenprie'ster sie vor den Wagen  
 India; there harness the idolatrous priests them before the carriage  
 und fahren mit ihnen durch die Wüste.“  
 and drive with them through the desert.”

EXERCISE 1c

1. Es war im Jahre achtzehn hundert acht und achtzig.  
It was in the year eighteen hundred eight and eighty.
2. Die französische Sprache ist sehr schön. 3. Schon sechs  
The French language is very beautiful. Already six  
und sechzig Jahre war er alt, als er nach Amerika ging.  
and sixty years was he old, when he to America went.
4. Schwarz, rot und weiß sind die Fahnen. 5. Die Stadt  
Black, red and white are the flags. The town (of)  
Bacharach liegt am Rhein.  
Bacharach lies near the Rhein.

## LESSON II

ORTHOGRAPHY.— INITIAL CAPITALS.— PUNCTUATION.— SYLLABICATION.— ACCENTUATION.— GENDER OF NOUNS.

**47. Orthography.** The modern spelling of German words has been used throughout this grammar.\*

Observe especially:

a. The ending of the infinitive *ieren* instead of *iren*: *studieren*.

b. The use of *t* instead of *th* in almost all German words: *Tal*, valley; *Tat*, deed; *tun*, do; *Ton*, clay; *Tor*, m., fool; n., gate; *Tür*, door; *Turm*, tower; *Wirt*, host; but in words of foreign origin *th* is retained: *The'ma*; *Thea'ter*; *Theorie*; *Thron*.

**48. Initial Capitals** are used as in English.

EXCEPTIONS:

1. Capitals are used in German with:

a. Nouns and words used as nouns: *das Gebirge*, the mountain-range; *das Schöne*, the beautiful; *die Großen*, the great (men); *das Lesen*, reading; *Irren*, erring, being mistaken; *der Deutsche*,

\* An excellent reference-book is Duden's "Orthographisches Wörterbuch." A convenient glossary is: Wörterbuch für deutsche Rechtschreibung von Prof. Dr. Gustav Gernß, Berlin, Weidmannsche Buchhandlung, 1902.

*the German*; er lernt, schreibt, spricht Deutsch, *he learns, writes, speaks German*; das Warten, *waiting*.

Distinguish ein Paar, *a pair*, from ein paar, *a few*: ein Paar Schuhe, *a pair of shoes*; ein paar Leute, *a few people*.

Distinguish the noun Recht, *right*, from the adjective and adverb recht, *right, rightly*: mit Recht, *in right, in reason*; im Recht sein, *be in the right*; recht haben, *be right*; recht tun, *do right*.

b. The personal pronoun Sie, *you*, and its corresponding possessive adjective Ihr, *your*.

c. Adjectives occurring in connection with etwas, *something*; viel, *much*; nichts, *nothing*, and similar words: etwas Schönes, *something beautiful*; nichts Gutes, *nothing good*; viel Neues, *many new things (reports)*; nichts Anderes, *nothing else*.

d. Adjectives and pronouns in titles: Seine Kaiserliche Majestät, *his imperial majesty*; Eure Excellenz, *your excellency*.

e. In letter-writing, the pronouns of the second person: Du, *thou*; Ihr, *you*, and their different cases, besides the corresponding possessives Dein, *thy*, Deinig, *thy, thine*; Euer, *your*, Eurig, *your, yours*.

2. No initial capitals are used in German with:

a. The pronoun ich, *I*.

b. Adjectives denoting nationality: die römischen Legionen, *the Roman legions*; die preussischen Generale, *the Prussian generals*.

**49. Punctuation.** The marks of punctuation are the same in German as in English. Among the more important exceptions to common English usage, the following ones may be mentioned:

1. The comma is used:

a. To set off subordinate clauses: als ich erfuhr, daß er krank war, schickte ich nach dem Arzte, *when I learned that he was ill, I sent for the physician*; die Briefe, welche Sie mir geschrieben haben, sind soeben angekommen, *the letters (which) you have written to me have just arrived*.

b. Often, to set off independent clauses which would in English be separated by colons, semicolons, or periods: traurig wandelten die Verzauberten durch die Felder, sie kannten ihr Elend, *sadly the enchanted men wandered through the fields. They knew their misery*.

2. The **hyphen** (=) denotes the place of an omitted member of a compound: *die Land- und Völkertunde*, *the knowledge of (acquaintance with) the land and people*.

## 50. Syllabication.

1. A simple consonant, or a group of several consonants, denoting a simple consonantal sound (dt, ß, ſch, ch, ph, th) occurring between two vowels, is written on the next line: *be-ten*, *pray*; *A-ſche*, *ashes*; *Stä-dte*, *cities*.

2. When two or more consonants stand between two vowels, only the last one belongs to the second vowel: *daß Waſ-ſer*, *water*; *die Ach-ſel*, *shoulder*.

a. The combination *ſt* is not separated: *Ka-ſten*, *box*, *chest*.

b. For *ſt*, cf. 25.

c. The combination *pf* when preceded by *r* or *m* belongs to the succeeding vowel: *Kar-pfen*, *carp*; *ſchim-pfen*, *insult*.

d. Note the division of *ng*: *ſin-ger*; *ſin-gen*.

3. In compound words, the component parts logically form the line of division, even when the latter seems contrary to the customary pronunciation: *haut-artig*, *skin-like*; *die Haß-ader*, *jugular vein*; *voll-enden*, *complete*; *Be-gleitung*, *escort*, *accompaniment*; *auf-treten*, *step on*, *appear*.

## 51. Accentuation.

1. In **uncompounded** genuine German words, the chief stress rests on the radical syllable: *Bru'der*, *brother*; *lo'ben*, *praise*; *Mor'gen*, *morning*.

### EXCEPTIONS:

German words with foreign endings, as *ei* (from Latin nouns in *ia* or French in *ie*); *ierer* (nouns denoting an agent); the infinitive ending *ieren* (cf. Latin *dormire*, French *dormir*): *Prii-gelei'*, *beating*, *fight*; *Haufie'rer*, *peddler*; *ſtolzie'ren*, *be proud*, *strut*.

2. In **compound** words, the chief stress rests on the radical syllable of the first member, if the second is a substantive or adjective; if it is a verb or derived from a verb, the latter bears the accent: *Gar'tenblume*, *garden-flower*; *le'z*

bensgroß, *life-sized*; but vollen'den, *finish*; vollkom'men, *perfect, complete* (kommen for gekommen, past participle of kommen, *come*).

a. The inseparable verbs (234) accordingly have the chief accent on the verb itself: befrei'en, *free*; verste'hen, *understand*.

b. The separable verbs, however, have the chief accent on the prefix (246), bei'stehen, *stand by, assist*; mit'kommen, *come along*.

## 52. Gender of Nouns according to Meaning.

In German, as in English, there are **three genders**, masculine, feminine and neuter.

1. The names of **male** beings, human or animal, are masculine.

2. The names of **female** beings, human or animal, are feminine.

NOTE. The nominative singular of the definite article *the* is der for the masculine; die for the feminine, and das for the neuter.

3. **Inanimate** objects may be masculine, feminine or neuter: der Löffel, m. *spoon*; die Gabel, f. *fork*; das Messer, n. *knife*.

4. Sometimes the **grammatical** gender prevails, regardless of sex. All nouns formed by the suffixes -chen and -lein (53, 3 a) being neuter, the following words and similar ones are of the same gender: das Fräulein, *young lady* (from Frau, *woman, wife*); das Mädchen, *girl* (derivative of Magd, *maid*); das Weiblein, *little woman* (from Weib, *woman*); das Männchen, *little man* (**mannikin**, from Mann, *man*).

Neuter are also das Weib, *woman*; das Kind, *child*.

5. While the gender of inanimate objects in German is best learned by practice, a few general rules, based on the **meaning** of the words, may be of some help.

## 6. Masculine are:

The names of the days of the week, of the month, sea-

sons, winds, points of compass and the majority of stones: der Montag, *Monday*; der Januar, *January*; der Frühling, *spring*; der Nordwind, *northwind*; der Ost or Osten, *east*; der Kiesel, *flint, pebble*.

### 7. Feminine are:

The names of the majority of flowers, chiefly those ending in e, trees, plants and most German rivers: die Rose, *rose*; die Nelke, *pink*; die Tanne, *fir*; die Eiche, *oak*; die Esche, *ash-tree*; die Kartoffel, *potato*; die Kirsche, *cherry*; the rivers Elbe, Weser, Oder; die Donau, *Danube*; die Weichsel, *Vistula*; but der Rhein, *Rhine*; der Nedar; der Main, *Maine*.

Names of trees compounded with Baum, *tree*, must be masculine according to 54: der Eichenbaum, *oak-tree*; der Tannenbaum, *fir-tree*.

### 8. Neuter are:

The names of almost all countries and places, metals, letters of the alphabet, and all words not real substantives but used as such; especially infinitives of verbs and adjectives, unless the latter refer to persons: Deutschland, *Germany*; das Eisen, *iron*; das F, *the letter f*; das Fahren, *driving* (fahren, *drive*); das Schöne, *the beautiful*; das Schreiben, *writing*.

## 53. Gender of Nouns according to Endings.

### 1. Masculine are:

Nouns ending in -er, -ler, -ner, signifying an agent: der Maler, *painter* (mal-en, *paint*); der Künstler, *artist* (Kunst, *art*); der Glaser, *tinman*.

They are masculine also according to their meaning.

### 2. Feminine are:

All nouns formed by the suffixes -ei, -in, -heit, -feit, -schaft, -ung: die Türkei, *Turkey*; die Lehrerin, *lady teacher*; die Wahrheit, *truth*; die Freude, *joyousness*; die Freundschaft, *friendship*; die Belohnung, *reward*.

Nouns in *in*, like *Lehrerin* above, are feminine also according to their meaning.

### 3. Neuter are:

*a.* All nouns formed by the suffixes *-chen* and *-lein*: *das Gläschen*, *little glass*; *das Häuslein*, *small house*; *das Knäblein*, *little boy*.

*b.* Nouns ending in *-tum*: *das Reichertum*, *imperial dignity*; *das Judentum*, *Judaism*.

*Der Reichtum*, *riches*, and *der Irrtum*, *error*, are the **only masculines** in *-tum*.

**54. Compound nouns take the gender of the last noun:** *der Blumengarten*, *flower-garden* (*der Garten*); *die Gartenblume*, *garden-flower* (*die Blume*); *der Fichtenbaum*, *pine-tree* (*der Baum*); *die Wartburg*, *the castle of Wartburg* (*die Burg*).

## EXERCISE 2

PRESENT AND PRETERIT INDICATIVE OF **haben**, **sein** AND **loben**.  
ORDER OF WORDS. TRANSLATIONS.

**1. Present and Preterit Indicative** of **haben**, *have* and **sein**, *be* (for complete conjugation, cf. pages 80–85).

### PRESENT.

ich habe, <i>I have</i>	ich bin, <i>I am</i>
du hast, <i>thou hast</i>	du bist, <i>thou art</i>
er hat, <i>he has</i>	er ist, <i>he is</i>
wir haben, <i>we have</i>	wir sind, <i>we are</i>
ihr habt, <i>you have</i>	ihr seid, <i>you are</i>
(Sie) sie haben, ( <i>you</i> ) <i>they have</i>	(Sie) sie sind, ( <i>you</i> ) <i>they are</i>

### PRETERIT.

ich hatte, <i>I had</i>	ich war, <i>I was</i>
du hattest, <i>thou hadst</i>	du warst, <i>thou wast</i>
er hatte, <i>he had</i>	er war, <i>he was</i>
wir hatten, <i>we had</i>	wir waren, <i>we were</i>
ihr hattet, <i>you had</i>	ihr wart, <i>you were</i>
(Sie) sie hatten, ( <i>you</i> ) <i>they had</i>	(Sie) sie waren, ( <i>you</i> ) <i>they were</i>

## 2. Order of Words.

In independent or main clauses there are two orders of words: the **normal**, or regular order, and the **inverted**.

*a.* In the **normal** order in German, as in English, the subject comes first; the personal verb (any part of the verb except participle and infinitive) follows: *der Mensch ist sterblich, man is mortal; wir haben ein Buch gekauft, we have bought a book.*

*b.* In the **inverted** order the personal verb comes first, and the subject follows: *sterblich ist der Mensch, mortal is man.*

The inverted order is required when any other word but the subject or even a whole adverbial clause begins the sentence: *jenes Haus haben wir gekauft, nicht dieses, that house we have bought, not this one; gestern kam er nach Hause, he came home yesterday; sobald er kam, sprach er mit mir, as soon as he came he spoke to me.*

3. The infinitive of a verb always ends in *n* and almost always in *en*. The root of the verb is found by taking off the infinitive ending: *loben, praise; root, lob.*

### PRESENT.

ich lobe, *I praise, etc.*  
 du lobst  
 er lobt  
 wir loben  
 ihr lobt  
 (Sie) Sie loben

### PRETERIT.

ich lobte, *I praised, etc.*  
 du lobtest  
 er lobte  
 wir lobten  
 ihr lobtet  
 (Sie) Sie lobten

4. There is no "progressive" nor "emphatic" verb-form in German: *I am praising, I do praise*, are the same as *I praise, ich lobe. I was praising, I did praise = ich lobte, I praised.*

5. In interrogative and negative forms *do* and *did* are not translated: *Do you know, wissen Sie (know you); I did not know, ich wußte nicht (I knew not).*

6. The adverbs *eben (even, just)*, *schon (already)*, *noch (still)*, sometimes convey the idea of the progressive form: *er geht eben, he is (just) going; er kommt schon, he is coming (already); der Wagen fährt eben aus dem Tor, the carriage is just going out of the gate (leaving the gate); es regnet noch, it is still raining.*

The connectives *und, and; aber, but; denn, for; oder, or*, and the adverbs *doch, yet; ja, indeed*, do not cause the inversion of the normal order:



ich wünschte ihn zu sehen, aber er kam nicht, *I wished to see him, but he did not come (came not)*; was er sagt, ist wahr; doch er kann es nicht beweisen, *what he says is true, yet he cannot prove it*; cf. 40, 9.

## VOCABULARY 2

auch, also, too (also is <i>therefore, thus</i> ).	mir, to me, me.
ein (mein, sein) Bild, a ( <i>my, his</i> ) picture.	mit, with.
bitte, * please.	nicht, not.
daß (conjunction), that.	sein, his.
die Eisenbahn, railroad.	seinem Räte, (to) his advice.
es, it.	sagen, † say, tell.
folgen, follow.	ich sah, I saw.
in der Friedrichstraße, on Frederick Street.	Sie, you.
Freund, friend.	spielen, † play.
im Garten, in the garden.	in der Stadt, in (at) the city.
gestern, yesterday.	in die Stadt, into the city.
in der Hand, in the ( <i>my, thy</i> ) hand.	unser, our.
das (ein) Haus, the (a) house.	Vater, father.
heute morgen, this morning.	was, what.
kaufen, † buy.	wo, where.
die Kinder, children.	wohnen, † live, dwell.
konnte, could.	wollte (1st and 3d person singular), would, wished to.
mein, my.	wollten (1st and 3d person plural), would, wished to.
ein Messer, a knife.	zeigen, show.

NOTE.—The personal pronoun Sie always follows the imperative third person plural (identical in form with the third person plural present) used in address: Geben Sie mir ein Glas Wasser, *give me a glass of water*.

## TRANSLATION 2.

A. 1. Wo wohnt unser Freund? 2. Er wohnt in der Stadt.  
3. Bitte, sagen Sie mir, wo Sie wohnen. 4. Was kaufte er gestern?  
5. Er kaufte ein Haus in der Friedrichstraße. 6. Was sagtest du?  
7. Ich sagte, unser Freund kaufte auch ein Haus. 8. Bitte, zeigen Sie mir das Haus, wo er wohnt. 9. Unser Vater war gestern in der Stadt. 10. Gestern kaufte ich ein Bild. 11. Wo spielten die Kinder? 12. Heute morgen spielten sie im Garten.

\* Instead of ich bitte (Sie), I beg you.

† Conjugated like loben.

13. Hast du mein Bild? 14. Gestern hatte ich es; heute morgen sah ich es nicht.

B. 15. Was hattest du in der Hand? 16. Ich hatte ein Messer in der Hand. 17. Bitte, folgen Sie mir. 18. Wo ist die Eisenbahn? 19. Zeigen Sie mir, wo die Eisenbahn ist. 20. Wir folgten seinem Räte. 21. Mein Vater wohnte in der Stadt; wo wohnten Sie? 22. Er spielte eben mit mir, er zeigte mir auch sein Bild. 23. Wollten die Kinder spielen? 24. Unser Freund wollte. 25. Bitte, sagten Sie, daß er konnte? 26. Ich sagte, daß er wollte. 27. Mein Freund folgte mir in die Stadt. 28. Gestern kaufte unser Vater ein Messer. 29. Heute morgen sah ich die Kinder im Garten. 30. Was sagte sein Vater?

C. 1. Please tell me where our friend lives. 2. What did the children say? 3. They said you were playing in the garden. 4. Where is my picture? 5. You have it in your hand. 6. I had it this morning. 7. Please follow me; I (will) show you<sup>1</sup> where the railroad is. 8. We were in the city, our father bought a house on Frederick Street.

<sup>1</sup>you, Ihnen.

### LESSON III

#### DECLENSION AND USE OF THE ARTICLE

**55.** The definite article is *der, die, das, the*; the indefinite *ein, eine, ein, a, an*.

**56.** 1. Articles, nouns, adjectives, pronouns and a few cardinal numbers are declined; that is, they have various forms in the different numbers, cases and genders.

2. There are **two Numbers**, singular and plural; and four cases, the nominative, genitive, dative and accusative.

3. The **nominative** fulfils the same function as the English nominative does, denoting the **subject** of a clause or a word in

apposition with the subject or a predicate noun qualifying it: die Tulpe ist hier, *the tulip is here*; die Tulpe, die schöne Blume, wächst in unserm Garten, *the tulip, the beautiful flower, grows in our garden*; die Tulpe ist eine Blume, *the tulip is a flower*.

4. The **genitive** corresponds in nearly every instance to the English possessive or the objective with the preposition *of*: des Vaters Haus, *the father's house* or das Haus des Vaters, *the house of the father*. It is also governed by prepositions: längs des Flusses, *along the river*.

5. The **dative** is generally the indirect object of a verb, corresponding to the English objective with *to* or *for*; it is also governed by prepositions: er hat mir sein Buch gegeben, *he has given me his book* or *he has given his book to me*; ich habe ihm eine Blume gekauft, *I have bought a flower for him*; mit mir, *with me*; zu ihm, *to him*.

6. The **accusative** generally fulfils the same function as that of the English objective; it is the **direct** object of the verb, just as the **dative** is the **indirect** object. The accusative is also often governed by prepositions: wir haben das Haus gekauft, *we have bought the house*; durch den Saal, *through the hall*.

## 57. 1. The Definite Article: its Declension and Use.

	Singular			Plural
	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER	M. F. N.
Nom.	der	die	das	die
Gen.	des	der	des	der
Dat.	dem	der	dem	den
Acc.	den	die	das	die

### Indefinite Article

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
Nom.	ein	eine	ein
Gen.	eines	einer	eines
Dat.	einem	einer	einem
Acc.	einen	eine	ein

a. Notice that **der** may be the nominative masculine or the genitive or dative feminine of the singular, or the genitive plural; **den** may be the accusative masculine singular, or the dative plural; **die**, the nominative or accusative feminine singular, or the nominative or accusative plural.

b. The stem of the definite article is **d** only ; of the indefinite, **ein**.

c. The endings of the indefinite article are the same as those of the definite, except in the nominative masculine and neuter and in the accusative neuter, in which cases **ein** has no endings.

2. The dative masculine and neuter singular **dem** and the accusative neuter **das** are often, but not necessarily, combined with certain prepositions: *an, at; auf, on; bei, near, by; durch, through; für, for; hinter, behind; in, in, into; über, over; um, around, about; unter, under; von, of, from; vor, before* and *zu, to*: e. g., *am* (= *an dem*), *ans* (= *an das*), *aufs, beim, durchs, fürs, hinterm, hinters, überm, übers, ums, unterm, vom, vors, zum*.

a. The dative of the feminine singular **der** contracts only with *zu*, forming *zur*.

3. The names of seasons, months, days of the week, mountains, and streets take the **definite article**: *im Frühling, in spring; im Mai, in May; am Donnerstag, on Thursday; das Haus ist in der Karlstraße, the house is in Charles Street; der Ätna, Mt. Aetna*.

4. The **definite article** is often used for the English possessive adjective when there can be no doubt as to the possessor: *er hat das Bein gebrochen, he has broken his leg; bitte, setzen Sie den Hut auf, please, put on your hat; sie hat das Leben verloren, she has lost her life*.

5. The **article** must be repeated before each of several nouns, when the latter are of different gender: *der Löffel, die Gabel und das Messer, the spoon, fork, and knife; er gab mir einen Apfel, eine Birne und ein Glas Wasser, he gave me an apple, a pear, and a glass of water*.

### EXERCISE 3

DECLENSION OF *dieser* AND *mein*. PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT OF *haben* AND *loben*. ORDER OF WORDS. TRANSLATION.

1. For the sake of convenience the declensions of *dieser*, *this*, and *mein*, *my*, are given now, although their proper place is among the pronouns (339 and 350).

	Singular			Plural
	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER	M. F. N.
Nom.	dieser	diese	dieses (dies)	diese
Gen.	dieses	dieser	dieses	dieser
Dat.	diesem	dieser	diesem	diesen
Acc.	diesen	diese	dieses (dies)	diese
Nom.	mein	meine	mein	meine
Gen.	meines	meiner	meines	meiner
Dat.	meinem	meiner	meinem	meinen
Acc.	meinen	meine	mein	meine

NOTE.—Dieser has the same endings as the definite article, except *e* instead of *te* in the nominative and accusative feminine singular, and in the nominative and accusative plural; *es* instead of *as* in the nominative and accusative neuter singular.

2. Words declined like *dieser* are: *jener*, *that*; *jeder*, *every*, *each*; *mancher*, *many a*, *many*; *solcher*, *such a*, *such*; *welcher*, *who*, *which*, *what*; also *einig* (chiefly in the plural), *some*.

3. Words declined like *mein* are: *dein*, *thy*; *sein*, *his*, *its*; *ihr*, *her*, *their*; *Ihr*, *your*; *unser*, *our*; *euer*, *your*; *fein*, *no*.

	Singular			Plural
	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER	M. F. N.
Nom.	euer	eure	euer	eure
Gen.	eures	eurer	eures	eurer
Dat.	eurem	eurer	eurem	euren
Acc.	euren	eure	euer	eure

a. Final *er* of *unser* and *euer* is not a declensional ending, but forms part of the word itself.

NOTE 1.—Before the *e* of the ending, *unser* and *euer* may drop the *e* of the stem, as seen in the paradigm above.

NOTE 2.—The *e* of the endings *es*, *em*, *en* is sometimes dropped instead of the *e* of the stem: *unser8*, *euerem*.

4. The perfect and pluperfect indicative are formed by the present and preterit of *haben*\* and the past participle of the principal verb; *ich habe gekauft*, *I have bought*; *wir hatten gesagt*, *we had said*.

---

\* For use of the auxiliary *sein*, cf. 144.

a. In verbs considered at present, the past participle is formed by prefixing *ge* and adding *t* to the root: *ge=lob-t* from *loben*, *praise*; *ge=hab-t* from *haben*, *have*.

Perfect		Pluperfect	
<i>I have had</i>		<i>I had had</i>	
ich habe	} <b>gehabt</b>	ich hatte	} <b>gehabt</b>
du hast		du hattest	
er hat		er hatte	
wir haben		wir hatten	
ihr habt		ihr hattet	
(Sie) sie haben		(Sie) sie hatten	
<i>I have praised</i>		<i>I had praised</i>	
ich habe	} <b>gelobt</b>	ich hatte	} <b>gelobt</b>
du hast		du hattest	
er hat		er hatte	
wir haben		wir hatten	
ihr habt		ihr hattet	
(Sie) sie haben		(Sie) sie hatten	

NOTE.—The student is apt to mistake the preterit (past) tense for the past participle, and sometimes vice versa, since many verbs in English are the same in both forms. In “*we bought*” a house, “*bought*” is different from the same form in “*we have bought*” a house; in the former clause it is preterit, “*wir kauften*”; in the latter it is past participle, “*wir haben . . . gekauft*.”

Notice especially “*had*”: *ich hatte, I had*; *ich hatte gehabt, I had had*.

5. In an independent or main clause, whether in the normal or inverted order, the **past participle** in a compound tense (perfect or pluperfect) is placed at the end: *I have bought this house, Ich habe dieses Haus gekauft*.

6. The infinitive with or without *zu*, being also a non-personal part of the verb, is likewise placed at the end in an independent clause: *Ich möchte mit Ihnen reden, I should like to talk to you*; *wir wünschten Sie zu sehen, we desired to see you*.

#### VOCABULARY 3 a

der Arm, *arm*

bauen, \* *build*.

der Baum, *tree*.

die Bäume, *trees*.

der Bruder, *brother*.

deutsch, *German*.

dich (acc.), *thee, you*.

faul, *lazy*.

\* Conjugate like *loben*.

der Fuß, *foot*.  
 gebrochen, *broken*.  
 der Herr, *gentleman*.  
 hören, \* *hear*.  
 der Juni, *June*.  
 kostet, *costs*.  
 kühl, *cool*.  
 der Lehrer, *teacher*.  
 lernen, \* *learn*.  
 lieben, \* *love*.  
 der Mai, *the month of May*.  
 der Mann, *man*.  
 müde, *tired*.

der Professor, *professor*.  
 der Schüler, *pupil*.  
 sehr (before an adj. or adv.), *very*;  
 (alone) *very much*.  
 viel, *much*. viele, *many*.  
 wie viel, *how much*.  
 wie viele, *how many*.  
 von (with dative) *of, from*.  
 wärmer, *warmer*.  
 wenig, *little*.  
 wünschen, *wish*.  
 Sie würden, *you would*.  
 zu, *to, too*.

## TRANSLATION 3a.

A. 1. Ich habe gehört, jener Mann hat den Arm gebrochen.  
 2. Von unserem Freund,<sup>1</sup> dem Professor, haben wir Deutsch gelernt.  
 3. Jener Herr hat am Fuß(e) des Altna eine Villa gebaut.  
 4. Der Mai war sehr kühl; im Juni war es viel wärmer.  
 5. In dem Garten<sup>1</sup> in dieser Stadt<sup>1</sup> hat viele Bäume.  
 6. Was wünschen Sie?  
 7. Wir wünschen Sie würden mit unserem Bruder Billard<sup>2</sup> spielen.<sup>1</sup>  
 8. Ich bin heute<sup>1</sup> morgen zu müde.  
 9. Du bist mein Freund; auch mein Bruder liebt dich sehr.  
 10. Wie viel kostet jenes (jedes, dieses) Bild, welches<sup>3</sup> Sie mir gestern<sup>1</sup> zeigten<sup>1</sup>?  
 11. Der Lehrer lobte uns; wir hatten sehr viel gelernt.  
 12. Gestern lernten jene Schüler sehr wenig; sie waren sehr faul.

<sup>1</sup> Vocabulary 2, page 22. <sup>2</sup> Billard, n., *billiards*. <sup>3</sup> Cf. Exercise 4, 1 and 2, p. 33.

B. 1. Have you heard what that gentleman said? 2. I have heard it. 3. Please show me that picture. 4. Tell me how much it costs. 5. Has your father built a house? 6. Those pupils were very lazy yesterday<sup>1</sup>; they had been playing billiards with our brother. 7. The teacher has praised us; he loves us very much. 8. We had learned our lesson (Aufgabe, f.).

<sup>1</sup> Begin the phrase with "yesterday."

\* Conjugate like loben.

## VOCABULARY 3b.

die Bleifeder, *lead-pencil.*

brauchen,\* *need, want; make use of.*

das Buch, *book.*

die Bücher, *books.*

falsch, *false; (as adv.), wrong(ly).*

der Feind, *foe, enemy.*

die Feinde, *foes, enemies.*

glauben, *believe.*

gut, *good; (as adv.), well.*

kann, *can.*

kennen, † *know.*

kommen, † *come.*

lehren,\* *teach.*

lesen, *read (48, 1).*

das Lied, *song.*

† meinen,\* *mean, think.*

ich möchte, *I might, should like to.*

morgen früh, *to-morrow morning.*

die Mutter, *mother.*

Nachbarn, *neighbors.*

die Nachricht, *news, report.*

nichts, *nothing.*

nun, *now.*

nur, *only.*

schreiben, *write (48, 1).*

die Schwester, *sister.*

die Sprache, *language.*

und, *and.*

uns, *us, to us.*

wieder, *again, in turn.*

## TRANSLATION 3b.

A. 1. Bitte,<sup>1</sup> zeigen<sup>1</sup> Sie mir sein Haus; ich glaube, Ihr Bruder<sup>2</sup> hat es gebaut. 2. Unsere Mutter lehrte uns Schreiben und Lesen. 3. Ich möchte Deutsch<sup>2</sup> lernen<sup>2</sup>; kennen Sie einen Lehrer<sup>1</sup>? 4. Morgen früh kommt mein Freund Karl; er kann die Sprache sehr<sup>2</sup> gut lehren. 5. Gestern<sup>1</sup> lernten wir ein Lied; meine Mutter hat es uns gelehrt. 6. Haben unsere Nachbarn gehört,<sup>2</sup> was<sup>1</sup> wir sagten? 7. Bitte, sagen<sup>1</sup> Sie mir, welche Bücher Sie brauchen. 8. Solche Freunde lieben<sup>2</sup> wir nicht; sie sind falsch. 9. Mein Freund, du hast nur sehr wenig gelernt und nun sagst du wieder „ich bin sehr müde“<sup>2</sup>; ich glaube, du bist sehr faul.<sup>2</sup> 10. Ich hatte nicht gehört, was unsere Feinde von uns sagten. 11. Hatten Sie die Nachricht gehört? 12. Welche meinen Sie? Ich habe nichts gehört. 13. Bitte,<sup>1</sup> zeigen<sup>1</sup> Sie unserem Vater jenes Buch und jene Bleifeder. 14. Diese Bücher hatte unser Freund gestern<sup>1</sup> in der Stadt<sup>1</sup> gekauft.<sup>1</sup> 15. Meine Schwester und sein Bruder waren Nachbarn. 16. Habt

\* Like loben. † Like loben in the present. ‡ Distinguish from the forms of mein, my.



ihr euer Lied gelernt? 17. Ich meinte Ihr Bruder möchte kommen. 18. Seine Mutter und sein Vater<sup>1</sup> wollten<sup>1</sup> uns jenes Bild<sup>1</sup> und jene Bleifeder zeigen.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Vocabulary 2, page 22. <sup>2</sup> Vocabulary 3 a, page 27.

*B.* 1. This man learns and that man teaches. 2. Every teacher knows that book. 3. My sister has taught German. 4. Please write us how many books you need? 5. How many books do you need? 6. Our neighbors had heard the news. 7. My mother would not believe what they said.

## LESSON IV

DECLENSION OF NOUNS. STRONG AND WEAK DECLENSIONS.  
CLASSIFICATION OF STRONG DECLENSION. — CLASS I.

**58. Declension of Nouns.** There are two methods of Declension, the **Strong** and the **Weak**.

### STRONG AND WEAK DECLENSION

**59.** When a masculine noun forms its genitive singular by adding *s* or *es* to the nominative, it belongs to the **strong** declension, **otherwise** to the **weak**.

**60.** **Feminines** are invariable in the **whole singular**; they can only be classified according to the manner in which they form the nominative plural. If a feminine noun has its plural in *n* or *en*, it belongs to the weak declension, otherwise to the strong.

*a.* The great majority of feminine nouns belongs to the weak declension (taking in the plural the ending *n* or *en*).

**61.** **All Neuters** take *s* or *es* in the genitive singular and therefore must belong to the strong declension.

**62.** In the **strong** declension the **accusative singular** is without exception like the **nominative singular**.

**63.** In the strong declension it is always permissible to have the **dative singular** like the **nominative singular**.

**64.** The **dative plural** in both declensions always ends in *n*, the latter being added to the **nominative plural**. If the **nominative plural** ends in *n*, no additional *n* is appended and all the cases of the plural are then alike.

**65.** The **nominative, genitive and accusative plural** of any noun have always the same form.

**66. SUMMARY:** To the strong declension belong all neuter nouns without exception, the masculines which form their **genitive singular** by adding *ŝ* or *eŝ* to the **nominative\*** and such feminines as conform in their formation of the plural to that of the masculines or neuters of this declension.

**67. Classification of Strong Declension.** Nouns of the strong declension are divided into **five classes** according to the manner in which they form the **nominative plural**.

*a.* The **first class** takes **no ending** to form the **nominative plural** and has **no** umlaut.

*b.* The **second class** takes **no ending** to form the **nominative plural** and always **has** umlaut (*ü, ö, ü*).

*c.* The **third class** takes the ending *e* in the **nominative plural** and has **no** umlaut.

*d.* The **fourth class** takes the ending *e* in the **nominative plural** and always **has** umlaut (*ü, ö, ü, äu*).

*e.* The **fifth class** takes the ending *er* and always has the umlaut when the vowel is capable of it (*a, o, u* or *au*).

#### CLASS I

**68.** The **first class** takes no ending to form the **nominative**

---

\* A few masculines having *ŝ* in the **genitive singular** take *n* in the **nominative plural**, cf. 127.

tive plural; the genitive singular is formed by adding *s* (not *es*) to the nominative singular. The dative singular is like the nominative singular. Consequently the **only case-endings** in this class are *s* for the genitive singular, and *n* for the dative plural, unless the nominative plural already ends in *n*; the first class has no umlaut.

**69.** The first class includes all the masculine\* and neuter nouns ending in *el*, *en* or *er*, except those given in **74**; all neuter diminutives formed by the suffixes *-chen*, *-lein* and *-jel*; neuters formed by the prefix *Ge* and ending in *e*; also infinitives used as nouns (these occur in the singular only; they have no plural), and one masculine ending in *e* (*Käse*, *cheese*).†

NOTE. A few names of nationality ending in *er*, like *der Vater*, *Bavarian*; *der Pommer*, *Pomeranian*, belong to the weak declension (106, 4). The *er* is not a suffix in these cases, as it is in *Italien-er*, *Englän-der*, etc.

**70.** No feminines belong to this class.

**71.** The first class inflects like the second, except that the latter takes the umlaut in the plural.

**72.** Examples:

**Balken**, *beam, plank*, m.    **Gebirge**, *mountain range*, n.

**Singular**

N.	der Balken	das Gebirge
G.	des Balkens	des Gebirges
D.	dem Balken	dem Gebirge
A.	den Balken	das Gebirge

**Plural**

N.	die Balken	die Gebirge
G.	der Balken	der Gebirge
D.	den Balken	den Gebirgen
A.	die Balken	die Gebirge

---

\* Cf. footnote on page 31.    † *Käse* is an exception to rule 106, 1.

## EXERCISE 4

TRANSPOSED ORDER. PRESENT INDICATIVE OF **werden**. FUTURE INDICATIVE OF **loben**. TRANSLATIONS.

1. A dependent or subordinate clause is generally introduced by a **conjunction** like *since, that, because, while, as*, or by a **relative pronoun**, like *who, whom, which, that*, or relative adverb, as *how, where*.

2. In such a clause the **verb** is placed at the **end**, and this order of words is called the **transposed order**.

3. In the transposed order, if the verb is in a compound tense, the non-personal part (infinitive or past participle) stands before the personal; that is, the auxiliary verb is at the very end of the clause; the past participle or infinitive comes last but one: *ich weiß nicht, was er davon denkt, I do not know what he thinks of it; wir wissen nicht, was er darüber gesagt hat, we do not know what he has said about it.*

NOTE. When the subordinate clause precedes the principal clause, the latter must be in the inverted order: *After I had seen the house, I bought it, nachdem ich das Haus gesehen hatte, kaufte ich es.*

a. The auxiliary of a compound tense in the **transposed order** is sometimes omitted: *ich weiß nicht, was er ihnen gesagt, I do not know what he has (had) told them.*

4. Present Indicative of **werden**, *become*:

ich werde	mir werden
du wirst	ihr werdet
er wird	(Sie) sie werden

5. The **future indicative** of any verb is formed by the present indicative of **werden** and the **infinitive** of the principal verb: *ich werde loben, I shall praise.*

a. When **werden** is itself the principal verb, it means *become, grow, get*; when auxiliary for the future, it corresponds to *shall, will, will*.

6. Future indicative of **loben**:

ich werde	} loben, <i>I shall</i> <i>praise, etc.</i>	mir werden	} loben
du wirst		ihr werdet	
er wird		(Sie) sie werden	

a. *Ich werde haben, etc., I shall have; ich werde sein, etc., I shall be; ich werde werden, etc., I shall become.*

7. In the normal and inverted order, the infinitive, when part of the future tense, comes at the end of the clause (Exercise 3, 6): *ich werde das Haus kaufen, I shall buy the house.*

8. In the transposed order, the infinitive is the word next to the last: *das Haus, welches wir kaufen werden, ist sehr schön, the house that we shall buy is very beautiful.*

## VOCABULARY 4 a

arbeiten, *work.*

der Bürger, *citizen.*

der Engel, *angel.*

das Fenster, *window.*

die Freiheit (weak decl.), *freedom.*

das Gebäude, *building.*

gehen auf (with acc.), *face.*

das Gemälde, *painting.*

Herr Graf (weak decl.), *Sir Count.*

hier, *here.*

der Himmel, *heaven.*

hoch, *high*; (of age) *old.*

der Kerker, *prison.*

der König (third class), *king.*

können, *can, to be able.*

der Krämer, *storekeeper.*

der Maler, *portrait-painter.*

der Müller, *mill.*

der Niederländer, *Netherlander.*

der Schneider, *tailor.*

stolz, *proud* (auf, of, with acc.).

der Tag (third class), *day.*

treiben, *(drive) do.*

unter, *under, among.*

das Verlangen nach..., *desire for...*

wer, *who* (interrogative pron.).

wie, *how*; *as*; *like.*

das Zimmer, *room.*

der Zimmermeister, *(master) carpenter.*

## TRANSLATION 4 a

A. 1. Die Gebirge hier sind sehr hoch und diese Bürger sind stolz auf ihre<sup>1</sup> Freiheit. 2. Die Maler werden viele Tage am Gemälde des Königs arbeiten. 3. Der König hat kein<sup>2</sup> Verlangen nach uns Niederländern; er liebt<sup>2</sup> uns nicht; wie können wir ihn wieder<sup>3</sup> lieben? 4. Der Zimmermeister sagte<sup>4</sup>: „Herr Graf, Ihr kommt<sup>3</sup> wie ein Engel des Himmels unter uns.“ 5. Graf Egmont sagte: „Was<sup>4</sup> treibt Ihr hier? Wer seid Ihr?“ — „Krämer.“ — „Und Ihr?“ — „Schneider.“ — „Und Ihr?“ — „Müller.“ 6. Die Fenster in diesen Zimmern gehen auf die Gebäude im Kerker.

<sup>1</sup> Exercise 3, 3, p. 26. <sup>2</sup> Vocabulary 3 a, p. 28. <sup>3</sup> Id., 3 b, p. 29. <sup>4</sup> Id., 2, p. 22.

## VOCABULARY 4 b

<b>aber</b> , <i>but</i> ; (when not at the beginning of a clause), <i>however</i> .	<b>kalt</b> , <i>cold</i> .
<b>angenehm</b> , <i>agreeable</i> .	<b>der Künstler</b> , <i>artist</i> .
<b>auf</b> , <i>on, upon</i> .	<b>rauh</b> , <i>rough</i> .
<b>balb</b> , <i>soon</i> .	<b>sehen</b> , <i>see</i> .
<b>bekommen</b> , <i>get, obtain</i> (distinguish from <i>become, werden</i> ).	<b>der Sommer</b> , <i>summer</i> .
<b>besuchen</b> , * <i>visit</i> .	<b>tun</b> , <i>do</i> .
<b>dort</b> , <i>there</i> .	<b>verweilen</b> , <i>stay</i> .
<b>essen</b> , <i>eat</i> .	<b>vielleicht</b> , <i>perhaps</i> .
<b>etwas</b> , <i>something</i> .	<b>während</b> (prep. with gen.), <i>during</i> .
<b>für</b> (prep. with acc.), <i>for</i> .	<b>wann</b> ? <i>when?</i>
<b>genug</b> , <i>enough</i> .	<b>das Wetter</b> , <i>weather</i> .
<b>der Handschuh</b> (third class), <i>glove</i> .	<b>der Winter</b> , <i>winter</i> .
<b>jetzt</b> , <i>now</i> .	<b>die Zeit</b> (weak decl.), <i>time</i> .
	<b>zwei Uhr</b> , <i>two o'clock</i> .

## TRANSLATION 4 b

A. 7. Es ist jetzt bald zwei Uhr; wann werden wir etwas zu essen bekommen? 8. Werden Sie etwas kaufen<sup>1</sup>? Vielleicht brauchen<sup>2</sup> Sie etwas Neues<sup>3</sup> für Ihr Haus. 9. Wir werden sehen, was<sup>1</sup> wir tun können<sup>4</sup>; ich glaube,<sup>2</sup> wir haben Zeit genug. 10. Vielleicht wird jenes Fräulein<sup>5</sup> die Handschuhe kaufen,<sup>1</sup> welche uns der Krämer<sup>4</sup> gestern<sup>1</sup> gezeigt<sup>1</sup> hatte.<sup>6</sup> 11. Morgen<sup>2</sup> früh werden meine Freunde und ich den Künstler besuchen, welcher während des Winters in der Stadt verweilt. 12. Auf den Gebirgen sind die Sommer sehr angenehm, aber im Winter ist das Wetter dort sehr kalt und rauh.

<sup>1</sup> Vocabulary 2, p. 22. <sup>2</sup> Id. 3 b, p. 29. <sup>3</sup> Cf. 48, 1 c. <sup>4</sup> Vocabulary 4 a, p. 34. <sup>5</sup> Cf. 52, 4. <sup>6</sup> Exercise 4, 3, p. 33.

B. 1. We are proud of our liberty. 2. How many windows in your room face that prison? 3. The count will buy the paintings of that artist. 4. We shall visit our friend, the

\* Like *loben*, except past participle, which is without the prefix *ge*.

portrait-painter, during the winter. 5. Have you something to eat? 6. The buildings in this city are very high. 7. Will your mother stay here <sup>1</sup> during the summer.? 8. Will you tell us to-morrow (morgen) what you can do in this affair (Sache, f.)? 9. I believe that <sup>2</sup> we shall have time enough. 10. Please show me the gloves which you bought yesterday. 11. It seems to me (scheint mir) that April and May (der April und Mai) will be very <sup>3</sup> cold on the mountain-range. 12. Do you know the storekeeper who has bought so many paintings?

<sup>1</sup> Order of words: *during the summer here.* <sup>2</sup> that, daß. <sup>3</sup> Order of words: *on the mountain-range very cold.*

## LESSON V

### STRONG DECLENSION — CLASS II

**73.** The **second class** includes **only** the following masculine and neuter nouns (**only one neuter**) ending in *el*, *en* or *er*, also two feminines: *die Mutter, mother*, and *die Tochter, daughter*, of course only in the plural (67).

**74.** The nouns comprising the second class are:

der Acker, <i>acre, field.</i>	der Mangel, <i>want.</i>
der Apfel, <i>apple.</i>	der Mantel, <i>cloak.</i>
der Boden, <i>bottom, floor.</i>	die Mutter, <i>mother.</i>
der Bogen, <i>bow, sheet (of paper).</i>	der Nabel, <i>navel.</i>
der Bruder, <i>brother.</i>	der Nagel, <i>nail.</i>
der Faden, <i>thread.</i>	der Ofen, <i>stove (oven).</i>
der Garten, <i>garden.</i>	der Sattel, <i>saddle.</i>
der Graben, <i>ditch.</i>	der Schaden, <i>damage.</i>
der Hafen, <i>harbor.</i>	der Schnabel, <i>beak.</i>
der Hammel, <i>ram, wether.</i>	der Schwager, <i>brother-in-law.</i>
der Hammer, <i>hammer.</i>	die Tochter, <i>daughter.</i>
der Handel, <i>affair, quarrel.</i>	der Vater, <i>father.</i>
das Kloster, <i>cloister, convent.</i>	der Vogel, <i>bird (fowl).</i>
der Laden, <i>shutter, shop.</i>	

a. *Bogen*, especially in the meaning of *bow*, also *Faden* and *Hammer* may omit the umlaut in the plural and then belong to the first class.

b. The compound *Fensterladen*, *shutters*, is generally without umlaut, while *Kaufladen*, *store*, has usually *Kaufläden*.

### 75. Examples :

**Hammer**, *hammer*, m.; **Kloster**, *cloister*, n.; **Tochter**, *daughter*, f.

Singular			
N.	der Hammer	das Kloster	die Tochter
G.	des Hammers	des Klosters	der Tochter
D.	dem Hammer	dem Kloster	der Tochter
A.	den Hammer	das Kloster	die Tochter
Plural			
N.	die Hämmer	die Klöster	die Töchter
G.	der Hämmer	der Klöster	der Töchter
D.	den Hämmeren	den Klöstern	den Töchtern
A.	die Hämmer	die Klöster	die Töchter

**76.** All masculine and neuter nouns ending in *el*, *er* or *en*, not comprised within the second class (74), must belong to the first class.

**77.** The second class is inflected like the first class, except that the latter takes no umlaut in the plural.

### EXERCISE 5

PERSONAL PRONOUNS. **Sie** and **Du**. PRESENT PASSIVE OF **loben**. TRANSLATIONS.

#### I. The Personal Pronouns are :

FIRST PERSON			
Singular		Plural	
N.	ich	I	wir we
G.	meiner (mein)	of me	unser of us
D.	mir	to me	uns to us
A.	miß	me	uns us
SECOND PERSON			
N.	du	thou	ihr ye
G.	deiner (dein)	of thee	euer (eurer) of you
D.	dir	to thee	euch to you
A.	diß	thee	euch you



## THIRD PERSON

Singular						
MASCULINE			FEMININE	NEUTER		
N.	er	he	sie	she	es	it
G.	seiner	of him	ihrer	of her	seiner	of it
	(sein)				(sein)(es)	
D.	ihm	to him	ihr	to her	ihm	to it
A.	ihn	him	sie	her	es	it
			Plural			
			M. F. N.			
N.			sie	they		
G.			ihrer	of them		
D.			ihnen	to them		
A.			sie	them		

2. The pronoun of the **third person plural** is generally used in addressing one person or more than one; it is then, for distinction, written with a capital letter: *Sie, Ihrer, Ihnen, Sie.*

a. In **familiar** conversation *du* is used; its plural is *ihr*.

3. The pronouns of the third person agree with the noun to which they refer in **gender** and **number**. When speaking of a *table* (*der Tisch*), we use *er* and *ihn*; of a *flower* (*die Blume*), *sie*; of a *knife* (*das Messer*), *es*; *der Löffel ist alt, aber er ist noch gut*; *the spoon is old, but it is still good*; *wo ist die Gabel? sie liegt auf dem Tisch, where is the fork? it lies on the table*; *haben Sie das Blatt Papier gefunden? ich sah es gestern auf Ihrem Pulte, have you found the sheet of paper? I saw it on your desk yesterday.*

4. The present tense of the **Passive Voice** is formed by the present of *werden* (Exercise 4, 4, page 33), and the **past participle** of the principal verb (Exercise 3, 4 a, page 27).

Present Passive of *loben*

ich werde	} gelobt, <i>I am</i> <i>praised, etc.</i>	mir werden	} gelobt
du wirst		ihr werdet	
er wird		sie werden	

a. Remember that in the **normal** and **inverted** order the **past participle** is at the **end** of the clause; in **transposed** order, it is the **last word but one**: *ich werde von dem Lehrer gelobt, I am praised by the teacher*; *der Mann sagt, daß das Haus von seinem Bruder gebaut wird, the man says that the house is (being) built by his brother.*

## VOCABULARY 5 a

NOTE. Nouns found in the list of 74 are not given in this vocabulary.

**auf'machen**, *open.*

**blieb**, 1st and 3d per. sing. } pret-

**blieben**, 1st and 3d per. plur. } erit

of **bleiben**, *remain.*

**der Blumengarten**, *flower-garden.*

**dunkel**, *dark.*

**einige**, cf. Exercise 3, 2, p. 26.

**das Federmesser**, *penknife.*

**gesehen** (past participle of *sehen*), *see.*

**zu Hause**, } *at home.*

**im Hause**, }

**hinter** (prep. here with dative), *behind.*

**liegen**, \* *lie, be situated.*

**der Obstgarten**, *orchard.*

**regnen**, † *rain.*

**reichen**, *reach, extend, pass.*

**reif**, *ripe.*

**schicken**, *send.*

**der Schloßgraben**, (*castle-ditch*) *moat.*

**stark**, *strong; hard* (of rain).

**teuer**, *dear.*

**der Tisch** (3d class), *table.*

**von** (with verbs in the passive), *by.*

**vorgestern**, *day before yesterday.*

**wenn**, *if.*

## TRANSLATION 5 a.

A. 1. Vorgestern hatte es stark geregnet; wir blieben zu Hause und spielten<sup>1</sup> in unserm Zimmer<sup>2</sup>. 2. Die Äpfel im Obstgarten sind jetzt<sup>3</sup> reif; ich werde meinen Schwägern einige schicken. 3. Ich möchte<sup>4</sup> jene Hämmer kaufen<sup>1</sup>; diese sind zu<sup>5</sup> teuer. 4. Wollten<sup>1</sup> Sie mir, bitte<sup>1</sup>, Ihr Federmesser zeigen<sup>1</sup>? 5. Die Fenster<sup>2</sup> dieser Klöster gehen<sup>2</sup> auf die Schloßgräben, welche hinter dem Blumengarten liegen. 6. Diese Mütter sind sehr stolz<sup>2</sup> auf ihre Töchter. 7. Unsere Brüder werden von ihren Lehrern<sup>5</sup> sehr<sup>5</sup> geliebt. 8. Wollten<sup>1</sup> Sie nicht<sup>1</sup> die Fensterladen aufmachen, wenn ich bitten<sup>6</sup> darf? es ist hier<sup>2</sup> so dunkel. 9. Auf den Äckern haben wir viele Vögel gesehen. 10. Bitte, reichen Sie mir die Nägel, welche auf dem Tische liegen.

<sup>1</sup> Vocabulary 2, p. 22.

<sup>2</sup> Id., 4 a, p. 34.

<sup>3</sup> Id., 4 b, p. 35.

<sup>4</sup> Id., 3 b, p. 29.

<sup>5</sup> Id., 3 a, p. 28. <sup>6</sup> bitten darf = *may ask.*

\* Conjugated like *loben* in the present.

† Conjugated like *loben*, except with the connecting vowel *e*, which is inserted between the stem (*regn*) and the ending *t* or *te*.

## VOCABULARY 5 b \*

der Besuch (3d class), <i>visit.</i>	<i>it has pleased me (I have liked it)</i>
da (conjunction with transposed order), <i>as, since.</i>	lang (adj.), <i>long.</i>
drei, <i>three.</i>	man, <i>one, they, people (French on).</i>
erhalten (infinitive), <i>receive.</i>	mehr, <i>more (after negatives, any more).</i>
gefallen (past part.), <i>pleased (infinitive gefallen); es hat mir —,</i>	beim† Rhein, <i>near the (river) Rhine.</i>
	wenn, <i>if.</i>

## TRANSLATION 5 b

A. 1. In der Stadt<sup>1</sup> werden jetzt<sup>2</sup> viele<sup>3</sup> Äpfel gekauft.<sup>1</sup>  
 2. Man hat uns gesagt<sup>1</sup>, daß<sup>1</sup> beim Rhein ein Kloster gebaut<sup>3</sup> wird.  
 3. Die Schnäbel jener Vögel waren sehr lang und stark.<sup>4</sup>  
 4. Wie<sup>3</sup> viele Kaufläden haben Sie heute<sup>1</sup> morgen besucht?<sup>2</sup>  
 5. Wir waren nur<sup>5</sup> in drei Kaufläden, da wir nur wenig<sup>3</sup> Zeit<sup>2</sup> hatten.  
 6. Die Mäntel dieser Fräulein<sup>6</sup> sind zu lang.  
 7. Bitte<sup>1</sup>, sagen<sup>1</sup> Sie den Töchtern der Frau<sup>7</sup> Müller, daß sie morgen<sup>5</sup> früh einen Besuch von<sup>3</sup> uns erhalten werden.  
 8. Unfre<sup>8</sup> Schwäger wohnen<sup>1</sup> nicht mehr in der Stadt<sup>1</sup>; es hat ihnen dort nicht gefallen.

<sup>1</sup> Vocabulary 2, p. 22. <sup>2</sup> Id., 4 b, p. 35. <sup>3</sup> Id., 3 a, p. 27. <sup>4</sup> Id., 5 a, p. 34.  
<sup>5</sup> Id., 3 b, p. 29. <sup>6</sup> Cf. 52, 4. <sup>7</sup> die Frau = Mrs. <sup>8</sup> Cf. Exercise 3, 3, Note 1, p. 26.

B. 1. We shall remain at<sup>1</sup> home this morning; it is raining so hard.  
 2. My brothers-in-law, who have many orchards at the foot (am Fuße) of the mountain-range, have sent (to) me apples and pears (Birnen).  
 3. Have you seen my daughters?  
 4. Please show me the penknives which you [have] bought.  
 5. Where<sup>2</sup> are those hammers and nails that the carpenters were looking for<sup>3</sup> day before yesterday?  
 6. Have you visited the convents which lie behind (hinter, with dative) the mountain-ranges?  
 7. The pupils are praised by (von, with dative) their teacher and

\* Cf. Note to Vocabulary 5 a, page 39. † Cf. 57, 2.

he is loved by them. 8. Please pass me the thread that lies on the table. 9. Many birds have built their nests (*Nester*) on the trees in our gardens. 10. We shall receive a visit from (*von*, with dative) our brothers.

<sup>1</sup> Order of words: *this morning* (*heute morgen*) *at home*. <sup>2</sup> *Where, two.*  
<sup>3</sup> to look for = *suchen*.

## LESSON VI

### STRONG DECLENSION — CLASS III

**NOTE.** The student is by no means expected to commit to memory all the words given in the following lists of nouns in this and the subsequent lessons on the Strong Declension. The lists are to be used mainly for the sake of reference. The common words, however, such as are found in the exercises for translation, ought to be looked up in the lists, since, as a rule, they are not given again in the vocabularies attached to those exercises.

**78.** The **third class** forms the nominative plural by adding *e* to the nominative singular and takes **no** umlaut.

**79.** The **genitive singular** of the masculine and neuter nouns may end in *ſ* or *eſ*; the dative singular may or may not take the ending *e*.

*a.* The genitive singular takes *eſ* when the nominative ends in a sibilant: *ſ*, *ſ*, *ſch*, *z* or in *d*, *t*, *ſt*. When the genitive singular takes *eſ*, the dative singular generally ends in *e*; but, as stated above (63), it is always allowable to omit the ending *e* in the dative singular.

**80.** The **third class** includes:

*a.* Many monosyllabic masculines (81, 82, 83)

**NOTE.** The term "monosyllabic" includes here all compound nouns, the last member of which would belong to the third class if it were not compounded. The same holds true of compounds in the other classes. Cf. also 82, note 2.

*b.* Masculines ending in -at, -ig, -ich, -icht, -is, -ing, -ling and -nd: der Monat, *month*; der König, *king*; der Fittich, *wing*; der Habicht, *hawk*; der Iltis, *polecat*; der Hering, *herring*; der Lehrling, *apprentice*; der Feind, *foe*.

*c.* The feminines\* formed by the suffixes -niß and -fal: die Wildniß, *wilderness*; die Drangsal, *vexation*.

*d.* The neuters formed by the suffixes -niß and -fal: das Bekenntniß, *confession*; das Schicksal, *fate*.

NOTE. Nouns ending in -is, -niß, change the *s* to *ff* before taking the declensional endings *es*, *e*, *en*: die Bekenntnisse, etc.

*e.* Many monosyllabic neuter nouns (84).

*f.* Neuters with the prefix *Ge* and **not** ending in *e*, *el*, *er* or *en*: das Gesetz, *law, statute, rule*, etc., except six nouns belonging to the fifth class (96, 1).

NOTE 1. Neuters with the prefix *Ge* and ending in *e* belong to the first class (69): Gebirge; Gemälde, *painting, picture*.

NOTE 2. Neuters ending in *el*, *en* or *er* must belong to the first class, according to the general rule (69), whether prefixed by *Ge* or not: das Gewässer, *waters*; das Gemäuer, *walls*; das Gemengsel, *medley*.

**81.** The monosyllabic masculines of 80, *a*, may be divided into **two groups**:

1. Those **capable of umlaut**, but **not** taking it, that is, monosyllabic masculines with the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, or the diphthong *au*. Cf. list of them in 82.

2. Those **not** capable of umlaut, that is, monosyllabic masculines with any other vowel or diphthong.

*a.* There is no need of giving a list of **these** monosyllabic masculines, as their vowels (*e*, *i*), or diphthongs (*ei*, *eu*, etc.), clearly show that they can **not** take the umlaut.

3. To the **third class** belong then **all** monosyllabic masculines **not** capable of umlaut, **except**:

---

\* Cf. 60.

a. The following nouns of the fifth class (95, 1):

der Bösewicht, *villain*; der Geist, *spirit, ghost*; der Leib, *body*.

b. The following nouns of the weak declension (106, 2):

der Bär, <i>bear</i>	der Hirt, <i>shepherd</i>
der Christ, <i>Christian</i>	der Mensch, <i>man, human being</i>
der Fink(e), <i>finch</i>	der Nerv, <i>nerve</i>
der Fürst, <i>prince</i>	der Prinz, <i>prince</i>
der Geck, <i>fool, fop</i>	der Schenk(e), <i>cupbearer</i>
der Held, <i>hero</i>	der Schöps, <i>wether</i>
der Herr, <i>gentleman</i>	der Steinmetz, <i>stonecutter</i>

82. The monosyllabic masculines capable of umlaut but not taking it are:

der Aal, <i>eel</i>	der Hund, <i>dog</i>
der Aar, <i>eagle</i>	der Knall, <i>clap, crack</i>
der Amboß, <sup>1</sup> <i>anvil</i>	der Kran, <i>crane, windlass</i>
der Arm, <i>arm</i>	der Lachs, <i>salmon</i>
der Bau, <sup>2</sup> <i>building</i>	der Lack, <i>varnish</i>
der Besuch, <i>visit</i>	der Laut, <i>sound</i>
der Born, <i>well</i>	der Luchs, <i>lynx</i>
der Dachs, <i>badger</i>	der Lump, <i>scamp</i>
der Docht, <i>wick</i>	der Molch, <i>salamander</i>
der Dolch, <i>dagger</i>	der Mond, <i>moon</i>
der Dom, <i>cathedral</i>	der Mord, <sup>6</sup> <i>murder</i>
der Dorn, <sup>3</sup> <i>thorn</i>	der Ort, <i>place</i>
der Druck, <i>print</i>	der Park, <i>park</i>
der Erlaß, <i>edict</i>	der Pfad, <i>path</i>
der Forst, <i>forest</i>	der Pfau, <i>peacock</i>
der Grad, <i>degree</i>	der Pol, <i>pole</i>
der Gemahl, <i>consort</i>	der Puls, <i>pulse</i>
der Gau, <i>district</i>	der Punkt, <i>point</i>
der Gaum, <sup>4</sup> <i>palate</i>	der Punsch, <i>punch</i>
der Gurt, <sup>5</sup> <i>girth</i>	der Rost, <i>gridiron</i>
der Hall, <i>sound</i>	der Schall, <i>sound</i>
der Halm, <i>stalk (haulm)</i>	der Schluck, <i>swallow (of a beverage)</i>
der Hauch, <i>breath</i>	der Schmuck, <i>ornament</i>
der Herzog, <i>duke</i>	der Schuft, <i>wretch</i>
der Huf, <i>hoof</i>	

der Schuh, <i>shoe</i>	der Thron, <i>throne</i>
der Spalt, <i>cleft</i>	der Tod, <sup>7</sup> <i>death</i>
der Star, <i>starling</i>	der Trupp, <i>troop</i>
der Stoff, <i>stuff, substance</i>	der Tusch, <i>flourish</i> (of trumpets)
der Strolch, <i>tramp, vagabond</i>	der Tusch, <sup>8</sup> <i>Indian ink</i>
der Sund, <i>sound, strait</i>	der Versuch, <i>attempt</i>
der Tag, <i>day</i>	der Zoll, <sup>9</sup> <i>inch</i>
der Takt, <i>time, measure</i>	

<sup>1</sup> Before an additional syllable, *ß* is changed to *ff*: Ambosses, Ambosse, Ambossen.

<sup>2</sup> The regular plural *die Baue* is rare; the irregular form *die Bauten* is generally used.

<sup>3</sup> Besides the plural *Dorne*, we find *Dornen* and *Dörner*.

<sup>4</sup> *Der Gaumen*, first class, is more common.

<sup>5</sup> We also have the singular *die Gurte*, plural *die Gurten* (weak declension).

<sup>6</sup> The plural *Morde* is rare; generally *die Mordtaten* (*deeds of murder*).

<sup>7</sup> The plural is almost always *Todesfälle* (*cases of death*).

<sup>8</sup> Also the singular *die Tusch*, plural *Tuschen* (weak declension).

<sup>9</sup> *Der Zoll*, *toll, custom, duty*, forms the plural *Zölle* and belongs to the fourth class.

NOTE 1. Nouns preceded by the prefixes *be*, *er*, *ver*, etc., are included among the monosyllabics: *Befuch*, *Versuch*, above.

NOTE 2. In real compound nouns, the final member determines the declension (as well as the gender) of the compound; *der Hauptpunkt*, *chief point*, plural *die Hauptpunkte*, compound of *das Haupt* and *der Punkt*; *die Häupter*, *die Punkte*).

a. There are a few exceptions: *der Wicht*, *wight, wretch*, *die Wichte*; but *der Bösewicht*, *villain, miscreant*, *die Bösewichter*, yet the plural *Bösewichte* is sometimes found in good language.

83. Of the monosyllabic masculines not capable of umlaut, a few examples may be given (cf. 81, 2 a):

der Berg, <i>mountain</i>	der Specht, <i>woodpecker</i>
der Fisch, <i>fish</i>	der Stern, <i>star</i>
der Hecht, <i>pike</i>	der Teich, <i>pond</i>
der Pfeil, <i>arrow</i>	der Wein, <i>wine</i>

84. The monosyllabic **neuters** (80, *e*) are :

das Band, <i>tie, bond</i>	das Paar, <i>pair</i>
das Beet, <i>flower-bed</i>	das Pferd, <i>horse</i>
das Beil, <i>hatchet</i>	das Pfund, <i>pound</i>
das Bein, <i>leg</i>	das Pult, <i>desk</i>
das Bier, <i>beer</i>	das Recht, <i>right</i>
das Boot, <i>boat</i>	das Rack, <i>rack; horizontal bar</i> (gymnasium)
das Brot, <i>bread</i>	das Reh, <i>roe, deer</i>
das Deck, <i>deck (on ship)</i>	das Reich, <i>realm, kingdom</i>
das Ding, <i>thing</i>	das Riff, <i>reef, ledge</i>
das Erz, <i>brass, ore</i>	das Rohr, <i>reed</i>
das Fell, <i>skin</i>	das Roß, <i>steed</i>
das Fest, <i>festival</i>	das Salz, <i>salt</i>
das Gas, <i>gas</i>	das Schaf, <i>sheep</i>
das Gift, <i>poison</i>	das Schiff, <i>ship</i>
das Haar, <i>hair</i>	das Schrot, <i>small shot</i>
das Heer, <i>army; host</i>	das Schwein, <i>hog</i>
das Heft, <i>exercise-book; handle</i>	das Seil, <i>rope, cord</i>
das Jahr, <i>year</i>	das Sieb, <i>sieve</i>
das Joch, <i>yoke</i>	das Spiel, <i>play</i>
das Knie, <i>knee</i>	das Stück, <i>piece</i>
das Kreuz, <i>cross</i>	das Tau, <i>rope, cable</i>
das Los, <i>lot</i>	das Tier, <i>animal</i>
das Mahl, <i>meal, banquet</i>	das Tor, <i>gate</i>
das Maß, <i>measure, rate</i>	das Vließ, <i>fleece</i>
das Meer, <i>sea</i>	das Werk, <i>work</i>
das Moor, <i>moor, swamp</i>	das Zelt, <i>tent</i>
das Moos, <i>moss</i>	das Zeug, <i>stuff, material</i>
das Netz, <i>net</i>	das Ziel, <i>aim</i>
das Ohr, <i>eyelet</i>	
das Öl, <i>oil</i>	

## 85. Examples :

Hund, *dog, m.*    König, *king, m.*    Betrübnis, *grief, f.*

Singular		
N.	der Hund	der König    die Betrübnis
G.	des Hundes	des Königs    der Betrübnis
D.	dem Hunde	dem König    der Betrübnis
A.	den Hund	den König    die Betrübnis



## Plural

N. die Hunde	die Könige	die Betrübnisse
G. der Hunde	der Könige	der Betrübnisse
D. den Hunden	den Königen	den Betrübnissen
A. die Hunde	die Könige	die Betrübnisse

## EXERCISE 6

PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE OF *sein* AND *werden*. —  
PREPOSITIONS WITH DATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE. — TRANSLATIONS.

1. The past participle of *sein*, *be*, is *gewesen*, *been*. However, the perfect tense, *I have been*, is not *ich habe gewesen*, but *ich bin gewesen*.

## Perfect

ich bin	} gewesen, <i>I have</i> <i>been</i> , etc.	
du bist		
er ist		
wir sind		
ihr seid		
(Sie) sie sind		

## Pluperfect

ich war	} gewesen, <i>I had</i> <i>been</i> , etc.	
du warst		
er war		
wir waren		
ihr wart		
(Sie) sie waren		

2. *Werden*, *become*, takes also the auxiliary *sein*.

## Perfect

ich bin	} geworden, <i>I have</i> <i>become</i> , etc.	
du bist		
er ist		
wir sind		
ihr seid		
(Sie) sie sind		

## Pluperfect

ich war	} geworden, <i>I</i> <i>had become</i> , etc.	
du warst		
er war		
wir waren		
ihr wart		
(Sie) sie waren		

3. The perfect is often used where in English the past tense is required: *Wir sind gestern in der Schule gewesen*, *we were at school yesterday*.

4. The most common prepositions governing the dative are: *mit*, *with*; *nach*, *after*, *according to*; *von*, *from*, *of*, *by*; *seit*, *since*; *aus*, *from*, *out of*.

5. The accusative is governed by: *durch*, *through*; *für*, *for*; *gegen* (gen), *towards*, *against*; *ohne*, *without*; *um*, *around*, *about*.

## VOCABULARY 6 a

der Berg, *mountain*.der Brief, *letter*.danken (with dative), *thank*.denken (an), *think* (of); (auf, about).gefährlich, *dangerous*.das Geschenk, *present*.geschrieben, *written*, past participle  
of schreiben, write (preterit, schrieb).jagen, *chase, hunt*.der Jäger, *hunter*.kam }  
kamen } *came*.morgen (adv.), *to-morrow*.nein, *no*.noch nicht, (*yet not*), *not yet*.ein paar, *a few*.scheinen, *seem*.schon, *already*; (distinguish from  
schön, *beautiful*).der Streit, *strife, combat, quarrel*.stürzen, *rush*.vor (prep. with dative, when refer-  
ring to time), *before, ago*.Waffen, *arms, weapons*.

## TRANSLATION 6 a

A. 1. Wir haben die Pfade durch diesen Park sehr<sup>1</sup> gefallen,<sup>2</sup> aber an einigen<sup>3</sup> Punkten sind sie gefährlich. 2. In jenen Forsten, welche Sie von hier sehen<sup>4</sup> können,<sup>5</sup> haben die Jäger gestern<sup>6</sup> mit ihren Hunden gejagt. 3. Aus den Bergen kamen die Feinde<sup>7</sup>; durch die Tore der Stadt stürzten die Bürger<sup>8</sup> in Waffen; bald<sup>4</sup> kam es zum (to a) Streit. 4. Haben Sie Ihrem Herrn<sup>8</sup> Vater geschrieben? Es scheint mir, Sie wollten<sup>6</sup> ihm vor ein paar Tagen schreiben. 5. Nein, noch nicht, aber gestern habe ich einen Brief an<sup>9</sup> meine Mutter geschrieben; ich danke ihr für die Geschenke, welche sie mir geschickt<sup>10</sup> hatte und morgen, denke ich, werde ich auch<sup>6</sup> an<sup>9</sup> meinen Vater schreiben.

<sup>1</sup> Vocabulary 3 a, p. 28. <sup>2</sup> Id. 5 b, p. 40. <sup>3</sup> Cf. Exercise 3, 2, p. 26.  
<sup>4</sup> Vocabulary 4 b, p. 35. <sup>5</sup> Id. 4 a, p. 34. <sup>6</sup> Id. 2, p. 22. <sup>7</sup> Id. 3 b, p. 29.  
<sup>8</sup> Herr used for politeness. <sup>9</sup> an = to. <sup>10</sup> Vocabulary 5 a, p. 39.

B. 1. I wrote three letters two days ago; my brothers-in-law<sup>1</sup> have not<sup>2</sup> written to me since last month (dem letzten Monat). 2. Where have your friends (Freunde) been? 3. I think they have been in the city. 4. Some points on those mountains are very dangerous; you can see them from here. 5. We sent some presents to<sup>3</sup> our friends, who thanked

us for them (dafür) in the letters which they wrote to us a few days ago. 6. I think I shall write a few<sup>4</sup> letters to my brothers to-morrow.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Schwager in 74. <sup>2</sup> Not before written. <sup>3</sup> to, an (with accusative).

<sup>4</sup> Order of words: to-morrow to my brothers a few letters.

### VOCABULARY 6 b

der Abend, evening, eve.

als (conj.), when.

ausschlag, broke out.

da (adv.), there, then.

erreichen, \* reach.

finden, find, like.

ganz (adj.), whole, entire; (adv.), wholly, entirely; den ganzen, (acc. sing. mas.).

gefallen (inf.), please.

groß, great, large, tall; (der große, the great).

krank, sick, ill.

länger, longer.

nirgends, nowhere.

die Revolution, revolution.

steilen (adj. from steil), steep.

suchen, seek; try; look for.

überall, everywhere.

vergebens, in vain.

das Ziel, aim.

zittern, † tremble.

### TRANSLATION 6 b

A. 1. Mein Freund Friedrich ist ein paar<sup>1</sup> Tage auf den steilen Gebirgen gewesen; da hat er den Arm gebrochen<sup>2</sup> und ist jetzt<sup>3</sup> sehr krank. 2. Wo<sup>4</sup> sind Sie heute<sup>4</sup> morgen gewesen? ich habe Sie überall gesucht, aber es war vergebens, ich konnte<sup>4</sup> Sie nirgends finden. 3. Diese Schuhe gefallen<sup>5</sup> mir nicht; sie sind zu groß. 4. Die Throne der Könige zitterten, als die Revolution ausbrach. 5. Viele Jahre haben wir an diesem Bau gearbeitet,<sup>6</sup> aber unsere Ziele haben wir nicht ganz erreicht. 6. Die Tage sind jetzt länger geworden. 7. Der Streit<sup>7</sup> war sehr gefährlich<sup>7</sup> geworden. 8. Wie lang die Abende jetzt werden! 9. Wie finden Sie diese Schuhe? Gefallen sie Ihnen?

<sup>1</sup> Vocabulary 6 a, p. 47. <sup>2</sup> Id. 3 a, p. 28. <sup>3</sup> Id. 4 b, p. 35. <sup>4</sup> Id. 2, p. 22.

<sup>5</sup> Id. 5 b, p. 40. <sup>6</sup> Id. 4 a, p. 34; inserts e between stem and ending te or t.

<sup>7</sup> Id. 6 a, p. 47.

\* Like loben, except past participle without prefix ge (Exercise 7, 2, p. 52).

† Like loben in the preterit (the stem is zitter).

*B.* 1. The evenings are getting longer<sup>1</sup> now and the days are very cold. 2. Please show me those shoes; I do not like them. 3. Why (warum)? I think they are too large for me. 4. How many years have you been in Germany? 5. I have been there three years and two months.<sup>2</sup> 6. How did you like<sup>3</sup> it? 7. Why did so many citizens in arms rush through the gates of the city? 8. They were everywhere looking for the enemies, but they could (konnten) not<sup>4</sup> find them. 9. Has your father been ill? I have not<sup>5</sup> seen him since yesterday. 10. Had I not<sup>5</sup> told you that he had been in the city? 11. He had been working (arbeiten) there many months.

<sup>1</sup> Order of words: *now longer*. <sup>2</sup> Cf. 80, *b*. <sup>3</sup> Translate: *How has it pleased* (gefallen) *to you*? <sup>4</sup> Not before infinitive. <sup>5</sup> Not before past participle.

## LESSON VII

### STRONG DECLENSION — CLASS IV

NOTE. — The Note to Lesson VI, page 41, applies also to this Lesson.

**86.** The fourth class forms the nominative plural like the third class, i. e. by adding *e* to the nominative singular; however, all nouns of the fourth class **take the umlaut**.

NOTE. — As to the genitive and the dative singular of masculine and neuter nouns, the rules of **79** apply also to the fourth class.

**87.** The fourth class includes :

*a.* The majority of masculine nouns, chiefly monosyllabics (**88**).

*b.* A number of feminine nouns, mostly monosyllabics (**90**).

c. Two neuter nouns: das Floß, *raft*; das Chor, *choir of a church*; Flöße, Chöre.

NOTE. — Flöße and Flößer occur sometimes.

88. To the fourth class belong then all monosyllabic masculines with the vowels a, o, u, or the diphthong au, *except*

a. Those given in 82.

b. The following nouns of the fifth class, 95, 1:

der Dorn, <i>thorn</i>	der Strauch, <i>shrub</i>
der Gott, <i>god</i>	der Strauß, <i>bouquet</i>
der Mann, <i>man</i>	der Vormund, <i>guardian</i>
der Ort, <i>place</i>	der Wald, <i>forest</i>
der Rand, <i>rim, edge</i>	der Wurm, <i>worm, serpent</i>

c. The following nouns of the weak declension, 106, 2:

der Ahn, <i>forefather</i>	der Och (Ochse) <i>ox</i>
der Burſch(e), <i>fellow, student</i>	der Pfau, <i>peacock</i>
der Graf, <i>count</i>	der Spatz, <i>sparrow</i>
der Hageſtolz, <i>bachelor</i>	der Strauß, <i>ostrich</i>
der Lump, <i>vagabond</i>	der Tor, <i>fool</i>
der Mohr, <i>Moor</i>	der Vorfahr, <i>ancestor</i>
der Narr, <i>fool</i>	

89. There is no need of giving a list of the monosyllabic masculines capable of umlaut and belonging to the fourth class. A few examples will suffice:

der Boß, <i>buck, goat</i>	der Kopf, <i>head</i>
der Buſch, <i>bush</i>	der Saal, <i>hall</i>
der Gaſt, <i>guest</i>	der Stall, <i>stable</i>
der Hals, <i>neck</i>	

90. The feminines belonging to the fourth class (in the plural) are:

die Angſt, <sup>1</sup> <i>anguish</i>	die Braut, <i>bride</i>
die Art, <i>axe</i>	die Brunſt, <i>fervor</i>
die Bank, <sup>2</sup> <i>bench</i>	die Bruſt, <sup>3</sup> <i>breast</i>

die Faust, *fist*  
 die Flucht,<sup>4</sup> *flight*  
 die Frucht, *fruit*  
 die Gans, *goose*  
 die Gruft, *vault*  
 die Hand, *hand*  
 die Haut, *skin*  
 die Kluft, *clef*  
 die Kraft, *force*  
 die Kuh, *cow*  
 die Kunst, *art*  
 die Laus, *louse*  
 die Luft, *air*  
 die Lust, *desire*  
 die Macht, *power*

die Magd, *maid-servant*  
 die Maus, *mouse*  
 die Nacht, *night*  
 die Naht, *seam*  
 die Not,<sup>1</sup> *need*  
 die Nuß, *nut*  
 die Sau, *sow*  
 die Schnur, *string*  
 die Schwellst,<sup>5</sup> *swelling*  
 die Stadt, *city*  
 die Wand, *wall*  
 die Wurst, *sausage*  
 die Zucht,<sup>1</sup> *training*  
 die Zunft, *guild*

Compounds of die Kunst, *arrival*, not now in use as an independent word, are declined in the same manner as the feminines above: die Einkunft, *income*, Einkünfte; die Auskunft, *means of subsistence*, Auskünfte.

NOTE 1. Angst, Not and Zucht are rarely found in the plural, except in certain phrases with the preposition in and the dative plural: in Ängsten sein, *be in anguish*; in Nöten sein, *be in distress*; in Züchten, *with propriety; chastely and honorably*.

2. The plural Banfen means *banks* (savings-banks, etc.).

3. As stated before (82, Note 2), in compound nouns the final noun determines the declension: die Armbrust, *cross-bow*, Armbrüste.

4. The plural of Flucht is rare, except in compounds: die Ausflucht, *pretext*, Ausflüchte.

5. Die Geschwulst is more common than die Schwellst.

## 91. Examples :

Ball, *ball*, m.

Gans, *goose*, f.

Floß, *raft*, n.

### Singular

N. der Ball  
 G. des Ball(e)s  
 D. dem Ball(e)  
 A. den Ball

die Gans  
 der Gans  
 der Gans  
 die Gans

das Floß  
 des Floßes  
 dem Floß(e)  
 das Floß

### Plural

N. die Bälle  
 G. der Bälle  
 D. den Bällen  
 A. die Bälle

die Gänse  
 der Gänse  
 den Gänsen  
 die Gänse

die Flöße  
 der Flöße  
 den Flößen  
 die Flöße

**92.** It is evident that the **only case-endings** of masculine and neuter nouns in the **third** and **fourth** classes are **eß** or **ß** for the genitive, and (optionally) **e** for the dative singular; in the plural the nominative, genitive and accusative of masculines, feminines and neuters have **e**; the dative adds **n** to the nominative plural.

### EXERCISE 7

1. The **inseparable** prefixes attached to simple verbs are **be**, **ge**, **ent** (**emp**), **er**, **ver** and **zer**.

2. **Inseparable** verbs are conjugated like simple verbs, with the exception that their past participle is **without** the prefix **ge**: **belohnen**, **belohnte**, **belohnt** (instead of **gebelohnt**).

3. The prepositions used with the dative or accusative are: **an**, *at, near*; **auf**, *on, upon*; **hinter**, *behind*; **in**, *into, in*; **neben**, *near, by*; **über**, *over*; **unter**, *below, beneath*; **vor**, *before*; **zwischen**, *between*.

a. They govern the **accusative** when **direction** or **tendency** towards an object or end is to be expressed, **otherwise** the **dative**: **legen Sie das Buch auf den Tisch**, *lay the book on the table*; **das Buch liegt auf dem Tisch**, *the book lies on the table*; **er ging auf dem Balkon auf und ab**, *he walked up and down on the balcony*; **er ging von seinem Zimmer auf den Balkon**, *he walked from his room to the balcony*.

4. The preposition **by** with the passive is generally rendered by **von** with the dative.

5. Verbs with the foreign ending **ieren** in the infinitive, do not take the prefix **ge** in the past participle: **studieren**, **studierte**, **studiert** (instead of **gestudiert**).

6. Expressions of time generally precede those of place: **Wir sind gestern in der Stadt gewesen**, *we were in the city yesterday*.

### VOCABULARY 7 a

**der Adler**, *eagle*.

**der Arzt**, *physician*.

**befichtigen**, *view, visit*.

**besser**, *better*.

**der Fisch**, *fish*.

**gehen**, *go*.

**der Großvater**, *grandfather*.

**das Heft**, *writing-book*.

**heute**, *to-day*.

**immer**, *always, all the time*.

**lagen**, *lay* (1st and 3d person plural preterite from *liegen*, *lie*).

**legen**, \* *lay* (transitive) *put*.

**letzten**, *last* (adjective from *letzt*).

**der Patient**† (weak declension), *patient*.

**der Regen**, *rain*.

**rechten** (adjective from *recht*), *right*.

**schlechten** (adjective from *schlecht*), *bad*; *schlecht* (adverb), *badly*.

**der Schlüssel**, *key*.

**das Sofa**, *sofa*.

**soll**, *shall*.

**standen**, (they) *stood*.

**der Spiegel**, *looking-glass, mirror*.

**der Stuhl**, *chair*.

**die Thür**, *door*.

**sich wagen**, *venture (one's self)*.

**wäre**, *were, would be*.

**wegen** (preposition with genitive), *on account of*.

## TRANSLATION 7 a

A. 1. In Großvaters Zimmer<sup>1</sup> sind Tische,<sup>2</sup> Stühle, Bänke und Spiegel; auf den Tischen liegen<sup>2</sup> Hefte und Schnüre. 2. Die Adler, Gänse, Habichte,<sup>3</sup> Pfau<sup>4</sup> und Spechte<sup>5</sup> sind Vögel, die Hechte,<sup>5</sup> Aale,<sup>4</sup> Heringe<sup>3</sup> und Lachse<sup>4</sup> sind Fische. 3. Was sagen Sie, soll ich heute in die Stadt gehen oder wegen des schlechten Wetters<sup>6</sup> zu Hause<sup>2</sup> bleiben? 4. Es regnet<sup>2</sup> noch<sup>7</sup> immer; ich denke,<sup>8</sup> es wäre besser, sich nicht aus dem Hause zu wagen. 5. Wir haben in den letzten Jahren<sup>9</sup> viele Städte am Rhein<sup>10</sup> besichtigt. 6. Die Ärzte haben ihre Patienten heute<sup>11</sup> morgen besucht<sup>6</sup>; viele<sup>11</sup> von ihnen<sup>12</sup> waren sehr krank.<sup>13</sup> 7. Vor den Toren<sup>9</sup> waren Schafe,<sup>9</sup> Hunde<sup>4</sup> und Kühe. 8. Wir haben die Schlüssel hinter die Thür gelegt; vor der Thür standen Bänke; auf jeder Bank lagen zwei Äste. 9. Was hast du in den Händen? 10. Ich habe ein paar Äpfel in der rechten Hand.

<sup>1</sup> Vocabulary 4 a, p. 34. <sup>2</sup> Id., 5 a, p. 39. <sup>3</sup> Cf. 80 b, p. 42. <sup>4</sup> Cf. 82. <sup>5</sup> Cf. 83. <sup>6</sup> Vocabulary 4 b, p. 35. <sup>7</sup> Exercise 2, 6, p. 21. <sup>8</sup> Vocabulary 6 a, p. 47. <sup>9</sup> Cf. 84, p. 45. <sup>10</sup> Vocabulary 5 b, p. 40. <sup>11</sup> Id., 2, p. 22. <sup>12</sup> Cf. Exercise 5, 1, p. 38. <sup>13</sup> Vocabulary 6 b, p. 48.

B. 1. Please lay those chairs, tables and benches on the floors of the rooms which face (gehen auf) the flower-gardens. 2. The mirrors lay on the tables behind the door. 3. Why have you not put the keys behind the door? 4. Do you

\* Like loben.

† Cf. 42, 2.



know (wissen) whether (ob) the physicians visited all (alle) their patients yesterday? 5. Many people in our city are ill and are daily (täglich) visited by<sup>1</sup> their physicians. 6. The dogs drove (trieben) the cows into their stables<sup>2</sup>; the horses had been in<sup>3</sup> their stables the whole day. 7. Many citizens stood before the doors (Türen) of their houses or the gates of their cities. 8. It was raining very hard (stark) while (während) we were in the city. 9. I do not know (weiß) whether<sup>4</sup> (ob) or not I shall go to the city; the weather is so bad. 10. I think that our mother will remain at home. 11. You have something (etwas) in your hands, what is it? 12. I have some (einige) nuts and a few apples<sup>5</sup> (Äpfel) in my right hand. 13. Put those three axes on this bench; there are (es sind) too many things (Dinge) on those benches. 14. It would be better to lay<sup>6</sup> these writing-books on the table and not on the chairs.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Exercise 7, 4, p. 52. <sup>2</sup> Cf. 89. <sup>3</sup> Cf. Exercise 7, 6, p. 52. <sup>4</sup> Order of words: *whether I shall go to (in) the city or not.* <sup>5</sup> Cf. 74. <sup>6</sup> to lay, at the end of the sentence.

## VOCABULARY 7 b

<b>beginnen</b> , <i>begin.</i>	<b>der Kampf</b> , <i>combat, battle.</i>
<b>bereit</b> , <i>ready, prepared.</i>	<b>Lust haben</b> , <i>have a desire, like.</i>
<b>beten</b> ,* <i>pray.</i>	<b>münden</b> , <i>empty (of a river).</i>
<b>bewohnen</b> , <i>inhabit.</i>	<b>der Rock</b> , <i>coat.</i>
<b>buchstabieren</b> , <i>spell.</i>	<b>der Satz</b> , <i>sentence.</i>
<b>fiel</b> (pret. of <i>fallen</i> , <i>fall</i> ).	<b>der See</b> , <i>lake (die See, sea).</i>
<b>der Fluß</b> , <i>river.</i>	<b>der Sohn</b> , <i>son.</i>
<b>der Hut</b> , <i>hat.</i>	<b>das Ufer</b> , <i>bank (of a river).</i>
<b>die Insel</b> (weak declension), <i>island.</i>	<b>das Wort</b> (Class V), <i>word.</i>

## TRANSLATION 7 b

A. 1. Jeder Schüler<sup>1</sup> dieses Lehrers<sup>1</sup> hatte viele Wörter in jenen Sätzen falsch<sup>2</sup> buchstabiert. 2. Legen Sie, bitte, diese Röcke auf jene Bänke. 3. In diesen See münden zwei Flüsse, welche

\* Like *loben*, except that the connecting vowel *e* is inserted between the root (*bet*) and the endings *t*, *te*, or *ten*; for instance: *betete*, *gebetet*.

vom Westen kommen<sup>2</sup>; in dem See liegen ein paar Inseln, welche unsere Freunde vor zwei Jahren bewohnt hatten. 4. Nach den Kämpfen bei den Ufern des Flusses fielen die Söhne der Könige<sup>3</sup> auf die Kniee<sup>4</sup> und beteten lang(e)<sup>5</sup>; sie lagen noch auf den Knieen, als die Heere<sup>4</sup> schon bereit waren, den Kampf wieder zu beginnen. 5. Die Nächte sind hier während<sup>6</sup> der Wintermonate<sup>3</sup> sehr lang; wo sind Sie letzten Winter gewesen? 6. Bitte, sagen Sie mir, wo meine Röcke sind? Ich brauche<sup>2</sup> sie jetzt.<sup>5</sup> 7. Die Magd hat sie auf den Stuhl gelegt und auf dem Sofa liegen Ihr Hut und Ihre Handschuhe.<sup>6</sup> 8. Haben Sie Lust, heute einige Besuche<sup>5</sup> zu machen<sup>7</sup>?

<sup>1</sup> Vocabulary 3 a, p. 28. <sup>2</sup> Id., 3 b, p. 29. <sup>3</sup> Cf. 80, b. <sup>4</sup> Cf. 84.  
<sup>5</sup> Vocabulary 5 b, p. 40. <sup>6</sup> Id., 4 b, p. 35. <sup>7</sup> machen, here, to pay.

B. 1. Where are my two coats? Did I not tell you yesterday that I should (würde) need them this morning? 2. We can not<sup>1</sup> find our hats anywhere<sup>1</sup>; the servant-girl says that she had put them on the sofa, but they are not there. 3. The nights were very<sup>2</sup> cold during the winter months. 4. The banks of these rivers are very steep (steil) here; the armies of the South German (süddeutschen) kings remained there several (mehrere) days after their combats with the Prussians (Preußen). 5. I have no desire to pay any<sup>3</sup> visits to-day; I am too tired (müde). 6. How many words you have spelled<sup>4</sup> wrong! You must write these sentences again. 7. Were the enemies ready to begin the battle again<sup>5</sup> during the night?

<sup>1</sup> not anywhere = nirgend, before the infinitive. <sup>2</sup> Order of words: during the winter months were the nights very cold. <sup>3</sup> Omit any. <sup>4</sup> Transposed order. <sup>5</sup> Order of words: during the night again to begin.

## LESSON VIII

## STRONG DECLENSION — CLASS V

**93.** The fifth class forms the plural by adding *er* to the nominative singular and **always takes the umlaut**, if the vowel is capable of it.

NOTE. Nouns formed by the suffix *-tum* take the umlaut on the **vowel** of the **suffix** (*u*) and not on that of the radical syllable.

*a.* As to the genitive and dative singular, the rules of **79** apply also here.

**94.** No **feminines** belong to the fifth class.

**95.** The fifth class includes **only** the following **masculines**:

1. der Bösewicht,* <i>villain</i>	der Rand, <i>rim, edge</i>
der Dorn,* <i>thorn</i>	der Strauch,† <i>shrub</i>
der Geist, <i>spirit, ghost</i>	der Strauß,† <i>bouquet</i>
der Gott, <i>god</i>	der Vormund, <i>guardian</i>
der Leib, <i>body</i>	der Wald, <i>forest</i>
der Mann, <i>man</i>	der Wurm, <i>worm, serpent</i>
der Ort,* <i>place</i>	

NOTE. According to previous rules (81, 2 and 88), the words in spaced type should belong to the third class, the others to the fourth.

2. der Reichtum, *wealth*      der Irrtum, *error*.

*a.* The other nouns formed by the suffix *-tum*, are neuter.

**96.** The **neuters** belonging to the fifth class are:

1. The following six nouns beginning with the prefix *Ge* and **not** ending in *e*, *el*, *en* or *er*, forming an exception to rule **80 f**:

das Gemach, <i>apartment</i>	das Gesicht, <i>face</i>
das Gemüt, <i>mind, soul</i>	das Gespenst, <i>spectre</i>
das Geschlecht, <i>sex</i>	das Gewand, <i>garment</i>

*a.* Das Gesicht forms the plural Gesichte when meaning *visions*; Gewande is the more poetic plural of Gewand.

---

\* Plural also according to the third class. † Plural also after the fourth class.

2. All neuters formed by the suffix *-tum* (cf. 95, 2 a).
3. All remaining neuters, **except**:
  - a. Those of class I (ending in *el*, *en*, *er*, *den*, *lein* and *sel*; with the prefix *Ge* and ending in *e*).
  - b. In class II only one: *Kloster*.
  - c. Those of class III (ending in *niss* and *sal*; monosyllabics in 84; all with prefix *Ge* and not ending in *e*, *el*, *en*, *er*; cf. however, 96, 1).
  - d. In class IV only two: *Floß* and *Chor*.

## 97. Examples :

**Mann**, *man*, m.    **Gewand**, *garment*, n.    **Reichtum**, *riches*, m.

Singular			
N.	der Mann	das Gewand	der Reichtum
G.	des Mannes	des Gewandes	des Reichtums
D.	dem Mann(e)	dem Gewand(e)	dem Reichtum
A.	den Mann	das Gewand	den Reichtum
Plural			
N.	die Männer	die Gewänder	die Reichtümer
G.	der Männer	der Gewänder	der Reichtümer
D.	den Männern	den Gewändern	den Reichtümern
A.	die Männer	die Gewänder	die Reichtümer

## RECAPITULATION

**Classification of Nouns of the Strong Declension  
according to their Gender**

## MASCULINE

98. 1. The **first** class includes all the masculines ending in *el*, *en* or *er*, **not** comprised in the list of 74, also the word *Käse*, *cheese*.

**No ending in the nominative plural.**  
**No umlaut.**

2. The **second** class includes only the twenty-four masculines ending in *el*, *en* or *er* in 74.

- a.* The one neuter and the two feminines in 74 are in spaced type.

**No ending in the nominative plural.**

**Umlaut.**

3. The **third** class includes :

- a.* The monosyllabic masculines **capable** of umlaut, but **not** taking it, in 82.

- b.* The monosyllabic masculines **not** capable of umlaut, **except** :

three nouns of the fifth class (81, 3 *a*, and in spaced type in 95 ;)

fourteen of the weak declension (81, 3 *b*, and in spaced type in 106, 2).

- c.* The masculines ending in *at*, *ig*, *idh*, *idht*, *i8*, *ing*, *ling* and *nd* (80, *b*).

**Ending *e* in the nominative plural.**

**No umlaut.**

4. The **fourth** class includes :

- a.* All monosyllabic masculines capable of umlaut (vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, *au*), **except** :

those in 82 ;

ten nouns of the fifth class in 95 (**not** in spaced type), and

thirteen of the weak declension in 106, 2 (**not** in spaced type).

**Ending *e* in the nominative plural.**

**Umlaut.**

5. The **fifth** class includes **only** the fifteen masculines in 95, 1 and 2.

**Ending *er* in the nominative plural.**

**Umlaut, when possible.**

6. All masculines **not** belonging to any one of the five classes of the strong declension must, of course, belong to the **weak declension**.

7. Monosyllabic masculines cannot belong to the first or second class, since the nouns classified with the latter, having the endings *el*, *er* or *en*, must consist of at least two syllables.

8. If a monosyllabic masculine is not found among the fifteen nouns in 95, 1 and 2 of the fifth class, nor among the twenty-seven of the weak declension in 106, 2, it must belong to the third or fourth class of the strong declension. If it is incapable of umlaut, like *Hirsch*, *Weg*, *Feind*, *Freund*, it belongs to the third class. If capable of umlaut but **not** taking it (82), it belongs likewise to the third class; otherwise, when not found among the nouns in 82, it belongs to the fourth class, like *Fall*, *Fälle*; *Popf*, *Röpfe*.

## FEMININES

99. 1. There are **no** feminines in the **first** class.  
 2. There are **only** two feminines, *Mutter* and *Tochter*, in the **second** class.  
 3. **Only** the feminines formed by the suffixes *-niß* and *-sal*, belong to the **third** class.  
 4. The **only** feminines of the **fourth** class are those given in the list of 90, all of them taking the umlaut.  
 5. There are **no** feminines in the **fifth** class.

NOTE. Remember that feminines are classified according to the formation of their plural, their singular being invariable.

100. All other feminines must belong to the **weak declension**; only a little more than forty follow the strong declension.

## NEUTERS

101. 1. The **first** class includes :  
 a. The neuters ending in *el*, *er* or *en*.  
 b. The diminutives in *chen*, *lein* or *sel*.  
 c. The neuters formed by the prefix *Ge* and **ending** in *e*.  
 d. Infinitives used as nouns (69, 1).  
 2. The **second** class has **only one** neuter : *das Kloster*.  
 3. The **third** class includes :  
 a. The neuters formed by the suffixes *-niß* and *-sal*.  
 b. The monosyllabics of 84.  
 c. The neuters with the prefix *Ge* and **not** ending in *e*, *el*, *en* or *er*, **except** : the six nouns of the fifth class in 96.

4. The **fourth** class has only two neuters: *Fluß* and *Chor*.
5. The **fifth** class includes :
  - a. The neuters formed by the suffix *-tum*.
  - b. The six neuters formed by the prefix *Ge* and **not** ending in *e*, *el*, *en* or *er* (96).
  - c. **All other neuter** nouns not belonging to the first four classes.

## EXERCISE 8

1. Preterit of *werden*, *become* :

Indicative	Subjunctive
ich wurde (ward)	ich würde
du wurdest (wardst)	du würdest
er wurde (ward)	er würde
wir wurden	wir würden
ihr wurdet	ihr würdet
(Sie) sie wurden	(Sie) sie würden

2. The **subjunctive preterit** of *werden* in connection with the infinitive of the principal verb forms the **conditional present** : *ich würde gehen*, *I should go*.

3. **Conditional Present** :

ich würde	} loben, <i>I should</i> } <i>praise</i> , etc.	wir würden	} loben
du würdest		ihr würdet	
er würde		(Sie) sie würden	

- a. The same, of course, with *haben*, *sein* and *werden*: *ich würde haben*, etc., *I should have*; *ich würde sein*, etc., *I should be*; *ich würde werden*, etc., *I should become*.

## VOCABULARY 8 a

*sich* { *ändern*, } *change* (intr.).  
           { *verändern*, }  
*bedecken*, *cover*.  
*das Dach*, *roof*.  
*dann*, *then*.  
*das Dorf*, *village*.

*das Ei*, *egg*.  
*erzählen*, *relate*.  
 *fand* (1st and 3d per. sing.), } (pret-  
 *fanden* (1st and 3d per. plur.), } erit of  
           *finden*, *find*), *found*.  
*das Faß*, *cask*.

der Forstmeister, *forester*.  
 gehören (with dative), *belong*.  
 das Gespenst, *spectre, ghost*  
 ging (1st and 3d per. sing.), } (pret-  
 gingen (1st and 3d per. plur.), } erit  
 of gehen, *go*), *went*.  
 das Grab, *grave*.  
 das Gras, *grass*.  
 herumwandern, *wander about*.  
 das Huhn, *hen*.  
 kaum, *hardly*.  
 der Keller, *cellar*.  
 das Loch, *hole*.  
 das Märchen, *fairy story*.  
 nachdem (conj.), *after, when*; (the  
 preposition *after* is *nach*).

die Nacht, *night*.  
 Nachts, *at night*; (adverbial geni-  
 tive, a rare instance of the old  
 declension of feminine nouns).  
 das Nest, *nest*.  
 roten (adj. from rot), *red*.  
 das Schloß, *castle*.  
 selbst, *self (myself, himself, them-  
 selves, etc.)*.  
 der Stall, *stable*.  
 das Thal, *dale, valley*.  
 die Tanne (weak declension), *fir*.  
 zurückkam, *came back*.  
 zwanzig, *twenty*.

## TRANSLATION 8 a

A. 1. Die Häuser<sup>1</sup> mit den roten Dächern, welche in den Tannenwäldern standen,<sup>2</sup> haben dem Forstmeister gehört. 2. In den Märchen hat man erzählt, wie Nachts die Geister und Gespenster in den alten Schlössern herumwandern. 3. Als<sup>3</sup> wir die Gräber in den Tälern des Gebirges mit Gras bedeckt hatten, gingen wir wieder<sup>4</sup> in unsere Häuser im Dorfe. 4. Diese Vögel werden bald<sup>5</sup> auf den Bäumen<sup>6</sup> in unsren Gärten Nester bauen.<sup>6</sup> 5. In den Ställen fanden die Kinder<sup>1</sup> zwanzig Eier, welche die Hühner gestern und vorgestern gelegt hatten. 6. Die Fässer in diesem Keller sind sehr alt und haben viele Löcher. 7. Ich würde den Mann kaum kennen<sup>7</sup>; er hat sich so sehr verändert. 8. Würden Sie es glauben,<sup>7</sup> wenn man es Ihnen sagte<sup>8</sup>? 9. Er wurde krank,<sup>9</sup> wie (as) er von China zurückkam. 10. Der Forstmeister sagte, er würde dann an Gespenster glauben, wenn er sie selbst sehen<sup>9</sup> würde.<sup>10</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Vocabulary 2, p. 22. <sup>2</sup> Id., 7 a, p. 53. <sup>3</sup> Id., 6 b, p. 48. <sup>4</sup> Id., 3 b, p. 29.  
<sup>5</sup> Id., 4 b, p. 35. <sup>6</sup> Id., 3 a, p. 27. <sup>7</sup> Id., 3 b, p. 29. <sup>8</sup> Id., 4 b, p. 35. <sup>9</sup> Id.,  
 6 b, p. 48. <sup>10</sup> Exercise 4, 3, p. 33.



B. 1. To whom<sup>1</sup> do those houses belong? Do you mean<sup>2</sup> those (die) with the red roofs which you can see from here? 2. When the peasants (Bauern) had covered the graves in their villages with flowers (Blumen) they went<sup>3</sup> to the city. 3. How many eggs did your hens lay during the last (letzten) two months? 4. Would you know the man if you should see him again? 5. We do not believe<sup>4</sup> in ghosts and spectres now; of course<sup>5</sup> when we were children, grandmother<sup>3</sup> related to us<sup>6</sup> many fairy stories and we liked<sup>7</sup> to hear them very much. 6. Put these casks in the cellars; they are old and we need them no more (nicht mehr).

<sup>1</sup> To whom = Wem. <sup>2</sup> mean, meinen. <sup>3</sup> Cf. Exercise 4, 3, Note, p. 33. <sup>4</sup> Translate: *We believe now not.* <sup>5</sup> of course, freilich. <sup>6</sup> to us immediately after related. <sup>7</sup> Translate: *we heard them very gladly* (gern).

## VOCABULARY 8 b

alten (adj. from alt), <i>old.</i>	das Kalb, <i>calf.</i>
Deutschland, <i>Germany.</i>	der Krieg, <i>war.</i>
erhalten (past part. from erhalten, receive).	das Lamm, <i>lamb.</i>
das Fach, <i>shelf, compartment; speciality.</i>	stellen, <i>to place.</i>
das Geld, <i>money.</i>	der Tempel, <i>temple.</i>
die Griechen, <i>Greeks.</i>	auf der Universität, <i>at the university.</i>
herrliche (adj. from herrlich), <i>splendid, magnificent.</i>	verstecken, <i>hide.</i>

## TRANSLATION 8 b

A. 1. Mit dem Gelde, welches Ihr Großvater<sup>1</sup> heute<sup>2</sup> morgen erhalten hat, würde er einige<sup>3</sup> Kälber und Lämmer kaufen<sup>2</sup> können,<sup>4</sup> wenn er (es) wollte.<sup>2</sup> 2. Bitte,<sup>2</sup> stellen Sie meine Bücher<sup>5</sup> in jene Fächer; ich würde es selbst tun<sup>6</sup>; aber ich habe jetzt<sup>6</sup> keine Zeit.<sup>6</sup> 3. Welche Fächer haben Sie auf der Universität studiert,<sup>7</sup> als<sup>8</sup> Sie im letzten Jahre in Deutschland waren und welche wollten<sup>2</sup> Sie jetzt studieren? 4. Die alten Männer hatten während<sup>6</sup> des Krieges ihre<sup>9</sup> Reichthümer in Löchern<sup>10</sup> in

den Wäldern versteckt. 5. Die Griechen bauten<sup>11</sup> ihren<sup>9</sup> Göttern herrliche Tempel. 6. Die Würmer lagen<sup>1</sup> in dem Grafe<sup>10</sup> an den Rändern des Waldes.

<sup>1</sup> Vocabulary 7 a, p. 52. <sup>2</sup> Id., 2, p. 22. <sup>3</sup> Id., 5 a, p. 39. <sup>4</sup> würde . . . können = *would be able to*. <sup>5</sup> Vocabulary 3 b, p. 29. <sup>6</sup> Id., 4 b, p. 35. <sup>7</sup> Cf. Exercise 7, 5, p. 52. <sup>8</sup> Vocabulary 6 b, p. 48. <sup>9</sup> Cf. Exercise 3, 3, p. 26. <sup>10</sup> Vocabulary 8 a, p. 61. <sup>11</sup> Id., 3 a, p. 27.

B. 1. Have you studied at a German (deutschen) university? 2. No, when I was in Germany<sup>1</sup> last year I<sup>2</sup> was too ill to study. 3. These shelves in my bookcase (Bücher-schrank, m.) are for the books that my father bought yesterday when he was in the city. 4. Now (nun), as<sup>3</sup> you are old enough, you<sup>2</sup> should (sollten) study certain (gewisse) specialties at the university. 5. Some calves and lambs of our grandfather hid themselves (sich) behind the trees on the borders of the forest. 6. Some (Einige) old men in the villages told us how (wie) the robbers (Räuber) hid the riches which they had stolen (gestohlen) in a few holes in the trees of the woods. 7. You would be able<sup>4</sup> to build a house if your grandfathers had given you the money for it (dazu); but they needed the money themselves (selbst). 8. The gods of the Greeks had magnificent temples.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Exercise 7, 6, p. 52. <sup>2</sup> Cf. Exercise 4, 3, Note, p. 33. <sup>3</sup> as, conjunction = da; distinguish from the adverb da, then, there; order of words? <sup>4</sup> be able to, können, after build.

## LESSON IX

### WEAK DECLENSION

**102.** To the **weak** declension belong **only** masculines and feminines, **no** neuters.

**1.** **No** noun of this declension takes the **umlaut** in the plural.

**103.** The masculines add *n* or *en* to the nominative singular to form all the other cases, both singular and plural.

**104.** The feminines add *n* or *en* for all the cases of the plural, the singular being invariable.

**105.** Nouns ending in *e*, *el*, *er* or *ar* (unaccented \*) add *n* to the nominative singular; others add *en*: *die Blume*, *flower*, *die Blumen*; *die Frau*, *woman*, *wife*, *die Frauen*.

NOTE 1. The *n* of the suffix *in* is doubled in the plural: *die Freundin*, *lady friend*, *Freundinnen*.

NOTE 2. *Herr*, *Mr.* (as title), *master*, *gentleman*, takes *n* in the singular, *en* in the plural.

**106.** The **weak** declension includes the following **masculine** nouns:

1. Words of two or more syllables ending in *e* (except *Käse*, 69), comprising also those having the prefix *Ge*: *der Knabe*, *boy*; *der Hase*, *hare*; *der Gefelle*, *companion*, *fellow*; *der Sachse*, *Saxon*.

2. The following words not ending in *e*, mostly monosyllabics:

<i>der Ahn</i> , † <i>ancestor</i>	<i>der Hirt</i> , <i>shepherd</i>
<i>der Bär</i> , <i>bear</i>	<i>der Lump</i> , <i>vagabond</i>
<i>der Burſch(e)</i> , <i>fellow</i> , <i>student</i>	<i>der Menſch</i> , † <i>man</i> , <i>human</i>
<i>der Chriſt</i> , <i>Christian</i>	<i>being</i>
<i>der Fink(e)</i> , † <i>finch</i>	<i>der Mohr</i> , <i>Moor</i>
<i>der Fürſt</i> , <i>prince</i>	<i>der Narr</i> , <i>fool</i>
<i>der Gef</i> , <i>fool</i> , <i>fop</i>	<i>der Nerv</i> , <i>nerve</i>
<i>der Graf</i> , <i>count</i>	<i>der Ochſ (Ochſe)</i> , <i>ox</i>
<i>der Hageſtolz</i> , <i>bachelor</i>	<i>der Pfau</i> , § <i>peacock</i>
<i>der Held</i> , <i>hero</i>	<i>der Prinz</i> , <i>prince</i>
<i>der Herr</i> , <i>gentleman</i>	<i>der Schent(e)</i> , <i>cupbearer</i>

\* *Der Un'gar*, *die Un'garn*; *der Huſſar'*, *die Huſſar'en*.

† Sometimes forms the genitive singular according to the strong declension.

‡ *Der Mann* (fifth class), *man*, *male being*; cf. Latin "*homo*" and "*vir*": Greek *ἀνθρωπος* and *ἀνὴρ*. § Sometimes follows the third class, strong declension, throughout.

der Schöpfer, <i>wether</i>	der Strauß, <i>ostrich</i>
der Spatz, <i>sparrow</i>	der Tor, <i>fool</i>
der Steinmetz, <i>stonecutter</i>	der Vorfahr, <i>ancestor</i>

NOTE 1. A few of the preceding words formerly ended in *e*.

NOTE 2. The nouns in spaced type above form an exception to the rule that monosyllabic masculines **not** capable of umlaut belong to the third class of the strong declension (81, 3).

3. Many words derived from foreign languages with the suffixes or endings *arch*, *graph*, *frat*, *log(e)*, *nom*; *t*, *th*; *nt*, *st*, *ph*, for instance: *Monarch*; *Telegraph*; *Aristokrat*; *Astrolog(e)*; *Astronom*; *Architekt*; *Konsonant*; *Kapitalist*; *Philosoph*.

4. Some names of nationality: *der Baier, Bavarian*; *der Kaffer, Kaffir*; *der Pommer, Pomeranian*; *der Tartar, Tartar*; *der Un'gar, Hungarian*; *der Bulgar, Bulgarian*. The first three form an apparent exception to rule 69.

**107.** The **weak** declension includes **all** the feminines **except**

- a.* Mutter and Tochter of the second class;
- b.* The few nouns in *niss* and *sal* of the third class; and
- c.* The list of feminines in 90 of the fourth class.

**108.** Examples:

**Feder**, pen, *f.*; **Frau**, woman, *f.*; **Graf**, count, *m.*; **Knabe**, boy, *m*

#### Singular

N.	die Feder	die Frau	der Graf	der Knabe
G.	der Feder	der Frau	des Grafen	des Knaben
D.	der Feder	der Frau	dem Grafen	dem Knaben
A.	die Feder	die Frau	den Grafen	den Knaben

#### Plural

Federn	Frauen	Grafen	Knaben
--------	--------	--------	--------

### EXERCISE 9

1. The **preterit passive** is formed by connecting the **preterit** of *werden* with the **past participle** of the principal verb: *ich wurde (ward) geführt, I was led.*

## 2. PRETERIT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

ich wurde (ward)	}	gelobt, <i>I was praised</i> , etc.
du wurdest (wardst)		
er wurde (ward)		
mir wurden		
ihr wurdet		
(Sie) sie wurden		

## 3. IDIOMATIC PHRASES

a. *Wahr*, *true*; *es ist wahr*, *it is true*; *nicht wahr*, *not true?* (instead of *ist es nicht wahr?*) is used when an affirmative answer is expected, corresponding to French "*n'est-ce pas?*" *Nicht wahr?* is therefore equivalent to such phrases as *is he not*, *did he not*, *was he not*, *will you not*, etc., in which the auxiliary is used in English instead of the complete verbal form: *er tat es*, *nicht wahr?* *he did it, did he not?* *Sie haben das bemerkt*, *nicht wahr?* *You have noticed that, have you not?* *Sie denken an ihn*, *nicht wahr*, *you are thinking of him, are you not?*

b. *Wohl*, *well*, often denotes probability, censure in a polite and suggestive way, or supposition: *das ist wohl der Fall*, *that is probably (presumably) the case*; *das sagt man wohl*, *aber . . .*, *to be sure that is what they say, but . . .*; *da haben Sie wohl nicht recht gehandelt*, *there, it seems to me, you have not acted rightly*; *wie viel Uhr ist es wohl*, *I wonder what time it is*.

## VOCABULARY 9 a

der Affe, <i>ape, monkey</i> .	<i>längs</i> (preposition with genitive), <i>along</i> .
bestehen (trans.), <i>stand, pass</i> .	die Lektion', <i>lesson</i> .
bestrafen, <i>punish</i> .	der Löwe, <i>lion</i> .
der Elefant', <i>elephant</i> .	die Löwin, <i>lioness</i> .
errichten, <i>erect</i> .	die Menagerie', * <i>menagerie</i> .
erwidern (trans.), <i>return</i> .	neulich, <i>newly, recently</i> .
die Hyä'ne, <i>hyena</i> .	niemand, <i>no one, not any one, not anybody</i> .
lang (adverb), after an accusative expressing duration of time, <i>for</i> ; otherwise <i>a long time</i> (in the latter sense, usually <i>lange</i> ).	der Papagei, <i>parrot</i> .
	pflastern, <i>pave</i> .

\* Pronounce g like s in *pleasure*.

die Prüfung, *examination*.

die Reise, *journey*.

die Schwester, *sister*.

die Straße, *street*.

das Tier, *animal*.

verschiedene (adj. from verschieden),  
*various, different*.

die Wiese, *meadow*.

die Woche, *week*.

der Wolf, *wolf*.

## TRANSLATION 9 a

A. 1. Neulich haben uns die zwei Grafen besucht,<sup>1</sup> welche jetzt<sup>1</sup> auf der Universität<sup>2</sup> zu<sup>3</sup> Berlin sind; ihr Besuch<sup>4</sup> wurde von<sup>5</sup> uns bald<sup>1</sup> erwidert. 2. In der Menagerie, welche vor dem Tore der Stadt errichtet wurde, kann man verschiedene Tiere sehen, nicht wahr? 3. Ja, da sind Löwen, Löwinnen, Bären, Tiger, Elefanten, Wölfe und Hyänen, auch viele Affen und Papageien. 4. Der Bruder des Prinzen ist wohl zwei oder drei Wochen lang krank<sup>6</sup> gewesen; er ward schon lang von niemand gesehen.<sup>5</sup> 5. Die Knaben haben ihre Lektionen wieder<sup>7</sup> nicht gelernt<sup>8</sup>; sie sind sehr faul<sup>8</sup> gewesen und werden wohl die Prüfungen nicht bestehen. 6. Sie wurden von<sup>5</sup> dem Lehrer<sup>8</sup> bestraft, nicht wahr? 7. Wie viele Menschen wohnen<sup>9</sup> in den Häusern, welche längs der Wiesen und Blumengärten<sup>5</sup> liegen<sup>5</sup>? 8. Die Herren waren viele Jahre lang auf Reisen gewesen; dort<sup>1</sup> hatten sie viel Neues<sup>10</sup> gesehen und manche herrlichen Städte wurden von ihnen besucht.<sup>1</sup> 9. Die Straßen in jenen Städten wurden wohl neulich gepflastert.

<sup>1</sup> Vocabulary 4 b, p. 35. <sup>2</sup> Id., 8 b, p. 62. <sup>3</sup> zu = *at*. <sup>4</sup> Vocabulary 5 b, p. 40. <sup>5</sup> Id., 5 a, p. 39. <sup>6</sup> Id., 6 b, p. 48. <sup>7</sup> Id., 3 b, p. 29. <sup>8</sup> Id., 3 a, p. 27. <sup>9</sup> Id., 2, p. 22. <sup>10</sup> Cf. 48, 1 c.

B. 1. How many weeks have you been ill? 2. My sisters visited the count's mother five<sup>1</sup> weeks ago. 3. Why have those boys not learned their lessons? 4. I presume they have been lazy. 5. If these students (Student') do not work assiduously (fleißig), they will<sup>2</sup> not be able<sup>3</sup> to pass their examinations. 6. You saw the animals<sup>4</sup> in the menagerie this morning, did you not? 7. I have never (nie) seen

so many monkeys and parrots. 8. We were not seen by anybody; the nights are so dark (dunkel) now,<sup>5</sup> are they not? 9. I wonder how many lions and tigers are in those cages (Käfig, m.). 10. You can see from here the buildings<sup>6</sup> which were erected before the city gate last week,<sup>7</sup> can you not? 11. I see various animals in there (darin), as (wie) elephants, wolves and hyenas. 12. The streets in those villages are badly (schlecht) paved, are they not?

<sup>1</sup> five weeks ago = before five weeks. <sup>2</sup> Cf. Exercise 4, 3, Note, p. 33. <sup>3</sup> not be able to, nicht können; pass before können. <sup>4</sup> Order of words: *this morning the animals in the menagerie*. <sup>5</sup> Order of words: *now so dark*. <sup>6</sup> building, das Gebäude. <sup>7</sup> Cf. Exercise 7, 6, p. 52.

## VOCABULARY 9 b

der Augenblick, *moment, instant.*

die Bekanntschaft, *acquaintance.*

die Blume, *flower.*

die Dame, *lady.*

deren (relative pronoun), *whose.*

erwarten, *expect.*

die Fami'lie, *family* (cf. 6, 3 a).

die Frau, *wife.*

gebracht (past participle of bringen, *bring*), *brought.*

gefunden (past participle of finden, *find*), *found.*

gewöhnlich, *usual(ly).*

machen, *make.*

die Musik', *music.*

nehmen (past participle genommen), *take.*

der Poli'tiker, *politician.*

seit (prep. with dative), *since, for.*

sobald (conjunction), *as soon as.*

die Stunde, *hour, lesson, recitation.*

vier, *four.*

die Woche, *week.*

die Zeile, *line.*

die Zeitung, *newspaper.*

## TRANSLATION 9 b

A. 1. Hat Ihr Freund, der große<sup>1</sup> Politiker, schon<sup>2</sup> die Zeitungen gesehen? 2. Nein, noch<sup>2</sup> nicht; sie wurden noch nicht ins<sup>3</sup> Haus gebracht, aber sie werden jeden<sup>4</sup> Augenblick erwartet. 3. Wie viele Stunden die<sup>5</sup> Woche nehmen Sie in der<sup>6</sup> Musik? 4. Ich nehme gewöhnlich sechs (six) Stunden, aber seit den letzten<sup>7</sup> vier Wochen habe ich nur<sup>8</sup> zwei (two) genommen. 5. Kennen<sup>8</sup> Sie die Damen in diesen Familien? 6. Ich kenne die Frauen der Lehrer,<sup>9</sup> deren Bekanntschaft ich in der Stadt<sup>10</sup> machte.

7. Seine<sup>11</sup> Schwestern<sup>8</sup> schickten<sup>12</sup> uns herrliche<sup>13</sup> Blumen; sie hatten sie auf den Wiesen<sup>14</sup> längs der Schloßgräben<sup>12</sup> gefunden.  
 8. Bitte, schreiben Sie mir ein paar<sup>2</sup> Zeilen, sobald Sie Zeit<sup>15</sup> haben; Sie haben mir schon<sup>2</sup> lang(e) nicht geschrieben.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Vocabulary 6 *b*, p. 48. <sup>2</sup> Id., 6 *a*, p. 47. <sup>3</sup> Cf. 57, 2. <sup>4</sup> Cf. Exercise 3, 2. p. 26. <sup>5</sup> die = *a*. <sup>6</sup> Omit the article. <sup>7</sup> Vocabulary 7 *a*, p. 53. <sup>8</sup> Id., 3 *b*, p. 29. <sup>9</sup> Id., 3 *a*, p. 28. <sup>10</sup> Id., 2, p. 22. <sup>11</sup> Cf. Exercise 3, 3, p. 26. <sup>12</sup> Vocabulary 5 *a*, p. 39. <sup>13</sup> Id., 8 *b*, p. 62. <sup>14</sup> Id., 9 *a*, p. 67. <sup>15</sup> Id., 4 *b*, p. 35.

*B.* 1. I presume you read (lesen) the newspapers every day.<sup>1</sup> 2. No, I have not time enough. I read them once in a while.<sup>2</sup> 3. Your friends, I presume<sup>3</sup>, take two lessons a week in music, do they not? 4. You probably<sup>4</sup> know the ladies in this house; two of (von) them are my sisters. 5. I have not yet made their acquaintance. 6. Please send me a dozen<sup>5</sup> of (von) those flowers as soon as you can (können). 7. Our sisters have recently (neulich)<sup>6</sup> written us a few lines, but we expected very long (lange) letters, did we not?

<sup>1</sup> Accusative. <sup>2</sup> once in a while, zuweilen. <sup>3</sup> I presume after take. <sup>4</sup> probably after know. <sup>5</sup> dozen, das Duzend. <sup>6</sup> Order of words: (to) us recently.

## RECAPITULATION

**Nouns are distributed among the two "declensions" according to gender as follows:**

### MASCULINES

**109.** 1. Of real German words all masculine nouns belong to the strong declension, **except**:

*a.* Those having more than one syllable and ending in *e* (106, 1).

**NOTE.** Käse belongs to the first class, strong declension.

*b.* The twenty-seven masculines in 106, 2.

2. After eliminating these exceptions, which follow the weak declension, we know that of the remaining masculines the genitive singular ends in *s* for the first and second classes, and in *s* or *es* for the third, fourth and fifth classes.



4. The **fourth** class has only two neuters: **Flöß** and **Chor**.
5. The **fifth** class includes:
  - a. The neuters formed by the suffix **-tum**.
  - b. The six neuters formed by the prefix **Ge** and not ending in **e, el, en** or **er** (96).
  - c. All other **neuter** nouns not belonging to the first four classes.

## EXERCISE 8

1. Preterit of *werden*, *become* :

Indicative	Subjunctive
ich wurde (ward)	ich würde
du wurdest (wardst)	du würdest
er wurde (ward)	er würde
wir wurden	wir würden
ihr wurdet	ihr würdet
(Sie) sie wurden	(Sie) sie würden

2. The **subjunctive preterit** of *werden* in connection with the infinitive of the principal verb forms the **conditional present** : *ich würde gehen, I should go*.

## 3. Conditional Present :

ich würde	} loben, <i>I should</i> <i>praise</i> , etc.	wir würden	} loben
du würdest		ihr würdet	
er würde		(Sie) sie würden	

a. The same, of course, with *haben*, *sein* and *werden*: *ich würde haben*, etc., *I should have*; *ich würde sein*, etc., *I should be*; *ich würde werden*, etc., *I should become*.

## VOCABULARY 8 a

sich { ändern, }  
       { verändern, } *change* (intr.).  
 bedecken, *cover*.  
 das Dach, *roof*.  
 dann, *then*.  
 das Dorf, *village*.

das Ei, *egg*.  
 erzählen, *relate*.  
 fand (1st and 3d per. sing.), } (pret-  
 fanden (1st and 3d per. plur.), } erit of  
       finden, *find*, *found*.  
 das Faß, *cask*.

der Forstmeister, *forester*.  
 gehören (with dative), *belong*.  
 das Gespenst, *spectre, ghost*  
 ging (1st and 3d per. sing.), } (pret-  
 gingen (1st and 3d per. plur.), } erit  
 of gehen, *go*, *went*.  
 das Grab, *grave*.  
 das Gras, *grass*.  
 herumwandern, *wander about*.  
 das Huhn, *hen*.  
 kaum, *hardly*.  
 der Keller, *cellar*.  
 das Loch, *hole*.  
 das Märchen, *fairy story*.  
 nachdem (conj.), *after, when*; (the  
 preposition *after* is *nach*).

die Nacht, *night*.  
 Nachts, *at night*; (adverbial geni-  
 tive, a rare instance of the old  
 declension of feminine nouns).  
 das Nest, *nest*.  
 roten (adj. from rot), *red*.  
 das Schloß, *castle*.  
 selbst, *self* (*myself, himself, them-*  
*selves, etc.*).  
 der Stall, *stable*.  
 das Thal, *dale, valley*.  
 die Tanne (weak declension), *fir*.  
 zurückkam, *came back*.  
 zwanzig, *twenty*.

## TRANSLATION 8 a

A. 1. Die Häuser<sup>1</sup> mit den roten Dächern, welche in den  
 Tannenwäldern standen,<sup>2</sup> haben dem Forstmeister gehört. 2. In  
 den Märchen hat man erzählt, wie Nachts die Geister und Ge-  
 spenster in den alten Schloßern herumwandern. 3. Als<sup>3</sup> wir die  
 Gräber in den Tälern des Gebirges mit Gras bedeckt hatten,  
 gingen wir wieder<sup>4</sup> in unsere Häuser im Dorfe. 4. Diese Vögel  
 werden bald<sup>5</sup> auf den Bäumen<sup>6</sup> in unsren Gärten Nester bauen.<sup>6</sup>  
 5. In den Ställen fanden die Kinder<sup>1</sup> zwanzig Eier, welche die  
 Hühner gestern und vorgestern gelegt hatten. 6. Die Fässer in  
 diesem Keller sind sehr alt und haben viele Löcher. 7. Ich würde  
 den Mann kaum kennen<sup>7</sup>; er hat sich so sehr verändert. 8. Wür-  
 den Sie es glauben,<sup>7</sup> wenn man es Ihnen sagte<sup>8</sup>? 9. Er wurde  
 krank,<sup>9</sup> wie (as) er von China zurückkam. 10. Der Forstmeister  
 sagte, er würde dann an Gespenster glauben, wenn er sie selbst  
 sehen<sup>9</sup> würde.<sup>10</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Vocabulary 2, p. 22. <sup>2</sup> Id., 7 a, p. 53. <sup>3</sup> Id., 6 b, p. 48. <sup>4</sup> Id., 3 b, p. 29.  
<sup>5</sup> Id., 4 b, p. 35. <sup>6</sup> Id., 3 a, p. 27. <sup>7</sup> Id., 3 b, p. 29. <sup>8</sup> Id., 4 b, p. 35. <sup>9</sup> Id.,  
 6 b, p. 48. <sup>10</sup> Exercise 4, 3, p. 33.

**127.** Some masculines are of the **strong** declension in the **singular** and of the **weak** in the **plural**, the most common of which are :

der Bauer, <sup>1</sup> <i>peasant</i>	der Psalm, <i>psalm</i>
der Dorn, <sup>2</sup> <i>thorn</i>	der See, <i>lake</i>
der Gau, <sup>3</sup> <i>district</i>	der Sporn, <i>spur</i>
der Gevatter, <sup>1</sup> <i>godfather</i>	der Staat, <i>state</i>
der Rader, <i>rag</i>	der Stachel, <i>sting, goad</i>
der Kon'sul, <i>consul</i>	der Strahl, <i>ray</i>
der Lorbeer, <i>laurel</i>	der Strauß, <sup>3</sup> <i>ostrich</i>
der Mast, <i>mast</i>	der Untertan, <i>subject</i>
der Muskel, <i>muscle</i>	der Vetter, <i>cousin</i>
der Nachbar, <sup>1</sup> <i>neighbor</i>	der Vorfahr, <sup>1</sup> <i>ancestor</i>
der Nerv, <i>nerve, sinew</i>	der Zierrat, <i>ornament</i>
der Pantoffel, <sup>4</sup> <i>slipper</i>	der Zins, <i>interest, rent</i>

<sup>1</sup> The singular is sometimes found according to the weak declension.

<sup>2</sup> The plurals Dörne and Dörner also occur.

<sup>3</sup> Also according to the third class in the plural.

<sup>4</sup> Pantoffeln is more colloquial than literary; the regular plural according to the first class is often found in good language.

NOTE. The nouns in spaced type form an exception to rule 66.

**128.** Der Schmerz, *pain*, is declined as follows: der Schmerz, des Schmerzes (*ens*), dem Schmerz, den Schmerz; plural Schmerzen throughout.

**129.** Masculines of Latin origin ending in unaccented *or* follow the strong declension in the singular, and the weak in the plural: Doß tor, Doß torß, Doßto'ren.

NOTE 1. Observe the difference of accent in the singular and plural.

NOTE 2. But Matador', plural Matado're (of Spanish origin); also Major', plural Mayo're, etc.

**130.** A few masculines of Greek origin in *on* usually take *onen* in the plural, the singular being of the strong declension: Dä'mon, Dä'monß, Dämo'nēn.

### Feminines

**131.** No feminines belong to the mixed declension.

## Neuters

**132.** The following neuters are of the **strong** declension in the **singular**, and of the **weak** in the **plural** :

das Auge, <i>eye</i>	das Interess' <i>se, interest</i>
das Bett, <i>bed</i>	das (der) Juwel', <i>jewel</i>
das Ende, <i>end</i>	das Ohr, <i>ear</i>
das Hemd, <i>shirt</i>	das Statut', <i>statute, law</i>
das Insekt', <i>insect</i>	das Weh, <i>pain</i>

**133.** Das Herz is declined as follows: das Herz, des Herzens, dem Herzen, das Herz; plural, Herzen throughout; thus it is like Schmerz (128) except in the dative singular.

## II

**134.** Some nouns have two different forms of the plural with a distinction of signification :

das Band <sup>1</sup>	Bande, <i>bonds, ties</i>	Bänder, <i>ribbons</i>
die Bank	Bänke, <i>benches</i>	Banken, <i>banks</i> (savings banks, etc.)
der Bauer <sup>2</sup>	Bauer, <i>builders</i>	Bauern, <i>peasants</i>
der Bogen <sup>3</sup>	Bogen, <i>sheets</i> (of paper), <i>arches</i>	Bögen, <i>bows</i> (for shooting)
das Denkmal	Denkmale, <i>monuments</i>	Denkmäler (figuratively)
das Ding	Dinge, <i>things</i>	Dinger (contemptuously)
das Gesicht	Gefichte, <i>visions</i>	Gefichter, <i>faces</i>
das Horn	Horne, <i>kinds of horn</i>	Hörner, <i>horns</i> (of animals)
der Laden	Laden, <i>shutters</i>	Läden, <i>stores, shops</i>
das Land	Land, <i>lands, regions</i> (poetically)	Länder, <i>countries</i>
das Licht	Lichte, <i>candles</i>	Lichter, <i>lights</i>
der Mann	Männer, <i>men</i>	Mannen, <i>liegemen</i>
der Mond	Monde, <i>moons</i>	Monden, <i>months</i>
das Tuch	Tuche, <i>kinds of cloth</i>	Tücher, <i>cloths</i>
das Wort	Worte, <i>words</i>	Wörter, <i>vocables</i>
der Zoll	Zölle, <i>inches</i>	Zölle, <i>tolls, customs</i>

<sup>1</sup> Der Band, *volume*, pl. Bände; der Einband, *binding* (of a book), pl. Einbände.

<sup>2</sup> Das Bauer, *bird-cage*, is regularly of the first class, strong declension.

<sup>3</sup> Der Regenbogen, *rainbow*; first class, strong, throughout.

## III

135. State to what declension the following nouns belong, and, if to the strong declension, to what class; give also the reason why:

## GROUP A \*

das Gewitter, <i>thunderstorm</i>	der Mensch, <i>man, human being</i>
der Baum, <i>tree</i>	der König, <i>king</i>
das Blatt, <i>leaf</i>	die Wohltat, <i>benefit, kindness</i>
der Ritter, <i>knight</i>	das Beil, <i>hatchet</i>
die Blume, <i>flower</i>	die Nacht, <i>night</i>
die Trübsal, <i>distress</i>	der Gast, <i>guest</i>
der Hirt, <i>shepherd</i>	der Rand, <i>edge</i>
die Kraft, <i>force</i>	der Knabe, <i>boy</i>
das Schicksal, <i>fate</i>	der Leib, <i>body</i>
der Reichtum, <i>riches</i>	das Gespenst, <i>spectre</i>
das Schwein, <i>swine</i>	das Gebirge, <i>mountain range</i>
das Kindlein, <i>little child</i>	die Hand, <i>hand</i>
der Mann, <i>man</i>	der Fürst, <i>prince</i>
die Tugend, <i>virtue</i>	der Schwager, <i>brother-in-law</i>
das Bild, <i>picture</i>	der Stern, <i>star</i>
der Arm, <i>arm</i>	die Schönheit, <i>beauty</i>
der Geist, <i>spirit, ghost</i>	das Feld, <i>field</i>
der Sattel, <i>saddle</i>	das Haupt, <i>head</i>
die Tochter, <i>daughter</i>	die Frau, <i>woman, wife</i>
der Balken, <i>beam</i>	das Kind, <i>child</i>

## GROUP B

das Kloster, <i>convent</i>	das Mädchen, <i>girl</i>
das Märchen, <i>fairy story</i>	das Gemüt, <i>soul, mind</i>
der Fluß, <i>river</i>	der Gedanke, <i>thought</i>
die Mutter, <i>mother</i>	der Mann, <i>liegeman</i>
die Haut, <i>skin</i>	der Stachel, <i>sting</i>
der Hafen, <i>harbor</i>	der Doktor, <i>doctor</i>
der Wald, <i>forest</i>	das Netz, <i>net</i>
das Zimmer, <i>room</i>	die Rede, <i>speech</i>
die Kuh, <i>cow</i>	die Schlange, <i>serpent</i>

---

\* This list is divided into groups for the benefit of the teacher. The list may be assigned for study as a whole, or in groups.

der Herr, <i>gentleman, master.</i>	die Schnur, <i>string</i>
das Lied, <i>song</i>	das Schiff, <i>ship</i>
der Buchdrucker, <i>printer</i>	die Spur, <i>trace, track</i>
das Buch, <i>book</i>	das Dorf, <i>village</i>
das Weib, <i>woman</i>	das Papier', <i>paper</i>
die Wand, <i>wall</i>	das Kleid, <i>dress</i>
der Graf, <i>count, earl</i>	der Zahn, <i>tooth</i>
das Bad, <i>bath</i>	der Forst, <i>forest</i>
der Soldat', <i>soldier</i>	das Gebiet, <i>domain</i>
der Wurm, <i>worm</i>	das Gemach, <i>apartment</i>

GROUP C

die Löwin, <i>lioness</i>	der Gefelle, <i>companion</i>
der Hund, <i>dog</i>	das Schicksal, <i>fate</i>
die Luft, <i>air</i>	das Gebäude, <i>building</i>
das Taschentuch, <i>handkerchief</i>	die Schule, <i>school</i>
das Grab, <i>grave</i>	der Tag, <i>day</i>
der Käse, <i>cheese</i>	das Auge, <i>eye</i>
der Bauer, <i>peasant</i>	die Bank, <i>bench</i>
das Ohr, <i>ear</i>	der Nachbar, <i>neighbor</i>
das Bett, <i>bed</i>	die Uhr, <i>watch, clock</i>
der Esel, <i>donkey</i>	der Besen, <i>broom</i>

EXERCISE 10

IDIOMATIC PHRASES

1. **Doch**, *though, yet, however*: das Haus ist alt, doch ist es noch stark, *the house is old, yet it is still strong.*

a. With the **imperative**, doch, like French "*donc*," gives the idea of additional emphasis, command or entreaty: bitte, kommen Sie doch! *please do come; pray, come! just come.\**

b. In answer to a question, doch alone, or with ja or nein, is very emphatic: Sie wollen das nicht tun? — Doch! ja doch! *you will not do that? — Oh yes; yes indeed, I will.*

c. Sometimes doch is equivalent to *I trust, I hope*: Sie wissen das doch, *you know that, I trust.*

---

\* This idea is sometimes strengthened by the addition of einmal: sieh doch einmal! *just see (look), do, please!*

d. The meaning of a clause with a strong affirmative *doch* is often best conveyed by changing it to an interrogative-negative clause: *es ist doch wunderschön, is it not wonderfully beautiful?*

2. *Ja*, *yes*, in the middle or at the end of a phrase gives emphasis to the latter; this use of *ja* is especially common in good colloquial German: *Sie sind ja krank, you are ill to be sure*; *er hat es ja schon getan, he has already done it, you know*; *tun Sie das ja, do that by all means*; *er sollte ja mein Schwager werden, he was to become my brother-in-law, don't you know?*

a. The same degree of emphasis is expressed by the phrase *ja nicht*: *Tun Sie das ja nicht, do not do that by any means*; *be sure not to do that.*

3. *Ich möchte, du möchtest, er möchte, wir möchten, ihr möchtet, (Sie) sie möchten*, preterit subjunctive of *mögen* (Exercise 14, I, page 128).

The common idiomatic meaning is *I should like to*, etc.

The infinitive depending on *möchte* is not preceded by *zu*: *wir möchten es sehen, we should like to see it.*

#### VOCABULARY 10 a

allerlei, *all kinds of.*

der andere (sing.), *the other.*

die andern (plur.), *the others.*

der Apfelbaum, *apple-tree.*

Asien, *Asia.*

beide, *both.*

befessen (past part. of *besitzen*, *possess, own*).

bezahlen, *pay.*

daher, *therefore.*

früher, *formerly; before* (adverb).

das Gedicht, *poem.*

gefochten (past part. of *fechten*, *fight*).

geschlossen (past part. of *schließen*, *close*).

die Großmutter, *grandmother.*

das Gut, *estate.*

das Heer, *army.*

der Kaiser, *emperor.*

kosten, *cost.*

die Krankheit, *disease.*

der Nachmittag, *afternoon.*

die Sehkraft, *power of vision.*

der Sonntag, *Sunday.*

das Stück, *piece* (of).

schwächer, *weaker.*

tapfersten (superlative of *tapfer*, *brave*), *bravest.*

unglücklich, *unhappy.*

verkaufen, *sell.*

verloren (past part. of *verlieren*, *lose*).

wissen, *know.*

## TRANSLATION 10 a

A. 1. Die zwei Schwestern<sup>1</sup> des Bauers möchten das Stück Land kaufen, welches ihre Vorfahren früher besessen hatten. 2. Sie wissen doch, daß<sup>2</sup> unseres Nachbars Sohn die Zinsen nicht bezahlen konnte<sup>2</sup> und daß daher sein Gut verkauft wurde. 3. Bitte, kaufen Sie doch die vier Bände von Göthes Gedichten; viel<sup>3</sup> kosten sie ja nicht. 4. Haben Ihre Vettern die Bänder gefunden,<sup>4</sup> welche sie verloren hatten? 5. Gestern waren die Banken geschlossen, da<sup>5</sup> es Sonntag war. 6. Wir und unsere Nachbarn saßen<sup>6</sup> den ganzen<sup>7</sup> Nachmittag lang<sup>8</sup> auf den Bänken im Garten unter<sup>9</sup> den Apfelbäumen. 7. Die Bauern sagten, sie brauchten<sup>1</sup> Handschuhe<sup>10</sup> und auch allerlei Luche für ihre Familien. 8. Die Mannen im Heere des Kaisers waren die tapfersten Männer, welche während<sup>10</sup> des Krieges in Asien gefochten hatten. 9. Wir, Bürger<sup>11</sup> dieses Staates, können<sup>11</sup> auf unsere Freiheit<sup>11</sup> stolz<sup>11</sup> sein; die Untertanen in manchen andern Staaten sind sehr unglücklich. 10. Sehen Sie nicht, daß die Sehkraft eines Auges unserer Großmutter immer<sup>12</sup> schwächer wird? mein Vater hatte beide Augen während<sup>10</sup> seiner Krankheit verloren.

<sup>1</sup> Vocabulary 3 b, p. 29. <sup>2</sup> Id., 2, p. 22. <sup>3</sup> Id., 3 a, p. 28. <sup>4</sup> Id., 9 b, p. 68. <sup>5</sup> Id., 5 b, p. 40. <sup>6</sup> saßen = sat, were sitting. <sup>7</sup> Vocabulary 6 b, p. 48. <sup>8</sup> Id., 9 a, p. 66. <sup>9</sup> Cf. Exercise 7, 3 a, p. 52. <sup>10</sup> Vocabulary 4 b, p. 35. <sup>11</sup> Id., 4 a, p. 34. <sup>12</sup> Repeat the comparative and omit immer: immer besser, better and better.

B. 1. I should like to speak (sprechen) to (mit) the peasants who bought the piece of land our cousins<sup>1</sup> had formerly owned. 2. My neighbors went to (gingen in) the city and paid the interest on (an, with dative) the money which they had borrowed (borgen). 3. Your estate was sold, was it not? 4. Yes, and the two banks of our city bought it. 5. How many volumes of (von) Schiller's works (Werk, n.) would you like to buy? 6. I should like to have all (alle) his poems; surely they cannot cost much. 7. The German



(deutsche) confederation (Bund, m.) was formed (bilden) by the various states after the downfall (Sturz, m.) of Napoleon; four free (freie) imperial cities<sup>2</sup> belonged (gehören) to it (dazu).

8. My father's eyes are getting<sup>3</sup> weaker and weaker; our mother has lost the power<sup>4</sup> of vision in (auf, with dative) one eye during her illness. 9. Pray give (to) those neighbors these towels (Handtuch, n.) and bedclothes<sup>5</sup>; they need them for their families, they are so poor, you know. 10. The bravest men in the army were not the proud (stolzen) liegemen of the king, but (sondern) the peasants who had fought for<sup>6</sup> their freedom during the war.

<sup>1</sup> Relative pronouns cannot be omitted in German. Use here the definite article for the relative pronoun. <sup>2</sup> Imperial city, Reichsstadt, f. <sup>3</sup> Cf. Exercise 4, 5 a, p. 33. <sup>4</sup> Order of words: *during her illness the power of vision in one eye.* <sup>5</sup> bedcloth, Bettuch, n. <sup>6</sup> Order of words: *during the war for their freedom.*

## VOCABULARY 10 b

beinahe, almost.

bleiben, remain, stay.

darin, therein (in it, in them).

eben, } just (adverb).  
soeben, }

elf, eleven.

empfind (pret. of empfinden), feel, experience.

fühlen, feel.

geben, give.

der Grund, ground, bottom; reason.

nach Hause, home, homeward; zu Hause, at home.

die Hoffnung, hope.

die Magd, maid, servant.

oft, often.

ohne, without.

die Palme, palm-tree.

die Rose, rose.

die Sache, affair, matter, thing.

sahen (1st and 3d person plural, pret. of sehen), saw.

sanken (1st and 3d person plural, pret. of sinken, sink, fall).

die Schweiz, Switzerland.

die Sonne, sun.

spät, late.

das Ufer, shore, bank.

unheilbar, incurable.

vergeffen, forget (past. part. vergesssen, forgotten).

## TRANSLATION 10 b

A. 1. Es ist jetzt<sup>1</sup> beinahe elf Uhr und Zeit<sup>1</sup> zu Bett zu gehen,<sup>2</sup> nicht wahr? 2. Die Mägde haben doch die Betten gemacht<sup>3</sup>? wir sagten<sup>4</sup> ihnen heute<sup>4</sup> morgen, daß sie nicht genug<sup>1</sup>

arbeiten. 3. Den Schmerz, welchen unsere Mutter bei der Nachricht<sup>5</sup> von der Krankheit<sup>6</sup> ihres Vaters empfand, werden wir lang(e)<sup>7</sup> nicht vergessen. 4. Solche<sup>8</sup> Schmerzen sind oft unheilbar; sie bleiben in des Herzens Grunde. 5. Es kam<sup>9</sup> mir zu Ohren,<sup>10</sup> daß die Bauern in unseren Dörfern<sup>11</sup> mit ihren Nachbarn einen Streit<sup>9</sup> gehabt hatten. 6. Sie haben wohl gehört,<sup>12</sup> daß die Nachrichten<sup>5</sup> über<sup>13</sup> solche Sachen gewöhnlich<sup>3</sup> ganz<sup>14</sup> falsch<sup>5</sup> sind. 7. Bitte, geben Sie mir doch die Zeitungen,<sup>3</sup> welche Sie eben auf den Tisch gelegt<sup>2</sup> haben. 8. Am Ufer des Sees standen<sup>2</sup> herrliche<sup>15</sup> Palmen. 9. Die Knaben fühlten die Stacheln des Dornes. 10. Keine Rose ohne Dornen. 11. Herrliche Seen sahen wir in der Schweiz. 12. Die Strahlen der Sonne sanken, doch wir, wir sahen keinen<sup>16</sup> Strahl von Hoffnung für<sup>17</sup> uns darin.

<sup>1</sup> Vocabulary 4 b, p. 35. <sup>2</sup> Id., 7 a, p. 52. <sup>3</sup> Id., 9 b, p. 68. <sup>4</sup> Id., 2, p. 22. <sup>5</sup> Id., 3 b, p. 29. <sup>6</sup> Id., 10 a, p. 76. <sup>7</sup> Id., 9 a, p. 66. <sup>8</sup> Cf. Exercise 3, 2, p. 26. <sup>9</sup> Vocabulary 6 a, p. 47. <sup>10</sup> mir zu Ohren = zu meinen Ohren. <sup>11</sup> Vocabulary 8 a, p. 60. <sup>12</sup> Id., 3 a, p. 28. <sup>13</sup> über = about. <sup>14</sup> Vocabulary 6 b, p. 48. <sup>15</sup> Id., 8 b, p. 62. <sup>16</sup> Cf. Exercise 3, 3, p. 26. <sup>17</sup> Cf. Exercise 6, 5, p. 46.

B. 1. It came to our ears that you do not work enough; you will forget the little (das Wenige) [that] (daß) you have learned. 2. Do tell the maids that they must<sup>1</sup> make our beds at once (sofort); it is almost<sup>2</sup> ten (zehn) o'clock now. 3. Where (Wo) are the newspapers? I had just laid them<sup>3</sup> on the chair. 4. The reports which you heard about the emperor's (Kaiser) illness are false. 5. The lakes in Switzerland are beautiful (schön); on their shores lie<sup>4</sup> many magnificent forests. 6. You have forgotten why (warum) I felt such pains<sup>5</sup> at (bei) the report of (von) our neighbor's death (Tod, m.). 7. Will you remain here while (während) I go (gehe) home? 8. Pray give us the reasons why you see so many rays<sup>6</sup> of hope in the reports of our friends.

<sup>1</sup> must, müssen, at the end of the clause after make. <sup>2</sup> Order of words: now almost ten o'clock. <sup>3</sup> just after them. <sup>4</sup> lie, liegen. <sup>5</sup> such pains before felt. <sup>6</sup> Order of words: in the reports of our friends so many rays of hope.

## LESSON XI

## AUXILIARY VERBS

## Conjugation

NOTE. For the sake of convenience the complete conjugation of *haben*, *sein* and *werden* will be given now.

136. Conjugation of *haben*, *have*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS : *haben*, *hatte*, *gehabt*.

## INDICATIVE

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

## Singular

1. *ich habe, I have*
2. *du hast, thou hast*
3. *er hat, he has*

## Singular

- ich habe, I may have \**
- du habest, thou mayest have*
- er hab e, he may have*

## Plural

1. *wir haben, we have*
2. *ihr habt, you have*
3. *sie (Sie) haben, they (you) may have*

## Plural

- wir haben, we may have*
- ihr hab e t, you may have*
- sie (Sie) haben, they (you) may have*

## PRETERIT

## Singular

1. *ich hatte, I had, etc.*
2. *du hattest*
3. *er hatte*

## Singular

- ich hätte, I might have,\* etc.*
- du hättest*
- er hätte*

## Plural

1. *wir hatten*
2. *ihr hättet*
3. *sie hatten*

## Plural

- wir hätten*
- ihr hättet*
- sie hätten*

## FUTURE

## Singular

1. *ich werde haben, I shall have*
2. *du wirst " thou wilt have*
3. *er wird " he will have*

## Singular

- ich werde haben, I shall have*
- du werdest " thou shalt have*
- er werde " he shall have*

\* *May* and *might* give only one of the various renderings of the subjunctive.

Plural			Plural		
1. wir werden <i>haben</i> , <i>we shall have</i>			wir werden <i>haben</i>		
2. ihr werdet " <i>you will have</i>			ihr werdet "		
3. sie werden " <i>they will have</i>			sie werden "		

PERFECT

Singular			Singular		
1. ich habe gehabt, <i>I have had</i> , etc.			ich habe gehabt, <i>I may have had</i> ,* etc.		
2. du hast "			du hab e st "		
3. er hat "			er hab e "		
Plural			Plural		
1. wir haben gehabt			wir haben gehabt		
2. ihr habt "			ihr hab e t "		
3. sie haben "			sie haben "		

PLUPERFECT

Singular			Singular		
1. ich hatte gehabt, <i>I had had</i> , etc.			ich h ä t t e gehabt, <i>I might have had</i> ,* etc.		
2. du hättest "			du hättest "		
3. er hatte "			er hätte "		
Plural			Plural		
1. wir hätten gehabt			wir hätten gehabt,		
2. ihr hättet "			ihr hättet "		
3. sie hätten "			sie hätten "		

FUTURE PERFECT

Singular			Singular		
1. ich werde gehabt haben, <i>I shall have had</i> , etc.			ich werde gehabt haben, <i>I shall have had</i> , etc.		
2. du w i r s t gehabt haben			du w e r d e s t gehabt haben		
3. er w i r d " "			er w e r d e " "		
Plural			Plural		
1. wir werden gehabt haben,			wir werden gehabt haben,		
2. ihr werdet " "			ihr werdet " "		
3. sie werden " "			sie werden " "		

\* Cf. footnote, p. 8a

## CONDITIONAL PRESENT

**Singular**

1. ich würde haben, *I should have*
2. du würdest " *thou wouldst have, etc.*
3. er würde " "

**Plural**

1. wir würden haben
2. ihr würdet " "
3. sie würden " "

## CONDITIONAL PAST

**Singular**

- ich würde gehabt haben, *I should have had, etc.*
- du würdest gehabt haben
- er würde " "

**Plural**

- wir würden gehabt haben
- ihr würdet " "
- sie würden " "

## IMPERATIVE

**Singular**

1. —
2. habe, habe (du), *have (thou)*
3. habe er, er habe, *let him have*

**Plural**

- haben wir, *let us have*
- habt, habt (ihr), *have (you)*
- haben sie, *let them have*

## INFINITIVE

## PRESENT

(zu) haben, *(to) have*

## PERFECT

gehabt (zu) haben, *(to) have had*

## PARTICIPLE

habend, *having*

## PAST

gehabt, *had*137. Conjugation of *sein*, *be*.PRINCIPAL PARTS : *sein*, *war*, *gewesen*.

## INDICATIVE

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

**Singular**

1. ich bin, *I am*
2. du bist, *thou art*
3. er ist, *he is*

**Singular**

- ich sei, *I may be\**
- du seiest
- er sei

\* Cf. footnote, p. 80.

Plural	Plural
1. wir sind, <i>we are</i>	wir seien
2. ihr seid, <i>you are</i>	ihr seiet
3. sie (Sie) sind, <i>they (you) are</i>	sie seien

PRETERIT

Singular	Singular
1. ich war, <i>I was</i>	ich wäre, <i>I might be,* etc.</i>
2. du warst, <i>thou wast</i>	du wärest
3. er war, <i>he was</i>	er wäre

Plural	Plural
1. wir waren, <i>we were</i>	wir wären
2. ihr waret, <i>you were</i>	ihr wäret
3. sie waren, <i>they were</i>	sie wären

FUTURE

Singular	Singular
1. ich werde sein, <i>I shall be</i>	ich werde sein, <i>I shall be</i>
2. du wirst " <i>thou wilt be</i>	du werdest sein, <i>thou shalt be</i>
3. er wird " <i>he will be</i>	er werde " <i>he shall be,</i> etc.

Plural	Plural
1. wir werden sein, <i>we shall be</i>	wir werden sein
2. ihr werdet " <i>you will be</i>	ihr werdet "
3. sie werden " <i>they will be</i>	sie werden "

PERFECT

Singular	Singular
1. ich bin gewesen, <i>I have been,</i> etc.	ich sei gewesen, <i>I may have</i> <i>been,* etc.</i>
2. du bist "	du seiest gewesen
3. er ist "	er sei "
Plural	Plural
1. wir sind gewesen	wir seien gewesen
2. ihr seid "	ihr seiet "
3. sie sind "	sie seien "

\* Cf. footnote, p. 80.

## PLUPERFECT

**Singular**

1. ich war gewesen, *I had been*  
 2. du warst       "  
 3. er war         "

**Singular**

- ich wäre gewesen, *I might have been,\* etc.*  
 du wärest gewesen  
 er wäre         "

**Plural**

1. wir waren gewesen  
 2. ihr waret       "  
 3. sie waren       "

**Plural**

- wir wären gewesen  
 ihr wäret       "  
 sie wären       "

## FUTURE PERFECT

**Singular**

1. ich werde gewesen sein,  
     *I shall have been, etc.*  
 2. du wirst gewesen sein  
 3. er wird       "       "

**Singular**

- ich werde gewesen sein, *I shall have been, etc.*  
 du werdest gewesen sein  
 er werde       "       "

**Plural**

1. wir werden gewesen sein  
 2. ihr werdet       "       "  
 3. sie werden       "       "

**Plural**

- wir werden gewesen sein  
 ihr werdet       "       "  
 sie werden       "       "

## CONDITIONAL PRESENT

**Singular**

1. ich würde sein, *I should be*  
 2. du würdest       "   *thou wouldst be, etc.*  
 3. er würde       "       "

## CONDITIONAL PAST

**Singular**

- ich würde gewesen sein, *I should have been, etc.*  
 du würdest gewesen sein  
 er würde       "       "

**Plural**

1. wir würden sein  
 2. ihr würdet       "  
 3. sie würden       "

**Plural**

- wir würden gewesen sein  
 ihr würdet       "       "  
 sie würden       "       "

## IMPERATIVE

**Singular**

1. ———  
 2. sei, sei (du), *be (thou)*  
 3. sei, sei er, *let him be*

**Plural**

- seien wir, *let us be*  
 seiet (ihr), *be (you)*  
 seien sie, *let them be*

---

\* Cf. foot-note, page 80.

PRESENT		INFINITIVE	PAST
(zu) <i>sein</i> (to) <i>be</i>		<i>gewesen</i> (zu) <i>sein</i> (to) <i>have been</i>	
PARTICIPLE			
<i>seiend, being</i>		<i>gewesen, been</i>	

### 138. Conjugation of *werden, become*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS : *werden, ward or wurde, geworden*.

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
PRESENT			
Singular		Singular	
1. <i>ich werde, I become, etc.</i>		<i>ich werde, I may become, etc.</i>	
2. <i>du wirst</i>		<i>du werdest</i>	
3. <i>er wird</i>		<i>er werde</i>	
Plural		Plural	
1. <i>wir werden</i>		<i>wir werden</i>	
2. <i>ihr werdet</i>		<i>ihr werdet</i>	
3. <i>sie werden</i>		<i>sie werden</i>	
PRETERIT			
Singular		Singular	
1. <i>ich wurde or ward, I became, etc.</i>		<i>ich würde, I might become, etc.</i>	
2. <i>du wurdest or wardst</i>		<i>du würdest</i>	
3. <i>er wurde or ward</i>		<i>er würde</i>	
Plural		Plural	
1. <i>wir wurden</i>		<i>wir würden</i>	
2. <i>ihr wurdet</i>		<i>ihr würdet</i>	
3. <i>sie wurden</i>		<i>sie würden</i>	
FUTURE			
Singular		Singular	
1. <i>ich werde werden, I shall become, etc.</i>		<i>ich werde werden, I shall become, etc.</i>	
2. <i>du wirst</i> "		<i>du werdest</i> "	
3. <i>er wird</i> "		<i>er werde</i> "	



Plural	
1. wir werden werden	
2. ihr werdet	"
3. sie werden	"

Plural	
wir werden werden	
ihr werdet	"
sie werden	"

## PERFECT

Singular	
1. ich bin geworden, <i>I have become</i>	
2. du bist	"
3. er ist	"

Singular	
ich sei geworden, <i>I may have become, etc.</i>	
du seiest geworden	
er sei	"

Plural	
1. wir sind geworden	
2. ihr seid	"
3. sie sind	"

Plural	
wir seien geworden	
ihr seiet	"
sie seien	"

## PLUPERFECT

Singular	
1. ich war geworden, <i>I had become, etc.</i>	
2. du warst	"
3. er war	"

Singular	
ich wäre geworden, <i>I might have become, etc.</i>	
du wärest geworden	
er wäre	"

Plural	
1. wir waren geworden	
2. ihr wäret	"
3. sie waren	"

Plural	
wir wären geworden	
ihr wäret	"
sie wären	"

## FUTURE PERFECT

Singular	
1. ich werde geworden sein, <i>I shall have become, etc.</i>	
2. du wirst geworden sein	
3. er wird	" "

Singular	
ich werde geworden sein, <i>I shall have become, etc.</i>	
du werdest geworden sein	
er werde	" "

Plural	
1. wir werden geworden sein,	
2. ihr werdet	" "
3. sie werden	" "

Plural	
wir werden geworden sein	
ihr werdet	" "
sie werden	" "

CONDITIONAL PRESENT

**Singular**

1. *ich* würde werden, *I should become*, etc.
2. *du* würdest "
3. *er* würde "

**Plural**

1. *wir* würden werden
2. *ihr* würdet "
3. *sie* würden "

CONDITIONAL PAST

**Singular**

- ich* würde geworden sein, *I should have become*, etc.
- du* würdest geworden sein
- er* würde " "

**Plural**

- wir* würden geworden sein
- ihr* würdet " "
- sie* würden " "

IMPERATIVE

**Singular**

1. —
2. *werde*, *werde* (*du*), *become* (*thou*)
3. *werde* *er*, *er werde*, *let him become*

**Plural**

- werden wir*, *let us become*
- werdet*, *werdet* (*ihr*), *become* (*you*)
- werden sie*, *let them become*

INFINITIVE

PRESENT

(*zu*) werden (*to*) *become*

PERFECT

geworden (*zu*) sein, (*to*) *have become*

PARTICIPLE

*werdend*, *becoming*

PAST

*geworden*, *become*

REMARKS ON THE CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERBS

**Haben**

**139.** 1. The second and third person singular of the present indicative and the whole preterit of *haben* have contracted forms: *hast*, *hat*, *hatte* for the older forms „*hāst*, *habeſt*“; „*hāt*, *habet*“; „*hāte*, *habete*.“

2. The preterite subjunctive in taking the umlaut (*hätte*, etc.) is irregular, since the umlaut as a rule belongs only to verbs of the strong conjugation (159, 2), to the modal auxiliaries and to *wissen* (Lesson 14); otherwise *haben* is conjugated like a verb of the weak conjugation (160.)

**Sein**

**140.** The irregularity of *sein*, like that of the corresponding verbs in other languages, ancient and modern, is due to the fact that its conjugation is made up of forms from **different** roots.

a. The preterit (*war, wäre*) and the past participle (*gewesen*) are from the same root as English *was, were*. The forms *bin, bist* are from the same root as *be, being, been*. The other forms are from the same root as *am*.

### Werden

**141.** At an earlier period of the language, in many verbs of the strong conjugation the radical vowel of the preterit singular was different from that in the plural. The verb *werden* is the only one that has retained this peculiarity; *ward* being the old form. *Wurde* is of recent origin, and is formed after the analogy of the plural *wurden*. *Wurde* is generally used as the auxiliary of another verb. *Ward* is preferable to *wurde* when *werden* occurs as an independent verb (meaning *become, grow*, etc.); *ward* is also oftener found than *wurde*, when a more dignified style is desired.

a. *Werden* is conjugated like a strong verb of the second class, third group (like *werfen, warf, geworfen*, 199, a).

b. For change of vowel in *wirst, wird* cf. 190, 1.

c. When used as auxiliary in the **passive**, the past participle is *worden*, not *geworden*.

**142.** *Haben, sein* and *werden* frequently occur as independent verbs.

### Auxiliary Verbs

#### USE OF *haben* AND *sein* AS AUXILIARIES.

**143.** The auxiliary *haben* is used with

1. **All transitive verbs**, including the reflexives (**Lesson 24**) and the modal auxiliaries (**Lesson 14**).

2. All intransitive verbs, **except** those given in **144**.

**144.** The auxiliary *sein* is used with

1. **Intransitive** verbs expressing or implying a change or transition from one place to another, or from one condition or state to another; as, for instance, verbs of motion: *gehen, go*; *kommen, come*; *laufen* or *rennen, run*; *reiten, ride* (on horseback), or verbs like *verschwinden, disappear*; *sterben, die*; *geschehen, happen*; *erscheinen, appear*; *werden, become, turn to*.

2. **Intransitive** verbs denoting a continuance of a state or condition: *bleiben, remain*; *sein, be*.

3. A few other intransitives and some impersonal verbs :  
 gedeihen, *thrive* ; glücken, *turn out well* ; gelingen, *succeed*.

**145.** The auxiliary *haben* or *sein* may be used with several verbs of motion ; *haben*, when merely the **act** of motion is considered ; *sein*, when the **state** or **condition** resulting from that act is had in view : er hat gesprungen, *he has leaped* (has been in the act of leaping) ; er ist vom Tisch auf den Boden gesprungen, *he has leaped from the table on the floor* (he is on the floor now, as a result of his leaping).

### EXERCISE 11

1. The **infinitive active** with *zu* is used after *sein*, *be*, and *stehen*, *stand*, in the sense of an infinitive **passive** : es ist zu erwarten, *it is to be expected* ; es steht nicht zu ändern, *it cannot be changed*.

2. The **present** tense is used in **German** for the **English perfect** to denote a condition or action that began in the past and continues into the present : er ist seit drei Tagen auf dem Lande, *he has been in the country three days* (he is in the country since three days).

3. The **subjunctive** is used to express various relations, and therefore its rendering into English depends much upon the connection ; the translation "**may**" and "**might**," given in the paradigms, conveys but **one** of the different meanings of the subjunctive.

4. In a **conditional** sentence the condition and the conclusion are generally expressed by the subjunctive (or sometimes by the conditional), if the condition is not taken as true or real, and the conclusion is therefore contrary to fact : wenn er es gewesen wäre, würde alles anders geworden sein (wäre alles anders geworden) *if it had been he* (but it was not he), *everything would have turned out differently* ; wenn er es mir gesagt hätte, wäre ich sogleich zu ihm gekommen (würde ich . . . gekommen sein), *if he had told me* (but he did not tell me) *I should have come to him at once*.

5. The condition or conclusion may not be expressed, but can be implied from the context in various ways: er hätte mir geschrieben, aber er war sehr krank, *he would have written to me, but he was very ill*; instead of *if he had not been very ill*.

6. An **infinitive** depending upon any other verb, or upon a noun, an adjective or a preposition (only *um, in order*; *ohne, without*; *statt or anstatt, instead*) is placed at the **end of its own clause** in the **normal order**: ich wünschte ihn zu sehen, *I wished to see him*; er soll das ganze Geheimniß verraten haben, *he is said to have betrayed the whole secret*; wir hatten keine Lust ihn noch einmal zu besuchen, *we had no desire to visit him once more*; seine Freunde waren bereit ihm zu Hilfe zu kommen, *his friends were ready to come to his help*; er tat es, um seine große Macht zu zeigen, *he did it to show his great power*.

7. The **same** construction prevails in the **inverted order**, unless the **infinitive** be itself placed, for emphasis, at the beginning of **its own clause**: ihn wünschte ich zu sehen; das ganze Geheimniß soll er verraten haben; ihn noch einmal zu besuchen hatten wir keine Lust; but zu befehlen kam ich hier, nicht zu gehorchen, *I came here to command, not to obey*.

8. In the **transposed order** the **infinitive** precedes the verb on which it depends, or, in other words, the **governing verb** stands **last**, and the infinitive last but one: da ich ihn zu sehen wünschte; weil er das ganze Geheimniß verraten haben soll.

#### VOCABULARY II a

ankamen, (they) arrived.  
 die Aufgabe, lesson, theme.  
 auswendig lernen, learn by heart.  
 beehren, honor.  
 der Dienst, service.  
 der erste, first.  
 das Feld, field.  
 fleißig, industrious(ly).  
 der Frost, frost.  
 die Geschichte, history.  
 das Hotel, hotel, inn.

hübsch, nice, pretty.  
 lesen über (at universities) give lectures on.  
 das Meeresufer, seashore.  
 der Morgen, morning.  
 müssen, must.  
 obgleich, although.  
 pünktlicher, more punctual  
 warten (auf), wait (for).  
 der Zweck, aim, purpose.

## TRANSLATION II a

A. 1. Die Schüler hätten wohl <sup>1</sup> Zeit <sup>2</sup> gehabt, ihre Aufgaben auswendig zu lernen, aber sie hatten keine Lust <sup>3</sup> zu arbeiten. 2. Es wäre sehr hübsch von Ihnen <sup>4</sup> gewesen, wenn Sie uns mit einem Besuch <sup>5</sup> beehrt hätten. 3. Wer sind die Herren, welche gestern Abend in unserem Hotel ankamen? 4. Wo sind Sie denn so lang gewesen? Ich habe schon ein paar Stunden <sup>6</sup> auf Sie gewartet. 5. Wenn Sie in meinem Dienst bleiben <sup>7</sup> wollen, müssen Sie pünktlicher sein; sonst kann <sup>8</sup> ich Sie nicht brauchen.<sup>8</sup> 6. Die Professoren, welche auf unserer Universität über Geschichte lesen, sind schon seit vielen Jahren in der Stadt. 7. Das Gut,<sup>9</sup> welches jetzt zu verkaufen <sup>9</sup> ist, gehörte <sup>10</sup> früher dem Grafen. 8. Diese Bauern <sup>11</sup> denken, sie werden bald <sup>2</sup> reich werden; sie haben ihr Land am Meeresufer sehr teuer <sup>12</sup> verkauft. 9. Ihre Vorfahren sind sehr arm gewesen, obschon sie immer fleißig gearbeitet <sup>13</sup> hatten. 10. Da <sup>14</sup> ward aus Abend <sup>14</sup> und Morgen der erste Tag. 11. Es wird Winter; die Tage sind schon sehr kurz und kalt <sup>2</sup>; gestern hat der Frost die Felder bedeckt.<sup>10</sup> 12. Wenn er nicht krank <sup>14</sup> gewesen wäre, hätten wir unseren Zweck erreicht.<sup>14</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Exercise 9, 3 b, p. 66. <sup>2</sup> Vocabulary 4 b, p. 35. <sup>3</sup> Id., 7 b, p. 54. <sup>4</sup> von Ihnen (*from you*), *on your part*. <sup>5</sup> Vocabulary 5 b, p. 40. <sup>6</sup> Id., 9 b, p. 68. <sup>7</sup> Id., 10 b, p. 78. <sup>8</sup> Id., 3 b, p. 29. <sup>9</sup> Id., 10 a, p. 76, and Exercise 11, 1, p. 89. <sup>10</sup> Id., 8 a, p. 61. <sup>11</sup> Cf. 127. <sup>12</sup> Vocabulary 5 a, p. 59. <sup>13</sup> Id., 4 a, p. 34. <sup>14</sup> Id., 6 b, p. 48.

B. 1. If you had had more (*mehr*) desire to work, you would <sup>1</sup> have found (*gefunden*) time, I am sure, to learn your lesson by heart. 2. The professor honored you with his visit. 3. Please tell me who (*wer*) the gentlemen are that arrived this (*heute*) morning. 4. The students have waited long for the professors who will give lectures on the history of Germany <sup>2</sup> at our university. 5. Although these peasants have been in that city many days, they have <sup>1</sup>

not yet<sup>3</sup> sold their lands on the seashore. 6. Do you think your ancestors had become rich<sup>4</sup> so soon? They would have become very poor, if they had not worked so industriously. 7. That house is to be sold; will you buy it? No, it is too dear (teuer). 8. If you cannot<sup>5</sup> be more punctual, you<sup>1</sup> cannot remain in our service. 9. If you had attained your purposes, you<sup>1</sup> would not have become so discontented (unzufrieden). 10. Do you see how (wie) the frost has covered our fields? The night<sup>6</sup> has been so cold, has it not?

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Exercise 4, 3 a, Note, p. 33. <sup>2</sup> Germany, Deutschland. <sup>3</sup> not yet before sold. <sup>4</sup> Order of words: so soon (bald) rich. <sup>5</sup> can, können. <sup>6</sup> night, Nacht, f.

## LESSON XII

### VERBS

**NOTE.** As no complete sentences can be formed without verbs, the subject of conjugation had to be anticipated, at least in part, in the previous Exercises.

The indicative of the present, preterit, perfect, pluperfect and the conditional present of loben, together with remarks on the formation of these tenses and moods, as well as the complete conjugation of haben, sein and werden have been given above.

Thus the present Lesson is not so long as it appears to be.

**146.** Verbs are divided into **transitive** (active) and **intransitive** (neuter); a verb admitting a direct object is called transitive; otherwise, it is intransitive: er fällte den Baum, *he felled the tree*; der Baum fiel, *the tree fell*; ich gedachte des Freundes, *I remembered the friend*; wir begegneten ihr, *we met her*.

Transitive verbs may be used in the **passive voice**; the **accusative** of the active voice becomes the **nominative** of the passive: der Baum wurde von ihm gefällt, *the tree was felled by him*.

Verbs may be **simple** or **compound**, the composition generally takes place by the aid of certain prefixes: hören, *hear*; zuhören, *listen*.

## INFLECTION OF VERBS

## WEAK AND STRONG CONJUGATIONS, SIMPLE FORMS

## 147. Principal Parts.

Three forms of the verb are called the principal parts, because, when they are known, the other forms can be derived from them; these are the **infinitive present active**, the **first person singular preterit** (past tense), and the **past participle**: loben, lobte, gelobt; schreiben, schrieb, geschrieben.

a. The **infinitive** always ends in **n** and almost always in **en**. Infinitives **not** ending in **en** are sein, tun and those consisting of roots of more than one syllable with final **l** or **r**: handeln, plündern.

b. By dropping the final **n** or **en** of the infinitive, we obtain the root of the verb: lob-en, schreib-en, handel-n; plünder-n.

c. Sein is an irregular verb.

148. If the **first person of the preterit indicative** adds **te** or **ete** to the root, the verb belongs to the **weak** conjugation. Its past participle ends in **t** or **et**: folg-en, folg-te, gefolg-t; red-en, red-ete, gered-et.

149. If the **first person singular of the preterit indicative** is formed by a change of the root-vowel without any added ending, the verb belongs to the **strong** conjugation. Its past participle ends in **en**: schreiben, schrieb, geschrieb-en.

150. The past participle takes the prefix **ge**.

## Exceptions are :

1. The verbs with the foreign ending **ieren**: passieren, passierte, passiert; buchstabieren, buchstabierte, buchstabiert, *spell*; all these are of the weak conjugation.

2. Verbs compounded with the inseparable prefixes **be**, **ent**, **emp**, **er**, **ge**, **ver** and **zer**: besuchen, besuchte, besucht.



3. Werden, as auxiliary of the passive: *ich bin gelobt worden*, *I have been praised*.

4. For the modal auxiliaries, cf. 168.

5. A few other verbs, as *prophezeien*, *prophecy*.

**151.** The **present participle** is formed by adding *d* to the infinitive: *loben-d*; *schreiben-d*.

a. The only exceptions are *tuend*, *seiend*, from *tun*, *sein*.

**152. Imperative.** 1. The **second person singular** adds *e* to the root, without changing the radical vowel, in all verbs: *lob-e*; *schreib-e*.

**Exceptions are :**

a. Verbs of the **strong conjugation** changing the radical vowel *e* of the infinitive to *i* or *ie* in the second and third person singular of the present indicative (194), retain the vowel *i* or *ie*, but reject the ending *e*: *hilf* from *helfen* (*du hilfst*, *er hilft*); *sprich* from *sprechen* (*du sprichst*, *er spricht*).

b. The ending *e* **may** be omitted in other **strong verbs**: *komm*, *schlaf*, *lauf* (*kommen*, *schlafen*, *laufen*).

c. Even in verbs of the **weak conjugation**, it is sometimes dropped, with or without an apostrophe: *folg* or *folg'* (*folgen*).

d. For further remarks on the imperative in **strong verbs**, cf. 183, 191.

2. The **second person plural** is the same as the second person plural of the present indicative: *lobt*, *redet*, *spricht*, *glaubt*.

3. The **third person singular** and the **first and third persons plural** of the **subjunctive present** fill up the defective conjugation of the imperative. In the third person singular, the personal pronoun **may** stand before the verb; but usually, and in the first and third persons plural always, it **follows** the verb: *es werde Licht*, *let there be light*; *geben wir den Leuten ein Beispiel*, *let us set (give) an example for the people*.

*a.* The **third person plural** with *Sie* is used in polite conversation : *Sagen Sie mir, tell me.*

### Compound Forms

**153.** The **perfect** and **pluperfect** tenses, indicative and subjunctive, are formed respectively with the present and preterit of *haben* or *sein* and the **past participle** of the principal verb : *Ich habe, hatte gehört, I have, had heard ; ich bin (war) gegangen, I have (had) gone.*

*a.* As to the modal auxiliaries, cf. **168**, 1.

**154.** The **infinitive perfect** is formed by placing the **past participle** of the principal verb **before** the present infinitive of the auxiliaries *haben* or *sein* : *gehört haben, (to) have heard ; gekommen sein, (to) have come.*

**155.** The **future** tense, indicative and subjunctive, is formed with the present of the auxiliary *werden* and the **infinitive present** of the principal verb : *ich werde gehen, I shall go.*

**156.** The **future perfect**, indicative and subjunctive, is formed with the present of *werden* and the **infinitive perfect** of the principal verb : *wir werden gehört haben.*

**157.** The **conditional present** is formed with the subjunctive preterit of *werden* and the **infinitive present** of the principal verb : *ich würde hören, I should hear.*

**158.** The **conditional past** is formed with the subjunctive preterit of *werden* and the **infinitive perfect** of the principal verb : *ich würde gehört haben, I should have heard ; sie würden gegangen sein, they would have gone.*

**159.** The endings to be added to the root of the verb in the **simple** tenses are :

## PRESENT

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
WEAK AND STRONG		WEAK AND STRONG	
Sing.	1. -e		-e
	2. -(e)ft		-eft
	3. -(e)t		-e
Plur.	1. -en(n)		-en(n)
	2. -(e)t		-et
	3. -en(n)		-en(n)

## PRETERIT

	WEAK	STRONG	WEAK	STRONG
Sing. 1.	-(e)te	—	Same as indicative preterit	Umlaut when possible ent junctive present
2.	-(e)teft	-(e)ft		
3.	-(e)te	—		
Plur. 1.	-(e)ten	-en		
2.	-(e)tet	(e)t		
3.	-(e)ten	-en		

NOTE. For the sake of convenience, the term "endings" is used to include not only the personal suffixes (e, ft, t, en), but also, as to the weak preterit, the tense-sign t, preceding them.

## Simple Tenses

1. The first person singular indicative and the first and third persons singular subjunctive of the present tense in all verbs, as well as the first and third persons singular preterit subjunctive in strong verbs, have the same ending: e; thus, *ich liebe* (ind.); *ich, er liebe* (subj.); *ich, er gäbe* (pret. subj.).

Exceptions: *ich bin* (ind.); *ich sei* (subj.); *ich weiß* (172), and the present indicative of the modal auxiliaries, *ich muß* (ind.); *ich will*, etc.; cf. 167.

2. The radical vowel of the strong preterit subjunctive takes the umlaut when possible: *trügen* (from *tragen*, *trug*, *getragen*, *bear*); *hübe* (from *heben*, *hob*, *gehoben*, *raise*), *gäbe* (from *geben*, *gab*, *gegeben*, *give*).

3. All second persons singular end in *ft* or *eft*; in the weak preterit in *(e)teft*.

4. The third person singular present indicative ends in *(e)t*; in all the other forms, the third person singular is like the first.

**Exceptions:** the modal auxiliaries (166, 1 *b*, Note) and a few other verbs: *wiffen, know*; *er weiß (172)*; *werden, become*; *er wird (138)*.

5. The first and third persons plural end everywhere in *en(n)*; in the weak preterit in *(e)ten*.

6. All second persons plural end in *(e)t*, in the weak preterit in *(e)tet*. **Exception:** *feib* (present indicative and imperative of *fein, be*, cf. 137).

7. Supplementary Remarks on the Strong Conjugation will be found in 227-230.

## 160. The Weak Conjugation

1. hören, hörte, gehört, *hear* (auxiliary haben).

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
PRESENT			
Singular		Singular	
1. ich höre, <i>I hear</i> , etc.		ich höre, <i>I may hear</i> , etc.	
2. du hörst		du hörst	
3. er hört		er höre	
Plural		Plural	
1. wir hören		wir hören	
2. ihr hört		ihr höret	
3. fie hören		fie hören	
PRETERIT			
Singular		Singular	
1. ich hörte, <i>I heard</i> , etc.		ich hörte, <i>I might hear</i> , etc.	
2. du hörteft		du hörteft	
3. er hörte		er hörte	

**Plural**

1. wir hör t e n
2. ihr hör t e t
3. sie hör t e n

**Plural**

- wir hör t e n  
ihr hör t e t  
sie hör t e n

**FUTURE****Singular**

1. ich werde hören, *I shall hear,*  
etc.
2. du wir st "
3. er wir d "

**Singular**

- ich werde ören, *I shall hear,*  
etc.  
du wer de st hören  
er wer de "

**Plural**

1. wir werden hören
2. ihr werdet "
3. sie werden "

**Plural**

- wir werden hören  
ihr werdet "  
sie werden "

**PERFECT****Singular**

1. ich habe ge hört t, *I have heard,*  
etc.
2. du ha st "
3. er ha t "

**Singular**

- ich habe ge hör t, *I may have*  
*heard, etc.*  
du ha be st "  
er ha be "

**Plural**

1. wir haben ge hör t
2. ihr habt "
3. sie haben "

**Plural**

- wir haben ge hör t  
ihr habet "  
sie haben "

**PLUPERFECT****Singular**

1. ich hatte ge hört t, *I had heard,*  
etc.
2. du hättest "
3. er hatte "

**Singular**

- ich h ä t t e ge hör t, *I might have*  
*heard, etc.*  
du hättest gehört  
er hätte "

**Plural**

1. wir hätten ge hör t
2. ihr hättet "
3. sie hätten "

**Plural**

- wir hätten ge hör t  
ihr hättet "  
sie hätten "

## FUTURE PERFECT

**Singular**

1. ich werde g e h ö r t h a b e n, *I shall have heard, etc.*
2. du w i r s t g e h ö r t h a b e n
3. er w i r d       "       "

**Singular**

- ich werde g e h ö r t h a b e n, *I shall have heard, etc.*
- du w e r d e s t g e h ö r t h a b e n
- er w e r d e       "       "

**Plural**

1. wir werden g e h ö r t h a b e n
2. ihr werdet       "       "
3. sie werden       "       "

**Plural**

- wir werden g e h ö r t h a b e n
- ihr werdet       "       "
- sie werden       "       "

## CONDITIONAL PRESENT

**Singular**

1. ich würde hören, *I should hear, etc.*
2. du würdest       "
3. er würde       "

## CONDITIONAL PAST

**Singular**

- ich würde g e h ö r t h a b e n, *I should have heard, etc.*
- du würdest g e h ö r t h a b e n
- er würde       "       "

**Plural**

1. wir würden hören
2. ihr würdet       "
3. sie würden       "

**Plural**

- wir würden g e h ö r t h a b e n
- ihr würdet       "       "
- sie würden       "       "

## IMPERATIVE

**Singular**

1. —
2. hör e (hör') du, *hear (thou)*
3. höre er; er hör e, *let him hear*

**Plural**

- hör e n wir, *let us hear*
- hör t, hör t ihr, *hear (you)*
- hör e n sie, *let them hear*

## INFINITIVE

## PRESENT

(zu) hör e n (to) *hear*

## PERFECT

g e h ö r t (zu) h a b e n, (to) *have heard*

## PARTICIPLE

## PAST

hör e n d, *hearing*g e h ö r t, *heard*

2. folg e n, folg t e, g e folg t, *follow* (auxiliary *sein*).

## INDICATIVE

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

## Singular

## Singular

1. ich folg e, *I follow*, etc.1. ich folg e, *I may follow*, etc.

## Plural

2. du folg e st

1. wir folg e n, etc.

3. er folg e

## PRETERIT

## Singular

## Singular

1. ich folg t e, *I followed*, etc.ich folg t e, *I might follow*, etc.

## FUTURE

## Singular

## Singular

1. ich werde folgen, *I shall follow*, etc.1. ich werde folgen, *I shall follow*, etc.

## Plural

2. du werde st folgen

1. wir werden folgen, etc.

3. er werde "

## PERFECT

## Singular

## Singular

1. ich bin gefolgt, *I have followed*, etc.ich sei gefolgt, *I may have followed*, etc.

2. du bi st gefolgt

du sei st gefolgt

3. er i st "

er sei "

## Plural

## Plural

1. wir si nd gefolgt

wir sei en gefolgt

2. ihr sei d "

ihr sei et "

3. sie si nd "

sie sei en "

## PLUPERFECT

## Singular

## Singular

1. ich war gefolgt, *I had followed*, etc.ich wäre gefolgt, *I might have followed*, etc.

2. du wa r st gefolgt

du wäre st gefolgt

3. er wa r "

er wäre "

## Plural

## Plural

1. wir wa re n gefolgt

wir wäre n gefolgt

2. ihr wa re t "

ihr wäre t "

3. sie wa re n "

sie wäre n "

## FUTURE PERFECT

## Singular

1. ich werde gefolgt sein, *I shall have followed, etc.*  
 2. du wirst gefolgt sein  
 3. er wird " "

## Singular

1. ich werde gefolgt sein, *I shall have followed, etc.*  
 2. du werdest gefolgt sein,  
 3. er werde " "

## Plural

1. wir werden gefolgt sein  
 2. ihr werdet " "  
 3. sie werden " "

## Plural

1. wir werden gefolgt sein  
 2. ihr werdet " "  
 3. sie werden " "

## CONDITIONAL PRESENT

## Singular

1. ich würde folgen, *I should follow, etc.*

## CONDITIONAL PAST

## Singular

1. ich würde gefolgt sein, *I should have followed, etc.*

## Plural

1. wir würden folgen, etc.

## Plural

1. wir würden gefolgt sein, etc.

## IMPERATIVE

## Singular

1. —  
 2. folge (folg') du, *follow (thou)*  
 3. folge er, er folge, *let him follow*

## Plural

- folge n wir, *let us follow*  
 folg t, folg t ihr, *follow (you)*  
 folge n sie, *let them follow*

## INFINITIVE

## PRESENT

- (zu) folge n (to) *follow*

## PERFECT

- gefolgt (zu) sein, (to) *have followed*

## PARTICIPLE

## PAST

- folg e n d, *following*

- gefolg t, *followed*

## VOCABULARY 12 a

als ob (with subjunctive), *as if*.

die Ankunft, *arrival*.

die beiden, (both) *the two*.

die Cousine, (lady) *cousin*.

ihm . . . entgegenkam, *came to meet . . . him*.

entziehen, *withdraw*.

erwidern, *reply*.



Fremdes, *strange*.gehetzt, p. part. of treten, *step, come*.die Heimat, *home*.jungen (from jung), *young*.lächeln, *smile*.Leute, *people*.Ostern, *Easter*.reisen, *travel, journey*.sanft, *gentle, gently*.schlank, *slender*.(der) das Willkommen, *welcome*.

## TRANSLATION 12 a

A. 1. Als es Ostern geworden war, reiste<sup>1</sup> der Künstler<sup>2</sup> in die Heimat. 2. Am Morgen<sup>3</sup> nach seiner Ankunft besuchte<sup>4</sup> er seine Cousine. 3. „Wie groß<sup>5</sup> du geworden bist,“ sagte er, als das schöne,<sup>6</sup> schlank<sup>7</sup> Mädchen<sup>7</sup> ihm lächelnd entgegkam. 4. Sie erwiderte ihm nichts<sup>8</sup>; ihre Hand, welche er beim Willkommen in die seine<sup>9</sup> genommen,<sup>10</sup> suchte<sup>5</sup> sie ihm sanft zu entziehen. 5. Nun war es, als ob etwas Fremdes<sup>11</sup> zwischen<sup>12</sup> die beiden jungen Leute getreten wäre.

<sup>1</sup>Cf. Exercise 4, 3, Note, p. 33.<sup>2</sup>Vocabulary 4 b, p. 35.<sup>3</sup>Cf. 57, 3.<sup>4</sup>Vocabulary 4 b, p. 35.<sup>5</sup>Id., 6 b, p. 48.<sup>6</sup>Cf. Exercise 13, 1-5, p. 111.<sup>7</sup>Cf. 52, 4.<sup>8</sup>Vocabulary 3 b, p. 29.<sup>9</sup>die seine = *his*, possessive pronoun.<sup>10</sup>Vocabulary 9 b, p. 68, and Exercise 4, 3 a, p. 33.<sup>11</sup>Cf. 48, 1 c.<sup>12</sup>Exercise 7, 3 a, p. 52.

B. 1. If these ladies (Damen) had followed<sup>1</sup> my advice (Rat, m.) they<sup>2</sup> would have visited my cousin and friend (Freundin), Mrs. (Frau) Braun, when they were in the city. 2. When (Wann) it is (shall be) Easter, our friends,<sup>2</sup> the artists of this city, will journey to (nach) their home. 3. The young people replied nothing to what<sup>3</sup> the beautiful, slender maiden told them when she came to meet them. 4. Have you not heard that those men<sup>4</sup> are no longer (nicht mehr) the same (dieselben)? They had been very good (gute) friends, but it is evident (offenbar) that something strange has come between them.

<sup>1</sup>The verb governs the dative.<sup>2</sup>Cf. Exercise 4, 3, Note, p. 33.<sup>3</sup>to

what, auf das, was.

<sup>4</sup>Cf. Mann, 134.

VOCABULARY 12 *b*.

die Dämmerung, <i>twilight, dusk.</i>	still, <i>quiet.</i>
die Ecke, <i>corner.</i>	die Stirn, <i>forehead.</i>
einsam, <i>lonesome.</i>	tiefe (from tief), <i>deep.</i>
herrschen, <i>rule, prevail.</i>	Weihnacht(en), <i>Christmas.</i>
die Manschet'te, <i>shirt-cuff.</i>	die Winterluft, <i>winter air.</i>
schenten, <i>give, present, bestow on.</i>	die Wohnung, <i>dwelling, lodgings.</i>
das Spinnrad, <i>spinning-wheel.</i>	zehn, <i>ten.</i>
sticken, <i>embroider.</i>	

TRANSLATION 12 *b*

A. 1. Unter den Bäumen<sup>1</sup> und auf der Straße<sup>3</sup> hatte tiefe Dämmerung geherrscht; er fühlte<sup>3</sup> noch die Winterluft an der Stirn. 2. Als er an (near) seine Wohnung gekommen,<sup>4</sup> war es beinahe<sup>3</sup> ganz<sup>5</sup> dunkel<sup>6</sup> geworden. 3. In seinem Zimmer fand<sup>7</sup> er einen Brief<sup>8</sup> von seiner Cousine, in welchem sie ihm schrieb (wrote): „Die Manschetten, welche ich Dir zu Weihnacht(en) geschenkt,<sup>4</sup> wurden von mir gestickt.“ 4. Dann<sup>7</sup> sagte sie noch: „Bei uns<sup>9</sup> wird es nun am Weihnachtsabend sehr still werden; meine Mutter stellt<sup>10</sup> schon um zehn Uhr ihr Spinnrad in die Ecke; es ist so einsam diesen Winter, wo Du nicht hier bist.“

<sup>1</sup> Vocabulary 3 *a*, p. 27. <sup>2</sup> Id., 9 *a*, p. 66. <sup>3</sup> Id., 10 *b*, p. 78. <sup>4</sup> Cf. Exercise 4, 3 *a*; what is the auxiliary omitted here? <sup>5</sup> Vocabulary 6 *b*, p. 48. <sup>6</sup> Id., 5 *a*, p. 39. <sup>7</sup> Id., 8 *a*, p. 60. <sup>8</sup> Id., 6 *a*, p. 47. <sup>9</sup> Bei uns, like French “chez nous,” at our house. <sup>10</sup> Vocabulary 8 *b*, p. 62, and Exercise 2, 6, p. 21.

B. 1. It has become dark on (auf) the street and it is very lonely here; come with me to (in<sup>1</sup>) my dwelling. 2. Have you heard what mother<sup>2</sup> wrote (schrieb) us at Christmas? 3. When my cousins had come home,<sup>3</sup> they put<sup>4</sup> (stellen) the spinning-wheel into a corner of the room. 4. I embroidered these cuffs this winter; I shall present them to my brother at Christmas. 5. Do you feel the air here? 6. Was it not very quiet at your house on Christmas eve? 7. Yes, mother was ill and we went (gingen) to bed<sup>5</sup> at 9 (neun) o'clock.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Exercise 7, 3, p. 52. <sup>2</sup> Order of words: (to) us mother. <sup>3</sup> home, nach Hause. <sup>4</sup> Cf. Exercise 4, 3, Note, p. 33. <sup>5</sup> zu Bett; cf. Exercise 7, 6, p. 52.

## VOCABULARY 12 c

die Angelegenheit, *affair*.der Besen, *broom*.auf einmal, *at once*.erschien (preterit of erscheinen), *ap-*  
*pear* (p. part. erschienen).die Fabrik, *factory*.führen, *lead, take*.der Herr, \* *master*.lehren, *sweep* (gut lehren, *sweep*  
*clean*).neue(n) (from neu), *new*.sprechen (mit), *speak (to)*.das Sprichwort, *proverb*.die Wahrheit, *truth*.zornig, *angry*.

## TRANSLATION 12 c

A. 1. Sie werden wohl schon die Nachricht<sup>1</sup> gehört<sup>2</sup> haben, welche gestern in den Zeitungen<sup>3</sup> erschien. 2. Mein; es würde mir sehr angenehm<sup>4</sup> gewesen sein, wenn ich früher<sup>5</sup> davon (of it) gehört hätte. 3. Führe mich ins neue Haus; ich möchte sehen, wie gut oder wie schlecht<sup>6</sup> es gebaut<sup>2</sup> wurde. 4. Loben Sie den neuen Herrn der Fabrik nicht zu sehr; das Sprichwort sagt: neue Besen lehren gut. 5. Wir hätten ihm wohl die Wahrheit gesagt, wenn er nicht auf einmal so zornig geworden wäre, sobald<sup>3</sup> wir mit ihm über die Sache<sup>7</sup> sprechen wollten.<sup>8</sup> 6. Sprechen wir von unseren Angelegenheiten; was ist jetzt<sup>9</sup> zu tun<sup>4</sup>?

<sup>1</sup> Vocabulary 3 b, p. 29. <sup>2</sup> Id., 3 a, p. 28. <sup>3</sup> Id., 9 b, p. 68. <sup>4</sup> Id., 4 b, p. 35. <sup>5</sup> Id., 10 a, p. 76. <sup>6</sup> Id., 7 a, p. 53. <sup>7</sup> Id., 10 b, p. 78. <sup>8</sup> Id., 2, p. 22. <sup>9</sup> Id., 4 b, p. 35.

B. 1. The newspapers say — and I suppose<sup>1</sup> everybody<sup>2</sup> (jedermann) has heard the report already — that the king had<sup>3</sup> appeared in the city<sup>4</sup> yesterday for the first time (zum erstenmal) after his illness (Krankheit, f.). 2. If the master of the factory had told the whole (ganze) truth to his workmen,<sup>5</sup> they would<sup>6</sup> not have become so angry at once. 3. It will be very pleasant for us to hear<sup>7</sup> of you very often; write us as often<sup>8</sup> as you can (können). 4. The workmen would praise the new master of the factory, if he did not

\* Cf. 105, Note 2.

always become<sup>9</sup> so angry, as soon as they wish to speak to him about their affairs. 5. What was to be done? He was the master. 6. Do not forget (vergessen) the proverb: new brooms sweep clean.

<sup>1</sup> Use adverb for *I suppose*. <sup>2</sup> Order of words: *everybody has I suppose already*. <sup>3</sup> Cf. 144, 1; use subjunctive for *had appeared*. <sup>4</sup> Put *in the city* before *appeared*. <sup>5</sup> *workman*, Arbeiter; dative before accusative. <sup>6</sup> Cf. Exercise 4, 3, Note, p. 33; put *at once* before *so angry*. <sup>7</sup> Cf. Exercise 11, 6, p. 90. <sup>8</sup> *as often as*, so oft. <sup>9</sup> Cf. Exercise 11, 4, p. 89.

## VOCABULARY 12 d

alles, everything.  
Amerika, America.  
der Mut, courage.  
der Ruhm, fame, glory.

es tut uns leid (it does, i. e. gives, us  
sorrow), we are sorry.  
ungebuldig, impatient.

## TRANSLATION 12 d

A. 1. Unsere Nachbarn<sup>1</sup> waren gestern bei<sup>2</sup> unserer Mutter gewesen; es tut uns leid, daß wir nicht zu Hause<sup>3</sup> waren. 2. Wir hätten<sup>4</sup> letzten<sup>5</sup> Sommer<sup>6</sup> wohl<sup>7</sup> Zeit genug gehabt, die Schweiz<sup>8</sup> zu besuchen; aber das Wetter war zu schlecht<sup>5</sup> gewesen. 3. Was ist aus<sup>9</sup> ihren Schwägern<sup>10</sup> geworden? Ich habe sie lange nicht gesehen; sie scheinen<sup>11</sup> keine Lust<sup>12</sup> zu haben, uns mit einem Besuche<sup>13</sup> zu beehren.<sup>14</sup> 4. Es würde uns angenehm<sup>15</sup> gewesen sein, die Bekanntschaft<sup>16</sup> dieser Fräulein<sup>17</sup> früher<sup>18</sup> gemacht<sup>16</sup> zu haben. Wo (where) denken<sup>11</sup> Sie, daß sie diesen Sommer<sup>6</sup> verweilen<sup>15</sup> werden? 5. Sei doch<sup>19</sup> nicht so ungeduldig; du wirst noch zur<sup>20</sup> rechten<sup>5</sup> Zeit<sup>15</sup> nach Hause<sup>8</sup> kommen.<sup>21</sup> 6. Hier ist nichts zu tun<sup>22</sup>; verkaufen<sup>18</sup> wir daher<sup>18</sup> das Land und gehen<sup>5</sup> wir nach<sup>23</sup> Amerika. 7. Für die Bürger<sup>24</sup> in dieser Stadt<sup>25</sup> wäre alles besser<sup>5</sup> geworden, wenn sie, stolz<sup>24</sup> auf ihren Ruhm, mehr<sup>13</sup> Mut gehabt hätten.<sup>26</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Cf. 127. <sup>2</sup> bei = at; at the house of. <sup>3</sup> Vocabulary 5 a, p. 39. <sup>4</sup> Cf. Exercise 11, 3-6, pp. 89, 90. <sup>5</sup> Vocabulary 7 a, p. 52. <sup>6</sup> Id., 4 b, p. 35 (accusative of time). <sup>7</sup> Cf. Exercise 9, 3 b, p. 66. <sup>8</sup> Vocabulary 10 b, p. 78. <sup>9</sup> aus = of. <sup>10</sup> Cf. 74. <sup>11</sup> Vocabulary 6 a, p. 47. <sup>12</sup> Id., 7 b, p. 54. <sup>13</sup> Id., 5 b, p. 40. <sup>14</sup> Id., 11 a, p. 90. <sup>15</sup> Id., 4 b, p. 35. <sup>16</sup> Id., 9 b, p. 68. <sup>17</sup> Cf. 52, 4.

<sup>18</sup> Vocabulary 10 a, p. 76. <sup>19</sup> Exercise, 10, 1 a, p. 75. <sup>20</sup> Cf. 57, 2 a. <sup>21</sup> Vocabulary 3 b, p. 29. <sup>22</sup> Exercise 11, 1, p. 89. <sup>23</sup> nach = to. <sup>24</sup> Vocabulary 4 a, p. 34. <sup>25</sup> Id., 2, p. 22. <sup>26</sup> Exercise 11, 4, p. 89.

B. 1. I am sorry that your father was not at home. I should have liked <sup>1</sup> to make his acquaintance. 2. We visited Switzerland <sup>2</sup> last (letzten) summer, and if we had had time enough, we should have gone <sup>3</sup> to Italy (nach Italien). 3. It would be very pleasant for our brothers-in-law to see you this evening,<sup>4</sup> but I fear (fürchten) the weather will be too bad. 4. Have you no desire to make the acquaintance of these young ladies? 5. We made their acquaintance last summer while (während) we were staying in Switzerland. 6. These boys<sup>5</sup> are always<sup>6</sup> so impatient, they can never (nie) wait for (erwarten) the time when they are<sup>7</sup> allowed to play.<sup>8</sup> 7. Let us go home <sup>2</sup> at the right time; it is late (spät) and I fear father is getting impatient. 8. Let us sell our house and (let us) go to the country (aufs Land) this summer.<sup>2</sup> 9. Everything would be better for <sup>9</sup> these students,<sup>10</sup> if they had more courage and industry (Eiße, m.) and less money (weniger Geld). 10. They are proud of their money and do not work (arbeiten).

<sup>1</sup> Translate: *I should have gladly (gern) made his acquaintance.* Cf. Exercise 11, 5, p. 90. <sup>2</sup> Cf. Exercise 7, 6, p. 52. <sup>3</sup> go, gehen, ging, gegangen, cf. 144, 1, and Exercise 4, 3, Note, p. 33. <sup>4</sup> *this evening*, heute abend. <sup>5</sup> Cf. 108. <sup>6</sup> *always*, immer. <sup>7</sup> *are allowed to*, dürfen. <sup>8</sup> *play*, spielen; cf. Exercise 11, 8, p. 90. <sup>9</sup> *for*, für; cf. Exercise 6, 5, p. 46. <sup>10</sup> *student*, Student, m. (weak declension).

## LESSON XIII

### THE CONNECTING VOWEL e. IRREGULAR WEAK VERBS

#### The Connecting Vowel e

**161.** The use of the connecting vowel e, both in weak and strong verbs, depends to a great extent on euphony; a harsh and unpronounceable combination must be avoided. The omis-

sion of *e* is more common in familiar than in stately language. In poetry the requirements of the meter alone may demand the retention or rejection of *e*: *Gegrüßet seid mir, edle Herrn! Gegrüßt ihr, schöne Damen!*

**162. 1.** The connecting vowel *e* **must** be used when the distinction of the **subjunctive** forms from the corresponding ones of the **indicative** depends on it: *folgest* (subj.); *folgst*; *schriebest* (subj.); *schriebs*.

**2.** It is used in the **second person singular, present indicative**, before *st*:

*a.* After the sibilants *f, ß, sch, z, ð*: *du weifest* (*weisen, show*); *du sitgest* (*sigen, sit*); *du wünschest* (*wünschen, wish*); *du tanzest* (*tanzen, dance*); *du beschmügest* (*beschnugen, soil*).

*b.* After roots ending in *d* or *t*; in *m* or *n*, if the latter follow any other consonant but *m* or *n*: *du redest*, *du wartest*; *du atmest*; *du zeichnest*.

**3.** It is used before *t* (whether the latter be the sign of the **weak preterit**, or the personal suffix of the **third person singular** or **second person plural** of the **present**, or the ending of the **weak past participle**, or of the **second person plural** of the **strong preterit**), after roots ending in *d* or *t*; in *m* or *n*, if the latter follow any other consonant but *m* or *n*: *ich redete*; *du wartetest*; *er atmete*; *wir begegneten*; *er* or *ihr redet*; *wir haben geredet*; *ihr verrietet ihn* (from *verraten*) *you betrayed him*.

**4.** As a rule, when the connecting vowel *e* is **omitted** after a sibilant of the root in the second person singular of the present indicative, the *s* of the ending *st* is also dropped and then the second and third persons singular are alike in form: *ich lese*, *du liest* (for *du liestest*), *er liest*; *ich berste*, *du birst* (for *du birstest*), *er birst*; *du wischst* (for *wischest*); *er wischst*.

**5.** Verbs in *eln* and *ern* generally lose their vowel *e* in the first person singular, present: *ich streichle* (*streicheln, stroke*), but regularly, *du streichelst*, *er streichelt*, etc.; *ich ändre* (*ändern, change*), but *du änderst*, *er ändert*.

163. I. red e n, redete, g e redet, *talk*.

## INDICATIVE

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

**Singular**

1. ich rede
2. du redest
3. er redet

**Singular**

- ich rede
- du redest
- er rede

**Plural**

1. wir reden
2. ihr redet
3. sie reden

**Plural**

- wir reden
- ihr redet
- sie reden

## PRETERIT

**Singular**

1. ich redete
2. du redetest
3. er redete

**Singular**

- ich redete
- du redetest
- er redete

**Plural**

1. wir redeten
2. ihr redetet
3. sie redeten

**Plural**

- wir redeten
- ihr redetet
- sie redeten

## FUTURE

**Singular**

1. ich werde reden
2. du wirst " etc.

**Singular**

- ich werde reden
- du werdest " etc.

## PERFECT

1. ich habe geredet
2. du hast " etc.

- ich habe geredet
- du habest " etc.

## PLUPERFECT

1. ich hatte geredet
2. du hättest " etc.

- ich hätte geredet
- du hättest " etc.

## FUTURE PERFECT

1. ich werde geredet haben
2. du wirst " " etc.

- ich werde geredet haben
- du werdest " " etc.

CONDITIONAL PRESENT

**Singular**

1. ich würde reden, etc.

**Plural**

1. wir würden reden, etc.

CONDITIONAL PAST

**Singular**

ich würde geredet haben, etc.

**Plural**

wir würden geredet haben, etc.

IMPERATIVE

**Singular**

1. —
2. rede (du)
3. rede er; er rede

**Plural**

reden wir  
redet (ihr)  
reden sie (Sie)

INFINITIVE

PRESENT

(zu) reden

PERFECT

geredet (zu) haben

PARTICIPLE

redend

PAST

geredet

2. ändern, änderte, geändert, *change*.

INDICATIVE

**Singular**

1. ich ändere
2. duänderst
3. er ändert

**Plural**

1. wir ändern
2. ihr ändert
3. sie ändern

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

**Singular**

ich ändere (ändere)  
du ändereſt (änderſt)  
er ändere (ändere)

**Plural**

wir ändern (ändern)  
ihr ändereſt (ändert)  
ſie ändern (ändern)

PRETERIT

**Singular**

1. ich änderte, etc.

**Singular**

ich änderte, etc.

FUTURE

1. ich werde ändern
2. du wirſt " etc.

ich werde ändern  
du werdeſt " etc.



## PERFECT

- |                      |                   |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| 1. ich habe geändert | ich habe geändert |
| 2. du hast " etc.    | du habest " etc.  |

## PLUPERFECT

- |                       |                    |
|-----------------------|--------------------|
| 1. ich hatte geändert | ich hätte geändert |
| 2. du hättest " etc.  | du hättest " etc.  |

## FUTURE PERFECT

- |                             |                          |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. ich werde geändert haben | ich werde geändert haben |
| 2. du wirst " " etc.        | du werdest " " etc.      |

## CONDITIONAL PRESENT

1. ich würde ändern, etc.

## CONDITIONAL PAST

- ich würde geändert haben, etc.

## IMPERATIVE

## Singular

## Plural

- |  |                  |
|--|------------------|
| 1. —                                       | ändern wir       |
| 2. ändre (du)                              | ändert (ihr)     |
| 3. ändere (ändere) er; er ändere (ändere). | ändern sie (Sie) |

## INFINITIVE

## PRESENT

(zu) ändern

## PERFECT

geändert (zu) haben

## PARTICIPLE

## PAST

ändernd

geändert

## EXERCISE 13

## I

1. An adjective remains **undeclined** when used as a **predicate** or **adverb**: das Haus ist schön, *the house is beautiful*; das war schön getan, *that was done beautifully*.

2. **Otherwise** the adjective is declined and agrees with its noun in number, gender and case.

3. When an adjective is preceded by any form of the **definite article**, or by *dieser* or by any pronominal adjective inflected like *dieser* (Exercise 3, 2, p. 26) it takes **one** of **two** endings: **e** or **en**.

4. The ending **e** occurs in **five** forms: throughout the **whole** nominative singular, and in the **accusative feminine** and **neuter** singular.

Elsewhere the ending is **en**.

	Singular			Plural
	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER	M. F. N.
N.	der schöne	die schöne	das schöne	die schönen
G.	des schönen	der schönen	des schönen	der schönen
D.	dem schönen	der schönen	dem schönen	den schönen
A.	den schönen	die schöne	das schöne	die schönen

5. The endings that form the **comparative** and **superlative** are respectively **er** and **(e)st**, not only for monosyllabics, but for **all** adjectives: *reich, rich; reicher, reichst; angenehm, agreeable; angenehmer, angenehmt; stolz, proud; stolzer, stolzest.*

6. **Comparatives** and **superlatives** are declined like simple adjectives: *der reiche Mann, the rich man; die schönere Frau, the more beautiful woman; das liebste Kind, the dearest child; die angenehmsten Besuche, the most agreeable visits.*

7. Decline (singular and plural) *jener reiche Mann; diese arme Frau; manches kleine Kind; der reichere Bauer; die angenehmere Nachricht; das stolzeste Land.*

## VOCABULARY 13 a

<b>ändern</b> , <i>change</i> (trans.).	<b>heiß</b> , <i>hot.</i>
<b>die Antwort</b> , <i>answer.</i>	<b>jedermann</b> , <i>every one.</i>
<b>arm</b> , <i>poor.</i>	<b>jemand</b> , <i>some one; any one.</i>
<b>atmen</b> , <i>breathe.</i>	<b>in der Kirche</b> , <i>at church.</i>
<b>bedeuten</b> , <i>signify.</i>	<b>die Luft</b> , <i>air.</i>
<b>der Befehl</b> , <i>command, order.</i>	<b>der Oberst</b> (weak declension), <i>colonel.</i>
<b>der Bote</b> , <i>messenger.</i>	<b>der Offizier'</b> (3d class), <i>(army) officer.</i>
<b>daß</b> (conj.), <i>that.</i>	<b>die Person'</b> , <i>person.</i>
<b>erwarten</b> , <i>expect.</i>	<b>der Pfarrer</b> , <i>parson, minister.</i>
<b>frisch</b> , <i>fresh.</i>	<b>schmeicheln</b> (with dative), <i>flatter.</i>
<b>froh</b> , <i>glad.</i>	<b>der Soldat'</b> , <i>soldier.</i>
<b>fürchten</b> , <i>fear.</i>	<b>voll</b> , <i>full, entire.</i>
<b>gegangen</b> , past part. of <i>gehen, go.</i>	<b>wichtig</b> , <i>important.</i>
<b>die Gemeinde</b> , <i>parish, congregation.</i>	<b>das Zelt</b> , <i>tent.</i>
<b>der General'</b> (3d class), <i>general.</i>	

## TRANSLATION 13 a

A. 1. Die Boten Ihres Veters<sup>1</sup> hatten sehr lang(e) auf eine Antwort gewartet<sup>2</sup>; wir fürchteten, daß jemand krank<sup>3</sup> geworden sei.<sup>4</sup> 2. Dem Befehl des Obersten hatten wir zu folgen; es war nicht zu ändern.<sup>5</sup> 3. Schmeicheln Sie ihm doch<sup>6</sup> nicht so sehr<sup>7</sup>; er ist ja<sup>8</sup> schon so stolz<sup>9</sup> auf seine Person. 4. Der gute Pfarrer betete<sup>10</sup> lang(e) für die arme Gemeinde; unsere ganze<sup>3</sup> Familie<sup>11</sup> war auch in der Kirche und jedermann hat aus vollem Herzen<sup>12</sup> gebetet. 5. Wenn die Offiziere dem Räte<sup>13</sup> des Generals gefolgt wären,<sup>14</sup> wäre alles<sup>15</sup> besser<sup>16</sup> gegangen.<sup>17</sup> 6. Die alten<sup>18</sup> Soldaten waren froh, als sie wieder<sup>19</sup> frischere Luft atmeten; unter den<sup>20</sup> Zelten war es immer heißer geworden. 7. Warten<sup>2</sup> Sie doch<sup>6</sup> ein paar<sup>21</sup> Augenblicke<sup>22</sup> auf uns; wir hatten lang(e) genug<sup>23</sup> auf Sie gewartet. 8. Es war nicht zu erwarten,<sup>5</sup> daß er so bald<sup>23</sup> kommen würde; seine Ankunft<sup>24</sup> zu dieser Zeit bedeutete etwas Wichtiges.<sup>25</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Cf. 127. <sup>2</sup> Vocabulary 11 a, p. 90. <sup>3</sup> Id., 6 b, p. 48. <sup>4</sup> geworden sei, subjunctive in indirect discourse. <sup>5</sup> Cf. Exercise 11, 1, p. 89. <sup>6</sup> Cf. Exercise 10, 1 a, p. 75. <sup>7</sup> Vocabulary 3 a, p. 27. <sup>8</sup> Cf. Exercise 10, 2, p. 76. <sup>9</sup> Vocabulary 4 a, p. 34. <sup>10</sup> Id., 7 b, p. 54. <sup>11</sup> Cf. 6, 3 a, p. 4. <sup>12</sup> Cf. 133, p. 73. <sup>13</sup> Vocabulary 2, p. 22. <sup>14</sup> Cf. 144, p. 88. <sup>15</sup> Vocabulary 12 d, p. 105. <sup>16</sup> Id., 7 a, p. 52. <sup>17</sup> Cf. Exercise 11, 4, p. 89. <sup>18</sup> Vocabulary 8 b, p. 62. <sup>19</sup> Id., 3 b, p. 29. <sup>20</sup> Cf. Exercise 7, 3, p. 52. <sup>21</sup> Vocabulary 6 a, p. 47. <sup>22</sup> Id., 9 b, p. 68. <sup>23</sup> Id., 4 b, p. 35. <sup>24</sup> Vocabulary 12 a, p. 101. <sup>25</sup> Cf. 48, 1 c, p. 16.

B. 1. Do not talk so much; work<sup>1</sup> a little more. 2. We had been waiting three days for the messengers from (von) the general. 3. The officers had feared that their colonel had become<sup>2</sup> ill. 4. You changed something in the order of the general; what does that (daß) signify? 5. The officers had flattered the king too much; he is already proud enough of his power (Macht, f.). 6. The poor congregations in our city prayed for their good parsons. 7. Some one said that everything would have gone<sup>3</sup> better, if the soldiers had followed<sup>3</sup> the orders of their officers. 8. It is getting hotter

and hotter here under<sup>4</sup> the sun (Sonne, f.); let us go under<sup>4</sup> the tents. 9. We breathed the fresh air again when we arrived (ankamen) at the seashore,<sup>5</sup> and everybody was so glad that we had the hot city behind<sup>4</sup> us. 10. Why have you not waited for us<sup>6</sup> a few moments? 11. It is not to be expected that these proud young people (jungen Leute) will follow the good advice of their poor old parson. 12. Do you know (wissen) what (was) the arrival of the colonel at this time signifies? Nothing important,<sup>7</sup> I think.<sup>8</sup>

<sup>1</sup>work, arbeiten. <sup>2</sup>had become, use subjunctive. <sup>3</sup>Cf. 144, 1, and Exercise 11, 4, p. 89. <sup>4</sup>Cf. Exercise 7, 3, p. 52. <sup>5</sup>at the seashore, an der Meeresküste. <sup>6</sup>for us before waited. <sup>7</sup>Cf. 48, 16, p. 16. <sup>8</sup>Order of words: think I.

## VOCABULARY 13 b

der Adel, the nobility; the nobles.  
antworten auf (with accusative), answer to.  
behandeln, treat.  
belieben (often impersonally), please.  
berühmt, famous.  
das Denkmal, monument.  
die Ehre, honor.  
endlich, at last.  
ernst, serious.  
erweisen, show, render.  
handeln (intrans.), act.  
die Frage, question.

Frau Gemahlin, wife (Frau added for politeness).  
die Hauptstadt, capital city.  
mieten, hire, rent.  
preussisch, Prussian.  
reich, rich; distinguish from das Reich, empire, kingdom.  
richten, address, direct (eine Frage richten an, ask a question of).  
der Ritter, knight.  
streng (not "strong"), strict, stern, severe.  
verschwenden, squander, waste.

## TRANSLATION 13 b

A. 1. Auf die ersten Fragen, welche der strenge General an ihn richtete, hat der arme Soldat beinahe<sup>1</sup> nichts<sup>2</sup> geantwortet. 2. Ich schmeichle<sup>3</sup> mir (myself) daß Ihre Frau Gemahlin uns die große<sup>4</sup> Ehre erweisen wird, uns bald<sup>5</sup> zu besuchen.<sup>5</sup> 3. Die stolzen<sup>6</sup> Ritter haben jene herrlichen<sup>7</sup> Schlösser<sup>8</sup> besessen.<sup>9</sup> 4. Dieser stolze Mann antwortete: „Ich handle ganz wie mir beliebt.“ 5. Jene starken,<sup>10</sup> reichen Leute<sup>11</sup> denken<sup>12</sup> immer,<sup>13</sup> sie können<sup>6</sup>

diese armen, alten 7 Bauern <sup>14</sup> behandeln, wie es ihnen beliebt. 6. Zeigen <sup>15</sup> Sie uns doch <sup>16</sup> die herrlichen Zimmer, <sup>6</sup> welche Sie vor <sup>12</sup> ein paar <sup>12</sup> Tagen <sup>6</sup> mieteten. 7. Die reichsten Familien des alten preussischen Adels verschwendeten letzten <sup>13</sup> Winter viel Geld <sup>7</sup> in der Hauptstadt des Reichs. 8. Endlich wurde <sup>17</sup> dem berühmten Generale ein Denkmal errichtet. <sup>18</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Vocabulary 10 b, p. 78. <sup>2</sup> Id., 3 b, p. 29. <sup>3</sup> Id., 13 a, p. 111. <sup>4</sup> Id., 6 b, p. 48. <sup>5</sup> Id., 4 b, p. 35. <sup>6</sup> Id., 4 a, p. 34. <sup>7</sup> Id., 8 b, p. 62. <sup>8</sup> Id., 8 a, p. 61. <sup>9</sup> Id., 10 a, p. 76. <sup>10</sup> Id., 5 a, p. 39. <sup>11</sup> Id., 12 a, p. 102. <sup>12</sup> Id., 6 a, p. 47. <sup>13</sup> Id., 7 a, p. 52. <sup>14</sup> Cf. 127, p. 72. <sup>15</sup> Vocabulary 2, p. 22. <sup>16</sup> Cf. Exercise 10, 1 a, p. 75. <sup>17</sup> Cf. Exercise 9, 1 and 2, p. 65. <sup>18</sup> Vocabulary 9 a, p. 66.

B. 1. These generals are too strict; the strictest and proudest officers are <sup>1</sup> often (oft) hated (hassen) by <sup>2</sup> their soldiers. 2. Have you asked <sup>3</sup> your wife if (ob) she wishes to visit <sup>4</sup> our family <sup>5</sup> next (nächsten) summer? 3. Why have you not <sup>6</sup> answered [anything <sup>6</sup> to] the polite (höflich) questions which we addressed to you (asked of you)? 4. You may <sup>7</sup> act in this matter (Sache, f.) wholly as you please; we have acted according to (nach <sup>8</sup>) our conscience (Gewissen, n.). 5. You flattered yourself (sich), I presume, <sup>9</sup> that you could (könnten) treat <sup>4</sup> these poor old people as you pleased, but they showed (to) you that they were after all <sup>10</sup> very proud of their rights (Recht, n.). 6. Those families <sup>5</sup> which belong to <sup>11</sup> the proud old Prussian nobility had been very rich; now <sup>12</sup> they are poor; yesterday they hired a few small <sup>13</sup> rooms in an old house in the city. 7. If they had not squandered their money in the capital city <sup>14</sup> of the German <sup>15</sup> empire during the last three winters, they would <sup>16</sup> not <sup>17</sup> be so poor now. 8. The city erected those large and beautiful monuments <sup>18</sup> to the officers and soldiers who had fallen <sup>19</sup> in the last war (Krieg, m.).

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Exercise 5, 4, p. 38. <sup>2</sup> Cf. Exercise 7, 4, p. 52. <sup>3</sup> ask, fragen. <sup>4</sup> Cf. Exercise 11, 8, p. 90. <sup>5</sup> Cf. 6, 3 a, p. 4. <sup>6</sup> not . . . anything, nichts. <sup>7</sup> may, können. <sup>8</sup> Cf. Exercise 6, 4, p. 46. <sup>9</sup> Use adverb for I presume,

<sup>10</sup> *after all*, dennoch. <sup>11</sup> *belong to*, gehören zu (with dative). <sup>12</sup> *now*, jetzt.  
<sup>13</sup> *small*, kleine (from klein). <sup>14</sup> Cf. Exercise 7, 6, p. 52. <sup>15</sup> *German*, deutsch.  
<sup>16</sup> Cf. Exercise 4, 3, Note, p. 33. <sup>17</sup> Order of words: *now not so poor*.  
<sup>18</sup> Cf. *Denkmal*, 134. <sup>19</sup> *fall*, fallen, fiel, gefallen; cf. 144.

### Irregular Weak Verbs

**164.** A few weak verbs change the radical vowel of the infinitive in the **preterit indicative** and the **past participle**. As they also take the ending *te* in the preterit and *t* in the past participle, they partake of the characteristics of **both** the weak and strong conjugations, and are thus properly called irregular verbs. They are divided into two groups.

I. The first group contains the verbs with radical *e* followed by *nn* or *nd*; the vowel changes are *e*, *a*, *a*:

brennen,	brannte,	gebrannt,	<i>burn.</i>
kennen,	kannnte,	gekannt,	<i>know.</i>
nennen,	nannte,	genannt,	<i>name.</i>
rennen,	rannte,	gerannt,	<i>run.</i>
senden,	sandte,	gesandt,	<i>send.</i>
wenden,	wandte,	gewandt,	<i>turn.</i>

#### PRESENT

##### INDICATIVE

###### Singular

1. ich brenn e
2. du brenn st
3. er brenn t

###### Plural

1. wir brenn e n, etc.

##### SUBJUNCTIVE

###### Singular

1. ich brenn e
- du brenn e st
- er brenn e

###### Plural

1. wir brenn e n, etc.

#### PRETERIT

###### Singular

1. ich br a nn te, etc.

###### Singular

1. ich br e nn te, etc.

*a.* The preterit subjunctive *brennte*, *kennnte*, *sendete*, etc., is the same as the indicative would be, if the latter were regular.

b. *Senden* and *wenden* occur also with regular weak preterit indicative and past participle: *sendete, gesendet; wendete, gewendet*.

2. The second group contains three verbs, the root ending in *ng* or *nt*, with irregular vowel and consonant changes:

denken,	dachte,	gedacht,	<i>think.</i>
dünken,	deuchte,	gedeuht,	<i>seem.</i>
	(düachte)		
bringen,	brachte,	gebracht,	<i>bring.</i>

a. *Dünken, dünkte, gedünkt*, are also found: *es dünkte mir, (methought) it seemed to me.*

b. *Denken* and *bringen* modify their vowel in the **preterit subjunctive** according to the method of the **strong conjugation** (140, 1): *dächte, brächte*.

### EXERCISE 13

#### II

1. Participles, being really verbal adjectives, are declined like adjectives: *das geliebte Kind, the beloved child; des geliebten Kindes; die geliebten Kinder, etc.; das umliegende Land, the surrounding country; die umliegenden Dörfer, the surrounding villages.*

#### 2. Cardinal numbers:

1 ein	11 elf
2 zwei	12 zwölf
3 drei	13 dreizehn
4 vier	14 vierzehn
5 fünf	15 fünfzehn
6 sechs	16 sechzehn
7 sieben	17 siebzehn
8 acht	18 achtzehn
9 neun	19 neunzehn
10 zehn	20 zwanzig

3. The **subjunctive** is used in **indirect statement**: i. e., to express the thought as reported by some one else other than the

speaker or writer. For instance, the **direct** statement *er ist gekommen* may appear in the **indirect** form: *man sagt, er sei gekommen*, or *man sagt, daß er gekommen sei*, *people say (that) he had come*.

4. The **definite article** is often used as a **demonstrative pronoun**, meaning *this, this one, that, that one*; it can also be rendered by an **emphatic personal pronoun**. It is declined as follows:

Singular			Plural
MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER	M. F. N.
N. <b>der</b>	<b>die</b>	<b>das</b>	<b>die</b>
G. <b>dessen</b>	<b>deren</b>	<b>dessen</b>	<b>deren (derer)</b>
D. <b>dem</b>	<b>der</b>	<b>dem</b>	<b>denen</b>
A. <b>den</b>	<b>die</b>	<b>das</b>	<b>die</b>

Examples: *das weiß ich schon längst, I have known that for a long time* (Exercise 11, 2, p. 89); *deren brauche ich nicht, I have no need of them (those)*; *denen hatte ich es gesagt, nicht Ihnen, I had told it to them (those persons), not to you*; *die Hand, welche die des Knaben hielt, the hand which held that of the boy*.

5. The **definite article** may be used as a **relative pronoun**, meaning *who, which, that*; it is then declined as above (4), except that the **genitive plural** has but **one** form: **deren**.

Examples: *die Leute, die ich kannte, the people whom I knew*; *das Buch, das ich hatte, the book that I had*; *die Häuser, in denen wir wohnten, the houses in which we dwelt*.

6. The **neuters singular**, *es, das* (Exercise 13, II, 4, above), *dieß (dieses)* are used as **indefinite subjects** of the verb *sein*; the following **predicate nominative** may be of any gender; the verb agrees in number with the predicate: *das sind meine Freunde, those are my friends*; *dieß waren unsere Bücher, these were our books*; *es sind die Soldaten des Königs, they are the king's soldiers*.

#### VOCABULARY 13 c

**die Absicht**, *intention*.

**berichten**, *report*.

**bringen . . . um** (Exercise 6, 5, p. 46),

*deprive . . . of*.

**der Dieb**, *thief*.

**erfahren**, *learn, find out*.

**erneuen**, *appoint*.

**erst** (adv.), *first, only*.

**der Flüchtling**, *fugitive*.

**gegen**, *towards, against* (Exercise 6, 5, p. 46).

**getan** (past part. of *tun*), *done*.



hegen . . . (gegen), *entertain, cherish . . . (towards).*

irgendwo, *somewhere; anywhere.*

königlich, *royal.*

der Kriegsschauplatz, *scene of war.*

die Pflicht, *duty.*

die Regierung, *government.*

das Regiment', *regiment.*

die Schuld, *guilt, crime.*

der Schutz, *protection, shelter.*

sofort, *at once.*

bei Tage, *by daylight.*

tren, *faithful, true (distinguish from  
teuer, dear).*

verkennen, *mistake, misjudge.*

warum, *why.*

sich wenden, *turn one's self; turn  
away; with an (acc.), apply to.*

### TRANSLATION 13 c

A. 1. Was für<sup>1</sup> Nachrichten<sup>2</sup> hat der alte, treue Bote<sup>3</sup> gebracht, den wir vorgestern<sup>4</sup> nach dem großen Dorfe<sup>5</sup> sandten, um<sup>6</sup> etwas Neues<sup>7</sup> vom Kriegsschauplatz zu erfahren? 2. Den hat man erst heute<sup>8</sup> morgen wieder<sup>2</sup> gesehen<sup>4</sup>; er sagte, daß die vier Häuser, in denen die zehn armen<sup>3</sup> Bauern wohnten,<sup>8</sup> brannten, als er sich vom Dorf nach Hause<sup>9</sup> wandte. 3. Wir kannten nicht die Gründe,<sup>9</sup> warum sich diese Leute<sup>10</sup> nicht sofort an die königliche Regierung gewandt haben. 4. Die sieben Flüchtlinge berichteten, daß sie zwölf Stunden<sup>11</sup> lang<sup>12</sup> im Dorf herum (about) gerannt wären, ohne<sup>13</sup> irgendwo Schutz zu finden.<sup>14</sup> 5. Das hätten wir von solchen alten Soldaten<sup>3</sup> nicht gedacht; die hatten früher<sup>15</sup> immer<sup>16</sup> ihre Pflicht gekannt und getan. 6. Es brachte das ganze Regiment um den guten Namen, unter dem wir es seit<sup>11</sup> lange gekannt hatten. 7. Wer wurde nun vom König zum<sup>17</sup> General<sup>3</sup> ernannt? 8. Der Dieb fürchtete,<sup>3</sup> daß man ihn kenne, sobald<sup>11</sup> er bei Tage auf der Straße<sup>12</sup> erscheinen<sup>18</sup> würde.<sup>19</sup> 9. Wer kenne ihn nicht? Dem steht die Schuld an der Stirne<sup>20</sup> geschrieben.<sup>21</sup> 10. Es dünkte uns, als ob<sup>10</sup> diese drei Herren die guten<sup>2</sup> Absichten verkannt hätten, die wir gegen sie hegten.

<sup>1</sup> Was für = *what kind of.* <sup>2</sup> Vocabulary 3 b, p. 29. <sup>3</sup> Id., 13 a, p. 111. <sup>4</sup> Id., 5 a, p. 39. <sup>5</sup> Id., 8 a, p. 60. <sup>6</sup> um . . . zu, with infinitive, *in order to.* <sup>7</sup> Cf. 48, 1 c. <sup>8</sup> Vocabulary 2, p. 22. <sup>9</sup> Id., 10 b, p. 78. <sup>10</sup> Id., 12 a, p. 101. <sup>11</sup> Id., 9 b, p. 68. <sup>12</sup> Id., 9 a, p. 66. <sup>13</sup> ohne, *without*; translate the dependent infinitive by the present participle. <sup>14</sup> Vocabulary 6 b, p. 48. <sup>15</sup> Id., 10 a, p. 76. <sup>16</sup> Id., 7 a, p. 52. <sup>17</sup> Omit zum in translation. <sup>18</sup> Vocabulary 12 c, p. 104. <sup>19</sup> Cf. Exercise 8, 1-3, p. 60. <sup>20</sup> Vocabulary 12 b, p. 103. <sup>21</sup> Dem . . . an der = *an seiner.* <sup>22</sup> Id., 6 a, p. 47.

*B.* 1. The old and faithful messengers have not<sup>1</sup> brought us any<sup>1</sup> news; we had sent them to the city<sup>2</sup> yesterday (in order) to learn something new about<sup>3</sup> the war<sup>4</sup> and the intentions of the French (französiſch) government. 2. When (Als) the peasants had heard that those new houses in the village were burning, they<sup>5</sup> ran home. 3. Have you ever (je) known the reason why our general sent so many messengers from the scene of war to (nach) the capital city.<sup>6</sup> 4. The royal government knew very well the officers to whom the fugitives had brought the news of (von) the famous (berühmt) battle.<sup>7</sup> 5. The soldiers reported at once that the enemy<sup>8</sup> had been running into the woods<sup>9</sup> (in order) to find<sup>10</sup> shelter<sup>11</sup> there (dort). 6. He said — but I do not believe<sup>12</sup> it — that he had always thought of (an, with accusative) us. 7. Those are thieves; we have<sup>13</sup> known them for a long time. They have deprived the street where<sup>14</sup> they live of its good name. 8. How<sup>15</sup> have the citizens<sup>16</sup> named the new street? 9. Those gentlemen reported to our friends that we had misjudged them and their good intentions.

<sup>1</sup> not any, kein; put after (to) us. <sup>2</sup> Cf. Exercise 7, 6, p. 52. <sup>3</sup> about, über (with accusative). <sup>4</sup> war, Krieg, m. <sup>5</sup> Cf. Exercise 4, 3, Note, p. 33. <sup>6</sup> capital city, Hauptstadt, f. <sup>7</sup> battle, Schlacht, f. <sup>8</sup> enemy, Feind, m.; use pl. to translate English collective. <sup>9</sup> wood, Wald, m. <sup>10</sup> Cf. Exercise 11, 6, p. 90. <sup>11</sup> Order of words; there shelter. <sup>12</sup> believe, glauben. <sup>13</sup> Cf. Exercise 11, 2, p. 89; for a long time, schon lange. <sup>14</sup> where, translate in which. <sup>15</sup> How, wie. <sup>16</sup> citizen, Bürger.

## VOCABULARY 13 d

die Bibliothek, library.

das Vergnügen, pleasure.

sondern, but (after negatives).

Vergnügen machen, give pleasure.

## TRANSLATION 13 d

*A.* 1. Das sind die Handschuhe,<sup>1</sup> die unsere Mutter gestern<sup>2</sup> nach Hause<sup>3</sup> brachte. 2. Das waren die Mägde,<sup>3</sup> die einige<sup>4</sup> Jahre für uns gearbeitet<sup>5</sup> hatten. 3. Dies sind wohl<sup>6</sup> die armen

Leute,<sup>7</sup> auf deren Ankunft<sup>7</sup> wir so lange gewartet<sup>8</sup> haben. 4. Haben Sie die Hefte<sup>9</sup> erhalten,<sup>10</sup> welche Ihnen der Lehrer<sup>11</sup> heute<sup>2</sup> morgen gesandt hat? 5. Es waren nicht die Hefte, die wir erwarteten,<sup>12</sup> sondern die großen<sup>13</sup> Bücher,<sup>14</sup> welche Sie uns schicken<sup>15</sup> wollten.<sup>2</sup> 6. Wenn Sie Lust<sup>16</sup> haben, uns diesen (heute) Abend mit Ihrem Besuch<sup>17</sup> zu beehren,<sup>8</sup> wird es uns sehr viel Vergnügen machen, Ihnen unsere neue<sup>18</sup> Bibliothek zu zeigen.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Vocabulary 4 *b*, p. 35. <sup>2</sup> Id., 2, p. 22. <sup>3</sup> Id., 10 *b*, p. 78. <sup>4</sup> Cf. Exercise 3, 2, p. 26. <sup>5</sup> Vocabulary 4 *a*, p. 34. <sup>6</sup> Cf. Exercise 9, 3 *b*, p. 66. <sup>7</sup> Vocabulary 12 *a*, p. 101. <sup>8</sup> Id., 11 *a*, p. 90. <sup>9</sup> Id., 7 *a*, p. 52. <sup>10</sup> Id., 8 *b*, p. 62. <sup>11</sup> Id., 3 *a*, p. 28. <sup>12</sup> Id., 9 *b*, p. 68. <sup>13</sup> Id., 6 *b*, p. 48. <sup>14</sup> Id., 3 *b*, p. 29. <sup>15</sup> Id., 5 *a*, p. 39. <sup>16</sup> Id., 7 *b*, p. 54. <sup>17</sup> Id., 5 *b*, p. 40. <sup>18</sup> Id., 12 *c*, p. 104.

*B.* 1. Were those the gloves which were<sup>1</sup> brought here<sup>2</sup> (hierher) yesterday? 2. Is this the maid-servant who has worked for<sup>3</sup> your family so long? 3. I presume<sup>4</sup> you [have] thought that you had waited for us long enough. 4. Did<sup>5</sup> our teachers send (to) you the copy-books in which (accusative) we had written our lessons?<sup>6</sup> 5. If you had had (any) desire to visit us yesterday evening, it would<sup>7</sup> have given us much pleasure to show you the new (neu) theatre (Theater, n.).

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Exercise 9, 1, p. 65. <sup>2</sup> Cf. Exercise 7, 6, p. 52. <sup>3</sup> *for*, *für*; order of words: *so long for your family*. <sup>4</sup> Use adverb for *I presume*; order of words: *You have, I presume*. <sup>5</sup> Use perfect for *did send*. <sup>6</sup> *lesson*, *Aufgabe*, *f.* <sup>7</sup> Cf. Exercise 4, 3, Note, p. 33.

## LESSON XIV

### THE MODAL AUXILIARIES AND *wissen*.

**165.** The modal auxiliaries are:

dürfen, durfte, gedurft, *be allowed*  
 können, konnte, gekonnt, *be able, can*  
 mögen, mochte, gemocht, *may, like*  
 müssen, mußte, gemußt, *be obliged, must*  
 sollen, sollte, gesollt, *shall, ought*  
 wollen, wollte, gewollt, *will, purpose to, be about to*

**166.** 1. These verbs are regularly inflected according to the weak conjugation.

**Exceptions :**

*a.* Those having the **umlaut** in the **infinitive** do **not** have it in the **preterit indicative** and the **past participle**.

*b.* The **present indicative singular** has a vowel **different** from that of the **plural** (only **sollen** has **o** throughout).

**NOTE.** These monosyllabic forms in the **singular** come originally — except those of **wollen** — from a *past* tense of the **strong** conjugation which in course of time assumed the signification of the present. This is the reason why the first and third persons have no ending. A **new** preterit tense was then formed according to the **weak** conjugation.

*c.* **Mögen** changes its **g** to **ch** in the **preterit indicative** and **subjunctive** and in the **past participle**.

**NOTE 1.** In these six verbs the infinitive and the first and third persons of the present indicative plural are alike in form.

**NOTE 2.** **Sollen** and **wollen** never have the **umlaut** in any form whatsoever.

**167. Conjugation of the Modal Auxiliaries.**

**PRESENT INDICATIVE**

ich	<b>darf</b>	<b>kann</b>	<b>mag</b>	<b>muß</b>	<b>soll</b>	<b>will</b>
du	<b>darfst</b>	<b>kannst</b>	<b>magst</b>	<b>mußt</b>	<b>sollst</b>	<b>willst</b>
er	<b>darf</b>	<b>kann</b>	<b>mag</b>	<b>muß</b>	<b>soll</b>	<b>will</b>
wir	<b>dürfen</b>	<b>können</b>	<b>mögen</b>	<b>müssen</b>	<b>sollen</b>	<b>wollen</b>
ihr	<b>dürft</b>	<b>könnt</b>	<b>mögt</b>	<b>müßt</b>	<b>sollt</b>	<b>wollt</b>
sie	<b>dürfen</b>	<b>können</b>	<b>mögen</b>	<b>müssen</b>	<b>sollen</b>	<b>wollen</b>

**PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE**

ich	<b>dürfe</b>	<b>könne</b>	<b>möge</b>	<b>müsse</b>	<b>solle</b>	<b>wolle</b>
du	<b>dürfest</b>	<b>könneſt</b>	<b>mögeſt</b>	<b>müßeſt</b>	<b>solleſt</b>	<b>wolleſt</b>
er	<b>dürfe</b>	<b>könne</b>	<b>möge</b>	<b>müsse</b>	<b>solle</b>	<b>wolle</b>
wir	<b>dürfen</b>	<b>können</b>	<b>mögen</b>	<b>müssen</b>	<b>sollen</b>	<b>wollen</b>
ihr	<b>dürfet</b>	<b>könnet</b>	<b>möget</b>	<b>müſſet</b>	<b>sollt</b>	<b>wollt</b>
sie	<b>dürfen</b>	<b>können</b>	<b>mögen</b>	<b>müssen</b>	<b>sollen</b>	<b>wollen</b>

**PRETERIT INDICATIVE**

ich	<b>darfte</b>	<b>konnte</b>	<b>mochte</b>
du	<b>darfteſt</b>	<b>konnteſt</b>	<b>mochteſt</b>
er	<b>darfte</b>	<b>konnte</b>	<b>mochte</b>

wir	durften	könnten	mochten
ihr	durftet	könntet	mochtet
sie	durften	könnten	mochten
	mußte	sollte	wollte
	mußtest	solltest	wolltest
	mußte	sollte	wollte
	mußten	sollten	wollten
	mußtet	solltet	wolltet
	mußten	sollten	wollten

## PRETERIT SUBJUNCTIVE

ich	dürfte	könnte	möchte
du	dürftest	könntest	möchtest
er	dürfte	könnte	möchte
wir	dürften	könnten	möchten
ihr	dürftet	könntet	möchtet
sie	dürften	könnten	möchten
	müßte	sollte *	wollte *
	müßtest	solltest	wolltest
	müßte	sollte	wollte
	müßten	sollten	wollten
	müßtet	solltet	wolltet
	müßten	sollten	wollten

## FUTURE INDICATIVE

ich werde dürfen, können, mögen, müssen, sollen, wollen  
 du wirst dürfen, etc.  
 er wird dürfen, etc.

## FUTURE SUBJUNCTIVE

ich werde dürfen, können, mögen, müssen, sollen, wollen  
 du werdest dürfen, etc.  
 er werde dürfen, etc.

## PERFECT INDICATIVE

ich habe gedurft (dürfen †), gekonnt (können), gemocht (mögen);  
 gemußt (müssen); gesollt (sollen), gewollt (wollen)  
 du hast gedurft (dürfen), etc.  
 er hat gedurft (dürfen), etc.

---

\* No umlaut and therefore subjunctive like indicative.

† Cf. 168, 1.

PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

ich habe, du habest, er habe gedurft (dürfen), etc.

PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE

ich hatte gedurft (dürfen), etc.

PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

ich hätte gedurft (dürfen), etc.

FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE

ich werde, du wirst, er wird gedurft haben (haben dürfen) etc.

FUTURE PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

ich werde, du werdest, er werde, gedurft haben (haben dürfen).

CONDITIONAL PRESENT

ich würde dürfen, können, mögen, müssen, sollen, wollen, etc.

CONDITIONAL PAST

ich würde gedurft haben (haben dürfen), etc.

IMPERATIVE

wolle (du); wolle er; wollen wir, wollt (ihr), wollen sie (Sie).\*

INFINITIVE PRESENT

dürfen, können, mögen, müssen, sollen, wollen

INFINITIVE PERFECT

gedurft (zu) haben; gekonnt (zu) haben; gemocht (zu) haben;  
gemußt (zu) haben; gesollt (zu) haben; gewollt (zu) haben.

PARTICIPLE PRESENT

dürfend, könnend, mögend, müßfend, sollend, wollend

PARTICIPLE PAST

gedurft (dürfen †); gekonnt (können); gemocht (mögen); gemußt  
(müssen); gesollt (sollen); gewollt (wollen).

---

\* The other five modal auxiliaries have no imperative.

† Cf. 168.

**168.** 1. For the weak past participles, *gedurft*, *gekonnt*, *gemocht*, *gemußt*, *gefolßt*, *gewollt*, in the **compound tenses**, are substituted *dürfen*, *können*, *mögen*, *müssen*, *sollen*, *wollen*, when the infinitive of another verb depends upon them: *wir haben es gewollt*, *we have wished it*; but *wir hätten das sagen wollen*, *we had intended to say that*.

a. The forms *dürfen*, etc., in this connection are really past participles according to the strong conjugation, with the prefix *ge* omitted, and are thus identical in form with the infinitive.

b. The prefix *ge* was often omitted at an earlier period of the language.

2. When *dürfen*, *können*, etc., are thus used instead of *gedurft*, *gekonnt*, etc., in a **dependent clause** (transposed order), the personal part (*habe*, *hatte*, *hätte*, etc.) in the compound tenses of the modal auxiliaries is placed **before** the non-personal verb-forms (infinitives): *ich hörte, daß er es hatte tun müssen*, *I heard that he had been obliged to do it*; *wissen Sie, was er gern hätte sagen wollen?* *do you know what he would have liked to say?* [Exceptions to general rule, Exercise 4, 3, p. 33.]

**169.** The German modal auxiliaries (except *dürfen*) correspond etymologically to *can*, *might*, etc. But while none of the latter forms have more than two tenses (present and preterit), and one, *must*, has only one tense (present), the German verbs have a complete conjugation. Therefore, some verbal phrases must be used for the tenses which are wanting in English: *ich habe gekonnt*, *I have been able*; *wir hätten gemußt*, *we had been obliged*; *sie hätten es tun dürfen*, *they would have been allowed to do it (they might or could have done it)*; *er hätte es wagen sollen*, *he ought to have dared it*.

a. The infinitive dependent on **any** tense of the modal auxiliaries is **never** preceded by *zu*. This fact is to be borne in mind when the English verbal phrases (*been able to*, *been permitted or obliged to*, etc.), are translated into German: *he has not been willing to do it*, *er hat es nicht tun wollen*.

**170.** 1. The translation of English phrases with the modal auxiliary in the **preterit** (*could*, *would*, *might*, *should*), and the verb dependent on it in the **infinitive perfect**, presents some difficulty: *I could have written the letter, if I had had pen and ink*, *ich hätte den Brief schreiben können, wenn ich Feder und Tinte gehabt hätte*.

NOTE. Such a phrase must express or imply a condition; that is, for instance, "*I could have written*" must mean, as it usually does, "*I should have been able to write*," not "*I was able to have written*."

2. In translating such phrases into German, put the modal auxiliary, corresponding to *could*, *would*, *might*, *should*, in the **pluperfect subjunctive**. For the English **infinitive perfect** use the German **infinitive present**.

3. In the example given in 1 above, the modal auxiliary in the form of the preterit is *could*; the German auxiliary is *können*; its regular pluperfect subjunctive is *hätte gekonnt*, but

4. As there is an infinitive (*write*) depending on the modal auxiliary (168, 1), we must use *können* instead of *gekonnt*, thus: *hätte können*.

5. The English infinitive perfect in the example given in 1 above is *have written*; according to the rule in 2 above, the German uses the infinitive present instead: *schreiben*, thus: *I could have written* = *ich hätte können schreiben*; but

6. An infinitive (here *schreiben*) depending on another infinitive, whether the latter is used in place of a past participle (here *können*) or not, precedes the governing infinitive: *ich hätte schreiben können*.

7. Since infinitives (Exercise 3, 6, p. 27) are placed at the end of their clauses in the **normal** and **inverted** order, the translation of *I could have written the letter* must be: *ich hätte den Brief schreiben können*.

NOTE. The construction of clauses containing the forms of *müssen*, *können*, etc. for *gedurft*, *gekonnt*, etc., in the **transposed order**, has been pointed out in 168, 2. It will appear from this that in the transposed order, too, the infinitives must come last, since the auxiliary *haben*, by way of exception, has to precede them: *wenn er den Brief hätte schreiben können*, if *he could have written the letter*.

8. Attention is called to a difficulty in regard to the rendering of the meanings of *should* and *would*. The latter may serve simply as auxiliaries to form the conditional mood: *I should have written to him, if I had had time*. In this case the pluperfect subjunctive or the conditional past must be used in German: *ich hätte ihm geschrieben* or *ich würde ihm geschrieben haben, wenn ich Zeit gehabt hätte*. In like manner: *he would have come, if he had received my letter*, *er wäre gekommen*, or *er würde gekommen*.



sein, wenn er meinen Brief erhalten hätte. In these examples "should" and "would" are, as just stated, auxiliaries to form the conditional mood, just as "shall" and "will" are used to form the future tense.

9. But, for instance, in the sentence "*I should have written to him; it was my duty*," the meaning of "should" is equivalent to that of "ought to"; it is a **modal** auxiliary, denoting obligation. Therefore, according to the statements in 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 and 7 above, we must translate: „ich hätte ihm schreiben sollen; es war meine Pflicht.“

171. Some verbs generally follow the construction of the modal auxiliaries (168), especially heißen, *bid, command*; helfen, *help*; hören, *hear*; lassen, *let, cause*; sehen, *see*; lehren, *teach*; lernen, *learn*; machen, *make, cause*: ich habe das Kind schreien hören (for gehört), *I have heard the child cry*; der König hat uns kommen lassen (for gelassen), (*the king has caused us to come*), *the king has sent for us*.

## 172. Inflection of wissen, *know*.

### PRINCIPAL PARTS, wissen, wußte, gewußt.

#### INDICATIVE

##### PRESENT

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
ich weiß	wir wissen	ich wisse	wir wissen
du weißt	ihr wißt	du wissest	ihr wißt
er weiß	sie wissen	er wisse	sie wissen

#### SUBJUNCTIVE

##### PRETERIT

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
ich wußte	wir wußten	ich wüßte	wir wüßten
du wüßtest	ihr wüßtet	du wüßtest	ihr wüßtet
er wußte	sie wußten	er wüßte	sie wüßten

##### IMPERATIVE

Singular	Plural
—	wissen wir
weise (du)	wißt (ihr)
wisse er	wissen sie

1. The compound tenses are regular: *ich werde, würde wissen; ich habe, hatte gewußt; ich werde, würde gewußt haben*, etc.

2. *Wissen*, like the modal auxiliaries (166, 1 b, Note), formed a **weak** preterit after the original past tense of the **strong conjugation** had assumed the meaning of the present; hence, the general resemblance in the inflection of *wissen* to that of the modal auxiliaries.

### EXERCISE 14

NOTE. So many idiomatic expressions are formed by the **modal auxiliaries**, that a description of their use belongs rather to the dictionary than to the grammar. Yet, on account of the frequent occurrence of such phrases in every department of literature and especially in conversation, a brief enumeration of the most common meanings of these verbs is given now.

#### I

1. **Dürfen**. (a) *be permitted*: *darf ich fragen, may I (am I permitted to) ask? sie durften, aber sie wollten nicht, they could (were allowed to), but they would not; du darfst es tun, you may do it.*

(b) *have a right to*: *er durfte das wohl unternehmen; er ist der Herr, he could (had a right to) undertake that, I presume: he is the master; wer darf das auf sich nehmen? who has the authority (dares, is entitled) to take that upon himself?*

(c) *must*, with a **negative**, denotes prohibition: *das dürfen Sie nicht sagen; es wäre eine große Schande, you must not say that: it would be a great shame; hier darf man nicht rauchen, no smoking allowed here.*

(d) *may, might*, with the **preterit subjunctive**, denotes probability: *das dürfte wahr sein, that may (might) in all probability be true; das dürfte er wohl geglaubt haben, he might (may) very probably have believed that.*

(e) *need, have need of*, only in a few phrases now, generally with *nur, only*, or *kaum, hardly*: *Sie durften nur Ihr Wort geben; jedermann vertraute Ihnen, you needed only give your word; every one trusted you (more commonly now: Sie brauchten etc.); das dürfen Sie mir kaum sagen, ich kenne die Sache durch und durch, you need hardly tell me that, I know the affair through and through.*

2. **Können**. (a) *be able*, denotes **power** or **ability**, physical or otherwise: *er ist stark genug, er kann schon das Holz hauen, he is*

*strong enough, he can (is able to) chop the wood, to be sure; die Kinder können schon lesen, already the children can (are able to) read.*

NOTE 1. The **present kann**, etc., is generally rendered by *can*, the **preterit indicative and subjunctive** by *could*: er konnte mich nicht sehen, es war so dunkel, *he could not see me, it was so dark*; wir könnten es tun, wenn wir wollten, *we could do it, if we would*.

NOTE 2. Therefore, when rendering English into German, ascertain whether "*could*" means *was able* or *should (would) be able*.

(b) *may, might*, denote **possibility**, the most common meaning, or **permission** or **probability**: es kann sein, *it may be, it is possible*; er kann das gesagt haben, *he may have said that*; sie konnten das gemeint haben, *they may have meant that*; er kann gehen oder kommen, *he may go or come*; man kann das von ihm erwarten, *that may be expected from him*; ich kann ihn vielleicht nicht verstanden haben, *I may perhaps not have understood him*; ich könnte vor Abend nicht zu Hause sein, *I might not be at home before evening*.

(c) *know (how)*, its original meaning, is found in some expressions in reference to languages, lessons, rules, games and the like: Können Sie Deutsch? *do you know German*? wir konnten Französisch, *we knew French*; kannst du die Aufgabe? *do you know your lesson*? vor Jahren konnte ich Whist, aber jetzt habe ich es vergessen, *I knew how to play whist years ago, but I have forgotten it now*.

NOTE. Können is used in this manner, especially when it occurs without an infinitive dependent on it.

3. **Mögen**. (a) *may, have the power (the might)*, its original meaning, occurs but seldom now: keine Gewalt auf Erden mag das vollbringen, *no power on earth may (is strong enough to) accomplish that*; Gott allein mag es, *God alone may (has the power to) do it*.

(b) *like, wish, desire, prefer, be kind enough to, care to (for, after), be inclined*. These are the most common meanings now: ich mag ihn nicht, *I do not like him*; er mochte das nicht hören, *he did not like to hear that*; wir mochten das Spielzeug nicht mehr, *we did not care for the playthings any more*; sein Vetter mochte ihn nicht einmal ansehen, *his cousin did not even care to look at him*; was er Ihnen auch sagen mag, *whatever he may (chooses to)*

*tell you; diese Kinder mögen nicht in die Schule gehen, aber sie müssen, these children do not like (do not care) to go to school, but they must.*

NOTE. The meaning of liking, desire, etc., often strengthened by *gern* or *sehr gern*, occurs especially with the **preterit subjunctive**: *wir möchten es (sehr gern) tun, we should like to do it very much; möchten Sie die Güte haben, would you have the kindness (would you be kind enough).*

(c) The **subjunctives** of *mögen* often serve to express a *possibility, purpose, design or wish*. In such cases their use is nearly equivalent to that of the subjunctive of the principal verb: *wir haben alles Mögliche getan, damit es ihm hier gefallen möge (for gefallen), we have done everything possible that he may be pleased here; möge nie das Glück ihm abhold werden! may fortune (happiness) never bear ill-will to him! möchte es doch immer Frühling sein! would that it always might be spring! (wäre es doch immer Frühling!)*

(d) *may, might* denote **permission, concession** and the like, and are therefore often interchangeable with *können*: *das mag ja sein, that may be, don't you know? wir mochten das nicht verstanden haben, we might (possibly) not have understood that.*

(e) *may (not might)*, although the form is the preterit, denotes a **rough approximation**: *es mochte wohl drei Jahre sein, als wir ihn zum letztenmale gesehen haben, it may possibly have been about three years when we saw him last.*

## VOCABULARY 14 a

**abweisen**, *dismiss.*

**ausgehen**, *go out.*

**der Bankier**,\* *banker.*

**beschuldigen**, *accuse (with the accusative of the person and the genitive of the thing).*

**besorgen**, *attend to.*

**dauern**, *last.*

**ehrlich**, *honest.*

**die Einladung**, *invitation.*

**die Eltern**, *parents.*

**der Fall**, *case.*

\* The r is silent.

**das Geschäft**, *business, engagement, affair, occupation.*

**das Gesetz**, *law.*

**irren** (48, 1), *err.*

**die Klage**, *complaint.*

**leicht**, *easy.*

**leiden**, *suffer, bear.*

**mensächlich**, *human.*

**nie**, *never.*

**partei'lich**, *partial, unfair.*

**der Richter**, *judge.*

**die Unwahrheit**, *untruth.*

**zweifeln**, *doubt, (with an and dative).*

## TRANSLATION 14 a

A. 1. Sie dürfen nicht glauben,<sup>1</sup> daß ich Ihre Einladung vergessen<sup>2</sup> habe, aber bei<sup>3</sup> den vielen Geschäften, die ich besorgen mußte, habe ich nicht die Zeit finden<sup>4</sup> können, Ihnen sofort<sup>5</sup> zu schreiben.<sup>6</sup> 2. Das dürfte wohl leicht der Fall sein, dachte ich, da ich keinen Brief<sup>7</sup> von Ihnen erhalten<sup>8</sup> habe. 3. Wer dürfte an des Königs Wort zweifeln? Man hat ihn nie einer Unwahrheit beschuldigen können. 4. Das mag ja sein, aber Irren ist menschlich. 5. Dieser parteiische Richter hätte wohl die Klagen der ehrlichen Bürger abweisen mögen, wenn er es nach<sup>9</sup> dem Gesetze hätte tun können (dürfen).<sup>10</sup> 6. Den stolzen General mochten wir nicht; er hat auch uns nie leiden können. 7. Wir möchten gern wissen, wie diese armen Bauern während<sup>11</sup> des strengen<sup>12</sup> Winters in jenen alten Häusern hatten<sup>10</sup> wohnen können. 8. Der reiche Bankier dürfte wohl krank<sup>4</sup> sein; man hat ihn seit ein paar Wochen nirgends<sup>4</sup> gesehen. 9. Der Arzt<sup>13</sup> sagte ihm, er dürfe<sup>14</sup> einige<sup>15</sup> Tage lang nicht ausgehen. 10. Unsere Brüder und Schwestern können wohl jetzt sehr gut Deutsch; sie sind seit drei Jahren in Deutschland. 11. Die ganze Sache<sup>2</sup> mochte beinahe<sup>2</sup> zehn Tage gedauert haben; wir, Kinder, durften nichts davon wissen und unsere Eltern mochten nichts mehr davon hören. 12. Was wir tun mögen, da s dürfen wir nicht und was wir tun dürfen, da s mögen wir nicht.

<sup>1</sup> Vocabulary 3 b, p. 29. <sup>2</sup> Id., 10 b, p. 78. <sup>3</sup> bei = *in view of*. <sup>4</sup> Vocabulary 6 b, p. 48. <sup>5</sup> Id., 13 c, p. 118. <sup>6</sup> Id., 3 b, p. 29. <sup>7</sup> Id., 6 a, p. 47. <sup>8</sup> Id., 8 b, p. 62. <sup>9</sup> nach = *according to*. <sup>10</sup> Cf. 168, 2. <sup>11</sup> Vocabulary 4 b, p. 35. <sup>12</sup> Id., 13 b, p. 113. <sup>13</sup> Id., 7 a, p. 52. <sup>14</sup> Cf. Exercise 13, II, 3, p. 116. <sup>15</sup> Vocabulary 5 a, p. 39.

B. 1. Had you forgotten my invitation? I can not believe that you wished<sup>1</sup> to attend to so many business engagements<sup>2</sup> at that time. 2. I did not know how<sup>3</sup> you would find time to write so many letters. 3. Why have you not<sup>4</sup> been able to write us a few lines (Zeile, f.)? 4. What he told us

may possibly<sup>5</sup> be true (wahr), but we doubt<sup>6</sup> his word.  
 5. You must not say that; it would be unjust (ungerecht).  
 6. Those honest citizens could easily have dismissed these complaints, but they knew<sup>7</sup> that their judges were unfair.  
 7. According to [the] law we might have accused the proud generals before the judge, but we did not like to do it.  
 8. I could never<sup>8</sup> bear (endure) the man; he is so proud and unfair, is he not? 9. We children were permitted to play in the garden, but we did not like (to). 10. Our teacher told us we must not do that: it was<sup>9</sup> against<sup>10</sup> the law.  
 11. I should like to know why (warum). 12. I wonder<sup>5</sup> who would like to live in that old house. 13. Who would<sup>11</sup> have lived there? 14. These peasants may be rich; they spend (verschwenden) much money. 15. When the physicians told [to] the rich banker that he might visit us for a few days, he<sup>12</sup> was very glad (froh). 16. We know French (französisch) and should like to study (lernen) German now.<sup>13</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Exercise 11, 8, p. 90. <sup>2</sup> Order of words: *at that time* (damals) *so many business engagements*. <sup>3</sup> *how, wie; would find* does not mean *were willing to find*; therefore, use the conditional of finden. <sup>4</sup> Order of words: *(to) us not*. <sup>5</sup> Cf. Exercise 9, 3 b, p. 66. <sup>6</sup> Cf. zweifeln in Vocabulary 14 a, p. 129. <sup>7</sup> *know*, here wissen. <sup>8</sup> Order of words: *the man never*. <sup>9</sup> Cf. Exercise 13, II, 3, p. 116. <sup>10</sup> Cf. Exercise 6, 5, p. 46. <sup>11</sup> *would have lived* = *would have been willing to live*. <sup>12</sup> Cf. Exercise 4, 3, Note, p. 33. <sup>13</sup> Order of words: *now German*.

## II

4. Müssen. (a) **must**, *be compelled to, obliged to, cannot but*, denotes a **necessity**, physical, moral or logical: er muß es tun, die Pflicht verlangt es, *he must do it, duty demands it*; wir mußten wieder den Berg hinabsteigen, es gab keinen anderen Weg, *we were obliged (had to) to descend the mountain again; there was no other way*; da wir es einmal angefangen haben, müssen wir es fortsetzen, *since we have once begun it, we must continue it*; ich muß mich darüber wundern, *I cannot but wonder at it*; jener Bauer muß wohl sehr krank sein, man hat nach dem Priester geschickt, *that peasant must be very ill, I suppose; the priest has been sent for*.

NOTE. A good translation of the preterit indicative „mußte“ is generally *could not help* (followed by the present participle of the given verb); of the preterit subjunctive, *ought to*; of the pluperfect subjunctive, *ought to have* (followed by the past participle of the given verb): es mußte ihm gefallen, *it could not help pleasing him*; ich mußte lachen, *I could not help laughing*; ich mußte ihm die volle Wahrheit sagen, dachte ich, denn er verdient es, *I ought to tell him the whole truth, I thought, for he deserves it*; ich hätte ihm das erklären müssen; sonst, wußte ich ja wohl, würde er es nicht verstehen, *I ought to have explained that to him; otherwise, I knew perfectly well, he would not understand it.*

(b) Occasionally müssen denotes **supposition** or **certainty**: wer muß mich verraten haben, *I wonder who has betrayed me*; er muß es gestohlen haben, *I am sure he has stolen it.*

(c) The original meaning of müssen, *be free, be permitted*, appears now only with **negatives**, and is then equivalent to a **prohibition**: Kinder müssen das nicht wissen, *children must not know that.*

(d) Remember the phrase: es mußte denn sein, daß, *unless: es mußte denn sein, daß er nicht die Wahrheit gesagt habe (hat), unless he has not told the truth.*

5. Sollen. (a) *shall, should*, denotes **command, determination, authority, threat**: du sollst keine falschen Götter anbeten, *thou shalt worship no false gods*; er soll es tun, ich will es haben, *he shall do it, I will have it*; der König befahl, daß die Gefangenen den Tod erleiden sollten, *the king commanded that the prisoners should suffer death.*

(b) *be intended to, be to, be destined to, mean*: sie sollten morgen wieder kommen, *they were to come again to-morrow* (according to what they said or thought, etc.); er soll noch lange regieren, *he is (is destined) to reign a long time yet*; das Haus soll verkauft werden, *the house is to be sold*; es sollte ein Witß sein, *it was (intended) to be a joke*; was soll das? *what does that mean?* wem soll das? *whom is that (intended) for?*

(c) *should, ought to*; its original meaning, to denote **duty, obligation**, occurs occasionally, especially in the **preterit** and **pluperfect subjunctive**: er sollte sich zu benehmen wissen, *he should know how to behave himself*; Sie hätten sich schämen sollen (168, 1), *you ought to have been ashamed of yourself.*

(d) *be said, be alleged*, to denote something based on **rumor** or on the **authority** of some one else than the speaker: *daß Versprechen, das wir gegeben haben sollen, the promise that we are said to have given; der Mann soll es getan haben, the man is reported to have done it; er soll tot sein, he is believed to be dead.*

(e) *should, can, may, might*, to denote **supposition** and, with **auch**, **concession**: *sollte das wahr sein? should or may that be true? soll er uns so betrogen haben? can he have deceived us thus? sollte es auf Ihren Rat geschehen sein? might it have been done at your advice? sollte er auch recht gehabt haben, er hätte schweigen sollen (168, 1), even though he may have been right, he ought to have been silent.*

6. **Wollen.** (a) *will, would* originally denotes **determination**: *er will es tun trotz alledem, he will do it in spite of all; er wollte nicht von ihr lassen, he would not (was resolved not to) abandon her; wir haben unsern Plan durchsetzen wollen, so sehr er auch widersprach, we have been determined to enforce our plan, no matter how much he resisted (it or us).*

(b) *wish, desire, be willing*, are the most common meanings: *wollen Sie es oder nicht? do you wish it or do you not? sie wollten uns Geschenke machen, they would (were desirous to) give us presents; wir hätten es tun wollen, aber sie wollten nicht, we should have been willing to do it, but they would not.*

NOTE. This meaning occurs frequently with the adverb *gern, gladly, fain*, its comparative *lieber, rather*, and superlative *am liebsten, most gladly*: *wir wollen Sie gern nach Haus begleiten, we like to escort you home; wir wollten lieber mit ihm sprechen als ihm schreiben, we would rather speak than write to him; am liebsten hätte ich ihn selbst sehen wollen, I should have preferred most of all to see him (himself).*

(c) *be on the point of, be about to*, usually with **eben**; *er wollte das Fenster zumachen, als ihn sein Freund wegrief, he was about to close the window when his friend called him away; was will er? what is he about (to do)? es wollte eben dunkel werden, it was just about to grow dark; wir wollen die Stadt verlassen, we are on the point of leaving the city; es will regnen, it is about to rain.*

(d) *claim, pretend, assert*: *der junge Mann will die ganze Sache besser verstehen, the young man pretends to understand the whole*



*matter better; sie wollten das nie gesagt haben, they claimed they had never said that; die Italiener wollen den Mörder nicht gesehen haben, the Italians assert that they have not seen the murderer.*

(c) Idiomatic phrases are formed when the **subject** of the sentence by its meaning can have **no will, wish or power**, etc.: das wollte ihm nicht gefallen, *that did not seem to please him*; das Abendessen wollte ihm nicht bekommen, *the supper did not seem to agree with him*.

## VOCABULARY 14 b

der Arbeiter, <i>workman, laborer.</i>	rief (pret. of rufen), <i>called.</i>
auf'ging, <i>opened; arose (of the sun).</i>	die Schlacht, <i>battle.</i>
die Bemerkung, <i>remark.</i>	der Spio'n, <i>spy.</i>
betreten, <i>enter.</i>	der Tanzsaal, <i>dancing hall.</i>
ein'trat, <i>came in.</i>	täuschen, <i>deceive.</i>
ins Feld ziehen, <i>take the field.</i>	trotz alledem, <i>in spite of all that.</i>
das Feuer, <i>fire.</i>	über (with accus.), <i>about, concerning.</i>
fremd, <i>strange, foreign, a stranger.</i>	der Unterricht, <i>instruction.</i>
der Fremde, <i>stranger, foreigner.</i>	das Versprechen, } <i>promise.</i>
der Führer, <i>leader.</i>	die Versprechung, }
das Gastzimmer, <i>guest-room.</i>	das Vertrauen, <i>confidence.</i>
der Gegenbefehl, <i>counter-order.</i>	wirklich, <i>real(ly).</i>
nach (following its noun), <i>by.</i>	das Wirtshaus, <i>inn, tavern.</i>
plötzlich, <i>suddenly.</i>	Wort halten, <i>keep one's word.</i>

## TRANSLATION 14 b

A. 1. Trotz alledem hätten die unglücklichen<sup>1</sup> Könige ihr Wort halten sollen; jetzt<sup>2</sup> werden wir ihnen kein Vertrauen mehr<sup>3</sup> schenken.<sup>4</sup> 2. Die Führer jener Arbeiter sollen große Versprechungen gemacht haben, aber wer wollte ihnen glauben, da (since) sie ihre Leute so oft<sup>5</sup> getäuscht haben? 3. Man mußte dem armen Soldaten glauben, nicht wahr? Er zeigte<sup>6</sup> ja die Wunden, die er in der Schlacht erhalten<sup>7</sup> hatte. 4. Die Spione wollen jene Bemerkungen über den Kaiser<sup>1</sup> gehört haben, die<sup>8</sup> verschiedene<sup>9</sup> Bürger im Wirtshaus gemacht haben sollen und deren<sup>8</sup> sie nun der Richter<sup>10</sup> beschuldigt.<sup>10</sup> 5. Ich kannte ihn nicht dem Namen (125) nach, aber ich wußte, wo er wohnte. 6. Das Heer<sup>1</sup> sollte morgen ins

Feld ziehen, aber der General will soeben Gegenbefehl erhalten haben. 7. Die Offiziere hätten ihre Pflicht<sup>11</sup> tun müssen, wenn der Oberst<sup>12</sup> es wirklich gewollt hätte. 8. Ihr, Knaben, solltet euch schämen,<sup>13</sup> so faul<sup>14</sup> zu sein. 9. Die Damen<sup>15</sup> wollten eben<sup>5</sup> den Tanzsaal betreten, als man sie plötzlich nach Hause rief. 10. Der Lehrer<sup>14</sup> wollte eben den Unterricht beginnen,<sup>16</sup> als Feuer im Schulzimmer ausbrach.<sup>17</sup> 11. Wie hätten wir wissen können, wer die Fremden im Gastzimmer kannte? 12. Es wollte zehn Uhr schlagen, als die Tür aufging und der fremde Offizier eintrat.

<sup>1</sup> Vocabulary 10 a, p. 76. <sup>2</sup> Id., 4 b, p. 35. <sup>3</sup> Id., 5 b, p. 40. <sup>4</sup> Id., 12 b, p. 103. <sup>5</sup> Id., 10 b, p. 78. <sup>6</sup> Id., 2, p. 22. <sup>7</sup> Id., 8 b, p. 62. <sup>8</sup> Cf. Exercise 13, II, 5, p. 117. <sup>9</sup> Vocabulary 9 a, p. 67. <sup>10</sup> Id., 14 a, p. 129. <sup>11</sup> Id., 13 c, p. 118. <sup>12</sup> Id., 13 a, p. 111. <sup>13</sup> euch schämen, *be ashamed*; the dependent infinitive with *zu* = *of* and present participle. <sup>14</sup> Vocabulary 3 a, p. 27. <sup>15</sup> Id., 9 b, p. 68. <sup>16</sup> Id., 7 b, p. 54. <sup>17</sup> Id., 6 b, p. 48.

B. 1. A king should<sup>1</sup> always keep his word, if he wishes his subjects (Untertan, m. cf. 127) to give (that his subjects shall give) him their confidence. 2. In spite of all that, he should<sup>2</sup> have given [to] me more confidence. 3. These workmen are said to make many promises as soon<sup>3</sup> as they need (brauchen) money (Geld, n.); they should<sup>1</sup> not<sup>4</sup> deceive us. 4. The poor soldiers could not help believing that their leader was wrong.<sup>5</sup> 5. The general is said to have made some (einige) remarks about various citizens who had remained<sup>6</sup> in the<sup>7</sup> tavern during the battle and pretended<sup>8</sup> to know nothing about (von) the matter. 6. We knew<sup>9</sup> by name<sup>10</sup> the judge who accused the citizens of [the] cowardice (Feigheit, f.), but we did not know<sup>11</sup> where he had lived last year (letztes Jahr). 7. The officers are said to have received the order (Befehl, m.) to (zu) take<sup>12</sup> the field with the army; they could not help doing their duty. 8. How could they have known<sup>11</sup> that the colonel received counter-orders from the king? 9. Who called those ladies home<sup>13</sup> so suddenly? They were just about to visit their various friends. 10. As

soon<sup>3</sup> as the fire broke out, our teacher<sup>14</sup> should have ended<sup>15</sup> his instruction. 11. You ought to have known those officers by name; you spoke<sup>16</sup> to them in the<sup>7</sup> guest-room<sup>17</sup> yesterday evening. 12. We could not believe it was so late (jpät). It was just about to strike eleven<sup>18</sup> o'clock.

<sup>1</sup> *should = ought to, not = would.* <sup>2</sup> Cf. 170, 8 and 9. <sup>3</sup> *as soon as, so=* bald. <sup>4</sup> Order of words: *us not.* <sup>5</sup> *be wrong, unredt haben.* <sup>6</sup> *remain, blei=* ben, blieb, geblieben, cf. 144, 2. Order of words: *during* (während, with genitive) *the battle in the tavern.* <sup>7</sup> Cf. 57, 2. <sup>8</sup> Cf. Exercise 11, 8, p. 90; *matter, Sache, f.* <sup>9</sup> *know, here kennen, 164, 1.* <sup>10</sup> Place by name immediately after the relative clause (*who . . . cowardice*). <sup>11</sup> *know, here wissen, cf. 172.* <sup>12</sup> Cf. Exercise 11, 6, p. 90. <sup>13</sup> Order of words: *so suddenly home.* <sup>14</sup> Cf. Exercise 4, 3, Note, p. 33. <sup>15</sup> *end, beendigen.* <sup>16</sup> *speak, sprechen, sprach, ge=* sprachen; *to, mit.* <sup>17</sup> Cf. Exercise 7, 6, p. 52. <sup>18</sup> Cf. Exercise 13, II, 2, p. 116.

### III

#### The Modal Auxiliaries without Dependent Infinitives

7. The **modal auxiliaries** may occur without an infinitive dependent upon them; the latter can be easily supplied by the connection.

8. **Adverbs of direction**, as *fort, away; hin, thither, that way, there; herbei, hither, here; zurück, back*, etc., often assume the place of an omitted verb of motion, direction and the like: *Wo=* hin wollen Sie? (*whither*) *which way do you want to (go)?* Er soll hie(r)her, *he shall (come) here (hither, this way)*; du mußt fort, *you must (go) away*; er hat davon gewollt, *he has wished to (get) off (from there)*; der alte Mann war so schwach, *er konnte nicht von der Stelle, the old man was so weak, he could not (stir) from the place*; das Geld muß herbei (supply geschafft werden), *the money must come in (be raised)*.

9. The infinitive is often suggested by the context in other ways: *er kann es, aber er darf es nicht, he can (is able to) do it, but he is not allowed to (must not do it)*; jeder tut, was er kann, *every one does what he can (do)*.

10. Among common idiomatic phrases, remember:

Was soll das? *what does that mean?*

Wozu soll das? *what is that for? what is the use of that?*

Ich kann nicht dafür, *I cannot help it, it is not my fault.*

Ich kann nicht umhin zu (infinitive), *I cannot help or forbear, (present participle).*

## VOCABULARY 14 c

alles Mögliche, <i>everything possible.</i>	rein, <i>pure, clean, real.</i>
bös, böse, <i>bad, evil.</i>	retten, <i>save.</i>
einmal, <i>once, for once.</i>	ruhelos, <i>restless.</i>
fragen, <i>ask (a question).</i>	ruhen, <i>rest.</i>
der Geist, <i>spirit.</i>	die Seele, <i>soul.</i>
halten, <i>hold, keep back.</i>	selten, <i>seldom, rarely.</i>
das Leben, <i>life.</i>	verfallen (past part. of verfallen), with dative, <i>be forfeited, fallen into.</i>
leichtsinig, <i>thoughtless.</i>	der Verstand, <i>understanding, mind.</i>
die Macht, <i>power.</i>	weiter (adv.), <i>farther.</i>
die Puppe, <i>doll.</i>	

## TRANSLATION 14 c

A. 1. Dieser ruheloſe Knabe wollte immer davon; aber er darf nicht fort; ſein Vater will es nicht. 2. Wozu ſoll das? Könnt ihr auf nichts Anderes<sup>1</sup> denken<sup>2</sup>? Es müßte denn ſein, daß ihr den Verſtand verloren<sup>3</sup> habt. 3. Wohin wollen die? Sie können kaum von der Stelle; ſie müſſen krank ſein. 4. Ich kann nicht weiter; hier muß ich einen Augenblick<sup>4</sup> ruhen; was ſoll mir dein Verſprechen<sup>5</sup>? 5. Was können wir daſür? Haben wir nicht alles Mögliche tun wollen, ihm<sup>6</sup> das Leben zu retten? 6. Der gute Pfarrer<sup>7</sup> konnte nicht umhin ſeiner leichtſinnigen Gemeinde<sup>7</sup> einmal die reine Wahrheit<sup>8</sup> zu ſagen; ſie mochte ſie nicht hören. 7. Das will den Leuten ſelten gefallen<sup>9</sup>; ſie möchten lieber, daß man ihnen ſchmeichelte.<sup>7</sup> 8. Setzt muß ich fort; ich frage nicht; darf ich? Nichts mag mich halten. 9. Was will der? Er will dich; ſeiner Macht biſt du verfallen. 10. Der böſe Geiſt kann nichts über die reine Seele. 11. Das darſt du nicht, mein Kind; wohin wiſt du wieder? 12. Ich mag dieſe alte Puppe nicht mehr; wozu ſoll ſie?

<sup>1</sup> Cf. 48, 1 c. <sup>2</sup> Vocabulary 6 a, p. 47. <sup>3</sup> Id., 10 a, p. 76. <sup>4</sup> Id., 9 b, p. 68. <sup>5</sup> Id., 14 b, p. 134. <sup>6</sup> ihm das = ſein. <sup>7</sup> Vocabulary 13 a, p. 111. <sup>8</sup> Id., 12 c, p. 104. <sup>9</sup> Id., 5 b, p. 40.

B. 1. The teacher has told the boys (dative) that they must not<sup>1</sup> (go) away now. 2. Had you lost your mind? Which

way had you wished (to go)? 3. What<sup>2</sup> are you thinking of<sup>2</sup>? You are too ill; do you not see you cannot (go any) farther? 4. After<sup>3</sup> I have rested a moment, I must (go) away again. 5. He told us it was not his fault, but we have not been able to believe him (dative). 6. You should have done everything possible to save your honor (Ehre, f.). 7. Tell us the real truth<sup>4</sup> for once; we would like to hear it. 8. He is said to have flattered you<sup>5</sup> and now he pretends to flatter us. 9. May I ask you why (warum) you want (to go) away so soon? 10. Did I not tell you,<sup>6</sup> children, that you must not (do) that? 11. What was the use of that old table? We did not like it.

<sup>1</sup> Order of words: *now not away*. <sup>2</sup> *What of, woran*. <sup>3</sup> *After, Nachdem*.

<sup>4</sup> Order of words: *for once the real truth*. <sup>5</sup> Use dative. <sup>6</sup> Dative plural of du.

## LESSON XV

### STRONG CONJUGATION.—CLASS I

CLASSIFICATION OF STRONG VERBS.—CLASS I.—SECOND AND THIRD PERSONS SINGULAR OF THE PRESENT INDICATIVE.—IMPERATIVE.—CONNECTING VOWEL *e*—CONJUGATION OF *tragen* AND *raten*.

#### Classification of Strong Verbs.

173. 1. The characteristic change of the radical vowel in the strong verbs is called “*ablaut*,” or gradation of sounds.

2. The **preterit** must always have a vowel different from that of the **infinitive**; the vowel of the past participle may be the same as that of the infinitive or of the preterit, or different from either:

I	geben,	<i>give,</i>	gab,	gegeben.
II	bleiben,	<i>remain,</i>	blieb,	geblieben.
III	werfen,	<i>throw,</i>	warf,	geworfen.

*a.* A classification of the strong verbs in Modern German, based on the historical development of the language, that is, on the several original ablaut-classes, would be merely confusing to the beginner. Therefore, the classification of the strong verbs found on the following pages has no scientific basis; it is given only for a practical purpose, to facilitate the work of the student.

**174.** The strong verbs are divided into **six classes** according to the **radical vowels** of their **infinitive**.

**175.** As to the order in which the classes follow one another, the *alphabetical position* of the vowels in the infinitive has, in the main, been considered. The umlauts, however, are classified with *e*.

NOTE. As *e(i)* forms a distinct constituent part of the umlauts, this arrangement seems permissible.

**176.** In the infinitive the **first class** has **a**;  
the **second class** has **e**; **ä**, **ö** or **ü**;  
the **third class** has **i**;  
the **fourth class** has **o**, **u** or **au**;  
the **fifth class** has **ie**;  
the **sixth class** has **ei**.

**177.** The first, third, fifth and sixth classes are **each** divided into **two groups**.

*a.* Although for the sake of convenience and completeness all verbs will be given in the respective lists, the acquaintance with the **first group only** implies the knowledge of the second, since the verbs not mentioned in the first group must needs belong to the second group.

*b.* But in the **second class** the first **two groups** must be known; by inference, all the other verbs of this class must belong to the third group.

*c.* The **fourth class** contains only **nine** verbs, two in **o**, one in **u** and six in **au**.

## FIRST CLASS

**178. Radical vowel in the infinitive: a.**

All strong verbs with the radical vowel *a* in the infinitive retain this vowel (*a*) in the **past participle**.

**Sole exception:**

*ſchallen, ſcholl, geſchollen, sound.*

1. There are **two groups** of the remaining verbs according to the formation of the **preterit**.

*a.* To the **first group** belong the verbs whose radical vowel (*a*) of the infinitive is **immediately** followed by **any one of the first six consonants of the alphabet** (but *f* must be doubled) or by *ſch*; the preterit takes *u*; thus ***a, n, a.***

*b.* To the **second group** belong the other verbs; their **preterit** takes *ie*; thus ***a, ie, a.***

NOTE. The student may easily remember the following facts: the **first** group of the **first** class with the **first** vowel of the alphabet in the infinitive followed **immediately** by any one of the **first** six consonants (*b, c,\* d, ff, g, h*) or by *ſch*.

**179. First group: a, n, a.**

backen,	but,†	gebacken,	<i>bake.</i>
fahren,	fuhr,	gefahren,	<i>drive.</i>
graben,	grub,	gegraben,	<i>dig.</i>
laden,	lud,	geladen,	<i>load, invite.</i>
ſchaffen,	ſchuf,‡	geſchaffen,	<i>create.</i>
ſchlagen,	ſchlug,	geſchlagen,	<i>strike, slay.</i>
tragen,	trug,	getragen,	<i>carry.</i>
wachſen,	wuchſ,	gewachſen,	<i>grow.</i>
waſchen,	wuſch,	gewaſchen,	<i>wash.</i>

NOTE 1. *Fragen* (*ask a question*) has the form *frug* beside *fragte*; the past participle is always weak: *gefragt*.

NOTE 2. *Mahlen* (*grind*) has the weak form *mahlte* now (formerly *muhl*); the past participle is always strong: *gemahlen*.

\* Occurs only in *dj* and *tj*.

† Notice the dropping of *c* in the preterit. The weak form *badte* occurs at times.

‡ Only one *j* in the preterit; cf. 227, 2 *a*. *Œchaffen* in the sense of *work, procure*, or *command* follows the weak conjugation.

**180. Second group: a, ie, a.** To the second group belong all the other verbs\*; they are:

blasen,	blies,	geblasen,	<i>blow, sound.</i>
braten,	briet,	gebraten,	<i>roast.</i>
fallen,	fiel,	gefallen,	<i>fall.</i>
fangen,	fing,	gefangen,	<i>catch.</i>
	(fieng)		
halten,	hielt,	gehalten,	<i>hold.</i>
hängen,	hing,	gehängen,	<i>hang.</i>
	(hieng)		
lassen,	ließ,	gelassen,	<i>let, allow.</i>
raten,	riet,	geraten,	<i>advise.</i>
schlafen,	schief,	geschlafen,	<i>sleep.</i>

NOTE 1. *Spalten, split*, is now weak in the preterit: *spaltete* (formerly *spaltet*); the past participle is always strong: *gespalten*.

NOTE 2. *Salzen, salt*, follows now the same method: *salzte, gesalzen*.

NOTE 3. The *a* is short before a double consonant or two consonants, long before *h* or one consonant.

### Second and Third Persons Singular of the Present Indicative

**181. 1. All strong verbs without exception** having *i* (Class III), *ie* (Class V), or *ei* (Class VI) in the infinitive, undergo **no change of vowel** in the second and third persons singular of the present indicative.

2. Thus the vowel-change is limited to classes I, II and IV.

**182.** With the **exception** of *schaffen* and *schallen*, all the verbs of class I change *a* to *ä*: *ich schaffe, du schaffst, er schafft; ich trage, du trägst, er trägt; ich lade, du lädst, er lädt*.

### Imperative (second person singular)

**183.** The verbs of Class I retain the vowel of the infinitive **unchanged** in the imperative and generally add *e* to the root: *schaffe, rate, lade*; but *lassen* always has *laß*.

\* They are given for the sake of convenience only; from the previous rules it is evident that they must belong to the second group of the first class.



### The Connecting Vowel *e*

**184.** 1. Strong verbs changing their radical vowel of the infinitive in the second and third persons singular of the present indicative usually omit the connecting vowel *e*: *du läbſt*, *er läbt* (from *laden*).

*a.* As said above (162, 4), when the *e* is omitted after a sibilant of the root in the second person singular of the present indicative, the *j* of the ending *ſt* is also dropped and then the second and third person singular are alike in form:

**Examples :** *ich blaſe*, *du bläſ(e)ſt*, *er bläſt*.  
*ich laſſe*, *du läſt* (*läſſeſt*), *er läſt*.  
*ich waſche*, *du wäſch(e)ſt*, *er wäſcht*.  
*ich waſche*, *du wäſchſt*, *er wäſcht*.

**185.** 1. If the root ends in *t*, the latter and the *t* of the ending in the third person singular of the present indicative contract to one: *du hältſt*, *er hält* instead of *hällt* (from *halten*); *er brät* (from *braten*); *er rät* (from *raten*).

2. In the second person singular of the strong preterit *e* is inserted after sibilants: *du wuchſeſt* (from *wachſen*); *du wuſcheſt* (from *waſchen*).

### Conjugation of *tragen* and *raten*.

#### 186.

#### 1. CLASS I, FIRST GROUP

*tragen*, *trug*, *getragen*, *bear*.

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
PRESENT		PRESENT	
Singular		Singular	
1. <i>ich trage</i> , <i>I bear</i> , etc.		<i>ich trage</i> , <i>I may bear</i> , etc.	
2. <i>du tr ä gſt</i>		<i>du trag e ſt</i>	
3. <i>er tr ä gt</i>		<i>er trag e</i>	
Plural		Plural	
1. <i>wir tragen</i>		<i>wir tragen</i>	
2. <i>ihr tragt</i>		<i>ihr trag e t</i>	
3. <i>ſie tragen</i>		<i>ſie tragen</i>	

PRETERIT

Singular		Singular
1. ich tr u g, <i>I bore, etc.</i>		ich tr ü g e, <i>I might bear, etc.</i>
2. du trugst		du tr ü gest
3. er trug		er tr ü ge
Plural		Plural
1. wir trugen		wir tr ü gen
2. ihr trugt		ihr tr ü get
3. sie trugen		sie tr ü gen

FUTURE

Singular		Singular
1. ich werde tragen, <i>I shall bear, etc.</i>		ich werde tragen, <i>I shall bear, etc.</i>
2. du wirst "		du werdest "
3. er wird "		er werde "
Plural		Plural
1. wir werden tragen		wir werden tragen
2. ihr werdet "		ihr werdet "
3. sie werden "		sie werden "

PERFECT

Singular		Singular
1. ich habe getragen, <i>I have borne, etc.</i>		ich habe getragen, <i>I may have borne, etc.</i>
2. du hast getragen		du habest "
3. er hat "		er habet "
Plural		Plural
1. wir haben getragen		wir haben getragen
2. ihr habt "		ihr habet "
3. sie haben "		sie haben "

PLUPERFECT

Singular		Singular
1. ich hätte getragen, <i>I had borne, etc.</i>		ich hätte getragen, <i>I might have borne, etc.</i>
2. du hättest "		du hättest getragen
3. er hätte "		er hätte "

Plural		Plural	
1. wir	hatten getragen	wir	h ä tten getragen
2. ihr	hattet "	ihr	h ä ttet "
3. sie	hatten "	sie	h ä tten "

## FUTURE PERFECT

Singular		Singular	
1. ich	werde getragen haben, <i>I shall have borne, etc.</i>	ich	werde getragen haben, <i>I shall have borne, etc.</i>
2. du	w i r st getragen haben	du	w e rdest getragen haben.
3. er	w i r d " "	er	w e rde " "
Plural		Plural	
1. wir	werden getragen haben	wir	werden getragen haben
2. ihr	werdet " "	ihr	werdet " "
3. sie	werden " "	sie	werden " "

## CONDITIONAL PRESENT

Singular		Singular	
1. ich	würde tragen, <i>I should bear, etc.</i>	ich	würde getragen haben, <i>I should have borne, etc.</i>
2. du	würdest "	du	würdest getragen haben
3. er	würde " "	er	würde " "
Plural		Plural	
1. wir	würden tragen	wir	würden getragen haben
2. ihr	würdet " "	ihr	würdet " "
3. sie	würden " "	sie	würden " "

## CONDITIONAL PAST

## IMPERATIVE

Singular		Plural	
1. —		tragen wir,	<i>let us bear</i>
2. trage (du),	<i>bear (thou)</i>	tragt, tragt ihr,	<i>bear (you)</i>
3. trage er, er	<i>trage, let him bear</i>	tragen sie,	<i>let them bear</i>

## INFINITIVE

PRESENT	PERFECT
(zu) tragen, (to) bear	getragen (zu) haben, (to) have borne

## PARTICIPLE

## PRESENT

tragend, *bearing*

## PAST

getragen, *borne*

## .2. CLASS I — SECOND GROUP

raten, riet, geraten, *advise, guess*

## PRESENT

## INDICATIVE

## Singular

1. ich rate
2. du r ä tst
3. er r ä t

## Plural

1. wir raten, etc.

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## Singular

- ich rate
- du rat e st
- er rat e

## Plural

- wir raten, etc.

## PRETERIT

## Singular

1. ich riet, etc.

## Singular

- ich riete, etc.

## IMPERATIVE

2. rate, etc.

## EXERCISE 15.

1. A noun in the dative usually precedes one in the accusative: ich gab meiner Schwester das Kleid, *I gave the dress to my sister*.

2. A pronoun, whether in the dative or accusative, precedes a noun in the dative or accusative: ich gab ihr das Kleid, *I gave her the dress*; ich gab es der Schwester, *I gave it to the sister*.

3. Of two personal pronouns the accusative usually precedes the dative: dort ist eine Bleifeder, gib sie mir, *there is a lead-pencil, give it to me*; sehen Sie den Köffel da? bitte, reichen Sie ihn mir (uns, ihnen), *do you see the spoon there? please, pass it to me (us, them)*: sobald Sie das Buch gelesen haben, geben Sie es uns wieder, *as soon as you (shall) have read the book, give it back to us*.

4. The interrogative pronouns are *wer, who; was, what* and *welcher, what, which, which one*: *wer hat es gesagt? who has said it? was haben Sie getan? what have you done? welches von diesen Häusern? which one of these houses?*

## VOCABULARY 15 a

die Armee, *army*.  
 bis zu (preposition), *until, till*.  
 davontragen, *carry off*.  
 gar (with negatives), *at all*.  
 das Jahr, *year*.  
 der Landtag, *diet, assembly*.  
 das Merkmal, *mark, design, sign*.  
 das Mitglied, *member*.  
 ob, *whether*.  
 obgleich, *although*.  
 die Schande, *shame, disgrace*.  
 der Sieg, *victory (not siege)*.

die Sitzung, *session*.  
 der Tod, *death*.  
 trocken, *dry*.  
 das Vaterland, *fatherland, country*.  
 verraten, *betray*.  
 der Verräter, *traitor*.  
 der Vorschlag, *proposition, project*.  
 weil (conj.), *because*.  
 der Würfel, *die (plural dice)*.  
 zurück, *back, backward*.  
 zweifelhaft, *doubtful*.

## TRANSLATION 15 a

A. 1. Der Würfel ist<sup>1</sup> gefallen; wir können nicht mehr zurück<sup>2</sup> ob wir wollen oder nicht. 2. Der Vorschlag, den die königliche<sup>3</sup> Regierung<sup>3</sup> in der letzten<sup>4</sup> Sitzung gemacht,<sup>5</sup> hat den Mitgliedern des Landtags nicht gefallen. 3. Raten Sie<sup>6</sup> einmal, was ich in der<sup>7</sup> rechten Hand habe. 4. Manche<sup>8</sup> Generale verrieten ihr Vaterland während<sup>9</sup> des Krieges<sup>10</sup> gegen<sup>3</sup> den Kaiser<sup>11</sup> Napoleon. 5. Die Verräter wurden streng<sup>12</sup> bestraft<sup>13</sup> und trugen das Merkmal der<sup>7</sup> Schande bis zum Tode. 6. Diese große Armee wurde endlich von unseren tapferen<sup>11</sup> Soldaten geschlagen; während<sup>9</sup> einiger Stunden<sup>14</sup> war es aber<sup>9</sup> zweifelhaft, wer den Sieg davontragen würde. 7. Ich möchte Ihnen raten, nicht so lang(e) zu schlafen; gestern schliefen Sie wieder bis<sup>15</sup> acht Uhr, obgleich die Strahlen<sup>16</sup> der Sonne<sup>17</sup> schon<sup>18</sup> in ihr Zimmer<sup>19</sup> fielen. 8. Jene berühmten<sup>12</sup> Ärzte<sup>20</sup> sind heute<sup>21</sup> morgen plötzlich<sup>22</sup> in die Stadt<sup>23</sup> gefahren<sup>1</sup>; man hat sie sofort<sup>3</sup> kommen lassen,<sup>24</sup> weil der alte, reiche<sup>12</sup> Bankier<sup>25</sup> gefährlich<sup>26</sup> krank geworden sein soll. 9. Im

letzten<sup>4</sup> Jahre wuchs hier viel Gras,<sup>7</sup> aber seit einigen Wochen ist es so heiß<sup>28</sup> und trocken gewesen, daß beinahe<sup>17</sup> gar nichts gewachsen ist.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Cf. 144. <sup>2</sup> Cf. Exercise 14, III, 8, p. 136. <sup>3</sup> Vocabulary 13 c, p. 117. <sup>4</sup> Id., 7 a, p. 53. <sup>5</sup> Cf. Exercise 4, 3 a, p. 33. <sup>6</sup> einmal with imperative = just. <sup>7</sup> Cf. 57, 4. <sup>8</sup> Cf. Exercise 3, 2, p. 26. <sup>9</sup> Vocabulary 4 b, p. 35. <sup>10</sup> Id., 8 b, p. 62. <sup>11</sup> Id., 10 a, p. 76. <sup>12</sup> Id., 13 b, p. 113. <sup>13</sup> Id., 9 a, p. 66. <sup>14</sup> Id., 9 b, p. 68. <sup>15</sup> bis, until, till; acht, cf. Exercise 13, II, 2, p. 116. Uhr, here o'clock. <sup>16</sup> Cf. 127. <sup>17</sup> Vocabulary 10 b, p. 78. <sup>18</sup> Cf. Exercise 2, 6, p. 21. <sup>19</sup> Vocabulary 4 a, p. 34. <sup>20</sup> Id., 7 a, p. 52. <sup>21</sup> Id., 2, p. 22. <sup>22</sup> Id., 14 b, p. 134. <sup>23</sup> Cf. Exercise 7, 3 a, p. 52. <sup>24</sup> Cf. 171. <sup>25</sup> Vocabulary 14 a, p. 129. <sup>26</sup> Id., 6 a, p. 47. <sup>27</sup> Id., 8 a, p. 61. <sup>28</sup> Id., 13 a, p. 111.

B. 1. Many of (von) our soldiers fell in yesterday's (der gestrigen) battle; thousands (Tausende) had fallen during the last week and thus (so) the general could not help (going) back<sup>1</sup> to the camp with his whole army. 2. How did you like (pleased you) the projects of the royal government which were<sup>2</sup> made in the last session of the diet? 3. Who could have guessed what he meant (meinen)? 4. "We are betrayed!" exclaimed<sup>3</sup> the French (französisch) soldiers during the last war. 5. One (Einer) of the generals is said to have borne the mark of his disgrace during his whole life.<sup>4</sup> 6. Our soldiers beat (defeated) the great army, but who could have told this morning that they so easily<sup>5</sup> carried off the victory? 7. Our poor mother was very ill; she slept but (nur) a few hours during the whole night. 8. We advised her<sup>6</sup> to consult<sup>7</sup> (befragen) the most famous<sup>8</sup> physician in the city. 9. Have you slept well? We could have slept a few hours, if there had not been<sup>9</sup> so much noise (Lärm, m.) in (auf, with dative) the street. 10. How tall (hoch) this grass has grown since three weeks! 11. During the last month nothing grew, it was so cold.<sup>10</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Order of words: *with his whole army to the camp (Lager, m.) back.* <sup>2</sup> Cf. Exercise 9, 1 and 2, p. 65. <sup>3</sup> *exclaim, rufen, rief, gerufen.* <sup>4</sup> *life, Leben, n.* <sup>5</sup> *easily, leicht after the victory.* <sup>6</sup> Use dative. <sup>7</sup> Cf. Exercise 11, 6, p. 90. <sup>8</sup> Cf. Exercise 13, I, 5, p. 111. <sup>9</sup> Cf. Exercise 16, 1, p. 155. <sup>10</sup> *cold, kalt.*

VOCABULARY 15 *b*

allein, <i>alone</i> .	gnädig, <i>gracious</i> .
das Angesicht, <i>face, sight</i> .	das Gerücht, <i>rumor</i> .
der Angriff, <i>attack, charge</i> .	heimlich, <i>secret</i> .
der Aufenthalt, <i>stay, whereabouts</i> .	das Kleid, <i>dress; (plur.) clothes</i> .
das Beispiel, <i>example</i> .	die Kunde, <i>information</i> .
begraben, <i>bury</i> .	laden auf, <i>draw upon</i> .
das Brot, <i>bread</i> .	die meisten, <i>most (of)</i> .
(sich) betragen, <i>behave (himself)</i> .	nötig, <i>necessary</i> .
der Bürgermeister, <i>burgomaster, mayor</i> .	der Ort, <i>place</i> .
darauf, <i>(thereon), afterwards</i> .	die Polizei, <i>police</i> .
der Eichenbaum, <i>oak-tree</i> .	sonst, <i>otherwise, else</i> .
empfangen, <i>receive</i> .	die Spitze, <i>point, head; top (of a mountain)</i> .
die Equipage, * <i>equipage, carriage</i> .	zu Tisch <i>(to table), to dinner</i> .
erklären, <i>declare</i> .	der Trompet'er, <i>trumpeter</i> .
erschallen, <i>sound; spread (of a report or rumor)</i> .	das Unglück, <i>misfortune</i> .
feindlich, <i>hostile</i> .	verschaffen <i>(weak conjugation), procure</i> .
der Franzose, <i>Frenchman</i> .	der Zug, <i>(railroad) train</i> .
auf's freundlichste, <i>in the most friendly manner</i> .	Zweig, <i>branch</i> .

TRANSLATION 15 *b*

A. 1. Der tapfere<sup>1</sup> Oberst<sup>2</sup> ist an der Spitze seines Regiments in der Schlacht<sup>3</sup> gefallen; im Angesicht des Feindes<sup>4</sup> trugen ihn die Soldaten ins Zelt<sup>2</sup> und begruben ihn darauf unter dem Eichenbaum, dessen<sup>5</sup> Zweige über sein Grab<sup>6</sup> hängen. 2. Der Bürgermeister der Hauptstadt<sup>7</sup> wurde<sup>8</sup> von<sup>9</sup> unserem gnädigen Könige zu Tisch geladen; er ist in der königlichen<sup>10</sup> Equipage ins Schloß<sup>6</sup> gefahren. 3. Auf einmal<sup>11</sup> bliesen die Trompeter auf Befehl<sup>2</sup> des Generals zum<sup>12</sup> Angriff; die meisten Soldaten im feindlichen Heere<sup>1</sup> schloßen noch<sup>13</sup> und viele<sup>14</sup> von ihnen wurden<sup>8</sup> von<sup>9</sup> uns gefangen. 4. Lassen Sie mich doch<sup>15</sup> allein; folgen Sie dem Beispiel Ihres Bruders, der sich immer sehr gut betragen hat. 5. Es erscholl das Gerücht, daß die Franzosen der

\* Pronounce g like s in *pleasure*.

preußischen<sup>7</sup> Regierung<sup>10</sup> den Krieg (war) erklärt hätten<sup>16</sup>; wir erfuhren<sup>17</sup> die Nachricht,<sup>4</sup> als<sup>18</sup> wir eben den Zug nach Paris nehmen<sup>19</sup> wollten.<sup>20</sup> 6. Welches große Unglück diese Verräter<sup>21</sup> auf das ganze Land geladen haben! 7. Die Polizei fing endlich<sup>7</sup> den Dieb,<sup>17</sup> den sie seit<sup>19</sup> Jahren von Ort zu Ort gesucht<sup>18</sup> hatte; von den Bauern im Dorfe,<sup>6</sup> die von seinem Aufenthalt wußten, erhielt<sup>22</sup> sie heimlich Kunde und so fiel er in ihre Hände. 8. Die ganze Stadt empfing die unglücklichen,<sup>1</sup> armen Flüchtlinge<sup>17</sup> aufs freundlichste und man verschaffte ihnen sofort<sup>17</sup> Kleider, Brot und was sonst nötig war.

<sup>1</sup> Vocabulary 10 a, p. 76. <sup>2</sup> Id., 13 a, p. 111. <sup>3</sup> Id., 14 b, p. 134. <sup>4</sup> Id., 3, b, p. 29. <sup>5</sup> Cf. Exercise 13, II, 5, p. 117. <sup>6</sup> Vocabulary 8 a, p. 60. <sup>7</sup> Id., 13 b, p. 113. <sup>8</sup> wurde, not *would* nor *became*, but cf. Exercise 9, 1 and 2, p. 65. <sup>9</sup> Vocabulary 5 a, p. 39. <sup>10</sup> Id., 13 c, p. 118. <sup>11</sup> Id., 12 c, p. 104. <sup>12</sup> Omit *zu* in translation. <sup>13</sup> Cf. Exercise 2, 6, p. 21. <sup>14</sup> Vocabulary 3 a, p. 28. <sup>15</sup> Cf. Exercise 10, 1 d, p. 75. <sup>16</sup> Cf. Exercise 13, II, 3, p. 116. <sup>17</sup> Vocabulary 13 c, p. 117. <sup>18</sup> Id., 6 b, p. 48. <sup>19</sup> Id., 9 b, p. 68. <sup>20</sup> Cf. Exercise 14, II, 6 c, p. 133. <sup>21</sup> Vocabulary 15 a, p. 146. <sup>22</sup> Id., 5 b, p. 40.

B. 1. The brave soldiers who had fallen during the battle were<sup>1</sup> first (zuerst) carried to their tents and then (dann) buried under the oak-trees in the village. 2. The branches of the trees were still hanging over their graves when we were about to visit<sup>2</sup> (besuchen) them. 3. The king has invited the mayors of the province (Provinz', f.) to dinner; they are said<sup>3</sup> to have driven to the royal castle<sup>4</sup> at noon (um Mittag). 4. Our trumpeters had already (schon) sounded the charge while (während) the hostile armies were still sleeping in their tents; our soldiers captured many of the fugitives (Flüchtling). 5. My brother always<sup>5</sup> behaved himself very well as long as (solang) he followed the example of our father. 6. Have you heard of<sup>6</sup> the rumor that spread through the city<sup>4</sup> yesterday? 7. The government of the French is said<sup>3</sup> to have declared [the] war against (gegen) the king of Prussia (Preußen). 8. How<sup>7</sup> have you learned the



news? 9. We were just about to take the train to Berlin when an officer<sup>8</sup> of our regiment showed<sup>9</sup> us the newspaper (*Zeitung*, f.) in which the emperor's<sup>10</sup> speech<sup>11</sup> to the French<sup>12</sup> army appeared (*erschien*.) 10. The thief was at last caught by the police; he would<sup>13</sup> have fallen into their hands long<sup>14</sup> before, if the peasants in our village had<sup>15</sup> been willing to look for him. 11. They had known of<sup>6</sup> his whereabouts, but they feared (*fürchten*) the revenge (*Rache*, f.) of his friends, if they should betray (*verraten*) him. 12. The poor, unfortunate fugitives were<sup>1</sup> received by (*von*) the whole city in the most friendly manner.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Exercise 9, 1 and 2, p. 65. <sup>2</sup> Cf. Exercise 11, 8, p. 90; *were about*, cf. Exercise 14, 11, 6 c, p. 133. <sup>3</sup> Cf. Exercise 14, 11, 5 d, p. 133. <sup>4</sup> Cf. Exercise 7, 6, p. 52. <sup>5</sup> Order of words: *behaved himself always*. <sup>6</sup> *of, von*. <sup>7</sup> *How, wie*. <sup>8</sup> *officer, Offizier*, m. III. <sup>9</sup> *show, weisen, wies, gewiesen*. <sup>10</sup> *emperor, Kaiser*, m. I. <sup>11</sup> *speech to, Rede an* (with accusative). <sup>12</sup> *French* (adjective), *französisch*. <sup>13</sup> Cf. 170, 8. <sup>14</sup> *long before, schon längst*; put before *into their hands*. <sup>15</sup> Cf. 168, 2, and Exercise 11, 4, p. 89; put *him* after *if*.

## VOCABULARY 15 c

betragen, <i>amount to</i> (of money, etc.).	der Norden, <i>north</i> .
die Bettwäsche, <i>bed-linen, clothes</i> .	die Rechnung, <i>bill</i> .
das Butterbrot, <i>bread and butter</i> .	die Richtung, <i>direction</i> .
derselbe, dieselbe, dasselbe, ( <i>the same</i> ) -it.	der Schinken, <i>ham</i> .
die Faulheit, <i>laziness</i> .	der Schlitten, <i>sleigh</i> .
der Fleischer, <i>butcher</i> .	Schlitten fahren, <i>drive in a sleigh, go sleighing</i> .
herumfahren, <i>drive about</i> .	der Schlittschuh, <i>skate</i> .
der Junge, <i>lad, youth</i> .	Schlittschuh fahren, <i>go skating, skate</i> .
das Kalbfleisch, <i>veal</i> .	der Schnee, <i>snow</i> .
die Küche, <i>kitchen</i> (distinguish from der Koch, <i>cook</i> , die Köchin, <i>female cook</i> ).	die Schnitte, <i>slice (of)</i> .
Kutscher, <i>coachman</i> .	die Stadtmauer, <i>city-wall</i> .
der Markt, <i>market</i> .	der Teich, <i>pond</i> .
	der Wind, <i>wind</i> .
	zu (adv.), <i>on, forward</i> .

## TRANSLATION 15 c

A. 1. Der Schnee fällt noch immer<sup>1</sup>; wir werden heute Nachmittag<sup>2</sup> Schlitten fahren können; die Tochter unseres Nach-

bars fährt jetzt Schlittschuh auf dem Teich, der neben <sup>3</sup> unserem Garten liegt.<sup>4</sup> 2. Gestern blies der Wind von Norden; von welcher Richtung bläst er heute morgen? 3. „Fahr zu, Kutscher,“ sagte der zornige <sup>5</sup> Oberst, „du fährst ja, als ob <sup>6</sup> du noch schliefe.“ 4. Was rätst du uns, sollen wir zu Hause bleiben <sup>7</sup> oder wäre es angenehmer,<sup>8</sup> wenn wir um <sup>9</sup> die Stadtmauer herumführen? 5. Die Mägde wuschen die Bettwäsche und als <sup>10</sup> sie dieselbe gewaschen hatten, gingen <sup>11</sup> sie in die Küche und braten das Kalbfleisch, das unsere Mutter auf dem Markte gekauft <sup>12</sup> hatte. 6. Hast du die Rechnung gesehen,<sup>4</sup> die uns der Fleischer geschickt <sup>4</sup> hat? Wie viel beträgt sie? Laß sie mich sehen. 7. Mein Kind, trage das Butterbrot und die Schnitte Schinken in Vaters Zimmer. 8. Der faule <sup>13</sup> Junge schläft noch, obgleich <sup>14</sup> ihm die Sonne <sup>7</sup> in die <sup>15</sup> Augen <sup>16</sup> fällt; wegen <sup>17</sup> seiner Faulheit sollte man ihn streng <sup>18</sup> bestrafen.<sup>19</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Vocabulary 7 a, p. 52, and Exercise 2, 6, p. 21. <sup>2</sup> Id., 10, a, p. 76; heute = diesen. <sup>3</sup> Exercise 7, 3 a, p. 52. <sup>4</sup> Vocabulary 5 a, p. 39. <sup>5</sup> Id., 12 c, p. 104. <sup>6</sup> Id., 12 a, p. 101. <sup>7</sup> Id., 10 b, p. 78. <sup>8</sup> Id., 4 b, p. 35. <sup>9</sup> Cf. Exercise 6, 5, p. 46. <sup>10</sup> Vocabulary 6 b, p. 48. <sup>11</sup> Id., 8 a, p. 61. <sup>12</sup> Id., 2, p. 22. <sup>13</sup> Id., 3 a, p. 27. <sup>14</sup> Id., 15 a, p. 146. <sup>15</sup> ihm . . . die = seine. <sup>16</sup> Cf. 132, and Exercise 7, 4, p. 52. <sup>17</sup> Vocabulary 7 a, p. 53. <sup>18</sup> Id., 13 b, p. 113. <sup>19</sup> Id., 9 a, p. 66.

## LESSON XVI

### STRONG CONJUGATION — CLASS II

SECOND AND THIRD PERSONS SINGULAR, PRESENT INDICATIVE. — IMPERATIVE. — CONNECTING VOWEL e

**187. Radical Vowel in the Infinitive: e, or umlauts ä, ö, ü.**

1. *Gehen, go, and stehen, stand*, are strong irregular verbs; cf. 223 to 226.

**188. All the other Strong Verbs** with *e* in the infinitive \* are divided into **three** groups.

1. To the **first** group belong all verbs retaining the radical vowel *e* of the infinitive in the **past participle**; they take *a* in the preterit: *e, a, e*.

NOTE. No verbs in *ä, ö, or ü*.

2. To the **second** group belong all verbs changing the radical vowel *e*, or umlaut *ä, ö* or *ü* of the infinitive, to *o* in the **preterit** and **past participle**: *e, o, o*; *ä, o, o*; *ö, o, o*; *ü, o, o*.

NOTE. All verbs in *ä* (except *gebären*) *ö* and *ü*.†

3. To the **third** group belong **all the other strong verbs** in *e*; they take *a* in the **preterit**, and *o* in the **past participle**: *e, a, o*.

NOTE. One verb in *ä*: *gebären*; none in *ö* or *ü*.

**189. First Group — *e, a, e*.** The **preterit** takes *a* (as in the third group); the **past participle** has the same vowel as the **infinitive** (*e*).

1. To the **first** group belong *geben*, and the nine verbs whose radical vowel *e* of the infinitive is **immediately** followed by *h* (not *dh* nor *sch*), *f*, *ff* or *t*.

2. The verbs of the **first group** are:

<i>essen</i> ,	<i>aß</i> ,	<i>geessen</i> ,†	<i>eat</i>
<i>fressen</i> ,	<i>fraß</i> ,	<i>gefressen</i> ,	<i>eat</i> (said of animals)
<i>geben</i> ,	<i>gab</i> ,	<i>gegeben</i> ,	<i>give</i>
<i>vergessen</i> ,§	<i>vergaß</i> ,	<i>vergeben</i> ,	<i>forget</i>
<i>lesen</i> ,	<i>las</i> ,	<i>gelesen</i> ,	<i>read</i>
<i>messen</i> ,	<i>maß</i> ,	<i>gemessen</i> ,	<i>measure</i>
<i>genesen</i> ,§	<i>genas</i> ,	<i>genesen</i> ,	<i>recover</i>
<i>geschehen</i> ,§	<i>geschah</i> ,	<i>geschehen</i> ,	<i>happen</i>
<i>sehen</i> ,	<i>sah</i> ,	<i>gesehen</i> ,	<i>see</i>
<i>treten</i> ,	<i>trat</i> ,	<i>getreten</i> ,	<i>traced, step</i>

\* *Denken, brennen*, etc., are irregular verbs of the **weak** conjugation; cf. 164.

† For the modal auxiliaries *mögen, können, müssen, dürfen*, cf. 165.

‡ The regular past participle *ge-essen* was contracted to *geßen*; the *ge* was then no longer felt as a prefix, and therefore was added again: *ge-geßen*; *geßen* is still used colloquially.

§ The simple forms *-geßen, -neßen, -schēßen*, do not occur; *geschēßen* is used only in the third person singular.

|| Exercise 7, 2, p. 52.

**Second and Third Persons Singular, Present Indicative**

**190. 1. General rule** applying to the **three** groups of the second class:

Verbs with radical **e** in the infinitive \* change **short e** to **i**, **long e** to **ie**: *ich sehe, du siehst, er sieht; ich helfe, du hilfst, er hilft.*

**FIRST GROUP****a. Exception:**

Only *genesen, recover*, undergoes no change of vowel.

**b. Examples:**

<i>ich esse,</i>	<i>du (isstest †) ißt,</i>	<i>er ißt</i>
<i>ich fresse,</i>	<i>du (frisstest †) frißt,</i>	<i>er frißt</i>
<i>ich lese,</i>	<i>du (liestest †) ließt,</i>	<i>er ließt</i>
<i>ich geneße,</i>	<i>du genesest,</i>	<i>er geneßt</i>

**Imperative (Second Person Singular)**

**191. General rule** applying to the **three** groups of the second class:

As stated above (**152, 1 a**), verbs changing the radical vowel **e** of the infinitive to **i** or **ie** in the second and third persons singular of the present indicative, retain **i** or **ie** in the imperative, but reject the ending **e**.

Examples in First Group:

*iß; friß; ließ; vergiß; but geneße (190, 1 a).*

**The Connecting Vowel e**

**192. Rules 184 and 185** apply also to this **whole class**:

*Du (isstest) ißt, er ißt; du (liestest) ließt, er ließt; du aßest, du vergaßest (185, 2); treten has du trittst and er tritt (contrary to 185, 1), the tt indicating that the preceding vowel is short.*

---

\* *Gehen* and *stehen* are irregular strong verbs; cf. **187, 1.**

† Cf. **184, 1 a.**

## 193.

## CLASS II, FIRST GROUP

1. *sehen, sah, gesehen, see*

## PRESENT

## INDICATIVE

**Singular**

1. ich sehe
2. du siehst
3. er sieht

**Plural**

1. wir sehen, etc.

## SUBJUNCTIVE

**Singular**

- ich sehe
- du sehest
- er sehe

**Plural**

- wir sehen, etc.

## PRETERIT

**Singular**

1. ich sah, etc.

**Singular**

- ich sähe, etc.

## IMPERATIVE

2. sieh, etc.

NOTE. Like *sehen* (as to change of *e* to *ie*), *lesen* and *geschehen*.\*

2. *treten, trat, getreten, step*

## PRESENT

## INDICATIVE

**Singular**

1. ich trete
2. du trittst
3. er tritt

**Plural**

1. wir treten

## SUBJUNCTIVE

**Singular**

- ich trete
- du tretest
- er trete

**Plural**

- wir treten

## PRETERIT

**Singular**

1. ich trat, etc.

**Singular**

- ich träte

## IMPERATIVE

2. tritt, etc.

NOTE. Like *treten* (as to change of *e* to *i*) *essen*, *fressen*, *geben*, † *vergeben*, *meßen*.

\* Impersonally only: *es geschieht*; *es geschah*, etc.

† Until recently *giebst*, *giebt*, *gieb*.

EXERCISE 16

I

IDIOMATIC USE OF *geben*, — SUBJUNCTIVE TO EXPRESS POSSIBILITY. — POSITION OF ADVERBS. — POSITION OF *nicht*.

— TRANSLATIONS

1. *Geben* may be used as an impersonal verb in the third person singular in all tenses and moods (to be translated by the corresponding forms of the verb *be*): *es wird morgen Regen geben*, *there will be rain to-morrow*; *letztes Jahr gab es viele Erdbeeren*, *there were many strawberries last year*; *der größte Künstler, den es gibt*, *the greatest artist who exists*; *wenn es nur mehr Schnee gäbe*, *if there were only more snow*; *was gibt's*, *what is it, what is the matter?* *es gibt etwas Neues*, *there is something new*.

a. These phrases are always accompanied by an accusative and mean literally *it gives*, etc., that is, some one gives, provides, furnishes certain objects: *es gab viele Bücher*, *some one furnished many books*; that is, *there were many books*.

b. These phrases describe the condition of things in a general way and therefore ought **not** to be used in reference to a concrete object in a definite place, or at a definite time: *not es gibt einen Baum in diesem Garten*, but *es ist . . .*, *there is a tree in this garden*.

2. The subjunctive is used to express possibility or contingency: *denken Sie, er wäre so dumm?* *do you think he could be so stupid?*

3. An adverb modifying the **personal** part of the verb is placed **after** it in the normal order: *er vergißt selten*, *he rarely forgets*.

a. It is thus evident that the adverb cannot stand between the subject and the personal part of the verb, as in English: *my father hardly understood what you said*, *mein Vater verstand kaum, was Sie sagten*.

b. Since the infinitive and past participle must stand at the end of the clause in the normal and inverted order (Exercise 3, 5 and 6, p. 27), the adverb is placed before them: *er wird uns bald besuchen*, *he will call on us soon*; *hat er es eben erzählt*, *has he just related it?*

4. The adverb *nicht* is placed **after** the other verbal adjuncts, when it negatives the whole assertion of the phrase in a general way: *er will unsere Freunde nicht gefannt haben*, *he pretends not to have known our friends*; *wir glaubten ihm nicht*, *we did not believe him*.

5. But when some particular word in the phrase is to be negated, *nicht* is placed before that word: *wir glaubten nicht ihm*; *wir glaubten nur den Beweisen*, *die er uns gab*, *we did not believe him; we believed only the proofs he gave us*.

## VOCABULARY 16 a

aufmerksam, *attentive(ly)*.besehen, *look at, examine*.daraus, *from it*.davon, *of it*.erlassen, *issue*.flehen, *implore*.gelegen (past part. of liegen, *lie*),  
*lain*.das Getreide, *corn, grain*.gleich (for *sogleich*), *at once*.glücklich, *happy*.das Lager, *camp*.näher, *closer, nearer*.der Sammetrock, *velvet coat*.schön, *beautiful* (distinguish from  
*schon, already*).die Seidenschmurr, *silk lace (braid)*.an die Spitze treten, *place one's self  
at the head*.tat (pret. of tun), *did*.die Tat, *deed*.die Träne, *tear*.über, *over, more than*.verbrennen, *burn up*.verdächtiges (from *verdächtig*), *sus-  
picious*.vergeben, *forgive*.der Zeuge, *witness*.

## TRANSLATION 16 a

A. 1. Der König<sup>1</sup> ist selbst<sup>2</sup> an die Spitze seiner Armee<sup>3</sup> getreten; an die Generale hat er eben<sup>4</sup> den Befehl<sup>5</sup> erlassen, daß,<sup>6</sup> sobald<sup>7</sup> im feindlichen<sup>8</sup> Lager etwas<sup>9</sup> Verdächtiges geschähe, sie ihm sofort<sup>10</sup> davon Nachricht<sup>11</sup> gäben. 2. Der Zeuge will<sup>12</sup> die ganze<sup>13</sup> Sache<sup>4</sup> vergessen haben; er vergißt, daß die Richter<sup>14</sup> sehr<sup>15</sup> streng<sup>16</sup> sind. 3. Lies dieses Buch aufmerksam, mein Freund; du siehst, ich habe sehr viel daraus gelernt<sup>15</sup>; warum<sup>10</sup> willst du immer<sup>17</sup> so viele<sup>15</sup> Bücher<sup>11</sup> kaufen,<sup>6</sup> da<sup>18</sup> du sie doch kaum<sup>2</sup> liest? 4. Wie<sup>1</sup> die Tat geschah, ob<sup>3</sup> sie geschah, niemand<sup>19</sup> weiß es. 5. „Vergeben Sie ihm,“ flehte die Mutter, „mein Sohn<sup>20</sup> wußte nicht, was er tat.“ 6. Du ist zu<sup>15</sup> viel,<sup>15</sup> mein Kind; du vergißt, daß du die letzte<sup>21</sup> Woche<sup>7</sup> sehr krank<sup>13</sup> gewesen warst<sup>22</sup>, weil<sup>3</sup> du so viel gegessen hattest.<sup>23</sup> 7. Gib mir hier<sup>1</sup> deine Hand, Bruder; vergessen wir, was in den letzten Tagen geschehen ist. 8. Bitte, treten Sie näher; es tut mir leid<sup>24</sup>, daß ich gestern<sup>6</sup> nicht länger<sup>13</sup> mit Ihnen sprechen konnte. 9. Gleich nach Ostern<sup>25</sup> fuhren die beiden<sup>25</sup> Brüder in die Stadt<sup>6</sup>; es gab viele Tränen im Hause.<sup>26</sup> 10. Weil<sup>3</sup> es Sonntag<sup>27</sup> war, durfte

der arme Junge<sup>28</sup> den schönen Sammetrock tragen; er befah die herrlichen<sup>29</sup> Seidenschnüre und war sehr glücklich. 11. Sieh doch<sup>30</sup> einmal! wie die Sonne<sup>4</sup> das ganze<sup>13</sup> Getreide auf den Feldern<sup>31</sup> verbrannt hat. 12. Die alten<sup>29</sup> Bauern<sup>32</sup> genasen endlich<sup>16</sup>, nachdem<sup>2</sup> sie über zwei Jahre krank im Bette<sup>33</sup> gelegen waren.

<sup>1</sup> Vocabulary 4 a, p. 34. <sup>2</sup> Id., 8 a, p. 61. <sup>3</sup> Id., 15 a, p. 146. <sup>4</sup> Id., 10 b, p. 78. <sup>5</sup> Id., 13 a, p. 111. <sup>6</sup> Id., 2, p. 22. <sup>7</sup> Id., 9 b, p. 68. <sup>8</sup> Id., 15 b, p. 148. <sup>9</sup> Cf. 48, c, p. 16. <sup>10</sup> Vocabulary 13 c, p. 118. <sup>11</sup> Id., 3 b, p. 29. <sup>12</sup> Cf. Exercise 14, II, 6 d, p. 133. <sup>13</sup> Vocabulary 6 b, p. 48. <sup>14</sup> Id., 14 a, p. 129. <sup>15</sup> Id., 3 a, p. 28. <sup>16</sup> Id., 13 b, p. 113. <sup>17</sup> Id., 7 a, p. 52. <sup>18</sup> Id., 5 b, p. 40. <sup>19</sup> Id., 9 a, p. 66. <sup>20</sup> Id., 7 b, p. 54. <sup>21</sup> Id., 7 a, p. 53. <sup>22</sup> Translate *were*. <sup>23</sup> Translate *ate*. <sup>24</sup> Vocabulary 12 d, p. 105. <sup>25</sup> Id., 12 a, p. 101. <sup>26</sup> Id., 5 a, p. 39. <sup>27</sup> Id., 10 a, p. 76. <sup>28</sup> Id., 15 c, p. 150. <sup>29</sup> Id., 8 b, p. 62. <sup>30</sup> Cf. Exercise 10, I, p. 75. <sup>31</sup> Vocabulary 11 a, p. 90. <sup>32</sup> Cf. 127. <sup>33</sup> Cf. 132.

B. 1. The generals (General, Class III) placed themselves (stepped) at the head of their regiments (Regiment', n.) and issued their orders. 2. What has happened? Have you seen anything (etwas) suspicious in the hostile camp? 3. You (Du) always<sup>1</sup> forget what I tell you and pretend not<sup>2</sup> to have heard my order. 4. They say (one<sup>3</sup> says) that the stern judge had forgotten the whole matter, but the witnesses did not believe<sup>2</sup> it. 5. He is reading the order of the court (Gericht, n.); do you (doest thou) see how attentively our friends listen (zuhören)? 6. Forgive<sup>4</sup> me, my friend, but I do not know how it happens that my brother always forgets your (thy) kindness (Güte, f.) towards (gegen) us. 7. That boy eats more than (mehr als) ever (je); he has already forgotten how ill he was last week. 8. We have<sup>5</sup> not yet eaten anything to-day. 9. You (Du) give me too much work (Arbeit, f.) to do (tun); you (du) forget that I am old and weak (schwach). 10. Step<sup>4</sup> nearer, my brother; I should<sup>6</sup> have spoken to you (with thee) yesterday, and I was sorry that I could not<sup>2</sup> (do) it. 11. There were many Sundays on (an, with dative) which the poor lad could<sup>7</sup> have



worn his beautiful velvet coat, if he had been allowed <sup>8</sup> (to).  
 12. All the corn of the poor peasant <sup>9</sup> burned up in the fields, while (während) he was sick at home; he had (war) not yet recovered from his long disease (Krankheit, f.).

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Exercise 16, I, 3, p. 155. <sup>2</sup> Cf. Exercise 16, I, 4, p. 155. <sup>3</sup> one, man. <sup>4</sup> Second person singular. <sup>5</sup> Order of words: *to-day yet not anything* (nichts). <sup>6</sup> Cf. 170, 8 and 9; for position of *yesterday*, cf. Exercise 16, I, 3, p. 155. <sup>7</sup> Cf. 168, 2. <sup>8</sup> *be allowed*, dürfen. <sup>9</sup> Cf. 128.

## II

## 194. Second Group:

- a. e, ö, ü  
 b. ä, ð, ö  
 c. ö, ü, ü  
 d. ä, ö, ö

The **preterit** and **past participle** take short o before two consonants, long o before one consonant.

## 1. To the second group belong:

a. fechten,	focht,	gefochten,	<i>fight, fence</i>
flechten,	flocht,	geflochten,	<i>braid, make</i> (a wreath)
heben,	hob,	gehoben,	<i>raise</i>
melten,*	molt,	gemolten,	<i>milk</i>
pflegen,†	pflog,	gepflogen,	<i>attend to</i>
quellen,	quoll,	gequollen,	<i>gush forth</i>
scheren,*	schor,	geschoren,	<i>shear</i>
schmelzen,‡	schmolz,	geschmolzen,	<i>melt</i> (intransitive)
schwellen,‡	schwoll,	geschwollen,	<i>swell</i> (intransitive)
bewegen,§	bewog,	bewogen,¶	<i>induce</i>
weben,	wob,	gewoben,	<i>weave</i>

\* Now often weak.

† Weak in the sense of *be accustomed to*: er pflegte es zu sagen, *he used to say it*.

‡ Weak, when transitive.

§ Bewegen in the literal sense of *move* is weak; the simple form -wegen does not occur.

¶ Exercise 7, 2, p. 52.

b. gären,*	gor,	gegoren,	<i>ferment</i>
rächen,†	roch,	gerochen,	<i>avenge</i>
schwären,	schwör,	geschworen,	<i>fester</i>
	(schwur)		
wägen,	wog,	gewogen,	<i>weigh</i>
c. löſchen,‡	loſch,	gelöſchen,	<i>go out (of light), be extinguished</i>
ſchwören,	ſchwör,	geſchworen,	<i>swear</i>
	(ſchwur)		
d. führen,	for,	geforen,	<i>choose</i>
lügen,	log,	gelogen,	<i>lie, tell a falsehood</i>
trügen,	trog,	getrogen,	<i>deceive §</i>

### Second and Third Persons Singular, Present Indicative

**195.** 1. Exceptions to rule 190, 1 : Four verbs of this second group have no change of vowel : *heben*, *pflügen*, *bewegen*, *weben*.

#### 2. Examples :

ich *ſechte*, du *ſicht(e)ſt*, (184, 1 a), er *ſicht*.  
 ich *ſlechte*, du *ſlicht(e)ſt*, er *ſlicht*.  
 ich *webe*, du *webſt*, er *webt*.  
 ich *ſchere*, du *ſchierſt*, er *ſchiert*.  
 ich *hebe*, du *hebiſt*, er *hebt*.

NOTE 1. Of the four verbs in ä (194, b), *gären* and *ſchwären* change ä to ie; *rächen* and *wägen* have **no vowel change**: du *gierſt*, er *giert*; du *ſchwierſt*, er *ſchwiert*, but du *rächſt*, er *rächt*; du *wägiſt*, er *wägt*.

NOTE 2. Of the two verbs in ö (194, c), *löſchen* || has *liſch(e)ſt*, *liſcht*; *ſchwören* has **no vowel change**: du *ſchwörſt*, er *ſchwört*.

NOTE 3. The three verbs in ü (194, d) do **not** change their vowel: du *kürſt*; er *lügt*; du *trügiſt*.

\* *Gären* is often weak, particularly in the figurative sense of *get excited*, *fret*.

† *Roſch*, *geroſchen*, have by chance the same form as the preterit and past participle of *riechen*, *smell*. *Rächen* is very often weak.

‡ *Löſchen*, when transitive, *extinguish*, *put out*, is generally weak. According to its earlier form *leſchen*, it would regularly belong to 194, a.

§ *Dünken*, *seem*, is an irregular verb of the weak conjugation (164, 2).

|| On account of its earlier form *leſchen*.

**Imperative** (Second Person Singular)

**196.** 1. General rule **191** applies to this second group, as before stated.

Examples: *fi*cht, *fi*cht, but (**195**, 1) *he*be, *p*flege, *be*wege, *we*be.

2. *l*öschen (**195**, 1, Note 2) has *l*ösche and *l*isch.

**The Connecting Vowel e**

**197.** Cf. **192**.

Examples:

du (*fi*chttest) *fi*chtst,\* er *fi*cht.

du (*li*schest) *li*schst, er *li*schst.

du *lo*schest (preterit).

**198.**

**CLASS II, SECOND GROUP**

*fe*chten, *fo*cht, *ge*fochten, *fi*ght

**PRESENT****INDICATIVE****Singular**

1. *ich* *fe*chte
2. *du* *fi*chtst †
3. *er* *fi*cht

**Plural**

1. *wir* *fe*chten, etc.

**SUBJUNCTIVE****Singular**

- ich* *fe*chte
- du* *fe*chtest
- er* *fe*chte

**Plural**

- wir* *fe*chten, etc.

**PRETERIT****Singular**

1. *ich* *fo*cht, etc.

**Singular**

- ich* *f*öchte, etc.

**IMPERATIVE**

2. *fi*cht, etc.

NOTE 1. Like *fe*chten (as to change of *e* to *i*), *fi*echten, *me*ssen, *qu*ellen, *sch*melzen, *sch*wellen. (Remember **195**, 1.)

NOTE 2. *sch*eren is the only verb of this group, changing *e* to *ie*: *sch*ierst, *sch*iert, *sch*ier.

---

\* Pronounced *fi*chtst. † Pronounced *fi*chtst.

## VOCABULARY 16 b

adelig, <i>noble</i> (of birth).	der Kreis, <i>circle</i> .
der Bach, <i>brook</i> .	kurz, <i>short(ly)</i> .
sich begeben, <i>betake themselves</i> .	poli'tisch, <i>political</i> .
belügen (trans.), <i>belie, tell a lie</i> .	der Saal, <i>hall</i> .
best, <i>best</i> .	der Schild, <i>shield</i> .
betrügen, <i>deceive, impose on</i> .	etwas im Schilde führen gegen . . . ,
sich bewegen (reflexive), <i>move</i> (intr.).	<i>have some (evil) design against . . .</i>
der Blick, <i>glance</i> .	das Schweigen, <i>silence</i> .
drohen, <i>threaten</i> .	setzen, <i>place</i> (distinguish from sitzen, sit, 204).
der Eid, <i>oath</i> .	der Spalt, <i>fissure</i> .
empfehlen Sie mich bestens, <i>give my best compliments or regards</i> (kind remembrance).	stecken, (stick), <i>place, put</i> .
entspringen, <i>arise</i> (of a river, etc.).	die Stimme, <i>voice</i> .
sich erheben, <i>rise</i> (raise itself).	der Student' (weak declension), <i>student</i> (at a university).
die Fahne, <i>flag</i> .	überschwemmen, <i>overflow</i> .
der Fechtmeister, <i>fencing master</i> .	das Verhältnis, <i>circumstance, condition</i> .
geblieben (past part. of bleiben, remain).	der Verrat, <i>treason</i> .
die Gegend, <i>country, region</i> .	vorher (adv.), <i>before</i> . (The preposition is vor).
grausam, <i>cruel</i> .	vorsprechen (bei), <i>call (on)</i> .
größt, <i>greatest</i> .	das Wasser, <i>water</i> .
der Hof, <i>court</i> .	
der Kranz, <i>wreath</i> .	

## TRANSLATION 16 b

A. 1. Diese adeligen Familien<sup>1</sup> haben sich immer<sup>2</sup> in den besten Kreisen bewegt; man hat sie auch<sup>3</sup> oft<sup>4</sup> am königlichen<sup>5</sup> Hofe gesehen, wo<sup>3</sup> sie immer aufs freundlichste<sup>6</sup> empfangen<sup>6</sup> wurden. 2. Nun<sup>7</sup> aber<sup>8</sup> haben die politischen Verhältnisse sie bewogen, sich auf ihre Schlösser<sup>9</sup> im Gebirge<sup>10</sup> zu begeben. 3. Dieser junge<sup>11</sup> Student sieht gut; er hat viel von seinem Fechtmeister gelernt,<sup>12</sup> das<sup>13</sup> kann man auf den ersten<sup>14</sup> Blick sehen. 4. Seht doch! wie der<sup>13</sup> uns mit den Augen<sup>15</sup> mißt; sollte er etwas gegen uns im Schilde führen? 5. Der Schnee<sup>16</sup> schmilzt; die Bäche, die in den Gebirgen<sup>10</sup> entspringen, sind hoch<sup>17</sup> geschwollen und

drohen diese Gegend zu überschwemmen. 6. Das tiefste<sup>18</sup> Schwei-  
gen herrschte im ganzen Saale; nur eine Stimme erhob sich;  
der Ritter<sup>19</sup> schwur die grausame Tat<sup>20</sup> zu rächen. 7. Empfehl  
(empfehle) mich deiner Mutter bestens und sage ihr, bitte, daß  
ich sehr<sup>12</sup> bald<sup>8</sup> bei euch vorsprechen werde. 8. Der falsche<sup>7</sup>  
Freund, in den wir seit<sup>21</sup> Jahren das größte Vertrauen<sup>22</sup> setzten,  
hat uns jetzt<sup>8</sup> belogen und betrogen. 9. Wie<sup>17</sup> man zu sagen  
pflegt, trau,<sup>23</sup> schau, wem! 10. Am Tag vor der Ankunft<sup>11</sup> des  
Königs in der Stadt flochten die Frauen und Mädchen<sup>24</sup> Kränze;  
die Männer steckten Fahnen in die Fenster der Häuser. 11. Senes  
frische<sup>25</sup> Wasser quoll aus den Spalten des Felsen(s).<sup>26</sup> 12. Die  
Klage<sup>27</sup> des Verrats wurde gegen ihn erhoben, obgleich<sup>28</sup> er kurz  
vorher geschworen hatte, daß er seinem Eide treu geblieben wäre.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. 6, 3 a, p. 4. <sup>2</sup> Vocabulary 7 a, p. 52. <sup>3</sup> Id., 2, p. 22. <sup>4</sup> Id., 10 b, p. 78. <sup>5</sup> Id., 13 c, p. 118. <sup>6</sup> Id., 15 b, p. 148. <sup>7</sup> Id., 3 b, p. 29. <sup>8</sup> Id., 4 b, p. 35. <sup>9</sup> Id., 8 a, p. 61. <sup>10</sup> Cf. 72. <sup>11</sup> Vocabulary 12 a, p. 101. <sup>12</sup> Id., 3 a, p. 27. <sup>13</sup> Cf. Exercise 13, II, 4, p. 117. <sup>14</sup> Vocabulary 11 a, p. 90. <sup>15</sup> Cf. 132. <sup>16</sup> Vocabulary 15 c, p. 150. <sup>17</sup> Id., 4 a, p. 34. <sup>18</sup> Id., 12 b, p. 103, and Exercise 13, I, 5 and 6, p. 111. <sup>19</sup> Vocabulary 13 b, p. 113. <sup>20</sup> Id., 16 a, p. 156. <sup>21</sup> Id., 9 b, p. 68. <sup>22</sup> Id., 14 b, p. 134. <sup>23</sup> trau, schau, wem = schau, wem du traust, *look (take care) whom you trust (in whom you confide)*. <sup>24</sup> Cf. 52, 4. <sup>25</sup> Vocabulary 13 a, p. 111. <sup>26</sup> Cf. 125, Note 1. <sup>27</sup> Vocabulary 14 a, p. 129. <sup>28</sup> Id., 15 a, p. 146.

B. 1. The highest (höchst) circles at the royal court were not always the best. 2. Although (Obgleich) they received us in the most friendly manner, we<sup>1</sup> soon found (fanden) ourselves (uns) induced (moved) to leave (verlassen) the castle. 3. The political conditions did not<sup>2</sup> please (gefallen) us and we betook ourselves to the country (aufs Land) in the mountains. 4. Just look<sup>3</sup>! These students are learning (how to) fence; you (du) fence very well, as (wie) your (thy) fencing-master has just (soeben) told [to] me.<sup>4</sup> 5. Why do you (du) measure him with your eyes? He is said to have some design against me. 6. Just look<sup>3</sup> how quickly (schnell) the snow has<sup>5</sup> melted. 7. The knight raised his voice while

(während) the profoundest stillness prevailed in the castle. 8. He had sworn, said he, to revenge the cruel deeds of his enemies (Feind, m.). 9. My sister told me she would<sup>6</sup> soon call on your mother; in the meantime (inzwischen) please give (to) her<sup>7</sup> our best regards. 10. Our friends were deceived by those noble families in which they had placed their confidence for years. 11. Many wreaths were made (braided) by (von) the women and maidens before (ehe) the king arrived (ankam) in the city. 12. Why (Warum) did the general raise the accusation of [the] treason against these men? People (Man) said that they had kept<sup>8</sup> the oath which they (had) sworn to the king.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Exercise 4, 3, Note, p. 33; *soon after ourselves*. <sup>2</sup> Cf. Exercise 16, I, 4, p. 155. <sup>3</sup> Second person singular; for *just* with imperative cf. Exercise 10, I a, p. 75. <sup>4</sup> Order of words: *me just*. <sup>5</sup> What auxiliary? cf. 144. <sup>6</sup> Use conditional. <sup>7</sup> Cf. Exercise 15, 3, p. 145. <sup>8</sup> *keep, halten*; cf. Exercise 13, II, 3, p. 116.

### 199. Third Group:

a. e, ä, ö

b. only gebären: ä, ä, ö

The preterit takes a; the past participle o.

NOTE. Thus the preterit has the same vowel (a) as the verbs of the first group; the past participle has the same vowel (o) as the verbs of the second group.

1. The third group includes all the verbs with radical e in the infinitive not belonging to the first or second group (also gebären, *give birth to*).

NOTE. Although no list of these verbs is necessary, it is given for the sake of convenience and completeness.

a. bergen,	barg,	geborgen,	hide
bersten,	barst,	geborsten,	burst
brechen,*	brach,	gebrochen,	break

---

\* Distinguish from bringen, brachste, gebracht, *bring*, cf. 164, 2.

berben, <b>only in</b>			
verberben,*	verdarb,	verdorben,†	<i>spoil, be ruined</i> (intr.)
drēschen,	drasch,	gedroschen,	<i>thrash</i>
fehlen,‡ <b>only in</b>			
befehlen,	befahl,	befohlen,†	<i>command</i>
<b>and</b>			
empfehlen,	empfehl,	empfohlen,†	<i>recommend</i>
gelten,	galt,	gegolten,	<i>be worth</i>
helfen,	half,	geholfen,	<i>help</i>
nehmen,	nahm,	genommen,	<i>take</i>
schelten,	schalt,	gescholten,	<i>scold, call</i> (by an uncomplimentary name)
erschrecken,§	erschra,		} <i>be frightened</i>
<b>chiefly in</b>			
erschrecken,	erschra,	erschrocken,†	
sprechen,	sprach,	gesprochen,	<i>speak</i>
stechen,	stach,	gestochen,	<i>prick</i>
stehlen,	stahl,	gestohlen,	<i>steal</i>
sterben,	starb,	gestorben,	<i>die</i>
treffen,	traf,	getroffen,	<i>hit</i>
werben,	warb,	geworben,	<i>sue, enlist</i>
werfen,	warf,	geworfen,	<i>throw, overthrow</i>

b. gebären (for original *geben*), *gebar, geboren, give birth to.*

NOTE 1. *Werden, ward, geworden*, has been given in 138.

NOTE 2. *Stechen, stat, gestochen, stick*, is now generally weak; the past participle *gestickt* is always weak.

## Second and Third Person Singular, Present Indicative

**200.** 1. The **only** exception to rule 190, 1, is *nehmen*. Its long *e* is changed to **short i**; the *h* is dropped and *m* is doubled: *ich nehme, du nimmst, er nimmt.*

\* When transitive, *ruin, spoil*, this verb is weak.

† Exercise 7, 2, p. 52.

‡ *fehlen, lack, fail, be wanting*, is always weak.

§ The strong past participle *erschrocken* is not used; but instead of it, *erschrocken*. The verb when transitive, *frighten*, is weak: *erschrecken, erschreckte, erschreckt*.

Examples: du birgst, er birgt.  
 du (birfstest) birfst, er birfst.  
 du befehlst, er befehlt,  
 du stiehlst, er stiehlt.

a. Gebären (199, b), has gebärst, gebärt or gebierst, gebiert. The latter forms come from the old infinitive *geberen*.

### Imperative (Second Person Singular)

201. General Rule 191 applies to this third group, as stated before.

Examples: brich, verdirb, befehl, hilf, sprich, stich, wirf.

a. Forms without change of radical vowel and with the ending *e* occur at times: empfehle, werfe.

b. Gebären has gebäre or gebier (200, a).

### The Connecting Vowel *e*

202. Cf. 192.

Examples:

du (drischest) drischst, er drischst.  
 du schiltst, er schilt (instead of schiltt).  
 du gilst, er gilt (instead of giltt).  
 du draschest (preterit).

203.

### CLASS II, THIRD GROUP

#### 1. stehlen, stahl, gestohlen, steal

##### PRESENT

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Singular	Singular
1. ich stehle	ich stehle
2. du stiehlest	du stiehlest
3. er stiehlt	er stehle
Plural	Plural
1. wir stehlen, etc.	wir stehlen, etc.

##### PRETERIT

Singular	Singular
1. ich stahl, etc.	ich stähle, etc.



## IMPERATIVE

## 2. stiehl, etc.

NOTE 1. Like *stehlen* (as to change of *e* to *ie*), *befehlen* and *empfehlen*.NOTE 2. For *gebären*, cf. 200, 1 a.

## 2. treffen, traf, getroffen, strike, meet

## PRESENT

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Singular	Singular
1. ich treffe	ich treffe
2. du triffst	du treffest
3. er trifft	er treffe
Plural	Plural
1. wir treffen, etc.	wir treffen, etc.

## PRETERIT

Singular	Singular
1. ich traf, etc.	ich träge, etc.

## IMPERATIVE

## 2. triff, etc.

NOTE 1. Like *treffen* (as to change of *e* to *i*) all verbs of the third group, except *befehlen*, *empfehlen*, *stehlen*.NOTE 2. For *nehmen*, cf. 200, 1.

## EXERCISE 16

## III

IDIOMATIC USE OF *gelten*. — PRESENT FOR FUTURE. — TRANSLATIONI. *Gelten*, *be worth*, *be of value*, occurs in many idiomatic phrases.a. *Gelten für*, *pass for*, *be considered*: er galt für einen armen Mann, *he passed for a poor man*.b. Used impersonally, *to be the question*, *be concerned*, *be at stake*: es gilt mir, *it concerns me*, *it is meant for me*; es gilt Sieg oder Tod, *the question is victory or death (to conquer or to die)*; es gilt unsere Ehre, *our honor is at stake*.

c. Other phrases are: es gilt, *the point is*; es gilt kein Zweifel, *no doubt is possible* (permitted); was gilt's? *how much will you bet?* es gilt mir gleichviel, *it is all the same to me*; dieser Vorwand gilt nicht, *this pretext will not do*.

2. The present is often used in the sense of the future: der Mann kommt jedenfalls morgen, *the man will come at all events to-morrow*.

## VOCABULARY 16 c

nimm dich in acht, <i>have a care, be- alles, was, all that.</i>	[ware.	klar, <i>clear.</i>
der Anblick, <i>sight, view.</i>		klettern, <i>climb.</i>
der August, (month of) <i>August.</i>		kürzlich, <i>lately.</i>
das Bein, <i>leg.</i>		der Monat, <i>month.</i>
bekennen, <i>confess.</i>		der Räuber, <i>robber.</i>
das Benehmen, <i>behavior.</i>		die Schau, <i>show, parade.</i>
bloß, <i>merely.</i>		zur Schau tragen, <i>display.</i>
direkt, <i>direct(ly).</i>		der Schlag, <i>blow, (stroke of) apoplexy.</i>
dulden, <i>suffer.</i>		sich, <i>himself.</i>
die Entschuldigung, <i>excuse.</i>		der Unfall, <i>accident.</i>
erschlagen, <i>slay.</i>		verbergen, <i>hide.</i>
finster, <i>dark, sinister.</i>		verlassen, <i>leave.</i>
gebeten (past part. of bitten, <i>ask,</i> <i>beg, not of bieten, Class V, nor of</i> <i>beten, weak).</i>		der Vormittag, <i>forenoon.</i>
hieber, <i>hither.</i>		der Vorwand, <i>pretext.</i>
hohen (from hoch), <i>high</i> ; (in relation to age), <i>old.</i>		die Wunde, <i>wound.</i>
		zerbrechen, <i>break in pieces.</i>
		zuerst (adv.), <i>at first.</i>
		zukommen (auf), <i>come (towards).</i>

## TRANSLATION 16 c

C. 1. Durch das stolze<sup>1</sup> Benehmen, das er überall<sup>2</sup> zur Schau trägt, verdirbt der Graf immer<sup>3</sup> alles, was seine besten<sup>4</sup> Freunde für ihn tun<sup>5</sup> möchten. 2. Verbirg mir nichts, mein Freund; wenn du mir die reine<sup>6</sup> Wahrheit<sup>7</sup> bekannt hast, werde ich dir vergeben, was du verbrochen (done) hast. 3. Die Magd,<sup>8</sup> die wir vor ein paar<sup>9</sup> Tagen in Dienst<sup>10</sup> genommen haben, zerbricht alles, was sie in die<sup>11</sup> Hand nimmt. 4. Sprecht doch,<sup>12</sup> ihr Männer, was bewog euch hieber zu kommen? 5. Nun galt kein Zweifel mehr<sup>13</sup>; alles war endlich klar geworden; der Mann

wurde nicht von Räubern erschlagen, wie<sup>1</sup> man zuerst gefürchtet<sup>15</sup> hatte; er starb, plötzlich<sup>16</sup> vom Schlag getroffen. 6. Es war an einem Vormittag im Monat August, als die jungen<sup>17</sup> Bauern<sup>18</sup> jemand,<sup>15</sup> den sie wohl kannten, über<sup>19</sup> die Felder<sup>10</sup> direkt auf<sup>19</sup> das Haus zukommen sahen. 7. Er erschrak, aber der Herr gab ihm freundlich die Hand und sagte, „Erschrick nicht, mein Sohn; ich kam<sup>9</sup> bloß um<sup>20</sup> mit deinem Vater zu sprechen.“ 8. „Junge,<sup>21</sup> geh<sup>3</sup> hinaus (away),“ sagte der Vater. „Er mag hier<sup>1</sup> bleiben,<sup>84</sup>“ erwiderte<sup>17</sup> der fremde<sup>16</sup> Herr. 9. „Er soll aber hinaus,<sup>22</sup>“ schrie (shouted) der Bauer, „ich bin doch<sup>23</sup> wohl<sup>24</sup> noch Herr in meinem Hause?“ 10. Der Mann verließ das Zimmer<sup>1</sup> und ging<sup>25</sup> zu seiner Mutter. Bei seinem Anblick brach sie in Tränen aus. 11. Der Knecht warf einen Blick<sup>4</sup> auf ihn, so finster, daß der Mann erschrak bei dem Gedanken,<sup>26</sup> diesen Menschen so lange neben (near) sich geduldet zu haben. 12. Es<sup>27</sup> geschieht<sup>28</sup> ein Unglück,<sup>29</sup> wenn du nicht sofort das Haus verläßt. 13. Wir hätten ihn nicht so gescholten, wenn wir gewußt hätten, was seine wirklichen<sup>16</sup> Absichten waren. 14. Nimm dich in acht, sonst<sup>20</sup> trifft<sup>28</sup> dich ein Unfall; ich habe dich schon<sup>9</sup> so oft<sup>8</sup> gebeten, daß du nicht auf diese hohen Bäume<sup>30</sup> klettern sollst; der arme Knabe,<sup>31</sup> der vor ein paar Monaten<sup>32</sup> vom Apfelbaum<sup>33</sup> gefallen war und das<sup>11</sup> Bein gebrochen hatte, ist kürzlich an<sup>34</sup> seiner Wunde gestorben. 15. Was gilt's? Der faule<sup>30</sup> Junge<sup>21</sup> hat wieder<sup>35</sup> einen Vorwand genommen, um nicht in die Schule zu gehen. 16. Die Entschuldigung, die er dem Lehrer<sup>30</sup> brachte, gilt nicht.

<sup>1</sup> Vocabulary 4 a, p. 34. <sup>2</sup> Id., 6 b, p. 48. <sup>3</sup> Id., 7 a, p. 52. <sup>4</sup> Id., 16 b, p. 161. <sup>5</sup> Id., 4 b, p. 35. <sup>6</sup> Id., 14 c, p. 137. <sup>7</sup> Id., 12 c, p. 104. <sup>8</sup> Id., 10 b, p. 78. <sup>9</sup> Id., 6 a, p. 47. <sup>10</sup> Id., 11 a, p. 90. <sup>11</sup> Cf. 57, 4. <sup>12</sup> Cf. Exercise 10, 1 a, p. 75. <sup>13</sup> Vocabulary 5 b, p. 40. <sup>14</sup> Id., 13 b, p. 113. <sup>15</sup> Id., 13 a, p. 111. <sup>16</sup> Id., 14 b, p. 134. <sup>17</sup> Id., 12 a, p. 101. <sup>18</sup> Cf. 127. <sup>19</sup> Cf. Exercise 7, 3 a, p. 52. <sup>20</sup> um . . . zu, *in order to*. <sup>21</sup> Vocabulary 15 c, p. 150. <sup>22</sup> Cf. Exercise 14, III, 8, p. 136. <sup>23</sup> Cf. Exercise 10, 1 c, p. 75. <sup>24</sup> Cf. Exercise 9, 3 b, p. 66. <sup>25</sup> Vocabulary 8 a, p. 61. <sup>26</sup> Cf. 125. <sup>27</sup> *Es = there*. <sup>28</sup> Cf. Exercise 16, c, 2, p. 167. <sup>29</sup> Vocabulary 15 b, p. 148. <sup>30</sup> Id., 3 a, p. 27. <sup>31</sup> Cf. 106, 1. <sup>32</sup> Cf. 80, b. <sup>33</sup> Vocabulary 10 a, p. 76. <sup>34</sup> an = *of, from*. <sup>35</sup> Vocabulary 3 b, p. 29.

## LESSON XVII

## STRONG CONJUGATION—CLASSES III AND IV.

SECOND AND THIRD PERSONS SINGULAR, PRESENT INDICATIVE. — IMPERATIVE. — CONNECTING VOWEL *e*.

## Third Class

204. Radical vowel of the infinitive: *i*.

## 1. Remember the two verbs:

bitten, *bāt*, gebēten,\* *beg, ask.*

ſißen, † *jāß*, geſeßen, *sit.*

205. All the other verbs of this class are divided into two groups. ‡

1. To the first group belong all verbs whose roots end in *inn* or *imm*.

*a.* All of them take *o* in the past participle.

*b.* Those in *inn* and *ſchwimmen* take *a* in the preterit, the others in *imm* (only two) take *o*.

2. All the remaining verbs belong to the second group; their roots end in *ind*, *ing* § or *inf*; in the preterit they take *a*, in the past participle *u*.

3. Sole Exception with *u* in the preterit:

ſchinden, ſchund, geſchunden, *slay.*

## 206. First Group:

<i>a.</i> <i>i, ā, ö</i>			
<i>b.</i> <i>i, o, u</i>			
<i>a.</i> beginnen,	begann,	begonnen, ¶	<i>begin</i>
rinnen,	rann,	geronnen,	<i>run</i> (of liquids)
ſchwim m en,	ſchwam m,**	geſchwom m en,	<i>swim</i>
ſinnen,	ſann,	geſonnen,	<i>devise</i>
ſpinnen,	ſpann,	geſponnen,	<i>spin</i>
gewinnen,	gewann,	gewonnen, ¶	<i>win, improve</i>
<i>b.</i> gli m en,	glo m m,	geglo m m en,	<i>glow</i>
kli m en,	klo m m,	geklo m m en,	<i>climb</i>

\* Distinguish from bieten, bot, geboten (Class V), *offer*, and beten (weak conjugation), *pray*.

† Distinguish from the transitive and weak verb ſetzen, *set, place, seat*.

‡ For wißen, *know*, cf. 172.

§ Bringen, brachte, gebracht, *bring*, is an irregular weak verb, cf. 164, 2.

¶ The simple forms -ginnen and -winnen do not occur.

¶ Cf. 150, 2. \*\* Cf. also ſchwomm.

**207. Second Group: ĩ, ă, ů**

binden,	band,	gebunden,	<i>bind</i>
dingen,*	bang,	gebungen,	<i>hire</i>
dringen,	drang,	gedrungen,	<i>press, penetrate</i>
finden,	fand,	gefunden,	<i>find</i>

-lingen, only in

gelingen,	gelang,	gelungen,†	<i>be successful</i>	} only impersonally
and				
mißlingen,	mißlang,	mißlungen,	<i>fail</i>	
klingen,	klang,	geklungen,	<i>sound</i>	
ringen,	rang,	gerungen,	<i>wring, wrestle</i>	

(ringen . . . nach, *strive after, contend for*)

ſchlingen,	ſchlang,	geſchlungen,	<i>sling, wind</i>
ſchwinden,	ſchwand,‡	geſchwunden,	<i>vanish</i>
ſchwingen,	ſchwang,§	geſchwungen,	<i>swing, raise</i>

(ſich ſchwingen auf . . . , *ascend*)

ſingen,	ſang,	geſungen,	<i>sing</i>
ſinken,	ſank,	geſunken,	<i>sink</i>
ſpringen,	ſprang,	geſprungen,	<i>spring</i>
ſtinken,	ſtank,	geſtunken,	<i>stink</i>
trinken,	trank,	getrunken,	<i>drink</i>
winden,	wand,	gewunden,	<i>wind</i>
zwingen,	zwang,	gezwungen,	<i>force</i>

**Fourth Class**

**208.** The fourth class includes all verbs whose radical vowel in the infinitive is o or u or (the diphthong) au.

**209.** The only verbs in o are :

kommen,	kam,	gekommen,	<i>come</i>
ſtoßen,	ſtieß,	geſtoßen,	<i>push</i>

\* Often weak, especially in *bebingen, condition, stipulate*; the preterit subjunctive is always weak: *bingte, bebingte*. Pret. Ind. also *bung*.

† Cf. 150, 2. Distinguish *gelingen* from *gelangen* (weak), *arrive at, come to*.

‡ Also *ſchwand*.

§ Also *ſchwung*.

**210.** The **only** verb in **u** is :

rufen,                      rief,                      gerufen,                      *call*

NOTE. *Tun, tat, getan*, is irregular (226).

**211.** There are **only six verbs** in **au** :

a. hauen,	hieb,	gehauen,	<i>hew, cut</i>
laufen,	lief,	gelaufen,	<i>run</i>
b. saufen,	öff,	gesöfften,	<i>drink</i>
saugen,*	ög,	gesögen,	<i>suck</i>
schnauben,*	schnöß,	geschnöben,	<i>snort</i>
schrauben,*	schröß,	geschröben,	<i>screw</i>

### Second and Third Persons Singular, Present Indicative

**212.** 1. Of the **two verbs** in **o**, *stoßen* takes the umlaut :  
du *stößest*, or *stößt*; er *stößt*. Du *kommst*, er *kommt* are preferable to du *kömmst*, er *kömmt*.

2. The **only verb** in **u**, *rufen*, has **no** change of vowel.

3. Of the **six verbs** in **au**, *laufen* and *saufen* **may** or **may not** have the umlaut (*äu*); the other four **never** have it :

du *läuffst*, er *läuft*, (*lauffst*, *lauft*);  
du *säuffst*, er *säuft*, (*sauffst*, *sauft*);  
du *haust*, er *haut*;  
du *saugst*, er *saugt*;  
du *schnaubst*, er *schnaubt*;  
du *schraubst*, er *schraubt*.

### Imperative (Second Person Singular)

**213.** In the **third and fourth** classes it is formed according to the general rule **152, 1** ; cf. also **152, 1 b** :

gewinne, beginne, schwimme or schwimm, *stoße* or *stoß*, *komm*, *lauf*, *saufe*, *saug*, *haue*.

### The Connecting Vowel *e*

**214.** In the **third class** it is used according to the general rules of **162, 1-3** :

er or ihr *findet*, *bindet*, *schwindet* ; ihr *sandet*, *bandet*, etc.

The **only verb** of the **fourth class** to be considered here is *stoßen* ; cf. **212, 1** ; preterit, du *stießest*.

---

\* Sometimes weak.

## EXERCISE 17

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES WHEN PRECEDED BY *ein*, *kein*, etc.—DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES WHEN NOT PRECEDED BY THE DEFINITE OR INDEFINITE ARTICLE. — DEFINITE ARTICLE FOR THE POSSESSIVE. —  $\text{Eo} = \text{as} \dots \text{as}$  or *however*Declension of Adjectives Preceded by *ein*, *kein*, etc.

1. An adjective qualifying a following noun, or used as a noun and preceded by *ein*, *kein*, or by the possessive adjectives *mein*, *dein*, *sein*, *unser*, *euer*, *ihr*, *Ihr* (Exercise 3, 3, p. 26) is declined in the same manner as if preceded by *dieser*, etc. (Exercise 13, I, 3 and 4, p. 110), **except**

in the nominative singular masculine it takes *er*,  
in the nominative and accusative singular neuter it takes *es*.

2. Thus the endings of the adjective are :

Singular			Plural
MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER	M. F. N.
N. <b>er</b>	<b>e</b>	<b>es</b>	en
G. en	en	en	en
D. en	en	en	en
A. en	e	<b>es</b>	en

Singular		
MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
N. <b>mein schöner</b>	<b>meine schöne</b>	<b>mein schönes</b>
G. <b>meines schönen</b>	<b>meiner schönen</b>	<b>meines schönen</b>
D. <b>meinem schönen</b>	<b>meiner schönen</b>	<b>meinem schönen</b>
A. <b>meinen schönen</b>	<b>meine schöne</b>	<b>mein schönes</b>

Plural	
M. F. N.	
N. <b>meine schönen</b>	
G. <b>meiner schönen</b>	
D. <b>meinen schönen</b>	
A. <b>meine schönen</b>	

3. Decline (singular and plural) *sein langer Besuch*; *meine alte Bleifeder*; *unser armes Kind*; *Ihr neues Kleid*; *ihre reiche Cousine*; *kein Fremder*.

**Declension of Adjectives not Preceded by the Article**

4. Adjectives **not** preceded by the definite or indefinite article, the pronominal adjectives *dieser, jener, jeder, mancher, solcher, welcher* (Exercise 3, 2, p. 26) or *mein, dein, sein, ihr, Ihr, unser, euer, or fein* (Exercise 3, 3, p. 26) are declined like *dieser, diese, dieses* (Exercise 3, 1, p. 26).

Example: *reich, rich.*

	<b>Singular</b>			<b>Plural</b>
	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER	M. F. N.
N.	<i>reicher</i>	<i>reiche</i>	<i>reiches</i>	<i>reiche</i>
G.	<i>reiches</i>	<i>reicher</i>	<i>reiches</i>	<i>reicher</i>
D.	<i>reichem</i>	<i>reicher</i>	<i>reichem</i>	<i>reichen</i>
A.	<i>reichen</i>	<i>reiche</i>	<i>reichen</i>	<i>reiche</i>

5. When the definite article is used for the possessive adjective (57, 4), a **personal** pronoun in the **dative** is sometimes introduced to point out clearly the possessor: *es kam ihnen in die Hände, it came to their hands.*

6. When *so* in the **transposed order** is immediately followed by an adjective or adverb, it is best rendered by *as . . . as*, or by *however*: *so schwer es schien, as difficult as it seemed (however difficult it seemed).*

**VOCABULARY 17 a**

*die Abwesenheit, absence.*

*sich befinden, (find one's self), be, happen to be.*

*bitten . . . um, ask for.*

*der Blitzableiter, lightning rod.*

*entdecken, discover (not invent).*

*erfinden, invent (not discover).*

*die Erlaubnis, permission.*

*führen (Waffen), carry, bear (arms).*

*gelingen, succeed (intr.), be successful; always impersonal, with dative; the dative is the subject in*

English: *es gelingt mir, I succeed*

(aux. *sein*). Same construction is used with *mißlingen, fail, be unsuccessful.*

*die Güte, kindness.*

*der Nebel, mist, fog.*

*nun* (when not referring to time), *well! well then!*

*der Rückzug, retreat.*

*stoßen* (intr.) . . . *auf, encounter, fall upon* (cf. 144, 1).

*verbinden, oblige.*

*die Wolke, cloud.*

*zurückkehren, return.*



TRANSLATION 17 *a*

*A.* 1. Wer<sup>1</sup> hat Amerika entdeckt<sup>2</sup>? Wissen Sie das<sup>3</sup> nicht? Nun, sagen Sie mir doch,<sup>4</sup> wer den Blitzableiter erfunden<sup>5</sup> hat; vielleicht<sup>6</sup> haben Sie davon<sup>6</sup> gehört? 2. Endlich<sup>7</sup> war es unseren Freunden gelungen,<sup>8</sup> den armen Leuten<sup>8</sup> das nötige<sup>9</sup> Geld<sup>10</sup> zu verschaffen,<sup>9</sup> so daß sie in ihre alte Heimat<sup>8</sup> in Europa zurückkehren konnten. 3. Der alte Bankier<sup>11</sup> gewann wieder<sup>12</sup> das Vertrauen<sup>13</sup> der großen Kaufleute (merchants) in der Hauptstadt,<sup>7</sup> nachdem<sup>14</sup> sie erfahren<sup>15</sup> hatten, daß er niemand<sup>16</sup> betrogen.<sup>17</sup> 4. Die Bürger<sup>18</sup> baten die Regierung<sup>15</sup> um die Erlaubnis Waffen führen<sup>19</sup> zu dürfen; es erscholl<sup>9</sup> das Gerücht,<sup>9</sup> daß unsere Soldaten auf den Feind gestoßen wären<sup>20</sup> und sich auf dem Rückzug befänden. 5. Mein Vater sagte, er sei<sup>20</sup> dem Pfarrer<sup>21</sup> sehr<sup>22</sup> verbunden für die große Güte, die<sup>23</sup> er während<sup>5</sup> seiner Abwesenheit gegen<sup>15</sup> die armen Leute gezeigt<sup>24</sup> hatte. 6. Haben Sie gesehen, wie heute<sup>24</sup> morgen der Nebel plötzlich<sup>13</sup> schwand? Und jetzt,<sup>5</sup> sehen Sie, bringt die Sonne<sup>25</sup> durch<sup>26</sup> die Wolken.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Exercise 15, 4, p. 146. <sup>2</sup> Cf. 150, 2. <sup>3</sup> Cf. Exercise 13, II, 4, p. 117. <sup>4</sup> Cf. Exercise 10, 1 *a*, p. 76. <sup>5</sup> Vocabulary 4 *b*, p. 35. <sup>6</sup> Id., 16 *a*, p. 156. <sup>7</sup> Id., 13 *b*, p. 113. <sup>8</sup> Id., 12 *a*, p. 102. <sup>9</sup> Id., 15 *b*, p. 148. <sup>10</sup> Id., 8 *b*, p. 62. <sup>11</sup> Id., 14 *a*, p. 129. <sup>12</sup> Id., 3 *b*, p. 29. <sup>13</sup> Id., 14 *b*, p. 134. <sup>14</sup> Id., 8 *a*, p. 61. <sup>15</sup> Id., 13 *c*, p. 117. <sup>16</sup> Id., 9 *a*, p. 66. <sup>17</sup> Id., 16 *b*, p. 161. <sup>18</sup> Id., 4 *a*, p. 34. <sup>19</sup> When an infinitive depends on another infinitive, the former (depending infinitive) precedes the latter (governing infinitive). <sup>20</sup> Cf. Exercise 13, II, 3, p. 116. <sup>21</sup> Vocabulary 13 *a*, p. 111. <sup>22</sup> Id., 3 *a*, p. 28. <sup>23</sup> Cf. Exercise 13, II, 5, p. 117. <sup>24</sup> Vocabulary 2, p. 22. <sup>25</sup> Id., 10 *b*, p. 78. <sup>26</sup> Exercise 6, 5, p. 46.

*B.* 1. Who invented the lightning rod? By whom was America discovered? 2. You should<sup>1</sup> have known as (so) much. 3. At last we succeeded in seeing (to see<sup>2</sup>) our old home again. 4. These proud (stolz) merchants are said<sup>3</sup> to have won the confidence of the old banker. 5. Our friends had asked the royal (königlich) government for [the] permission (to<sup>4</sup> be allowed) to return to their old home. 6. The enemy fell upon our soldiers who were (found themselves)

on the retreat. 7. The parson was very much obliged<sup>5</sup> to our father, who had won the confidence of the poor people by his kindness. 8. How suddenly the fog has disappeared<sup>6</sup>! 9. We should<sup>1</sup> have had beautiful weather yesterday,<sup>7</sup> if the sun had<sup>8</sup> been able to penetrate through the clouds.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. 170, 8 and 9; *know*, *wissen*. <sup>2</sup> Cf. Exercise 11, 7, p. 90. <sup>3</sup> *are said*, to be rendered by a modal auxiliary. <sup>4</sup> Order of words: *to their old home return to be allowed* (zu dürfen). <sup>5</sup> *very much obliged* at the end of the sentence (not of its own clause). <sup>6</sup> Cf. 144. <sup>7</sup> Cf. Exercise 16, I, 3, p. 155. <sup>8</sup> Cf. 168, 2.

## VOCABULARY 17 b

der Advokat, <i>lawyer, attorney-at-law.</i>	der Knöchel, <i>ankle.</i>
die Arbeit, <i>work.</i>	der Kot, <i>mud.</i>
die Bemühung, <i>effort, endeavor.</i>	leider (adv.), <i>unfortunately.</i>
darum, <i>therefore.</i>	ein paarmal, <i>a few times.</i>
dringen . . . in, <i>enter, penetrate.</i>	das Recht, <i>right.</i>
fertig, <i>ready, finished, done.</i>	der Regenschirm, <i>umbrella.</i>
fertig bringen, <i>finish.</i>	schnell, <i>quick(ly), fast.</i>
die Gegenpartei, <i>opposite party.</i>	seinerseits, <i>on his part.</i>
gelangen . . . an, <i>reach, attain.</i>	trotz (prep. with genitive or dative), <i>in spite of.</i>
die Gesellschaft, <i>society.</i>	überzeugen, <i>convince.</i>
höher (from hoch), <i>higher.</i>	

## TRANSLATIONS 17 b

A. 1. Unsere Advokaten gelangten endlich<sup>1</sup> ans Ziel,<sup>2</sup> und es gelang ihnen auch die Gegenpartei von unserem Rechte zu überzeugen. 2. Gestern, als wir eben<sup>3</sup> nach Hause<sup>3</sup> gehen<sup>4</sup> wollten,<sup>5</sup> begann es stark<sup>6</sup> zu regnen<sup>6</sup>; leider waren unsere Regenschirme nirgends<sup>2</sup> zu finden.<sup>7</sup> 3. Darum ließen wir so schnell wir konnten; ein paarmal sanken wir bis an<sup>8</sup> die Knöchel in den Kot, der<sup>9</sup> die Straßen<sup>10</sup> überall<sup>2</sup> bedeckte.<sup>11</sup> 4. Ihr Schneider<sup>12</sup> sitzt schon<sup>13</sup> seit<sup>14</sup> einer Woche<sup>14</sup> über (at) der<sup>8</sup> Arbeit, und hat sie noch gar nicht fertig gebracht. 5. Ob schon<sup>15</sup> jener Mann große Reichtümer<sup>16</sup> besaß,<sup>17</sup> war er ein sehr

unglücklicher<sup>18</sup> Mensch.<sup>19</sup> 6. Trotz der größten<sup>20</sup> Bemühungen seinerseits ist es ihm stets mißlungen, in die höheren Kreise<sup>20</sup> der Gesellschaft zu dringen.

<sup>1</sup> Vocabulary 13 b, p. 113. <sup>2</sup> Id., 6 b, p. 48. <sup>3</sup> Id., 10 b, p. 78. <sup>4</sup> Id., 7 a, p. 52. <sup>5</sup> Exercise 14, II, 6 c, p. 133. <sup>6</sup> Vocabulary 5 a, p. 39. <sup>7</sup> Exercise 11, I, p. 89. <sup>8</sup> Exercise 7, 3 d, p. 52. <sup>9</sup> Exercise 13, II, 5, p. 117. <sup>10</sup> Vocabulary 9 a, p. 67. <sup>11</sup> Id., 8 a, p. 60. <sup>12</sup> Id., 4 a, p. 34. <sup>13</sup> Exercise 2, 4 and 6, p. 21, and Exercise 11, 2, p. 89. <sup>14</sup> Vocabulary 9 a, p. 67. <sup>15</sup> Id., 11 a, p. 90. <sup>16</sup> Cf. 95, 2. <sup>17</sup> Exercise 4, 3 a, p. 33, and Vocabulary 10 a, p. 76. <sup>18</sup> Vocabulary 10 a, p. 76. <sup>19</sup> Cf. 106, 2. <sup>20</sup> Vocabulary 16 b, p. 161.

B. 1. The opposite party had at last succeeded in convincing (to convince<sup>1</sup>) the judges that our lawyers were wrong.<sup>2</sup> 2. They had<sup>3</sup> unfortunately not attained (arrived at) the aim which they had in view (vor Augen). 3. When it had begun<sup>4</sup> to rain so hard, we<sup>5</sup> found that we had left (lassen) our umbrellas at home (zu Hause). 4. Why (Warum) do you (du) run so fast? I cannot follow<sup>6</sup> you (thee). 5. The soldiers had<sup>3</sup> sunk up to their ankles into the mud, while (während) they were<sup>7</sup> marching through the streets of the village. 6. Our tailor was still sitting at his work when my friend, the rich merchant (Kaufmann), stepped (treten) into his shop (Laden, m.) and asked him if (ob) he had not yet finished<sup>8</sup> his work. 7. In spite of the great wealth (Reichtum, m.) which our landlord (Gutsherr) possessed,<sup>9</sup> he<sup>5</sup> never entered (penetrated into) the higher circles of the nobility (Adel, m.).

<sup>1</sup> Add *davon, of it*, that is, of what follows before *convince*. <sup>2</sup> *be wrong, unrecht haben*. <sup>3</sup> Cf. 144. <sup>4</sup> Cf. Exercise 11, 8, p. 90; *so hard* before *to rain*. <sup>5</sup> Cf. Exercise 4, 3, Note, p. 33. <sup>6</sup> *follow, folgen* (with dative). <sup>7</sup> Cf. Exercise 2, 4, p. 21; *march, marschieren*. <sup>8</sup> Cf. Exercise 13, II, 3, p. 116. Place *not yet* after *his work*. <sup>9</sup> *possess, besitzen*; cf. 204, 1.

#### VOCABULARY 17 c

barba'risch, barbarous(ly).

beseßen, occupy (distinguish from  
besitzen, possess).

beweisen, prove, demonstrate.

die Festung, fortress.

die Glocke, bell (not clock).

grünen, grow green, flourish.

kommandieren, command (Exercise  
13, II, 1, p. 116, and cf. 151).

das Land, land, country.

der *Leutnant*, *lieutenant*.

der *Rat*, *council*; *assembly* (of councilmen).

die *Truppen* (plur.), *troops*.

tüchtig, *efficient*, *thorough*.

etwas Tüchtiges lernen, *acquire some sound knowledge*.

die Vaterstadt, *native city*.

verschwinden, *disappear* (cf. 150, 2).

zerhauen, *cut in pieces*.

zer schlagen, *dash to pieces*, *smash*.

## TRANSLATION 17 c

C. 1. Sofort<sup>1</sup> nach<sup>2</sup> der Ankunft<sup>3</sup> des Genera'ls sollen<sup>4</sup> die Obersten<sup>5</sup> jener Regime'nter Befehl<sup>5</sup> bekommen<sup>6</sup> haben, die ganze<sup>7</sup> Gegend<sup>8</sup> um<sup>9</sup> die Festung mit ihren tapfersten<sup>10</sup> Truppen zu besetzen. 2. Die Flüchtlinge<sup>1</sup> berichteten<sup>1</sup> dem kommandie'renden Offizier<sup>5</sup>, daß die Feinde<sup>11</sup> Land und Leute<sup>3</sup> grausam<sup>8</sup> und barbarisch behandelt<sup>12</sup> hätten<sup>13</sup>; sie zerhieben und zer schlugen alles<sup>14</sup> was ihnen in die Hände fiel. 3. Der alte Bürger,<sup>15</sup> dessen<sup>10</sup> Bekanntschaft<sup>17</sup> wir vorgestern<sup>18</sup> gemacht<sup>17</sup> hatten, hat viele Jahre im Räte seiner Vaterstadt gegessen. 4. Die fleißigen<sup>19</sup> Studen'ten<sup>8</sup> saßen die ganze<sup>7</sup> Nacht<sup>20</sup> über<sup>21</sup> den Büchern<sup>11</sup>; morgen kommt<sup>22</sup> die Prüfung,<sup>23</sup> sagten sie, und da<sup>24</sup> gilt<sup>25</sup> es zu beweisen, daß wir etwas Tüchtiges gelernt<sup>26</sup> haben. 5. Das Benehmen<sup>14</sup> jenes stolzen<sup>15</sup> Leutnants gefiel uns gar<sup>27</sup> nicht; es mag sein, wie man uns gesagt,<sup>28</sup> daß er bei<sup>29</sup> näherer<sup>30</sup> Bekanntschaft<sup>17</sup> gewinne.<sup>13</sup> 6. Verschwunden war endlich<sup>12</sup> der rauhe,<sup>6</sup> lange<sup>31</sup> Winter<sup>6</sup>; der Frühling<sup>32</sup> kam; alles<sup>33</sup> grünte auf den Bergen<sup>34</sup> und in den Tälern<sup>20</sup>; die Vögel<sup>35</sup> sangen in den Wäldern<sup>36</sup>; die Glocken klangen im Dorf<sup>20</sup>; überall<sup>7</sup> begann neues<sup>37</sup> Leben.<sup>38</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Vocabulary 13 c, p. 117. <sup>2</sup> Exercise 6, 4, p. 46. <sup>3</sup> Vocabulary 12 a, p. 101. <sup>4</sup> Exercise 14, II, 5 d, p. 133. <sup>5</sup> Vocabulary 13 a, p. 111. <sup>6</sup> Id., 4 b, p. 35. <sup>7</sup> Id., 6 b, p. 48. <sup>8</sup> Id., 16 b, p. 161. <sup>9</sup> Exercise 6, 6, p. 46. <sup>10</sup> Vocabulary 10 a, p. 76. <sup>11</sup> Id., 3 b, p. 29. <sup>12</sup> Id., 13 b, p. 113. <sup>13</sup> Exercise 13, II, 3, p. 116. <sup>14</sup> Vocabulary 16 c, p. 167. <sup>15</sup> Id., 4 a, p. 34. <sup>16</sup> Exercise 13, II, 5, p. 117. <sup>17</sup> Vocabulary 9 b, p. 68. <sup>18</sup> Id., 5 a, p. 39. <sup>19</sup> Id., 11 a, p. 90. <sup>20</sup> Id., 8 a, p. 60. <sup>21</sup> Exercise 7, 4, p. 52. <sup>22</sup> Exercise 16, III 2, p. 167. <sup>23</sup> Vocabulary 9 a, p. 67. <sup>24</sup> Id., 6 b, p. 48. <sup>25</sup> Exercise 16, III 1, c, p. 167. <sup>26</sup> Vocabulary 3 a, p. 27. <sup>27</sup> Id., 15 a, p. 146. <sup>28</sup> Exercise 4, 3 a, p. 33. <sup>29</sup> bei = at. <sup>30</sup> Vocabulary 16 a, p. 156, and Exercise 13, I, 6, p. 111. <sup>31</sup> Vocabulary b, p. 40. <sup>32</sup> Cf. 52, 6. <sup>33</sup> Vocabulary 12 d, p. 105. <sup>34</sup> Id., 6 a, p. 47. <sup>35</sup> Cf. 74. <sup>36</sup> Cf. 95, 1. <sup>37</sup> Vocabulary 12 c, p. 104. <sup>38</sup> Id., 14 c, p. 137.

## LESSON XVIII

## STRONG CONJUGATION. — CLASS V

**215. Radical Vowels (digraph) of the Infinitive ie :**  
All strong verbs with *ie* in the infinitive take *ö* in the preterit and past participle.

**Sole exception :**

*liegen, läg, gelägen, lie, be situated.*

**216. 1.** When radical *ie* of the infinitive is immediately followed by *ð, ʃ, ðj* or *ß*, the verb belongs to the **first group**, its vowel in the preterit and past participle being short *o*.

**2.** Otherwise the verb belongs to the **second group**, with long *o* in the preterit and past participle.

**NOTE.** Remember that the consonants of the first group of the fifth class after *ie* of the infinitive are *ð, ʃ, ß* and *ðj*. The preterit and past participle have short *o*.

The consonants of the first group of the sixth class after *ei* of the infinitive are *t, ʃ, ß* and *ðj*. The preterit and past participle have short *i* (220, 1 a).

**217.** The foregoing statements ought to enable the student to give the principal parts of any strong verb with *ie* in the infinitive.\* Yet the following list will be found convenient. The **first group** contains the verbs with short *o*, the **second group** those with long *o*.

**218. First Group — ie, ð, ð,**

**—drießen, only in**

verdrießen,†	verdroß,	verdroffen,	<i>annoy</i>	} from a wound
fließen,	floß,	geflossen,	<i>flow, run</i>	
gießen,	goß,	gegossen,	<i>pour</i>	
frieden,	froch,	gefrochen,	<i>creep</i>	

\* Remember that all verbs in *ieren* are of the weak conjugation.

† Often used as an impersonal verb : *es verdrießt mich*, etc.

**-nießen, only in**

genießen,	genöß,	genossen,	<i>enjoy, eat</i>
riechen,	roch,	gerochen,	<i>smell</i>
schießen,	schoß,	geschossen,	<i>shoot</i>
schließen,	schloß,	geschlossen,	<i>close</i>
sieden,*	sott,	gesotten,	<i>seethe, boil</i>
sprießen,	sproß,	gesprossen,	<i>sprout</i>
triefen,†	troff,	getroffen,	<i>drip</i>

NOTE. Schließen, schloß, geschlossen, *slip*, is very rare; schlüpfen of the weak conjugation is used instead.

**219. Second Group — ie, ð, ð,**

biegen,	bog,	gebogen,	<i>bend</i>
bieten,‡	bot,	geboten,	<i>offer</i>
fliegen,§	flog,	geflogen,	<i>fly</i>
fliehen,§	floh,	geflohen,	<i>flee</i>
frieren,	fror,	gefroren,	<i>freeze</i>
schieben,	schob,	geschoben,	<i>shove</i>
stieben,	stob,	gestoben,	<i>scatter</i>

**-lieren, only in**

verlieren,	verlor,	verloren,	<i>lose</i>
ziehen,	zog,	gezogen,	<i>draw</i>

NOTE. Fiesen, for, geforen, *choose*, and flieben, flob, gefloben, *cleave*, are very rarely found. Both fiesen and flieben occur once in a while according to the weak conjugation. From the preterit for comes the infinitive führen (194, d').

**EXERCISE 18**

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS. — INFINITIVE WITH *zu* GOVERNED BY *um*.

— GERMAN PAST PARTICIPLE FOR ENGLISH PRESENT PARTICIPLE. — PARTICIPLES PRECEDED BY THEIR MODIFIERS

**Reflexive Pronouns**

1. The reflexive pronouns are the same in form as the personal pronouns (Exercise 5, 1, p. 37) in the **first and second persons, singular and plural**: *meiner, of myself; mir, to my-*

\* The b in fiesen becomes tt in sott, gesotten; cf. 227, 1 c.

† The f in triefen is changed to ff in troff, getroffen; cf. 227, 1 c.

‡ Cf. Footnote \* page 169.

§ Distinguish fliegen from fliehen.

*self*; mich, *myself*; deiner, *of thyself*; dir, *to thyself*; dich, *thyself*; unser,\* *of ourselves*; uns (to) *ourselves*; euer,\* *of yourselves*; euch, (to) *yourselves*: ich lobe mich, *I praise myself*.

2. In the **third person singular and plural**, the reflexive pronoun for the dative and accusative is *sich*, whether with a preposition or not: er lobt *sich*, *he praises himself*; sie denkt nur an *sich*, *she thinks only of herself*.

3. The infinitive preceded by *zu* is often governed by the preposition *um*, *in order*: er tat es, um uns zu beleidigen, *he did it in order to offend us*; wir kamen hieher, um unsere Tante zu besuchen, *we came here (hither) in order to visit our aunt*.

### Use of German Past Participle

4. The past participle with *kommen* is often used for the English present participle: heulend kommt der Sturm geflogen, *the howling storm comes flying*; ein Gewitter kam gezogen, *a thunderstorm came drawing near*.

5. The participles are generally preceded by all words dependent on them in meaning: auf dem Felsen lag er tot, von einem Pfeil durch die Brust geschossen, *he lay dead on a rock (having been) shot through the breast by an arrow*.

### VOCABULARY 18 a

angelsäch'sisch, *Anglo-Saxon*.

die Batterie', *battery*.

begießen, *pour water on, water*.

das Blut, *blood*.

die Dachrinne, *gutter, eaves-trough*.

das Dienstmädchen, *servant-girl*.

erobern, *conquer*.

franzö'sisch (adj.), *French*.

der Hals, *neck*.

der Herzog, *duke*.

die Kompanie', *company (military)*.

die Kugel, *ball, bullet*.

(die) Normandie', *Normandy*.

norman'nisch (adj.), *Norman*.

der Pfeil, *arrow*.

der Sächse, *Saxon*.

die Seite, *side*.

tot, *dead*.

die Übermacht, *superior power (force)*.

vergießen, *shed (tears, blood)*. (Distinguish from vergessen, *forget*).

das Vöglein, *little bird*.

vorüber (adv.), *over, past*.

der Wald, *forest*.

zerstieben (intr.), *be scattered, disperse*.

ziehen (intr.), *march (with an army)*.

\* To be distinguished from the possessive adjectives unser, *our*, and euer, *your*.

## TRANSLATION 18 a

A. 1. Während<sup>1</sup> des letzten<sup>2</sup> deutsch-französischen Krieges<sup>3</sup> ist viel<sup>4</sup> Blut auf beiden<sup>5</sup> Seiten geflossen.<sup>6</sup> 2. Es gießt; gestern<sup>7</sup> regnete<sup>8</sup> es auch sehr stark<sup>8</sup>; der Fluß<sup>9</sup> ist über<sup>10</sup> die Ufer<sup>11</sup> getreten. 3. Ein Vöglein kam aus dem Walde geflogen und setzte<sup>12</sup> sich auf die<sup>10</sup> Dachrinne; dort<sup>1</sup> blieb<sup>8</sup> es ein paar<sup>13</sup> Stunden<sup>14</sup> und dann (then) flog es wieder<sup>15</sup> in den Wald zurück.<sup>16</sup> 4. Eben als<sup>17</sup> die Schlacht<sup>18</sup> begonnen hatte, wurde<sup>19</sup> der Sohn<sup>9</sup> des Generals, der seine Kompanie gegen<sup>20</sup> die feindliche<sup>21</sup> Batterie führte,<sup>22</sup> tot geschossen; er fiel, von<sup>8</sup> einer Kugel in das Herz (heart) getroffen. 5. Nachdem der Regen<sup>2</sup> vorüber war, kamen allerlei<sup>5</sup> Würmer<sup>23</sup> aus der Erde (earth) gekrochen. 6. Das sind die Blumen,<sup>14</sup> die unser Dienstmädchen heute<sup>7</sup> morgen, ehe (before) die Sonne aufging,<sup>18</sup> begossen hat. 7. Ein Pfeil kam durch die Luft<sup>24</sup> geflogen und der König der Sachsen fiel; das Blut floß von seinem Angesicht<sup>21</sup> und die Schlacht<sup>18</sup> war verloren. 8. Seine Mannen<sup>25</sup> flohen und der Herzog der Normandie zog durch das eroberte<sup>26</sup> Land. 9. Die angelsächsischen Truppen<sup>27</sup> zerfielen vor der Übermacht der normannischen Ritter.<sup>28</sup> 10. Tot auf dem Schlachtfeld<sup>29</sup> lagen die tapfersten<sup>5</sup> Männer<sup>25</sup> und viele Tränen<sup>30</sup> wurden von<sup>8</sup> Frauen<sup>14</sup> und Mädchen vergossen.

<sup>1</sup> Vocabulary 4 b, p. 35. <sup>2</sup> Id., 7 a, p. 53. <sup>3</sup> Id., 8 b, p. 62. <sup>4</sup> Id., 3 a, p. 28. <sup>5</sup> Id., 10 a, p. 76. <sup>6</sup> Cf. 144. <sup>7</sup> Vocabulary 2, p. 22. <sup>8</sup> Id., 5 a, p. 39. <sup>9</sup> Id., 7 b, p. 54. <sup>10</sup> Exercise 7, 3 a, p. 52. <sup>11</sup> Vocabulary 7 b, p. 54. <sup>12</sup> Id., 16 b, p. 161. <sup>13</sup> Id., 6 a, p. 47. <sup>14</sup> Id., 9 b, p. 68. <sup>15</sup> Id., 3 b, p. 29. <sup>16</sup> Id., 15 a, p. 146. <sup>17</sup> Id., 6 b, p. 48. <sup>18</sup> Id., 14 b, p. 134. <sup>19</sup> Exercise 9, 1 and 2, p. 65. <sup>20</sup> Vocabulary 13 c, p. 117. <sup>21</sup> Id., 15 b, p. 148. <sup>22</sup> Id., 12 c, p. 104. <sup>23</sup> Cf. 95, 1. <sup>24</sup> Vocabulary 13 a, p. 111. <sup>25</sup> Cf. 134. <sup>26</sup> Exercise 13, II, 1, p. 116. <sup>27</sup> Vocabulary 17 c, p. 177. <sup>28</sup> Id., 13 b, p. 113. <sup>29</sup> Schlachtfeld = Schlacht and Feld. <sup>30</sup> Vocabulary 16 a, p. 156.

B. 1. The blood ran (flowed) from the wounds (Wunde, f.) of our soldiers (Soldat). 2. It poured all day (the whole day) yesterday<sup>1</sup>; the newspapers (Zeitung, f.) say that it will rain very<sup>2</sup> hard to-morrow. 3. Did you see those little



birds that came flying<sup>3</sup> from (out of) the city? 4. When (Nachdem) they had remained in the woods<sup>4</sup> a few days, they<sup>5</sup> flew back to<sup>6</sup> their nests (Nest, n.). 5. Two soldiers of the company that was led by our brave (tapfer) captain (Hauptmann) pretended<sup>7</sup> to have shot dead<sup>8</sup> the general of the hostile batteries. 6. He is said<sup>7</sup> to have fallen after (nachdem) a ball had struck his<sup>9</sup> right arm. 7. After the battle was over, they told (erzählen) all kinds of stories (Geschichte, f.). 8. They said that a few cowards (Feigling) of the hostile army (Heer, n.) came creeping<sup>10</sup> out of their holes (Loch, n.) in the forest, and shot at (auf, with acc.) our general. 9. The servant-girls watered the flowers yesterday<sup>11</sup> just (gerade) before it began (beginnen) to rain. 10. Has the king fallen? Is the battle lost? 11. The blood is running (flowing) from the king's face, — many arrows come flying through the air. 12. The men had<sup>12</sup> fled before the duke had<sup>12</sup> passed (marched) through the conquered cities and villages.

<sup>1</sup> Begin with *yesterday*. <sup>2</sup> Order of words: *to-morrow very hard*. <sup>3</sup> *flying* before *came*. <sup>4</sup> Cf. Exercise 7, 6, p. 52. <sup>5</sup> Cf. Exercise 4, 3, Note, p. 33. <sup>6</sup> *to*, in; cf. Exercise 7, 3, p. 52. <sup>7</sup> Modal auxiliary. <sup>8</sup> *dead* after *batteries*. <sup>9</sup> Translate: *him a ball into the right (recht) arm*. <sup>10</sup> *creeping* before *came*. <sup>11</sup> Cf. Exercise 16, I, 3, p. 155. <sup>12</sup> Cf. 144.

## VOCABULARY 18 b

blau, *blue*.  
denn (conj.), *for, because*.  
denn (adv.), *then, this being so*.  
sich einen, *become one, unite*.  
empor (adv.), *on high, upwards*.  
erziehen, *bring up, educate*.  
die Erziehung, *education*.  
die Fahrt, *passage, trip, voyage*.  
festhalten, *hold fast, keep hold of*.  
der Glanz, *splendor*.  
herab (adv.), *down*.  
das Herrenhaus, *manor-house*.  
hinziehen, *draw along, pass*.

sich hinziehen, *extend*.  
die Idee', *idea*.  
der Klang, *sound*.  
die Küste, *coast*.  
das Meer, *sea*.  
möglich, *possible*.  
nahe liegen (with dative), *lie near*  
(to one's heart), *be greatly con-*  
*cerned in . . .*  
rauschen, *rustle*.  
scharf, *sharp(ly)*.  
der Schaum, *foam*.  
sichlich, *settle*.

das Segel, *sail*.

sicher, *secure, sure, trustworthy*, (no connection with *sich*, *itself*, *themselves*, etc.).

das Steuer, *helm*.

der Stiefvater, *stepfather*.

die Welle, } *wave, billow*.  
die Woge, }

wogen, *surge, heave*.

zueilen (with dative), *hasten towards*.

## TRANSLATION 18 b

A. 1. Das Meer lag tief<sup>1</sup>blau im Sonnen<sup>2</sup>glanz; weißer<sup>3</sup> (white) Schaum hob sich empor und sank wieder<sup>4</sup> herab. 2. Das Wogen (cf. 48, 1) der See<sup>5</sup> einte sich mit dem Rauschen des Windes,<sup>6</sup> der durch den Wald hinzog. 3. Die beiden<sup>7</sup> Boote,<sup>8</sup> die mit vollen<sup>9</sup> Segeln der Küste zueilten, hatten eine nicht ganz<sup>10</sup> gute<sup>4</sup> Fahrt, denn die Wellen gingen<sup>11</sup> hoch<sup>12</sup> und der Wind blies scharf von Norden.<sup>6</sup> 4. Aber das Steuer lag in sicheren Händen,<sup>13</sup> denn die Boote hielten die Richtung<sup>6</sup> fest und wandten<sup>14</sup> sich endlich<sup>15</sup> gegen<sup>14</sup> das Herrenhaus. 5. Was anders (else) hätte denn der Knabe<sup>16</sup> bei dieser Erziehung werden können?<sup>17</sup> Sein Stiefvater hat ihn ganz<sup>10</sup> in seinen Ideen erzogen. 6. Es ist möglich, daß dem alten Baron der Gedanke<sup>18</sup> nahe gelegen hat, den Streit<sup>19</sup> zu schlichten.

<sup>1</sup> Vocabulary 12 b, p. 103. <sup>2</sup> Id., 10 b, p. 78. <sup>3</sup> Exercise 17, 4, p. 173.  
<sup>4</sup> Vocabulary 3 b, p. 29. <sup>5</sup> Id., 7 b, p. 54. <sup>6</sup> Id., 15 c, p. 150. <sup>7</sup> Id., 12 a, p. 101. <sup>8</sup> Cf. 84. <sup>9</sup> Vocabulary 13 a, p. 111. <sup>10</sup> Id., 6 b, p. 48. <sup>11</sup> Id., 8 a, p. 61.  
<sup>12</sup> Id., 4 a, p. 34. <sup>13</sup> Id., 2, p. 22. <sup>14</sup> Id., 13 c, p. 117. <sup>15</sup> Id., 13 b, p. 113.  
<sup>16</sup> Cf. 106, 1. <sup>17</sup> Cf. 168, 1. <sup>18</sup> Cf. 126. <sup>19</sup> Vocabulary 6 a, p. 47.

## VOCABULARY 18 c

als (after comparative), *than*.

anziehen, *draw on, attract*.

beschließen, *decide*.

das Gasthaus, *hotel, inn*.

geheim, *secret*.

genießen, *eat*.

heiraten, *marry*.

nichts weniger als, *anything but*.

die Polizeibehörde, *police authority*.

roh, *rude*.

die Schönheit, *beauty*.

die Schuld schieben . . . auf (with acc.), *lay the blame on . . ., impute the guilt to . . .*

die Schule, *school*.

die Speise, *food, dish*.

verbieten, *forbid*.

die Verzeihung, *pardon*.

um Verzeihung bitten, *ask pardon*.

vorsetzen (with dative), *set before, present*.

## TRANSLATION 18 c

A. 1. Es verdroß die fremden<sup>1</sup> Herren,<sup>2</sup> die nur auf<sup>3</sup> einen Tag hier zu<sup>4</sup> Besuch<sup>5</sup> kommen konnten, daß man ihnen verbot die königlichen<sup>6</sup> Gärten zu besuchen.<sup>7</sup> 2. Wir froren in dem schlechten<sup>8</sup> Zimmer,<sup>9</sup> das wir im Gasthaus hatten, und von den Speisen, die man uns vorsetzte, genossen wir beinahe<sup>10</sup> gar<sup>11</sup> nichts. 3. Wir baten<sup>12</sup> um gefottene<sup>13</sup> Eier<sup>14</sup> und, als wir sie endlich<sup>15</sup> nach langem Warten<sup>16</sup> bekamen,<sup>7</sup> fanden wir, daß die Eier nichts weniger als frisch<sup>17</sup> waren. 4. Die Polizei<sup>18</sup> hätte die Schuld auf den armen,<sup>17</sup> unglücklichen<sup>19</sup> Bauer geschoben, aber der strenge<sup>15</sup> Richter<sup>20</sup> bot der Polizeibehörde Troß (defiance) und beschuldigte<sup>20</sup> sie geheimer Absichten.<sup>6</sup> 5. Sene rohen Zungen<sup>21</sup> haben die Lehrer jetzt<sup>7</sup> um Verzeihung gebeten; wegen<sup>8</sup> ihres schlechten<sup>8</sup> Benehmens<sup>22</sup> hatten sie gestern die Schule verlassen<sup>22</sup> müssen.<sup>23</sup> 6. Die Fenster<sup>9</sup> boten den vollen Anblick<sup>22</sup> der See,<sup>24</sup> die heute noch mehr<sup>5</sup> bewegt<sup>25</sup> war als letzte<sup>8</sup> Woche.<sup>26</sup> 7. Der junge<sup>27</sup> Graf<sup>28</sup> hatte beschlossen, an seine stolze<sup>9</sup> Cousine nicht weiter<sup>29</sup> zu denken; obgleich<sup>11</sup> ihre große Schönheit ihn anzog, zweifelte<sup>20</sup> er nicht, daß er mit ihr, wenn er sie heiratete, sehr unglücklich<sup>19</sup> sein würde. 8. Der grausame<sup>30</sup> König bot dem stolzen<sup>9</sup> Grafen Freiheit<sup>9</sup> und Leben,<sup>29</sup> wenn er ihn um Verzeihung bäte.<sup>31</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Vocabulary 14 b, p. 134. <sup>2</sup> Cf. 105, Note 2, p. 64. <sup>3</sup> auf = *for*. <sup>4</sup> zu = *on a*. <sup>5</sup> Vocabulary 5 b, p. 40. <sup>6</sup> Id., 13 c, p. 117. <sup>7</sup> Id., 4 b, p. 35. <sup>8</sup> Id., 7 a, p. 52. <sup>9</sup> Id., 4 a, p. 34. <sup>10</sup> Id., 10 b, p. 78. <sup>11</sup> Id., 15 a, p. 146. <sup>12</sup> Id., 17 a, p. 173. <sup>13</sup> Cf. Exercise 13, II, 1, p. 116. <sup>14</sup> Vocabulary 8 a, p. 60. <sup>15</sup> Id., 13 b, p. 113. <sup>16</sup> Id., 11 a, p. 90; cf. 48, 1 a. <sup>17</sup> Id., 13 a, p. 111. <sup>18</sup> Id., 15 b, p. 148. <sup>19</sup> Id., 10 a, p. 76. <sup>20</sup> Id., 14 a, p. 129. <sup>21</sup> Id., 15 c, p. 150. <sup>22</sup> Id., 16 c, p. 167. <sup>23</sup> Cf. 168, 1. <sup>24</sup> Vocabulary 7 b, p. 54. <sup>25</sup> Cf. foot-note §, p. 158. <sup>26</sup> Vocabulary 9 a, p. 67. <sup>27</sup> Id., 12 a, p. 102. <sup>28</sup> Cf. 106, 2. <sup>29</sup> Vocabulary 14 c, p. 137. <sup>30</sup> Id., 16 b, p. 161. <sup>31</sup> Preterit subjunctive; cf. 159, 2, and Exercise 11, 5, p. 90.

## LESSON XIX

## STRONG CONJUGATION. — CLASS VI

**220. Radical Diphthong of the Infinitive: ei.**  
The verbs with radical ei in the infinitive are divided into two groups.

1. To the first group belong the verbs taking *ï* in the preterit and past participle: *ei, ï, ï*.

a. To this group belong all verbs whose radical *ei* is immediately followed by *t, f, ß* or *ch*, also *leiden* and *schneiden*. Cf. 216, Note.

2. To the second group belong all the other verbs with *ei* in the infinitive; they take *ie* in the preterit and past participle: *ei, ie, ie*.

### 221. First Group — *ei, i, i*

beißen,	biß,	gebissen,	bite
erbleichen,*	erblich,	erblichen, }	grow pale, expire
verbleichen,	verblich,	verblichen, }	
-fleiß, only in			
sich befließen,	besiß,	beßissen,	exert one's self
gleichen,	glich,	geßlichen,	be like
gleiten,	glitt,	geglitten,	glide
greifen,	griff,	gegrißen,	seize
kneifen,	kniff,	gekniffen,	pinch
leiden,	litt,†	gelitten,‡	suffer
pfeifen,	pfiff,	gepfiffen,	whistle
reißen,	riß,	gerißen,	tear
reiten,	ritt,	geritten,	ride (on horseback)
schleichen,	schlich,	geschlichen,	creep
schleifen,	schliff,	geschliffen,	whet, grind
schleissen,	schliß,	geschliffen,	slit
schmeißen,	schmiß,	geschmissen,	smite, dash, hurl
schneiden,	schnitt,†	geschnitten,‡	cut
schreiten,	schritt,	geschritten,	stride
streichen,	strich,	gestrichen,	stroke, wipe
streiten,	stritt,	gestritten,	strive, fight
weichen,	wich,	gewichen,	yield

a. *bleißen, gliß, geglißen, shine*, is rarely found. The weak forms occur at times.

\* The simple verb *bleichen, bleach*, is weak.

† Cf. 227, 1, d.

‡ Cf. 229, 1.

**222. Second Group: — ei, ie, ie.**

To the second group belong all the other verbs in ei:

bleiben,	blieb,	geblieben,	<i>remain</i>
— <i>beihen</i> , only in			
gedeihen,	gedieh,	gebiehen,	<i>thrive, prosper</i>
leihen,	lieh,	geliehen,	<i>lend</i>
meiden,	mied,*	gemieden,	<i>shun</i>
preisen,	pries,	gepriesen,	<i>praise</i>
reiben,	rieb,	gerieben,	<i>rub</i>
scheiden,	schied,	geschieden,	<i>part, depart</i>
scheinen,	schien,	geschienen,	<i>seem</i>
schreiben,	schrieb,	geschrieben,	<i>write</i>
schreien,	schrie,	geschrieen,	<i>cry, scream</i>
schweigen,	schwieg,	geschwiegen,	<i>be silent</i>
speien,	spie,	gespieen,	<i>spit, vomit</i>
steigen,	stieg,	gestiegen,	<i>climb</i>
treiben,	trieb,	getrieben,	<i>drive</i>
weisen,	wies,	gewiesen,	<i>show</i>
zeihen,	zieh,	geziehen,	<i>accuse (with gen.)</i>

a. *Seissen, hieß, geheissen, call, be called*, is anomalous. The past participle *gehiesen* occurs sometimes in dialectic discourse; if it were the proper form, the verb would regularly belong to the second group of this class.

**EXERCISE 19****USE OF ohne, statt OR anstatt**

1. German prepositions are not followed by participles.
2. *Ohne, without*, and *statt or anstatt, instead*, govern the infinitive with *zu*: *instead of noticing it*, *anstatt es zu bemerken*; *without seeing him*, *ohne ihn zu sehen*.

**VOCABULARY 19 a**

die Achtung, <i>respect, esteem.</i>	eigen, <i>own.</i>
(sich) amüsieren, <i>amuse one's self.</i>	entscheiden, <i>decide.</i>
begreifen, <i>comprehend.</i>	erzwingen, <i>compel.</i>
der Bekannte, <i>acquaintance.</i>	fast, <i>almost (distinguish from fest,</i>
die Bildung, <i>education, culture.</i>	<i>firm, solid).</i>

\* Sometimes *meibete*.

der Gesellschafter, *companion*.  
 der Gesichtszug, *feature*.  
 gewiß, *certain*.  
 gleich (adj.), *like, same*.  
 die Kosten (pl.), *expense*.  
 auf Kosten, *at the expense*.  
 die Manier', *manner*.  
 die Natur', *nature, character*.  
 die Redeweise, *way of speaking*.

das Schicksal, *fate*.  
 schroff, *rude, uncouth*.  
 unentschieden, *undecided*.  
 verwunden, *wound*.  
 verzeihen, *pardon*.  
 die Wette, *wager*.  
 der Witz, *wit, joke*.  
 Witze reißen (über), *crack jokes*  
 (about).

## TRANSLATION 19 a

A. 1. Die Wette blieb unentschieden, denn<sup>1</sup> die beiden<sup>2</sup> Boote<sup>3</sup> erreichten<sup>4</sup> das Ziel<sup>4</sup> zu<sup>5</sup> gleicher Zeit.<sup>6</sup> 2. Der junge Herr schien mir ein angenehmer<sup>6</sup> Gesellschafter zu sein; doch (yet) gefiel<sup>4</sup> es mir nicht, daß er fast immer<sup>7</sup> nur von seinen eigenen Angelegenheiten<sup>8</sup> sprach.<sup>8</sup> 3. Unser Freund, der alte Forstmeister,<sup>9</sup> hat gestern wieder große Lust<sup>10</sup> gezeigt<sup>11</sup> sich auf anderer<sup>12</sup> Leute<sup>2</sup> Kosten zu amüsieren. Er riß allerlei<sup>13</sup> Witze über die schwachen Seiten<sup>14</sup> seiner Bekannten. 4. Diesen Mann kennen Sie ja<sup>15</sup> gar<sup>16</sup> nicht; er hat uns den Vater gerettet,<sup>17</sup> als er verwundet fiel, in der Schlacht,<sup>18</sup> die über das Schicksal unseres Landes entschied. 5. Seine Gesichtszüge konnten nicht für schön gelten,<sup>19</sup> aber sie erzwangen Achtung und seine Redeweise verriet<sup>16</sup> eine gewisse Bildung. 6. Er ist der alte<sup>20</sup> geblieben, verzeihen Sie ihm seine schroffen Manieren. 7. Haben Sie je begriffen, wie diese zwei jungen Leute solche<sup>21</sup> guten Freunde werden konnten? sie sind so verschiedener<sup>22</sup> Natur. 8. Der ungeduldige<sup>23</sup> Lehrer<sup>24</sup> griff den faulen<sup>24</sup> Schüler<sup>24</sup> beim Arm<sup>24</sup> und wies ihm die Tür.<sup>7</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Vocabulary 18 b, p. 182. <sup>2</sup> Id., 12 a, p. 101. <sup>3</sup> Cf. 84. <sup>4</sup> Vocabulary 6 b, p. 48. <sup>5</sup> zu = *at the*. <sup>6</sup> Vocabulary 4 b, p. 35. <sup>7</sup> Id., 7 a, p. 52. <sup>8</sup> Id., 12 c, p. 104. <sup>9</sup> Id., 8 a, p. 61. <sup>10</sup> Id., 7 b, p. 54. <sup>11</sup> Id., 2, p. 22. <sup>12</sup> Cf. Exercise 17, 4, p. 173, and Vocabulary 10 a, p. 76. <sup>13</sup> Vocabulary 10 a, p. 76. <sup>14</sup> Die schwachen Seiten, *the weak sides or points; foibles*. <sup>15</sup> Exercise 10, 2, p. 76. <sup>16</sup> Vocabulary 15 a, p. 146. <sup>17</sup> Id., 14 c, p. 137. <sup>18</sup> Id., 14 b, p. 134. <sup>19</sup> Exercise 16, III, 1 a, p. 166. <sup>20</sup> der alte = *as of old, just the same*. <sup>21</sup> Exercises 3, 2, p. 26, and 13, 1, 3, p. 110. <sup>22</sup> Cf. Exercise 17, 4, p. 173, and Vocabulary 9 a, p. 67. <sup>23</sup> Vocabulary 12 d, p. 105. <sup>24</sup> Id., 3 a, p. 27.

B. 1. Did you tell me that the matter (Sache, f.) had<sup>1</sup> remained undecided? 2. I do not know (wissen), but it had seemed to me as if<sup>2</sup> those young gentlemen were not very agreeable companions. 3. They had not<sup>3</sup> spoken of anything<sup>3</sup> except (als) the affairs of their own families (Familie, f.). 4. They also<sup>4</sup> seemed to show great pleasure in<sup>5</sup> cracking jokes at the expense of their friends. 5. Do you know (kennen) that man? His father had fallen in the battle in which the fate of the kingdom (Königreich, n.) was decided.<sup>6</sup> 6. They could<sup>7</sup> have passed for agreeable people, if their features had not betrayed a certain coarseness (Rohheit, f.). 7. I have never been able<sup>8</sup> to comprehend how those people, who are of such different characters, have<sup>1</sup> remained firm<sup>9</sup> (fest) friends so long. 8. I should have seized<sup>10</sup> those lazy fellows (Rerl) by their arms and shown [to] them the door, if they<sup>11</sup> had not asked<sup>12</sup> my pardon at once (sofort).

<sup>1</sup> Cf. 144. <sup>2</sup> as if, als wenn (with subjunctive). <sup>3</sup> not anything = nothing. <sup>4</sup> Cf. Exercise 16, 3a, p. 155. <sup>5</sup> Translate: to crack, cf. Exercise 11, 6, p. 90. <sup>6</sup> Cf. Exercise 9, 1, p. 65. <sup>7</sup> Cf. 170. <sup>8</sup> Cf. 168, 1. <sup>9</sup> Order of words: so long firm friends. <sup>10</sup> Cf. 170, 8 and 9. <sup>11</sup> Order of words: if they me not at once. <sup>12</sup> ask my pardon, um Verzeihung bitten (204, 1).

### VOCABULARY 19 b

äußerst, utmost, extreme.

zum äußersten schreiten, go to the extreme, go to the greatest lengths.

die Aufmerksamkeit, attention.

Aufmerksamkeit schenken, pay attention. [tion.

beschwerlich, troublesome. [tion.

beschwerlich fallen (with dative), be a burden to, annoy.

entfliehen (with dative), escape.

ersteigen, ascend, mount.

(sich) erweisen, prove (one's self).

etwas (adv.), somewhat.

die Feigheit, cowardice.

gegenüberstehen, stand opposite, opposite the, foe. [pose.

die Gelegenheit, opportunity.

der Grad, degree.

heftig, violent(ly), fierce(ly).

hinterher (adv.), behind, (the preposition is hinter).

höchst (from hoch), highest.

je, ever (distinguish from ja).

die Kavallerie, cavalry.

das Kompliment, compliment.

ein Kompliment machen, *pay a compliment.*

die Lippe, *lip.*

mißfallen, *displease.*

nieder (adv.), *down.*

der Rheumatis'muß, *rheumatism.*

die Schwadron', *squadron (cavalry).*

der Schweiß, *perspiration.*

den Schweiß streichen von, *wipe the perspiration from.*

## TRANSLATION 19 b

A. 1. Die junge Dame,<sup>1</sup> obschon<sup>2</sup> sehr arm, war doch (nevertheless) sehr stolz<sup>3</sup> auf ihre Rechte<sup>4</sup>; das zeigte sie dem Grafen bei jeder<sup>5</sup> Gelegenheit und die Komplimente, die er ihr machte, mißfielen ihr im höchsten Grade. 2. Ich schlich hinterher, ohne jemand(em) beschwerlich zu fallen; denn keine Seele<sup>6</sup> schenkte mir die geringste (least) Aufmerksamkeit. 3. Der Oberst<sup>7</sup> wurde so zornig,<sup>8</sup> daß er sich auf die Lippen biß; niemand<sup>9</sup> hatte ihn je vorher<sup>10</sup> solcher<sup>5</sup> Feigheit geziehen. 4. Er schritt zum äußersten, riß seinem Gegner den Säbel (sabre) von der Seite und hieb ihn nieder. 5. Die arme Frau des Arbeiters,<sup>11</sup> der gestern begraben<sup>12</sup> wurde,<sup>13</sup> hat viele<sup>14</sup> Jahre an<sup>15</sup> einer gefährlichen<sup>16</sup> Krankheit<sup>17</sup> gelitten; jetzt<sup>18</sup> ist sie wohl<sup>19</sup> etwas besser,<sup>20</sup> aber bisweilen (sometimes) leidet sie noch<sup>21</sup> an<sup>15</sup> Rheumatismus. 6. Unsere Soldaten<sup>7</sup> strichen den Schweiß von der Stirn<sup>22</sup>; endlich,<sup>23</sup> nachdem<sup>24</sup> sie lang(e)<sup>9</sup> und heftig mit dem Feinde gestritten,<sup>25</sup> erstiegen sie den steilen<sup>26</sup> Berg.<sup>16</sup> 7. Im Tale<sup>24</sup> hatte die feindliche<sup>12</sup> Kavallerie unter dem kommandierenden<sup>27</sup> General die gegenüberstehende Schwadron zu Boden (down) geritten; nur wenige Soldaten<sup>7</sup> sind dem Tode<sup>28</sup> entflohen. 8. Unser stolzer Vetter hat sich als (as) Verräter<sup>28</sup> seines Vaterlandes<sup>28</sup> erwiesen.

<sup>1</sup> Vocabulary 9 b, p. 68. <sup>2</sup> Id., 11 a, p. 90. <sup>3</sup> Id., 4 a, p. 34. <sup>4</sup> Id., 17 b, p. 175. <sup>5</sup> Exercise 3, 2, p. 26; bei = at. <sup>6</sup> Vocabulary 14 c, p. 137. <sup>7</sup> Id., 13 a, p. 111. <sup>8</sup> Id., 12 c, p. 104. <sup>9</sup> Id., 9 a, p. 66. <sup>10</sup> Id., 16 b, p. 161. <sup>11</sup> Id., 14 b, p. 134. <sup>12</sup> Id., 15 b, p. 148. <sup>13</sup> Exercise 9, 1, p. 65; wurde is not "became"; cf. also Exercise 5, 4 a, p. 39. <sup>14</sup> Vocabulary 3 a, p. 28. <sup>15</sup> all = with. <sup>16</sup> Vocabulary 6 a, p. 47. <sup>17</sup> Id., 10 a, p. 76. <sup>18</sup> Id., 4 b, p. 35. <sup>19</sup> Exercise 9, 3 b, p. 66. <sup>20</sup> Vocabulary 7 a, p. 52. <sup>21</sup> Exercise 2, 6, p. 21. <sup>22</sup> Vocabulary 12 b, p. 103. <sup>23</sup> Id., 13 b, p. 113. <sup>24</sup> Id., 8 a, p. 61. <sup>25</sup> Exercise 4, 3 a, p. 33. <sup>26</sup> Id., 6 b, p. 48. <sup>27</sup> Id., 17 c, p. 177. <sup>28</sup> Id., 15 a, p. 146.



## LESSON XX

I. IRREGULAR STRONG VERBS. — II. STRONG PRETERIT  
INDICATIVE. — III. STRONG PRETERIT SUBJUNCTIVE.  
IV. STRONG PAST PARTICIPLE

## I

**223.** The irregular strong verbs are: *gehen, ging, gegangen, go; stehen, stand, gestanden, stand; tun, tat, getan, do.*

NOTE 1.—*Gehen* and *stehen* are called irregular verbs, as their inflection is based on two different stems.

Middle High German, *gēn*; Old High German, *gān* and *gang*; M. H. G. and O. H. G., *stēn* and *stand*; cf. foot notes † and ‡ on page 195.

NOTE 2. *Tun* belonged originally to the class of reduplicated verbs; cf. foot note § on page 195.

NOTE 3. The principal parts of these verbs being given, their conjugation presents no irregularity. For the sake of convenience, however, the inflection of *gehen* is given in full.

**224. gehen, ging, gegangen, go.**

## INDICATIVE

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

## Singular

## Singular

1. *ich gehe, I go, etc.*1. *ich gehe, I may go, etc.*2. *du gehst*2. *du gehst*3. *er geht*3. *er geht*

## Plural

## Plural

1. *wir geh(e)n*1. *wir gehen*2. *ihr geht*2. *ihr geht*3. *sie geh(e)n*3. *sie gehen*

## PRETERIT

## Singular

## Singular

1. *ich ging, I went, etc.*1. *ichginge, I might go, etc.*2. *du gingst*2. *du gingest*3. *er ging*3. *erginge*

**Plural**

1. wir gingen
2. ihr gingt
3. sie gingen

**Plural**

- wir gingen
- ihr ginget
- sie gingen

**FUTURE****Singular**

1. ich werde geh(e)n, *I shall go*,  
etc.
2. du wirst geh(e)n
3. er wird gehen

**Singular**

- ich werde gehen, *I shall go*, etc.
- du werdest gehen,
- er werde gehen

**PERFECT**

1. ich bin gegangen, *I have gone*,  
etc.
2. du bist gegangen
3. er ist gegangen

- ich sei gegangen, *I have gone*,  
etc.
- du seiest gegangen
- er sei gegangen

**PLUPERFECT**

1. ich war gegangen, *I had gone*,  
etc.
2. du warst gegangen
3. er war gegangen

- ich wäre gegangen, *I had gone*,  
etc.
- du wärest gegangen
- er wäre gegangen

**FUTURE PERFECT**

1. ich werde gegangen sein, *I shall have gone*, etc.
2. du wirst gegangen sein
3. er wird gegangen sein

- ich werde gegangen sein, *I shall have gone*, etc.
- du werdest gegangen sein
- er werde gegangen sein

**CONDITIONAL PRESENT****Singular**

1. ich würde gehen, *I should go*,  
etc.
2. du würdest gehen, etc.

**CONDITIONAL PAST****Singular**

- ich würde gegangen sein, *I should have gone*, etc.
- du würdest gegangen sein, etc.

**IMPERATIVE****Singular**

1. —
2. geh (du), *go (thou)*
3. geh(e) er, *let him go*

**Plural**

- gehen wir, *let us go*
- geht, geht (ihr), *go (you)*
- gehen sie, *let them go*

INFINITIVE	
PRESENT	PERFECT
(zu) gehen, ( <i>to</i> ) go	gegangen (zu) sein, ( <i>to</i> ) have gone
PARTICIPLE	
gehend, <i>going</i>	gegangen, <i>gone</i>

### 225. stehen, stand, gestanden, stand.

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
PRESENT		PRESENT	
Singular		Singular	
1. ich stehe, <i>I stand</i> , etc.		ich stehe, <i>I may stand</i> , etc.	
2. du stehst		du steh e st	
3. er steht		er steh e	
Plural		Plural	
1. wir stehen		wir stehen	
2. ihr steht		ihr steh e t	
3. sie stehen		sie stehen	
PRETERIT		PRETERIT	
Singular		Singular	
1. ich stand, <i>I stood</i> , etc.		ich st ä nd e, <i>I might stand</i> , etc.	
IMPERATIVE		IMPERATIVE	
2. steh (stehe) etc.			
PARTICIPLE		PARTICIPLE	
stehend		gestanden, <i>stood</i>	

### 226. tun, tat, getan, do.

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
PRESENT		PRESENT	
Singular		Singular	
1. ich tue, <i>I do</i> , etc.		ich tue, <i>I may do</i> , etc.	
2. du tust		du tu e st	
3. er tut		er tu e	
Plural		Plural	
1. wir tun		wir tu e n	
2. ihr tut		ihr tu e t	
3. sie tun		sie tu e n	

PRETERIT		
Singular		Singular
1. ich tat, <i>I did</i> , etc.		ich täte, <i>I might do</i> , etc.
2. du tatst		du tätest
3. er tat		er täte
Plural		Plural
1. wir taten	-	wir täten
2. ihr tatet		ihr tätet
3. sie taten		sie täten
IMPERATIVE		
Singular		
2. tu (tue), etc.		
PARTICIPLE		
PRESENT		PAST
tuend, <i>doing</i>		getan, <i>done</i>

## II

## Preterit Indicative

**227.** Beside the vowel change, some real or apparent irregularities occur in the formation of the indicative preterit in some strong verbs.

1. Some verbs **shorten** the vowel of the infinitive. When the root ends in *f* or *t*, these consonants are then doubled.

*a.* No verbs in the **first three classes**.

*b.* In the **fourth class** only:  
faufen, foff.

*c.* In the **fifth class** only:  
triefen, troff.

*d.* In the **sixth class** :

gleiten, glitt  
greifen, griff  
tneifen, tneiff  
pfeifen, pfiff

reiten, ritt  
schleifen, schliff  
schreiten, schritt  
streiten, stritt

c. In a few verbs, final *b* of the root in the infinitive becomes *tt*; only:

sieden, *sott* (class V).  
 leiden, *litt*  
 schneiden, *schnitt* } class VI, 1st group.

NOTE. *Weiden, mied*; *scheiden, schied* (class VI, 2d group) have long vowels.

2. In some verbs, on the contrary, the **double** consonant after the radical vowel of the infinitive becomes a **single** consonant. This change denotes, with the exception of *baden, buß*, the **lengthening** of the vowel in the preterit indicative.

NOTE. The verbs changing *ff* of the infinitive to *ß* in the preterit indicative will also be included in the following lists, although this change is merely one of the **form** of the consonant.

a. In the **first class** only:

baden, *büß*  
 schaffen, *schuf* } first group.  
 fallen, *fiel*  
 lassen, *ließ* } second group.

b. In the **second class**, first group:

essen, *aß*  
 fressen, *fräß*  
 vergessen, *vergäß*  
 messen, *mäß*

In the **second class**, third group:

schrecken, *schrät*  
 (erschrecken, erschrät)  
 treffen, *träß*  
 stecken, *stät*

c. In the **third class**:

bitten, *bät*, and the anomalous  
 sitzen, *säß*

d. In the **fourth class** only:

kommen, *kām*

e. None in the **fifth** and **sixth** classes.

3. Notice also *hauen*, *hieb* (instead of *hiem*\*); the irregular *gehen*, *gingt*; *stehen*, *stand*†; *tun*, *tat*‡ and *ziehen*, *zog*.

### III

#### Preterit Subjunctive

**228.** The preterit subjunctive of strong verbs is formed by adding *e* (for the first person singular) to the indicative. For the endings of the other persons, singular and plural, cf. **159**.

1. As has been stated before (**159**, 2), the radical vowels of the preterit indicative *a*, *o*, *u* take the umlaut in the subjunctive: *schlug*, *schlüge*; *sprach*, *spräche*; *wog*, *wöge*.

2. The other vowels remain unchanged: *schrieb*, *schriebe*.

### IV

#### Past Participle

**229.** All verbs **shortening** the long vowel of the infinitive in the preterit, besides doubling the final *f* or *t* of the root or changing the final *b* to *tt* (**227**, 1), have the same short vowel and the same consonantal change in the **past participle**: *saufen*, *soff*, *gesoffen*; *triefen*, *troff*, *getroffen*; *gleiten*, *glitt*, *geglitten*; *leiden*, *litt*, *gelitten*.

**230.** 1. Of the verbs **lengthening** their radical vowel of the infinitive in the preterit, while at the same time the final double consonant of the root becomes a simple one (**227**, 2), **only one verb** has a long vowel in the **past participle**: *bitten*, *bāt*, *gebēten*.

2. The other verbs of this kind have in the past participle a short vowel like that of the infinitive (class I and class II,

---

\* The *b* of *hieb* instead of the *w* belongs to the root; cf. Middle High German *houwen*; preterit singular, *hiu*, *hie*; plural, *hiuwen*, *hieuen*; Anglo-Saxon, *houwan*; English, *hew*.

† Old High German, *giang* from a root *gang*.

‡ Old High German, *stuont* from a root *stand*.

§ Old High German, *teta*, reduplicated perfect; reduplication *te*, and root *ta*.

second group): *ſchöpfen, ſchuß, geſchöpfen* ; *mēſſen, māß, gemēſſen*, or (class II, third group) a short *o*: *trēſſen, trāf, getrōſſen*, or (class IV) *kommen, kam, gekommen*.

3. Notice also the apparently anomalous *ziehen, zog, gezogen* and the irregular *gehen, ging, gegangen* ; *ſtehen, ſtand, geſtanden* ; *tun, tat, getan*.

### EXERCISE 20

NOTE. In the Appendix will be found Tabular Views of Strong Verbs :

- I. Based on the Vowel of the Infinitive ; pages 332, 333.
- II. Based on the Vowel of the Preterit ; pages 334, 335.
- III. Based on the Vowel of the Past Participle ; pages 336, 337.
- IV. Changing the Radical Vowel of the Infinitive in the 2d and 3d Persons Singular, Indicative Present ; and
- V. Also in the 2d Person Singular Imperative ; pages 338, 339.

### I

PRACTICE IN FINDING THE PRINCIPAL PARTS AND THE SECOND AND THIRD PERSONS SINGULAR OF THE PRESENT INDICATIVE.

1. Give the preterit indicative and the past participle of the following verbs and state to what class and group they belong, and why :

*Bergen, bieten, bleiben, brechen, bringen, eſſen, finden, fliegen, graben, kommen, leſen, meiden, rinnen, ſchlafen, ſchlagen, ſchweigen, ſprechen, werfen, ziehen and zwingen.*

2. Give the second and third persons singular of the present indicative of *befehlen, blaſen, brechen, eſſen, fedten, gehen, gelten, graben, halten, laſſen, leſen, ſchelten, ſtehlen, werben* and *werfen*.

3. Give the infinitive of *begann, bog, bat, blieb, fiel, gab, glich, hing, hieb, kam, mied, nahm, ritt, ſchuß, ſchien, ſchnitt, ſchwieg, ſpann, traf, wußt, wies, zog* and *zwang*.

4. Give the infinitive and preterit indicative of *gebiffen, geborgen, gebogen, geblieben, gegeſſen, geſchehen, gegoffen, gegriffen*,

gehauen, gefloffen, geforen, geladen, gelitten, gelogen, gemessen, gerufen, geschunden, geschritten, gestochen, verloren, geworfen and gemunden.

## II

1. Give the perfect indicative and subjunctive in full of: bleiben, lassen, gehen, reden, liegen, legen, sitzen, setzen, aufstehen, verstehen, fahren, and übersetzen.

2. Give the preterit subjunctive in full of tragen, pfeifen, schneiden, schreiben, geben, befehlen and flechten.

## VOCABULARY 20 a

befehlen, *command.*

der Begriff, *conception, idea.*

im Begriff sein, *be on the point, be about.*

bringen, like the French "apporter," may mean *bring* or *take*.

da, *there*, often used in the sense of *here*.

ehe (conj.), *before.*

der Einnnehmer, *collector.*

enthaupen, *behead.*

erfreulich, *agreeable.*

die Feder, *pen.*

fort, *away.*

fortgehen, *go away, depart.*

Frankreich, *France.*

gehören (with dative), *obey.*

das Gesicht, *face.*

die Grenze, *boundary, border.*

herbei (adv.), *hither, this way*, (in the direction of the speaker).

das Papier', *paper, writing, document* der Prediger, *preacher.* [ment.

die Summe, *sum, amount* (of money).

die Stille, *quiet, stillness.*

in der Stille, *quietly.*

auf die Stunde, *at the very hour* (appointed).

der Tumult', *tumult.*

verdrücklich, *annoyed, vexed.*

verlangen, *demand*

versichern (with dative), *assure.*

die Verwirrung, *confusion.*

wegkommen, *come off, be let off.*

zeitig, *betimes, soon.*

zusammenbringen, *bring together, gather, collect.*

das zweitemal, *for the second time.*

## TRANSLATION 20 a \*

A. 1. Er kommt nicht! Ich warte<sup>1</sup> schon<sup>2</sup> zwei Stunden<sup>3</sup> auf ihn, die Feder in der Hand; und eben<sup>4</sup> heut<sup>5</sup>es möcht<sup>6</sup> ich

\* The following sentences are taken from Göthe's drama "Egmont." They contain a conversation between Count Egmont and his secretary. Sentences 1, 2, 4, 6, 7, 8, 10, are the secretary's; 3, 5, 9 and 11, the count's.



gern so zeitig fort.<sup>7</sup> 2. „Sei auf die Stunde da,“ befaß er mir noch, ehe er fortging; noch<sup>8</sup> ist er nicht gekommen. 3. Ich bin wohl<sup>9</sup> zu lang auf dem Schloß<sup>10</sup> geblieben<sup>11</sup>; du machst<sup>12</sup> ein verdrießliches Gesicht. 4. Eurem Befehl<sup>13</sup> zu gehorchen, wart' ich schon lange. Die Papiere hier melden nichts Erfreuliches.<sup>13</sup> 5. Ist viel<sup>14</sup> gekommen? Sag mir nur das Nötigste.<sup>15</sup> 6. Fremde<sup>16</sup> Prediger sind heimlich<sup>17</sup> durch das Land gegangen und wurden entdeckt.<sup>18</sup> 7. Man erzählt<sup>19</sup> sie seien<sup>19</sup> im Begriff nach Frankreich zu gehen. 8. Nach dem Befehl der Regierung<sup>20</sup> sollen sie enthauptet werden. 9. Man soll sie in der Stille an die Grenze bringen und ihnen versichern, daß sie das zweitemal nicht so wegkommen. 10. Euer Ginnehmer schreibt, man könne<sup>19</sup> die verlangte<sup>21</sup> Summe nicht schicken,<sup>22</sup> der Tumult habe<sup>19</sup> in alles<sup>23</sup> die größte<sup>24</sup> Verwirrung gebracht. 11. Das Geld muß herbei<sup>7</sup>; er mag sehen, wie er es zusammenbringt.

<sup>1</sup> Vocabulary 11 a, p. 90. <sup>2</sup> Cf. Exercise 2, 4-7, p. 21, and Exercise 11, 2, p. 89. <sup>3</sup> Vocabulary 9 b, p. 68. <sup>4</sup> Id., 10 b, p. 78. <sup>5</sup> Id., 7 a, p. 52. <sup>6</sup> Cf. Exercise 14, I, 3 b, Note, p. 129. <sup>7</sup> Cf. Exercise 14, III, 7 and 8, p. 136. <sup>8</sup> Vocabulary 6 a, p. 47. <sup>9</sup> Cf. Exercise 9, 3 b, p. 66. <sup>10</sup> Vocabulary 8 a, p. 60. <sup>11</sup> Cf. 144, 2. <sup>12</sup> Vocabulary 13 a, p. 111. <sup>13</sup> Cf. 48, 1 c. <sup>14</sup> viel = viel Neues. <sup>15</sup> Vocabulary 15 b, p. 148, and Exercise 13, I, 5 and 6, p. 111; supply a noun. <sup>16</sup> Vocabulary 14 b, p. 134, and Exercise 17, 4, p. 173. <sup>17</sup> Id., 15 b, p. 148. <sup>18</sup> Id., 17 a, p. 173, and Exercise 9, 1 and 2, pp. 65, 66. <sup>19</sup> Cf. Exercise 13, II, 3, p. 116. <sup>20</sup> Vocabulary 13 c, p. 118. <sup>21</sup> Cf. Exercise 13, II, 1, p. 116. <sup>22</sup> Vocabulary 5 a, p. 39. <sup>23</sup> Id., 12 d, p. 105. <sup>24</sup> Id., 16 b, p. 161.

### VOCABULARY 20 b

bis (conj.), until.  
das Blatt, leaf, sheet of paper.  
der Degen, sword; swordsman.  
das Ding, thing.  
vor allen Dingen, above all things.  
das Ende, end (cf. 132).  
fassen, seize.  
fordern, demand (cf. 164, 2).  
die Galerie, gallery.  
hieneben (adv.), near by.  
irgend ein, any.

Oránien, Prince of Orange (the most renowned of the great nobles in the Netherlands).  
die Ordnung, order.  
der Palast (Class IV), palace.  
rufen, call.  
Silva, Silva (a Spanish officer under the duke of Alba).  
unbedeutend, insignificant.  
verwahren, keep, guard, secure.  
vollstrecken, execute, carry out.

der Vorfaal, *entrance hall*.  
 die Wache, *watch, guard*.  
 weggehen, *go away, depart*.  
 wiederkommen, *return*.

das Zeichen, *sign*.  
 zum Zeichen, *as a sign*.  
 der Zugang, *access*.

## TRANSLATION 20 b \*

A. 1. Nun höre, was zu tun<sup>1</sup> ist. Sobald<sup>2</sup> die Fürsten<sup>3</sup> gekommen sind, wird jeder<sup>4</sup> Zugang zum Palaste besetzt.<sup>5</sup> 2. Du hältst die Wache am Tore und in den Höfen<sup>6</sup> in Ordnung. 3. Vor allen Dingen besetze diese Zimmer hierneben mit den sichersten<sup>7</sup> Leuten.<sup>8</sup> 4. Dann warte auf<sup>9</sup> der Galerie, bis Silva wiederkommt und bringe mir irgend ein unbedeutendes Blatt zum Zeichen, daß sein Befehl<sup>10</sup> vollstreckt wurde. 5. Dann bleib' im Vorsaale, bis Dranien weggeht; folg'<sup>11</sup> ihm; ich halte Egmont hier, als ob<sup>8</sup> ich ihm noch etwas zu sagen hätte. 6. Am Ende der Galerie fordre Draniens Degen; rufe die Wache, verwahre schnell<sup>12</sup> den gefährlichsten<sup>13</sup> Mann; und ich fasse Egmont hier.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Exercise 11, I, p. 89. <sup>2</sup> Vocabulary 9 b, p. 68. <sup>3</sup> Cf. 106, 2. <sup>4</sup> jeder not jener. <sup>5</sup> Vocabulary 17 c, p. 176. <sup>6</sup> Id., 16 b, p. 161. <sup>7</sup> Id., 18 b, p. 183. <sup>8</sup> Id., 12 a, p. 101. <sup>9</sup> warten auf with accusative = wait for; what case is used here? <sup>10</sup> Vocabulary 13 a, p. 111. <sup>11</sup> Id., 2, p. 22. <sup>12</sup> Id., 17 b, p. 175. <sup>13</sup> Id., 6 a, p. 47.

## VOCABULARY 20 c

befriedigen, *pacify*.  
 eher, *sooner, rather*.  
 entschuldigen, *excuse*.  
 die Erzählung, *narrative, account, story*.  
 fehlen (intr. with dative), *be absent from; be missing to; be not present with*.  
 frei, *free, at large*.  
 das Gemüt, *mind, soul*.  
 der General'-Pardon', *general pardon, amnesty*.  
 das Heiligtum, *sanctuary*.

hin und wieder, *to and fro, all about*.  
 die Landsleute (plural of der Landsmann), *countrymen, fellow-citizens*.  
 die Liebe, *love*.  
 die Majestät', *majesty*.  
 reden, *talk*.  
 die Religion', *religion*.  
 schänden, *disgrace*.  
 die Treue, *fidelity*.  
 der Unsinn, *nonsense*.  
 das Verbrechen, *crime*.  
 verkünden, *announce*.

\* From Göthe's "Egmont." The instructions given by the duke of Alba, the commander-in-chief of the Spanish troops, to one of his most trusted officers.

## TRANSLATION 20 c\*

A. 1. Mir tut<sup>1</sup> es leid, daß Dranien uns eben<sup>2</sup> in dieser wichtigen<sup>3</sup> Sache<sup>2</sup> fehlt. Euren<sup>4</sup> Rat,<sup>5</sup> Egmont, wünscht<sup>6</sup> der König, wie diese Staaten<sup>7</sup> wieder<sup>8</sup> zu befriedigen sind.<sup>9</sup> 2. Der König verkünde<sup>10</sup> einen General-Pardon; er beruhige<sup>10</sup> (set at ease) die Gemüter; und bald<sup>11</sup> wird man sehen, wie Treue und Liebe mit dem Vertrauen<sup>12</sup> wieder zurückkehrt.<sup>13</sup> 3. Und jeder, der die Majestät des Königs, der das Heiligtum der Religion geschändet, ginge<sup>14</sup> frei hin und wieder? 4. Ist<sup>9</sup> ein Verbrechen des Unsinns nicht eher zu entschuldigen als<sup>15</sup> grausam<sup>16</sup> zu bestrafen<sup>17</sup>? 5. Der König verlangt Rat und Tat<sup>18</sup> von jedem Fürsten; nicht nur eine Erzählung, wie es ist, was werden könnte,<sup>19</sup> wenn man alles gehen ließe, wie's geht. 6. An (In) der Sache<sup>2</sup> ist nichts zu ändern; ich kenne meine Landsleute; ich habe genug<sup>11</sup> gerechnet; jetzt<sup>11</sup> laß mich gehen.

<sup>1</sup> Vocabulary 12 d, p. 105. <sup>2</sup> Id., 10 b, p. 78. <sup>3</sup> Id., 13 a, p. 111. <sup>4</sup> Cf. Exercise 3, 3, Note, p. 26. <sup>5</sup> Vocabulary 2, p. 22. <sup>6</sup> Id., 3 a, p. 28. <sup>7</sup> Cf. 127; distinguish from die Stadt. <sup>8</sup> Vocabulary 3 b, p. 29. <sup>9</sup> Cf. Exercise 11, 1, p. 89. <sup>10</sup> What part of the verb? <sup>11</sup> Vocabulary 4 b, p. 35. <sup>12</sup> Id., 14 b, p. 134. <sup>13</sup> Id., 17 a, p. 173. <sup>14</sup> Cf. Exercise 16, I, 2, p. 155. <sup>15</sup> Vocabulary 18 c, p. 183. <sup>16</sup> Id., 16 b, p. 161. <sup>17</sup> Id., 9 a, p. 66. <sup>18</sup> Id., 16 a, p. 156. <sup>19</sup> Cf. Exercise 11, 4, p. 89.

---

\* From Göthe's "Egmont." Conversation between the duke of Alba and Count Egmont. Alba, sentences 1, 3, 5; Egmont, sentences 2, 4, 6.

# GERMAN VOCABULARY

## TO PART I

NOTE. The numbers I, II, III, IV and V preceded by a noun refer to the respective classes of the strong declension. The numbers I, II, III, IV, V and VI preceded by a verb refer to the respective classes of the strong conjugation. The Arabic figures refer to the previous vocabularies. The abbreviations *m. f. n.* stand for *masculine, feminine, neuter*; *w.* stands for *weak* declension or conjugation; *str.* for *strong* declension or conjugation; *irr.* for *irregular*, *p.* for *page*. When no declensional class is indicated, *str.* after a noun signifies that the latter is not found in the plural; likewise a feminine noun, when not followed by any reference as to its declension or class, does not occur in the plural, and is therefore indeclinable.

Abend, *m.* III; 6 *b*, p. 48  
 aber, 4 *b*, p. 35  
 Absicht, *f. w.*; 13 *c*, p. 117  
 abweisen, VI; 14 *a*, p. 129  
 Abwesenheit, *f. w.*; 17 *a*, p. 173  
 Acht (nimm dich in), II; 16 *c*, p. 167  
 Achtung, *f.* 19 *a*, p. 186  
 Adel, *m. str.*; 13 *b*, p. 113  
 adelig, 16 *b*, p. 161  
 Adler, *m.* I; 7 *a*, p. 52  
 Advokat, *m. w.*; 17 *b*, p. 175  
 Affe, *m. w.*; 9 *a*, p. 66  
 allein (*adj.*); 15 *b*, p. 148  
 allerlei, 10 *a*, p. 76  
 alles, 12 *d*, p. 105  
 alles Mögliche, 14 *c*, p. 137  
 alles, was, 16 *c*, p. 167  
 als (*conj.*): 6 *b*, p. 48  
 als (after comparative), 18 *c*, p. 183  
 als ob, 12 *a*, p. 101  
 alt, 8 *b*, p. 62

Amerika, 12 *d*, p. 105  
 sich amüsieren, *w.*; 19 *a*, p. 186  
 Anblick, *m.* III; 16 *c*, p. 167  
 der andere, } 10 *a*, p. 76  
 die andern, }  
 ändern, *w.* (*trans.*); 13 *a*, p. 111  
 sich ändern, *w.*; 8 *a*, p. 60  
 Angelegenheit, *f. w.*; 12 *c*, p. 104  
 angelfisch/fisch, 18 *a*, p. 180  
 angenehm, 4 *b*, p. 35  
 Angesicht, *n.* V; 15 *b*, p. 148  
 Angriff, *m.* III; 15 *b*, p. 148  
 ankamen, ankam (*pret. of ankommen* IV); 11 *a*, p. 90  
 Ankunft, *f.* IV; 12 *a*, p. 101  
 Antwort, *f. w.*; 13 *a*, p. 111  
 antworten, *w.*; 13 *b*, p. 113  
 anziehen, V; 18 *c*, p. 183  
 Apfelbaum, *m.* IV; 10 *a*, p. 76  
 Arbeit, *f. w.*; 17 *b*, p. 175  
 arbeiten, *w.*; 4 *a*, p. 34  
 Arbeiter, *m.* I; 14 *b*, p. 134  
 Arm, *m.* III; 3 *a*, p. 27

arm, 13 *a*, p. 111  
 Armee', f. w.; 15 *a*, p. 146  
 Arzt, m. IV; 7 *a*, p. 52  
 Asien, n.; 10 *a*, p. 76  
 atmen, w.; 13 *a*, p. 111  
 auch, 2, p. 22  
 auf (prep.); 4 *b*, p. 35  
 Aufenthalt, m. str.; 15 *b*, p. 148  
 Aufgabe, f. w.; 11 *a*, p. 90  
 aufging (pret. of *aufgehen*, irr. str.); 14 *b*, p. 134  
 aufmachen, w.; 5 *a*, p. 39  
 aufmerksam, 16 *a*, p. 156  
 Aufmerksamkeit, f. w.; 19 *b*, p. 188  
 Augenblick, m. III; 9 *b*, p. 68  
 August', m. str.; 16 *c*, p. 167  
 ausbrach (pret. of *ausbrechen*, II); 6 *b*, p. 48  
 ausgehen, irr. str.; 14 *a*, p. 129  
 äußerst, 19 *b*, p. 188 [p. 188  
 zum äußersten schreiten, VI; 19 *b*,  
 auswendig lernen, w.; 11 *a*, p. 90

## B.

Bach, m. IV; 16 *b*, p. 161  
 bald, 4 *b*, p. 35  
 Bankier', m. str. in sing.;  
 Bankiers' (plu.), 14 *a*, p. 129  
 barba'risch, 17 *c*, p. 176  
 bauen, w.; 3 *a*, p. 27  
 Baum, m. IV; 3 *a*, p. 27  
 Bäume (plur.), 3 *a*, p. 27  
 Batterie', f. w.; 18 *a*, p. 180  
 bedecken, w.; 8 *a*, p. 60  
 bedeuten, w.; 13 *a*, p. 111  
 beehren, w.; 11 *a*, p. 90  
 Befehl, m. III; 13 *a*, p. 111  
 befehlen, II; 20 *a*, p. 197  
 sich befinden, III; 17 *a*, p. 173  
 befriedigen, w.; 20 *c*, p. 199  
 sich begeben, II; 16 *b*, p. 161  
 begießen, V; 18 *a*, p. 180  
 beginnen, III; 7 *b*, p. 54  
 begraben, I; 15 *b*, p. 148

begreifen, VI; 19 *a*, p. 186  
 Begriff, m. III; 20 *a*, p. 197  
 im Begriff sein, 20 *a*, p. 197  
 behandeln, w.; 13 *b*, p. 113  
 beide, 10 *a*, p. 76  
 die beiden, 12 *a*, p. 101  
 Bein, n. III; 16 *c*, p. 167  
 beinahe, 10 *b*, p. 78  
 Beispiet, n. III; 15 *b*, p. 148  
 Bekannte, m. w.; 19 *a*, p. 186  
 Bekanntschaft, f. w.; 9 *b*, p. 68  
 bekennen, irr. w.; 16 *c*, p. 167  
 bekommen, IV; 4 *b*, p. 35  
 belieben, w.; 13 *b*, p. 113  
 belügen, IV; 16 *b*, p. 161  
 Bemerkung, f. w.; 14 *b*, p. 134  
 Bemühung, f. w.; 17 *b*, p. 175  
 Benehmen, n. str.; 16 *c*, p. 167  
 bereit, 7 *b*, p. 54  
 Berg, m. III; 6 *a*, p. 47  
 berichten, w.; 13 *c*, p. 117  
 berühmt, 13 *b*, p. 113  
 beschließen, V; 18 *c*, p. 183  
 beschuldigen, w.; 14 *a*, p. 129  
 beschwerlich, 19 *b*, p. 188  
 besehen, II; 16 *a*, p. 156  
 Besen, m. I; 12 *c*, p. 104  
 bessen (past part. of *besitzen*, III); 10 *a*, p. 76  
 besetzen, w.; 17 *c*, p. 176  
 beschäftigen, w.; 7 *a*, p. 52  
 besorgen, w.; 14 *a*, p. 129  
 besser, 7 *a*, p. 52  
 best (adj.); 16 *b*, p. 161  
 bestehen, irr. str.; 9 *a*, p. 66  
 bestrafen, w.; 9 *a*, p. 66  
 Besuch, m. III; 5 *b*, p. 40  
 besuchen, w.; 4 *b*, p. 35  
 beten, w.; 7 *b*, p. 54  
 betragen, I; 15 *c*, p. 150  
 sich betragen, I; 15 *b*, p. 148  
 betreten, II; 14 *b*, p. 134  
 betrügen, II; 16 *b*, p. 161  
 Bettwäsche, f. w.; 15 *c*, p. 150  
 sich bewegen, II; 16 *b*, p. 161

beweisen, VI; 17 *c*, p. 176  
 bewohnen, w.; 7 *b*, p. 54  
 bezahlen, w.; 10 *a*, p. 76  
 Bibliothek, f. w.; 13 *d*, p. 119  
 Bild, n. V; 2, p. 22  
 Bildung, f. w.; 19 *a*, p. 186  
 bis (conj.); 20 *b*, p. 198  
 bis zu, 15 *a*, p. 146  
 bitte, 2, p. 22  
 bitten (III) . . . um; 17 *a*, p. 173  
 Blatt, n. V; 20 *b*, p. 198  
 blau, 18 *b*, p. 182  
 bleiben, VI; 10 *b*, p. 78.  
 Bleifeder, f. w.; 3 *b*, p. 29  
 Blick, m. III; 16 *b*, p. 161  
 blieb } (pret. of bleiben, VI);  
 blieben } 5 *a*, p. 39  
 Blitzableiter, m. I; 17 *a*, p. 173  
 bloß, 16 *c*, p. 167  
 Blume, f. w.; 9 *b*, p. 68  
 Blumengarten, m. II; 5 *a*, p. 39  
 Blut n. str.; 18 *a*, p. 180  
 böß or böse, 14 *c*, p. 137  
 Bote, m. w.; 13 *a*, p. 111  
 brauchen, w.; 3 *b*, p. 29  
 Brief, m. III; 6 *a*, p. 47  
 bringen, irr. w.; 20 *a*, p. 197  
 bringen . . . um, 13 *c*, p. 117  
 Brot, n. III; 15 *b*, p. 148  
 Bruder, m. II; 3 *a*, p. 27  
 Buch, n. V; 3 *b*, p. 29  
 Bücher (plur.); 2 *b*, p. 29  
 buchstabieren, w.; 7 *b*, p. 54  
 Bürger, m. I; 4 *a*, p. 34  
 Bürgermeister, m. I; 15 *b*, p. 148  
 Butterbrot, n. III; 15 *c*, p. 150

## C.

Conf'ne, f. w.; 12 *a*, p. 101

## D.

da (adv.); 6 *b*, p. 48 and 20 *a*,  
 p. 197

da (conj.); 5 *b*, p. 40  
 Dach, n. V; 8 *a*, p. 60  
 Dachrinne, f. w.; 18 *a*, p. 180  
 daher (adv.); 10 *a*, p. 76  
 Dame, f. w.; 9 *b*, p. 68  
 Dämmerung, f. w.; 12 *b*, p. 103  
 danken, w.; 6 *a*, p. 47  
 dann, 8 *a*, p. 60  
 darauf (adv.); 15 *b*, p. 148  
 darans, 16 *a*, p. 156  
 darin, 10 *b*, p. 78  
 darum (adv.); 17 *b*, p. 175  
 daß (conj.); 2, p. 22  
 dauern, w.; 14 *a*, p. 129  
 davon, 16 *a*, p. 156  
 davoutragen, I; 15 *a*, p. 146  
 Degen, m. I; 20 *b*, p. 198  
 denken, irr. w.; 6 *a*, p. 47  
 Deutmal, n. III or V; 13 *b*,  
 p. 113  
 denn (conj. or adv.); 18 *b*, p. 182  
 deren, 9 *b*, p. 68  
 derselbe, 15 *c*, p. 150  
 deutsch, 3 *a*, p. 27  
 Deutschland, n. str.; 8 *b*, p. 62.  
 dich, 3 *a*, p. 27  
 Dieb, m. III; 13 *c*, p. 117  
 Diebst, m. III; 11 *a*, p. 90  
 Dienstmädchen, n. I; 18 *a*, p. 180  
 Ding, n. III or IV; 20 *b*, p. 198  
 vor allen Dingen, 20 *b*, p. 198  
 direkt', 16 *c*, p. 161  
 Dorf, n. V; 8 *a*, p. 60  
 dort 4 *b*, p. 35  
 drei, 5 *b*, p. 40  
 dringen (III) . . . in; 17 *b*, p. 175  
 drohen, w.; 16 *b*, p. 161  
 dulden, w. 16 *c*, p. 167  
 dunkel, 5 *a*, p. 39

## E.

eben, 10 *b*, p. 78  
 Ede, f. w.; 12 *b*, p. 103  
 ehe (conj.); 20 *a*, p. 197

eher, 20 *c*, p. 199  
 Ehre, f. w.; 13 *b*, p. 113  
 ehrlich, 14 *a*, p. 129  
 Ei, n. V; 8 *a*, p. 60  
 Eichenbaum, m. IV; 15 *b*, p. 148  
 Eid, m. III; 16 *b*, p. 161  
 eigen (adj.); 19 *a*, p. 186  
 sich einen, w.; 18 *b*, p. 182  
 einige, 5 *a*, p. 39  
 Einladung, f. w.; 14 *a*, p. 129  
 einmal, 14 *c*, p. 137  
 auf einmal, 12 *c*, p. 104  
 Einnehmer, m. I; 20 *a*, p. 197  
 einsam, 12 *b*, p. 103  
 eintrat (pret. of eintreten, II); 14 *b*,  
 p. 134  
 Eisenbahn, f. w.; 2, p. 22  
 Elefant', m. w.; 9 *a*, p. 66  
 elf, 10 *b*, p. 78  
 Elstern (plur. only) w.; 14 *a*, p. 129  
 empfand (pret. of empfinden, III);  
 10 *b*, p. 78  
 empfangen, I; 15 *b*, p. 148  
 empfehlen, II; 16 *b*, p. 161  
 empor' (adv.); 18 *b*, p. 182  
 Ende, n. irr.; 20 *b*, p. 198  
 endlich, 13 *b*, p. 113  
 Engel, m. I; 4 *a*, p. 34  
 entdecken, w.; 17 *a*, p. 173  
 entfliehen, V; 19 *b*, p. 188  
 entgegenkam (pret. of entgegenkom-  
 men, IV); 12 *a*, p. 101  
 enthaupten, w.; 20 *a*, p. 197  
 entscheiden, VI.; 19 *a*, p. 186  
 entschuldigen, w.; 20 *c*, p. 199  
 Entschuldigung, f. w.; 16 *c*, p. 167  
 entspringen, III; 16 *b*, p. 161  
 entziehen, V; 12 *a*, p. 101  
 Equipage, f. w.; 15 *b*, p. 148  
 erfahren, I; 13 *c*, p. 117  
 erfinden, III; 17 *a*, p. 173  
 erfreulich, 20 *a*, p. 197  
 erhalten, I; 5 *b*, p. 40 and 8 *b*,  
 p. 62.  
 sich erheben, II; 16 *b*, p. 161

erklären, w.; 15 *b*, p. 148  
 erlassen, I; 16 *a*, p. 156  
 Erlaubnis, f. III; 17 *a*, p. 173  
 ernennen, irr. w.; 13 *c*, p. 117  
 ernst, 13 *b*, p. 113  
 erobern, w.; 18 *a*, p. 180  
 erreichen, w.; 6 *b*, p. 48  
 errichten, w.; 9 *a*, p. 66  
 erschallen, I; 15 *b*, p. 148  
 erschien (pret. of erscheinen, VI);  
 12 *c*, p. 104  
 erschlagen, I; 16 *c*, p. 167  
 erst (adv.); 13 *c*, p. 117.  
 der erste, 11 *a*, p. 90  
 ersteigen, VI; 19 *b*, p. 188  
 erwarten, w.; 9 *b*, p. 68  
 erweisen, VI; 13 *b*, p. 113  
 sich erweisen, 19 *b*, p. 188  
 erwidern (trans.), w.; 9 *a*, p. 66  
 erwidern (intrans.), w.; 12 *a*, p. 101  
 erzählen, w.; 8 *a*, p. 60  
 Erzählung, f. w.; 20 *c*, p. 199  
 erziehen, V; 18 *b*, p. 182  
 Erziehung, f. w.; 18 *b*, p. 182  
 erzwingen, III; 19 *a*, p. 186  
 28, 2, p. 22  
 essen, II; 4 *b*, p. 35  
 etwas (pron. adv.); 19 *b*, p. 188  
 etwas (pronoun); 4 *b*, p. 35.

## F.

Fabrik', f. w.; 12 *c*, p. 104  
 Fach, n. V; 8 *b*, p. 62  
 Fahne, f. w.; 16 *b*, p. 161  
 Fahrt, f. w.; 18 *b*, p. 182  
 Fall, m. IV; 14 *a*, p. 129  
 falsch, 3 *b*, p. 29  
 Famili'lie, f. w.; 9 *b*, p. 68  
 fand } (pret. of finden, III); 8 *a*,  
 fanden } p. 60  
 Faß, n. V; 8 *a*, p. 60  
 fassen, w.; 20 *b*, p. 198  
 fast, 19 *a*, p. 186  
 faul, 3 *a*, p. 27

Faulheit, f. w.; 15 c, p. 150  
 Fechtmeister, m. I; 16 b, p. 161  
 Feder, f. w.; 20 a, p. 197  
 Federmesser, n. I; 5 a, p. 39  
 fehlen, w.; 20 c, p. 199  
 Feigheit, f. w.; 19 b, p. 188  
 Feind, m. III; 3 b, p. 29  
 Feinde (plur.); 3 b, p. 29  
 feindlich, 15 b, p. 148  
 Feld, n. V; 11 a, p. 90  
 ins Feld ziehen, 14 b, p. 134  
 Fenster, n. I; 4 a, p. 34  
 fertig, 17 b, p. 175  
 fertig bringen, irr. w.; 17 b, p. 175  
 fest halten, I; 18 b, p. 182  
 Festung, f. w.; 17 c, p. 176  
 Feuer, n. I; 14 b, p. 134  
 fiel (pret. of fallen, I); 7 b, p. 54  
 finden, III; 6 b, p. 48  
 finster, 16 c, p. 167  
 Fisch, m. III; 7 a, p. 52  
 stehen w.; 16 a, p. 156  
 Fleischer, m. I; 15 c, p. 150  
 fleißig, 11 a, p. 90  
 Flüchtling, m. III; 13 c, p. 117  
 Fluß, m. IV; 7 b, p. 54  
 folgen, w.; 2, p. 22  
 fordern, w.; 20 b, p. 198  
 Forstmeister, m. I; 8 a, p. 61  
 fort (adv.); 20 a, p. 197  
 fort'gehen, irr. str.; 20 a, p. 197  
 Frage, f. w.; 13 b, p. 113  
 fragen, w.; 14 c, p. 137  
 Frankreich, n. str.; 20 a, p. 197  
 Franzose, m. w.; 15 b, p. 148  
 französisch, 18 a, p. 180  
 Fran, f. w.; 9 b, p. 68  
 Frau Gemahlin, f. w.; 13 b, p. 113  
 frei, 20 c, p. 199  
 Freiheit, f. w.; 4 a, p. 34  
 fremd, 14 b, p. 134  
 Fremde, m. w.; 14 b, p. 134  
 Fremdes, 12 a, p. 102  
 Freund, m. III; 2, p. 22  
 aufs freundlichste, 15 b, p. 148

Friedrichstraße, f. w.; 2, p. 22  
 frisch, 13 a, p. 111  
 froh, 13 a, p. 111  
 Frost, m. IV; 11 a, p. 90  
 früher, 10 a, p. 76  
 fühlen, w.; 10 b, p. 78  
 führen, w.; 12 c, p. 104  
 Waffen führen, 17 a, p. 173  
 Führer, m. I; 14 b, p. 134  
 für (prep.) 4 b, p. 35  
 fürchten, w.; 13 a, p. 111  
 Fink, m. IV; 3 a, p. 28

## G.

Galerie', f. w.; 20 b, p. 198  
 ganz (adj. and adv.); 6 b, p. 48  
 gar (with negatives); 15 a, p. 146  
 im Garten, 2, p. 22  
 Gasthaus, n. V; 18 c, p. 183  
 Gastzimmer, n. I; 14 b, p. 134  
 Gebäude, n. I; 4 a, p. 34  
 geben, II; 10 b, p. 78  
 gebeten (past part. of bitten); 16 c, p. 167  
 geblieben (past part. of bleiben, VI); 16 b, p. 161  
 gebracht (past part. of bringen, irr. w.); 9 b, p. 68  
 gebrochen (past part. of brechen, II); 3 a, p. 28  
 Gedicht, n. III; 10 a, p. 76  
 gefährlich, 6 a, p. 47  
 gefallen (inf.) I; 6 b, p. 48  
 gefallen (past participle of gefallen, I); 5 b, p. 40  
 gefochten (past part. of sechten, II); 10 a, p. 76  
 gefunden (past part. of finden, III); 9 b, p. 68  
 gegangen (past part. of gehen, irr. str.); 13 a, p. 111  
 gegen, 13 c, p. 117  
 Gegenbefehl, m. III; 14 b, p. 134  
 Gegend, f. w.; 16 b, p. 161



**Gegenpartei**, f. w.; 17 *b*, p. 175  
**gegenüberstehen**, irr. str.; 19 *b*,  
 p. 188

**Gegner**, m. I; 19 *b*, p. 188

**geheim**, 18 *c*, p. 183

**gehen**, irr. str.; 7 *a*, p. 52

**gehen auf** . . . , 4 *a*, p. 34

**gehören**, w.; 20 *a*, p. 197

**gehören**, w.; 8 *a*, p. 61

**Geist**, m. V; 14 *c*, p. 137

**gelingen**, w., an . . . , 17 *b*, p. 175

**Geld**, n. V; 8 *b*, p. 62.

**gelegen** (past part. of *liegen*); 16 *a*,  
 p. 156

**Gelegenheit**, f. w.; 19 *b*, p. 188

**gelingen**, III; 17 *a*, p. 173

**Gemälde**, n. I; 4 *a*, p. 34

**Gemeinde**, f. w.; 13 *a*, p. III

**Gemüt**, n. V; 20 *c*, p. 199

**General**, m. III; 13 *a*, p. III

**General'pardon'**, m.; 20 *c*, p. 199

**genießen**, V; 18 *c*, p. 183

**genug**, 4 *b*, p. 35

**Gerücht**, n. III; 15 *b*, p. 148

**Geschäft**, n. III; 14 *a*, p. 129

**Geschenk**, n. III; 6 *a*, p. 47

**Geschichte**, f. w.; 11 *a*, p. 90

**geschlossen** (past part. of *schließen*,  
 V); 10 *a*, p. 76

**geschrieben** (past part. of *schreiben*,  
 VI); 6 *a*, p. 47

**gesehen** (past part. of *sehen*, II);  
 5 *a*, p. 39

**Gesellschaft**, f. w.; 17 *b*, p. 175

**Gesellschafter**, m. I; 19 *a*, p. 187

**Gesetz**, n. III; 14 *a*, p. 129

**Gesicht**, n. V; 20 *a*, p. 197

**Gesichtszug**, m. IV; 19 *a*, p. 187

**Gespenst**, n. V; 8 *a*, p. 61

**gestern**, 2, p. 22

**getan** (past part. of *tun*, irr. str.);  
 13 *c*, p. 117.

**Getreide**, n. I; 16 *a*, p. 156

**getreten** (past part. of *treten*, II);  
 12 *a*, p. 102

**gewiß**, 19 *a*, p. 187

**gewöhnlich**, 9 *b*, p. 68

**ging** } pret. of *gehen*, irr. str.;

**gingen** } 8 *a*, p. 61

**Glanz**, m. str.; 18 *b*, p. 182

**glauben**, w.; 3 *b*, p. 29

**gleich** (adj.); 19 *a*, p. 187

**gleich** (for *so*gleich); 16 *a*, p. 156

**Glocke**, f. w.; 17 *c*, p. 176

**glücklich**, 16 *a*, p. 156

**gnädig**, 15 *b*, p. 148

**Grab**, n. V; 8 *a*, p. 61

**Grab**, m. III; 19 *b*, p. 188

**Gras**, n. V; 8 *a*, p. 61

**grausam**, 16 *b*, p. 161

**Grenze**, f. w.; 20 *a*, p. 197

**Griechen** (plur.) w.; 8 *b*, p. 62

**groß**, 6 *b*, p. 48

**Großmutter**, f. II; 10 *a*, p. 76

**Großvater**, m. II; 7 *a*, p. 52

**grüßt**, 16 *b*, p. 161

**Grund**, m. IV; 10 *b*, p. 78

**grünen**, w.; 17 *c*, p. 176

**gut** (adj. and adv.); 3 *b*, p. 29

**Gut**, n. V; 10 *a*, p. 76

**Güte**, f.; 17 *a*, p. 173

## §.

**Haß**, m. IV; 18 *a*, p. 180

**halten**, I; 14 *c*, p. 137

**in der Hand**, 2, p. 22

**handeln**, w.; 13 *b*, p. 113

**Handschuh**, m. III; 4 *b*, p. 35

**Hauptstadt**, f. IV; 13 *b*, p. 113

**Haus**, n. V; 2, p. 22

**im Hause** (zu Hause), 5 *a*, p. 39

**nach Hause**, 10 *b*, p. 78

**Heer**, n. III; 10 *a*, p. 76

**Heft**, n. III; 7 *a*, p. 52

**heftig**, 19 *b*, p. 188

**hegen**, w.; 13 *c*, p. 118

**Heiligtum**, n. V; 20 *c*, p. 199

**Heimat**, f. w.; 12 *a*, p. 102

**heimlich**, 15 *b*, p. 148

heiraten, w.; 18 *c*, p. 183  
 heiß, 13 *a*, p. 111  
 immer heißer, 13 *a*, p. 111  
 herab (adv.); 18 *b*, p. 182  
 herbei (adv.); 20 *a*, p. 197  
 Herr, m. w.; 3 *a*, p. 28, and 12  
     *c*, p. 104  
 Herrenhaus, n. V; 18 *b*, p. 182  
 Herr Graf, m. w.; 4 *a*, p. 34  
 herrlich, 8 *b*, p. 62  
 herrschen, w.; 12 *b*, p. 103  
 herumfahren, I; 15 *c*, p. 150  
 herumwandern, w.; 8 *a*, p. 61  
 Herzog, m. III or IV; 18 *a*, p. 180  
 heute, 7 *a*, p. 52  
 heute morgen, 2, p. 22  
 hieher (adv.); 16 *c*, p. 167  
 hier, 4 *a*, p. 34  
 hierneben (adv.); 20 *b*, p. 198  
 Himmel m. I; 4 *a*, p. 34  
 hinter (prep.); 5 *a*, p. 39  
 hinterher (adv.); 19 *b*, p. 188  
 hin und wieder, 20 *c*, p. 199  
 hinziehen, } V; 18 *b*, p. 182  
 sich hinziehen, }  
 hoch, 4 *a*, p. 34  
 höchst, 19 *b*, p. 188  
 Hof, m. IV; 16 *b*, p. 161  
 Hoffnung, f. w.; 10 *b*, p. 78  
 hohen (from hoch); 16 *c*, p. 167  
 höher 17 *b*, p. 175  
 hören, w.; 3 *a*, p. 28  
 Hotel', n. (str. in sing., plur. Ho-  
     tel's); 11 *a*, p. 90  
 hübsch, 11 *a*, p. 90  
 Huhn, n. V; 8 *a*, p. 61  
 Hut, m. IV; 7 *b*, p. 54  
 Hyä'ue, f. w.; 9 *a*, p. 66

## J.

Jdee', f. w.; 18 *b*, p. 182  
 immer, 7 *a*, p. 52  
 Insel, f. w.; 7 *b*, p. 54  
 irgend ein, 20 *b*, p. 198

irgendwo, 13 *c*, p. 118  
 irren, w.; 14 *a*, p. 129

## K.

jagen, w.; 6 *a*, p. 47  
 Jäger, m. I; 6 *a*, p. 47  
 Jahr, n. III; 15 *a*, p. 146  
 je, 19 *b*, p. 188  
 jedermann, 13 *a*, p. 111  
 jemand, 13 *a*, p. 111  
 jetzt, 4 *b*, p. 35  
 jung, 12 *a*, p. 102  
 Junge, m. w.; 15 *c*, p. 150  
 Juni, m. 3 *a*, p. 28

## L.

Kaiser, m. I; 10 *a*, p. 76  
 Kalb, n. V; 8 *b*, p. 62  
 Kalbfleisch, n. str.; 15 *c*, p. 150  
 kalt, 4 *b*, p. 35  
 kam } pret. of kommen, IV; 6 *a*,  
 kamen } p. 47  
 Kampf, m. IV; 7 *b*, p. 54  
 kann, 3 *b*, p. 29  
 kanfen, w.; 2, p. 22  
 kaum, 8 *a*, p. 61  
 Kavallerie', w.; 19 *b*, p. 188  
 lehren, w.; 12 *c*, p. 104  
 Keller, m. I; 8 *a*, p. 61  
 kennen, irr. w.; 3 *b*, p. 29  
 Kerker, m. I; 4 *a*, p. 34  
 Kinder (plur. of Kind, V); 2, p. 22  
 in der Kirche, 13 *a*, p. 111  
 Klage, f. w.; 14 *a*, p. 129  
 Klang, m. IV; 18 *b*, p. 182  
 klar, 16 *c*, p. 167  
 Kleid, n. V; 15 *b*, p. 148  
 klettern, w.; 16 *c*, p. 167  
 Knöchel, m. I; 17 *b*, p. 175  
 kommandie'ren, w.; 17 *c*, p. 176  
 kommen, IV; 3 *b*, p. 29  
 Kompanie', f. w.; 18 *a*, p. 180  
 Kompliment', n. III; 19 *b*, p. 188

**Kompliment'** machen, 19 *b*, p. 189  
**König**, m. III; 4 *a*, p. 34  
**königlich**, 13 *c*, p. 118  
**können**, 4 *a*, p. 34  
**konnte**, 2, p. 22  
**kosten**, w.; 10 *a*, p. 76  
**Kosten** (plur. of die Kost, f. w.);  
 19 *a*, p. 187  
**auf Kosten**, 19 *a*, p. 187  
**kostet** (from kosten, w.); 3 *a*, 28  
**Kot**, m. str.; 17 *b*, p. 175  
**Krämer**, m. I; 4 *a*, p. 34  
**krank**, 6 *b*, p. 48  
**Krankheit**, f. w.; 10 *a*, p. 76  
**Kranz**, m. IV; 16 *b*, p. 161  
**Kreis**, m. III; 16 *b*, p. 161  
**Krieg**, m. III; 8 *b*, p. 62  
**Kriegsschauplatz**, m. IV; 13 *c*,  
 p. 118  
**Küche**, f. w.; 15 *c*, p. 150  
**Kugel**, f. w.; 18 *a*, p. 180  
**kühl**, 3 *a*, p. 28  
**Kunde**, f. (sing. only); 15 *b*, p. 148  
**Künstler**, m. I; 4 *b*, p. 35  
**kurz**, 16 *b*, p. 161  
**kürzlich**, 16 *c*, p. 167  
**Küste**, f. w.; 18 *b*, p. 182  
**Kutscher**, m. I; 15 *c*, p. 150

## L.

**lächeln**, w.; 12 *a*, p. 102  
**laden auf** . . ., I; 15 *b*, p. 148  
**lagen** (pret. of liegen, V); 7 *a*,  
 p. 53  
**Lager**, n. I; 16 *a*, p. 156  
**Lamm**, n. V; 8 *b*, p. 62  
**Land**, n. V; 17 *c*, p. 176  
**Landsleute** (plur.); 20 *c*, p. 199  
**Landtag**, m. III; 15 *a*, p. 146  
**lang** (adv.); 9 *a*, p. 66  
**lang** (adj.); 5 *b*, p. 40  
**länger**, 6 *b*, p. 48  
**längs**, 9 *a*, p. 66  
**Leben**, n. str.; 14 *c*, p. 137

**legen**, w.; 7 *a*, p. 53  
**lehren**, w.; 3 *b*, p. 29  
**Lehrer**, m. I; 3 *a*, p. 28  
**leicht**, 14 *a*, p. 129  
**leichtsinig**, 14 *c*, p. 137  
**leiden**, VI; 14 *a*, p. 129  
**leider** (adv.); 17 *b*, p. 175  
**leid tun**, 12 *d*, p. 105  
**Lektion'**, f. w.; 9 *a*, p. 66  
**lernen**, w.; 3 *a*, p. 28  
**lesen**, II; 3 *b*, p. 29  
**lesen über**, 11 *a*, p. 90  
**lest**, 7 *a*, p. 53  
**Leute** (plur. only); 12 *a*, p. 102  
**Leutnant**, m. III; 17 *c*, p. 177  
**Liebe**, f.; 20 *c*, p. 199  
**lieben**, w.; 3 *a*, p. 28  
**Lied**, n. V; 3 *b*, p. 29  
**liegen**, V; 5 *a*, p. 39  
**Lippe**, f. w.; 19 *b*, p. 189  
**Loch**, n. V; 8 *a*, p. 61  
**Löwe**, m. w.; 9 *a*, p. 66  
**Löwin**, f. w.; 9 *a*, p. 66  
**Luft**, f. IV; 13 *a*, p. 111  
**Luft haben**, 7 *b*, p. 54

## M.

**machen**, w.; 9 *b*, p. 68  
**Macht**, f. IV; 14 *c*, p. 137  
**Magd**, f. IV; 10 *b*, p. 78  
**Mai**, m. III; 3 *a*, p. 28  
**Majestät'**, f. w.; 20 *c*, p. 199  
**Maler**, m. I; 4 *a*, p. 34  
**man**, 5 *b*, p. 40  
**Manier'**, f. w.; 19 *a*, p. 187  
**Mann**, m. V; 3 *a*, 28  
**Manschete**, f. w.; 12 *b*, p. 103  
**Märchen**, n. I; 8 *a*, p. 61  
**Markt**, m. IV; 15 *c*, p. 150  
**Meer**, n. III; 18 *b*, p. 182  
**Meeresufer**, n. I; 11 *a*, p. 90  
**mehr**, 5 *b*, p. 40  
**mein**, 2, p. 22  
**meinen**, w.; 3 *b*, p. 29

meisten (plur.) 15 *b*, p. 148  
 Menagerie', f. w.; 9 *a*, p. 66  
 menschlich, 14 *a*, p. 129  
 Merkmal, n. III; 15 *a*, p. 146  
 Messer, n. I; 2, p. 22  
 mieten, w.; 13 *b*, p. 113  
 mir, 2, p. 22  
 mißfallen, I; 19 *b*, p. 189  
 mit, 2, p. 22  
 Mitglied, n. V; 15 *a*, p. 146  
 möchte, 3 *b*, p. 29  
 möglich, 18 *b*, p. 182  
 Monat, m. III; 16 *c*, p. 167  
 Morgen, m. I; 11 *a*, p. 90  
 morgen (adv.); 6 *a*, p. 47  
 morgen früh, 3 *b*, p. 29  
 müde, 3 *a*, p. 28  
 Müller, m. I; 4 *a*, p. 34  
 münden, w.; 7 *b*, p. 54  
 Musik', f. 9 *b*, p. 68  
 müssen, 11 *a*, p. 90  
 Mut, m. str.; 12 *d*, p. 105  
 Mutter, f. II; 3 *b*, p. 29

## N.

nach, 14 *b*, p. 134  
 Nachbar, m. irr.; 3 *b*, p. 29  
 nachdem, 8 *a*, p. 61  
 Nachmittag, m. III; 10 *a*, p. 76  
 Nachricht, f. w.; 3 *b*, p. 29  
 Nacht, f. IV; 8 *a*, p. 61  
 Nachts, 8 *a*, p. 61  
 nahe liegen, 18 *b*, p. 182  
 näher, 16 *a*, p. 156  
 Natur', f. w.; 19 *a*, p. 187  
 Rebel, m. I; 17 *a*, p. 173  
 nehmen, II; 9 *b*, p. 68  
 nein, 6 *a*, p. 47  
 Nest, n. V; 8 *a*, p. 61  
 neu, 12 *c*, p. 104  
 neulich, 9 *a*, p. 66  
 nicht, 2 *a*, p. 22  
 nichts, 3 *b*, p. 29

\* g sounds like s in pleasure.

nichts weniger als, 18 *c*, p. 183  
 nie, 14 *a*, p. 129  
 nieder (adv.); 19 *b*, p. 189  
 Niederländer, m. I; 4 *a*, p. 34  
 niemand, 9 *a*, p. 66  
 nirgends, 6 *b*, p. 48  
 noch nicht, 6 *a*, p. 47  
 Norden, m. str.; 15 *c*, p. 150  
 Normandie', f.; 18 *a*, p. 180  
 norman'nisch, 18 *a*, p. 180  
 nötig, 15 *b*, p. 148  
 nun, 3 *b*, p. 29 and 17 *a*, p. 173  
 nur, 3 *b*, p. 29

## O.

ob (conj.), 15 *a*, p. 146  
 Oberst, m. w.; 13 *a*, p. 111  
 obgleich, 15 *a*, p. 146  
 ob schon, 11 *a*, p. 90  
 Obstgarten, m. II; 5 *a*, p. 39  
 Offizier', m. III; 13 *a*, p. 111  
 oft, 10 *b*, p. 78  
 ohne, 10 *b*, p. 78  
 Ora'nien, 20 *b*, p. 198  
 Ordnung, f. w.; 20 *b*, p. 198  
 Ort, m. III or V; 15 *a*, p. 148  
 Ostern, f.; 12 *a*, p. 102

## P.

ein paar, 6 *a*, p. 47  
 ein paarmal, 17 *b*, p. 175  
 Palast', m. IV; 20 *b*, p. 198  
 Palme, f. w.; 10 *b*, p. 78  
 Papagei', m. w.; 9 *a*, p. 66  
 Papier', n. III; 20 *a*, p. 197  
 partei'lich, 14 *a*, p. 129  
 Patient', m. w.; 7 *a*, p. 53  
 Person', f. w.; 13 *a*, p. 111  
 Pfarrer, m. I; 13 *a*, p. 111  
 Pfeil, m. III; 18 *a*, p. 180  
 pflastern, w.; 9 *a*, p. 66  
 Pflicht, f. w.; 13 *c*, p. 118  
 plötzlich, 14 *b*, p. 134

**Politi'tiker**, m. I; 9 *b*, p. 68  
**poli'tisch**, 16 *b*, p. 161  
**Polizei'**, f.; 15 *b*, p. 148  
**Polizei'behörde**, f. w.; 18 *c*, p. 183  
**Prediger**, m. I; 20 *a*, p. 197  
**prenu'isch**, 13 *b*, p. 113  
**Profes'sor**, m. irr.; 3 *a*, p. 28  
**Prüfung**, f. w.; 9 *a*, p. 67  
**pünktlicher**, 11 *a*, p. 90  
**Puppe**, f. w.; 14 *c*, p. 137

## R.

**Rat**, m. IV; 17 *c*, p. 177  
**seinem Räte**, 2, p. 22  
**Räuber**, m. I; 16 *c*, p. 167  
**rauh**, 4 *b*, p. 35  
**rauschen**, w.; 18 *b*, p. 182  
**Rechnung**, f. w.; 15 *c*, p. 150  
**Recht**, n. III; 17 *b*, p. 175  
**recht**, 7 *a*, p. 53  
**reden**, w.; 20 *c*, p. 199  
**Redeweise**, f. w.; 19 *a*, p. 187  
**Regen**, m. str.; 7 *a*, p. 53  
**Regenschirm**, m. III; 17 *b*, p. 175  
**Regierung**, f. w.; 13 *c*, p. 118  
**Regiment'**, n. V; 13 *c*, p. 118  
**regnen**, w.; 5 *a*, p. 39  
**Reich**, n. III; 13 *b*, p. 113  
**reich**, 13 *b*, p. 113  
**reichen**, w.; 5 *a*, p. 39  
**reif**, 5 *a*, p. 39  
**rein**, 14 *c*, p. 137  
**Reise**, f. w.; 9 *a*, p. 67  
**reisen**, w.; 12 *a*, p. 102  
**Religion'**, f. w.; 20 *c*, p. 199  
**retten**, w.; 14 *c*, p. 137  
**Revolution'**, f. w.; 6 *b*, p. 48  
**beim Rhein**, 5 *b*, p. 40  
**Rheumatismus**, m.; 19 *b*, p. 189  
**richten**, w.; 13 *b*, 113  
**Richter**, m. I; 14 *a*, p. 129  
**Richtung**, f. w.; 15 *c*, p. 150  
**rief** (pret. of rufen, IV); 14 *b*, p. 134

**Ritter**, m. I; 13 *b*, p. 113  
**Rod**, m. IV; 7 *b*, p. 54  
**roh**, 18 *c*, p. 183  
**Rose**, f. w.; 10 *b*, p. 78  
**rot**, 8 *a*, p. 61  
**Rückzug**, m. IV; 17 *a*, p. 173  
**rufen**, IV; 20 *b*, p. 198  
**ruhelos**, 14 *c*, p. 137  
**ruhen**, w.; 14 *c*, p. 137  
**Ruhm**, m. str.; 12 *d*, p. 105

## S.

**Saal**, m. IV; 16 *b*, p. 161  
**Sache**, f. w.; 10 *b*, p. 78  
**Sachse**, m. w.; 18 *a*, p. 180  
**sagen**, w.; 2, p. 22  
**ich sah**, 2, p. 22  
**wir (sie) sahen**, 10 *b*, p. 78  
**Sammetrod**, m. IV; 16 *a*, p. 156  
**saugt**, 12 *a*, p. 102  
**wir (sie) sanken** (pret. plur. of sinken, III); 10 *b*, p. 78  
**Satz**, m. IV; 7 *b*, p. 54  
**Schande**, f.; 15 *a*, p. 146  
**schänden**, w.; 20 *c*, p. 199  
**scharf**, 18 *b*, p. 182  
**Schau**, f.; 16 *c*, p. 167  
**zur Schau tragen**, I; 16 *c*, p. 167  
**Schaum**, m. IV; 18 *b*, p. 182  
**scheinen**, VI; 6 *a*, p. 47  
**schenten**, w.; 12 *b*, p. 103  
**schicken**, w.; 5 *a*, p. 39  
**Schicksal**, n. III; 19 *a*, p. 187  
**Schild**, m. III; 16 *b*, p. 161  
**im Schilde führen**, w.; 16 *b*, p. 161  
**Schinken**, m. I; 15 *c*, p. 150  
**Schlacht**, f. w.; 14 *b*, p. 134  
**Schlag**, m. IV; 16 *c*, p. 167  
**schlaft**, 12 *a*, p. 102  
**schlecht**, 7 *a*, p. 53  
**schlichten**, w.; 18 *b*, p. 182  
**Schlitten**, m. I; 15 *c*, p. 150  
**Schlitten fahren**, I; 15 *c*, p. 150  
**Schlittschuh**, m. III; 15 *c*, p. 150

- Schlittschuh fahren**, I; 15 *c*, p. 150.  
**Schloß**, n. V; 8 *a*, p. 61  
**Schloßgraben**, m. II; 5 *a*, p. 39  
**Schlüssel**, m. I; 7 *a*, p. 53  
**schmeicheln**, w.; 13 *a*, p. 111  
**Schnee**, m. str.; 15 *c*, p. 150  
**Schneider**, m. I; 4 *a*, p. 34  
**schnell**, 17 *b*, p. 175  
**Schnitte**, f. w.; 15 *c*, p. 150  
**schon**, 6 *a*, p. 47  
**schön**, 16 *a*, p. 156  
**Schönheit**, f. w.; 18 *c*, p. 183  
**schreiben**, VI; 3 *b*, p. 29  
**schröff**, 19 *a*, p. 187  
**Schuld**, f. w.; 13 *c*, p. 118  
**die Schuld schieben (V) auf** . . . ;  
 18 *c*, p. 183  
**Schule**, f. w.; 18 *c*, p. 183  
**Schüler**, m. I; 3 *a*, p. 28  
**Schutz**, m. str.; 13 *c*, p. 118  
**schwächer**, 10 *a*, p. 76  
**Schwadron'**, f. w.; 19 *b*, p. 189  
**Schweigen**, n. str.; 16 *b*, p. 161  
**Schweiß**, m. III; 19 *b*, p. 189  
**den Schweiß streichen**, VI; 19 *b*,  
 p. 189  
**Schweiz**, f.; 10 *b*, p. 78  
**Schwester**, f. w.; 3 *b*, p. 29  
**See**, m. irr.; 7 *b*, p. 54  
**Seele**, f. w.; 14 *c*, p. 137  
**Segel**, n. I; 18 *b*, p. 183  
**sehen**, II; 4 *b*, p. 35  
**Schkraft**, f. IV; 10 *a*, p. 76  
**sehr**, 3 *a*, p. 28  
**Seidenschur**, f. IV; 16 *a*, p. 156  
**sein** (possessive adj.); 2, p. 22  
**seinerseits**, 17 *b*, p. 175  
**seit**, 9 *b*, p. 68  
**Seite**, f. w.; 18 *a*, p. 180  
**selbst**, 8 *a*, p. 61  
**selten**, 14 *c*, p. 137  
**setzen**, w.; 16 *b*, p. 161  
**sicher**, 18 *b*, p. 183  
**Sie**, 2, p. 22  
**Sieg**, m. III; 15 *a*, p. 146  
**Sigung**, f. w.; 15 *a*, p. 146  
**sobald**, 9 *b*, p. 68  
**soeben**, 10 *b*, p. 78  
**Sofa**, n. str. (sing.); Sofaß (plur.);  
 7 *a*, p. 53  
**sofort**, 13 *c*, p. 118  
**Sohn**, m. IV; 7 *b*, p. 54  
**Soldat'**, m. w.; 13 *a*, p. 111  
**soll**, 7 *a*, p. 53  
**Sommer**, m. I; 4 *b*, p. 35  
**sondern** (conj.); 13 *d*, p. 119  
**Sonne**, f. w.; 10 *b*, p. 78  
**Sonntag**, m. III; 10 *a*, p. 76  
**sonst**, 15 *b*, p. 148  
**Spalt**, m. III; 16 *b*, p. 161  
**spät**, 10 *b*, p. 78  
**Speise**, f. w.; 18 *c*, p. 183  
**Spiegel**, m. I; 7 *a*, p. 53  
**spielen**, w.; 2, p. 22  
**Spinnrad**, n. V; 12 *b*, p. 103  
**Spion'**, m. III; 14 *b*, p. 134  
**Spitze**, f. w.; 15 *b*, p. 148  
**an die Spitze treten**, II; 16 *a*,  
 p. 156  
**Sprache**, f. w.; 3 *b*, p. 29  
**sprechen**, II; 12 *c*, p. 104  
**Spruchwort**, n. V; 12 *c*, p. 104  
**in der Stadt**, IV; 2, p. 22  
**Stadtmauer**, f. w.; 15 *c*, p. 150  
**Stall**, m. IV; 8 *a*, p. 61  
**stand**, } pret. from stehen, irr.  
**standen**, } str.; 7 *a*, p. 53  
**stark**, 5 *a*, p. 39  
**stecken**, w.; 16 *b*, p. 161  
**steil**, 6 *b*, p. 48  
**stellen**, w.; 8 *b*, p. 62  
**Stener**, n. I; 18 *b*, p. 183  
**sticken**, w.; 12 *b*, p. 103  
**Stiefvater**, m. II; 18 *b*, p. 183  
**still**, 12 *b*, p. 103  
**Stille**, f.; 20 *a*, p. 197  
**in der Stille**, 20 *a*, p. 197  
**Stimme**, f. w.; 16 *b*, p. 161  
**Stirn**, f. w.; 12 *b*, p. 103  
**stolz**, 4 *a*, p. 34

stoßen (IV) auf . . . ; 17 *a*, p. 173  
 Straße, f. w.; 9 *a*, p. 67  
 Streit, m. III; 6 *a*, p. 47  
 streng, 13 *b*, p. 113  
 Student', m. w.; 16 *b*, p. 161  
 Stück, III; 10 *a*, p. 76  
 Stuhl, m. IV; 7 *a*, p. 53  
 Stunde, f. w.; 9 *b*, p. 68  
 auf die Stunde, 20 *a*, p. 197  
 stürzen, w.; 6 *a*, p. 47  
 suchen, w.; 6 *b*, p. 48  
 Summe, f. w.; 20 *a*, p. 197

## T.

Tag, m. III; 4 *a*, p. 34  
 bei Tage, 13 *c*, p. 118  
 Tal, n. V; 8 *a*, p. 61  
 Tanne, f. w.; 8 *a*, p. 61  
 Tanzsaal, m. IV; 14 *b*, p. 134  
 tapfersten, 10 *a*, p. 76  
 Tat, f. w.; 16 *a*, p. 156  
 tat (from tun, irr. str.); 16 *a*,  
 p. 156  
 täuschen, w.; 14 *b*, p. 134  
 Teich, m. III; 15 *c*, p. 150  
 Tempel, m. I; 8 *b*, p. 62  
 teuer, 5 *a*, p. 39  
 tief, 12 *b*, p. 103  
 Tier, n. III; 9 *a*, p. 67  
 Tisch, m. III; 5 *a*, p. 39  
 zu Tisch, 15 *b*, p. 148  
 Tod, m. str.; 15 *a*, p. 146  
 tot, 18 *a*, p. 180  
 Träne, f. w.; 16 *a*, p. 156  
 treiben, VI; 4 *a*, p. 34  
 tren, 13 *c*, p. 118  
 Treue, f.; 20 *c*, p. 199  
 trocken, 15 *a*, p. 146  
 Trompete, m. I; 15 *b*, p. 148  
 trotz (prep.), 17 *b*, p. 175  
 trotz alledem, 14 *b*, p. 134  
 Truppen (plur.), 17 *c*, p. 177  
 tüchtig, 17 *c*, p. 177  
 Tumult', m. III; 20 *a*, p. 197

tun, irr. str.; 4 *b*, p. 35  
 es tut uns leid, 12 *d*, p. 105  
 Tür, f. w.; 7 *a*, p. 53

## U.

über, 14 *b*, p. 134, and 16 *a*,  
 p. 156  
 überall, 6 *b*, p. 48  
 Übermacht, f.; 18 *a*, p. 180  
 überschwemmen, w.; 16 *b*, p. 161  
 überzeugen, w.; 17 *b*, p. 175  
 Ufer, n. I; 7 *b*, p. 54  
 unbedeutend, 20 *c*, p. 198  
 und, 3 *b*, p. 29  
 unentschieden, 19 *a*, p. 187  
 Unfall, m. I; 16 *c*, p. 167  
 ungeduldig, 12 *d*, p. 105  
 Unglück, n. str.; 15 *b*, p. 148  
 unglücklich, 10 *a*, p. 76  
 unheilbar, 10 *b*, p. 78  
 auf der Universität, 8 *b*, p. 62  
 uns, 3 *b*, p. 29  
 unser, 2, p. 22  
 Unsinn, m. str.; 20 *c*, p. 199  
 unter (prep.); 4 *a*, p. 34  
 Unterricht, m. str.; 14 *b*, p. 134  
 Unwahrheit, f. w. 14 *b*, p. 129

## V.

Vater, m. II; 2, p. 22  
 Vaterland, n. V; 15 *a*, p. 146  
 Vaterstadt, f. IV; 17 *c*, p. 177  
 sich verändern, w.; 8 *a*, p. 60  
 verbergen, II; 16 *c*, p. 167  
 verbieten, V; 18 *c*, p. 183  
 verbinden, III; 17 *a*, p. 173  
 Verbrechen, n. I; 20 *c*, p. 199  
 verbrennen, irr. w.; 16 *a*, p. 156  
 verdächtig, 16 *a*, p. 156  
 verbrieft, 20 *a*, p. 197  
 verfallen, I; 14 *c*, p. 137  
 vergeben, II; 16 *a*, p. 156  
 vergebens, 6 *b*, p. 48

vergessen, II; 10 *b*, p. 78  
 vergießen, V; 18 *a*, p. 180  
 Vergnügen, n. str.; 13 *d*, p. 119  
 das Vergnügen machen, 13 *d*,  
 p. 119  
 Verhältnis, n. III; 16 *b*, p. 161  
 verkaufen, w.; 10 *a*, p. 76  
 verkennen, irr. w.; 13 *c*, p. 118  
 verklären, w.; 20 *c*, p. 199  
 Verlangen, n. str.; 4 *a*, p. 34  
 verlangen, w.; 20 *a*, p. 197  
 verlassen, I; 16 *c*, p. 167  
 verloren, (past part. of verlieren,  
 V); 10 *a*, p. 76  
 Verrat, m. str.; 16 *b*, p. 161  
 verraten, I; 15 *a*, p. 146  
 Verräter, m. I; 15 *a*, p. 146  
 verschaffen, w.; 15 *b*, p. 148  
 verschieben, 9 *a*, p. 67  
 verschwenden, w. 13 *b*, p. 113  
 verschwinden, III; 17 *c*, p. 177  
 versichern, w.; 20 *a*, p. 197  
 Versprechen, n. str.; 14 *b*, p. 134  
 Versprechung, f. w.; 14 *b*, p. 134  
 Verstand, m. str.; 14 *c*, p. 137  
 verstecken, w.; 8 *b*, p. 62  
 Vertrauen, n. str.; 14 *b*, p. 134  
 verwahren, w.; 20 *b*, p. 198  
 verweilen, w.; 4 *b*, p. 35  
 Verwirrung, f. w.; 20 *a*, p. 197  
 verwunden, w.; 19 *a*, p. 187  
 verzeihen, VI; 19 *a*, p. 187  
 Verzeihung, f.; 18 *c*, p. 183  
 um Verzeihung bitten, 18 *c*, p. 183  
 viel(e), 3 *a*, p. 28  
 wie viel(e), 3 *a*, p. 28  
 vielleicht, 4 *b*, p. 35  
 vier, 9 *b*, p. 68  
 Vöglein, n. I; 18 *a*, p. 180  
 voll, 13 *a*, p. 111  
 vollstrecken, w.; 20 *b*, p. 198  
 von, 3 *a*, p. 28 and 5 *a*, p. 39  
 vor, 6 *a*, p. 47  
 vorgestern, 5 *a*, p. 39  
 vorher, 16 *b*, p. 161

Vormittag, m. III; 16 *c*, p. 167  
 Vorfall, m. II; 20 *b*, p. 199  
 Vorschlag, m. IV; 15 *a*, p. 146  
 vorsetzen, w.; 18 *c*, p. 183  
 versprechen (II) bei . . . , 16 *b*,  
 p. 161  
 vorüber (adv.), 18 *a*, p. 180  
 Vorwand, m. IV; 16 *c*, p. 167

### W.

Wache, f. w.; 20 *b*, p. 199  
 Wassen (plur. of Wasse, f. w.); 6  
*a*, p. 47  
 sich wagen, w.; 7 *a*, p. 53  
 während (prep.), 4 *b*, p. 35  
 Wahrheit, f. w.; 12 *c*, p. 104  
 Wald, m. V; 18 *a*, p. 180  
 wann, 4 *b*, p. 35  
 wäre, 7 *a*, p. 53  
 wärmer, 3 *a*, p. 28  
 warten, w.; 11 *a*, p. 90  
 warum, 13 *c*, p. 118  
 was, 2, p. 22.  
 Wasser, n. I; 16 *b*, p. 161  
 wegen, 7 *a*, p. 53  
 weggehen, irr. str.; 20 *b*, p. 199  
 wegkommen, IV; 20 *a*, p. 197  
 Weihnacht(en), f.; 12 *b*, p. 103  
 weil, 15 *a*, p. 146  
 weiter (adv.), 14 *c*, p. 137  
 Welle, f. w.; 18 *b*, p. 183  
 sich wenden, irr. w.; 13 *c*, p. 110  
 wenig, 3 *a*, p. 28  
 wer, 4 *a*, p. 34  
 Wette, f. w.; 19 *a*, p. 187  
 Wetter, n. I; 4 *b*, p. 35  
 wichtig, 13 *a*, p. 111  
 wie, 4 *a*, p. 34  
 wieder, 3 *b*, p. 29  
 wiederkommen, IV; 20 *b*, p. 199  
 Wiese, f. w.; 9 *a*, p. 67  
 Willkommen, m. or n. st.; 12 *a*,  
 p. 102  
 Wind, m. III; 15 *c*, p. 150



Winter, m. I; 4 *b*, p. 35  
 Winterluft, f. IV; 12 *b*, p. 103  
 wirklich, 14 *b*, p. 134  
 Wirtshaus, n. V; 14 *b*, p. 134  
 wissen, 10 *a*, p. 76  
 Wis, m. III; 19 *a*, p. 187  
 Wige reißen, VI; 19 *a*, p. 187  
 wo, 2, p. 22  
 Woche, f. w.; 9 *a*, p. 67  
 Woge, f. w.; 18 *b*, p. 183  
 wogen, w.; 18 *b*, p. 183  
 wohnen, w.; 2, p. 22  
 Wohnung, f. w.; 12 *b*, p. 103  
 Wolf, m. IV; 9 *a*, p. 67  
 Wolke, f. w.; 17 *a*, p. 173  
 wollte, } 2, p. 22  
 wollten, }  
 Wort, n. V; 7 *b*, p. 54  
 Wunde, f. w.; 16 *c*, p. 167  
 wünschen, w.; 3 *a*, p. 28  
 Würfel, m. I; 15 *a*, p. 146

## 3.

zehn, 12 *b*, p. 103  
 Zeichen, n. I; 20 *b*, p. 199  
 zum Zeichen, 20 *b*, p. 199  
 zeigen, w.; 2, p. 22  
 Zeile, f. w.; 9 *b*, p. 68  
 Zeit, f. w.; 4 *b*, p. 35  
 zeitig, 20 *a*, p. 197

Zeitung, f. w.; 9 *b*, p. 68  
 Zelt, n. III; 13 *a*, p. 111  
 zerbrechen, II; 16 *c*, p. 167  
 zerhauen, IV; 17 *c*, p. 177  
 zer schlagen, I; 17 *c*, p. 177  
 zerstieben, V; 18 *a*, p. 180  
 Zeuge, m. w.; 16 *a*, p. 156  
 ziehen, V; 18 *a*, p. 180  
 Ziel, n. III; 6 *b*, p. 48  
 Zimmer, n. I; 4 *a*, p. 34  
 Zimmermeister, m. I; 4 *a*, p. 34  
 zittern, w.; 6 *b*, p. 48  
 zornig, 12 *c*, p. 104  
 zu, 3 *a*, p. 28 and 15 *c*, p. 150  
 zueilen, w.; 18 *b*, p. 183  
 zuerst, 16 *c*, p. 167  
 Zug, m. IV; 15 *b*, p. 148  
 Zugang, m. IV; 20 *b*, p. 199  
 zukommen, IV; 16 *c*, p. 167  
 zurück (adv.); 15 *a*, p. 146  
 zurückkam (pret. of zurückkommen,  
 IV); 8 *a*, p. 61  
 zurückkehren, w.; 17 *a*, p. 173  
 zusammenbringen, irr. w.; 20 *a*,  
 p. 197  
 zwanzig, 8 *a*, p. 61  
 Zweck, m. III; 11 *a*, p. 90  
 zweifelhaft, 15 *a*, p. 146  
 zweifeln, w.; 14 *a*, p. 129  
 Zweig, m. III; 15 *b*, p. 148  
 das zweitemal, 20 *a*, p. 197  
 zwei Uhr, 4 *b*, p. 35

# PART II

## LESSON XXI

### INSEPARABLE VERBS

**231.** There are two classes of compound verbs, separable and inseparable.

#### Inseparable Verbs.

**232.** The inseparable prefixes are: *be*, *ent* (*emp*), *er*, *ge*, *ver* and *zer*; besides *hinter*, *behind*; *wider*, *against*; *miß*, *amiss*, and *voll*, *fully*.

1. The prefix *ent* changes to *emp* before *f*; *empfangen*, *receive*; *empfehlen*, *recommend*; *empfinden*, *feel*.

**233.** Inseparable verbs are conjugated like simple verbs, except that they never take the prefix *ge* before the past participle.

2. Thus an inseparable verb may be of the regular **weak conjugation**: *befuchen*, *befuchte*, *befucht*, *visit*; or of the irregular weak: *erkennen*, *erkannte*, *erkannt*, *recognize*; or of the **strong conjugation**: *entspringen*, *entsprang*, *entsprungen*, *run away*; or of the irregular strong: *vergehen*, *verging*, *vergangen*, *pass away*.

2. However, an inseparable verb may take the auxiliary *sein* for its past compound tenses, while the simple verb takes *haben*, or vice versa: *schlafen*, *ich habe geschlafen*, *sleep*; *entschlafen*, *er ist entschlafen*, *fall asleep*, *expire*; *kommen*, *wir sind gekommen*, *come*; *bekommen*, *wir haben bekommen*, *get, obtain*.

This question depends on the **meaning** of the compound verb; cf. 143-146.

**234.** With inseparable verbs, the accent rests on the verb, **not** on the prefix: *entge'hen*, *entging'*, *entgang'en*, *escape*.

1. The inseparable prefixes *be*, *ent* (*emp*), *er*, *ge*, *ver*, *zer* and *miß* never occur as independent words.

They had originally a distinct signification. For practical purposes, it will be sufficient to give their most common meanings in present usage when they are in composition with simple verbs (or with nouns and adjectives).

**235. Be** mainly changes intransitive verbs to transitives by adding the meaning of *about, upon, at, over* and the like: *belächeln, ridicule, laugh at* (*lachen, laugh*); *beweinen, deplore, cry over* (*weinen, cry*); *befingen, sing about* (*singen, sing*); *betreten, tread or walk upon* (*treten, tread, step*); *bekämpfen, combat* (*kämpfen, fight*).

NOTE 1. Sometimes *be* merely emphasizes the meaning of the simple verb: *drängen, bebrängen, crowd*; *beset, harass*; *trügen, betrügen, cheat*; *entice, seduce*; *freien, befreien, free*; *liberate, rid*.

NOTE 2. A few verbs compounded with *be* occur chiefly as reflexive verbs; remember especially the conversational *sich befinden* (*find one's self*) *be, do* (in regard to health): *wie befinden Sie sich, how do you do?*

**236. Ent** mainly denotes separation, deprivation, occasionally origin: *entfliehen, flee or run away from*; *entfremden, estrange* (*fremd, strange*); *entfernen, remove* (*fern, far*); *entstehen, come into existence, originate*.

NOTE. Sometimes *ent* denotes the opposite meaning of the simple verb: *entweihen, desecrate* (*weihen, consecrate*); *entehren, dishonor* (*ehren, honor*).

**237. Er** denotes the attainment of a purpose expressed by the simple verb: *erringen, obtain by force, carry off* (*ringen, wrestle*); *erbeuten, capture, gain or get as booty* (*Beute, booty*); *erzwingen, extort* (*zwingen, compel*).

NOTE 1. Quite often *er* denotes the transition into another condition or state: *erblassen, grow pale* (*bläß, pale*); *erstarken, grow strong* (*stark, strong*).

NOTE 2. Its primitive meaning of *out, from, forth* is quite apparent in verbs like: *erweden, awaken*; *erforschen, search out, investigate*; *erziehen, educate, bring up*.

**238. Ge** implies so many intangible shades of meaning in composition with verbs, etc., that they cannot be classified.

**239. Ver** denotes:

a. *through, out and out, to the very end*: *vergeben, forgive*; *verschlafen, sleep away or off*; *verlieren, lose*; *verlaufen, elapse* (of time); *vergehen, pass away*.

**b. wrong, loss, waste, destruction, also mistake :** *verführen, lead astray, mislead, corrupt; verbrauchen, wear out, consume; vernichten, annihilate; verschneiden, cut wrong; verlegen, mislay; verschwenden, waste, squander.*

**c. transition :** *verpflanzen, transplant; versetzen, displace; negation of the action of the simple verb: verachten, despise (achten, esteem); verschmerzen, cease feeling pain (schmerzen, pain, grieve).*

**240.** *zer* denotes *asunder, in part, in fragments, etc.*: *zerfallen, fall to pieces; zerpfücken, pluck to pieces; zertrümmern, shiver, wreck; zerschmettern, shatter, smash to pieces.*

**241.** It is evident from 233 that the inflection of **inseparable verbs** can present no difficulty to the student after he has mastered the conjugation of **simple weak** and **strong verbs**. Yet for the sake of convenience, the paradigms of *besuchen* and *verraten* will be given.

**242.** I. *besuchen, besuchte, besucht, visit.*

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
PRESENT		PRESENT	
Singular		Singular	
1. ich besuche		ich besuche	
2. du besuchst		du besuchest	
3. er besucht		er besuche	
Plural		Plural	
1. wir besuchen		wir besuchen	
2. ihr besucht		ihr besuchet	
3. sie besuchen		sie besuchen	
PRETERIT		PRETERIT	
Singular		Singular	
1. ich besuchte, etc.		ich besuchte, etc.	
PERFECT		PERFECT	
1. ich habe besucht, etc.		ich habe besucht, etc.	
PLUPERFECT		PLUPERFECT	
1. ich hatte besucht, etc.		ich hätte besucht, etc.	
FUTURE		FUTURE	
1. ich werde besuchen, etc.		ich werde besuchen, etc.	

## FUTURE PERFECT

1. ich werde besucht haben, etc.    ich werde besucht haben, etc.

## CONDITIONAL PRESENT

1. ich würde besuchen, etc

## CONDITIONAL PAST

1. würde besucht haben, etc.

## IMPERATIVE

2. besuche, etc.

## INFINITIVE

## PRESENT

besuchen

## PERFECT

besucht (zu) haben

## PARTICIPLE

besuchend

## PAST

besucht

2. verraten, verriet, verraten, *betray*.

## INDICATIVE

## Singular

1. ich verrate  
2. du verrätst  
3. er verrät \*

## Plural

1. wir verraten  
2. ihr verratet  
3. sie verraten

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

## Singular

- ich verrate  
du verrat e st  
er verrat e

## Plural

- wir verraten  
ihr verratet  
sie verraten

## PRETERIT

## Singular

1. ich verriet, etc.

## Singular

- ich verriet e

## PERFECT

1. ich habe verraten, etc.

## IMPERATIVE

2. verrate, etc.

---

\* Cf. 184, 1, and 185, 1.

**243.** 1. The past participle is exactly like the infinitive in form :

*a.* When the verb is inseparable, because then the past participle does not have the prefix *ge* ;

*b.* When it is **at the same time** of the **strong** conjugation, because then the past participle has the same ending (*en*) as the infinitive ; and

*c.* When **at the same time** the vowels of the infinitive and past participle are alike.

Examples :

<b>erschlagen,</b>	<b>erschlug,</b>	<b>erschlagen,</b>	<i>slay</i>
<b>vergeben,</b>	<b>vergab,</b>	<b>vergeben,</b>	<i>forgive</i>
<b>vergessen,</b>	<b>vergaß,</b>	<b>vergessen,</b>	<i>forget</i>
<b>verlaufen,</b>	<b>verlief,</b>	<b>verlaufen,</b>	<i>elapse, run away</i>
<b>berufen,</b>	<b>berief,</b>	<b>berufen,</b>	<i>convoke</i>

2. The past participle is exactly like the third person singular, present indicative :

*a.* When the verb is inseparable, because then the past participle does not take the prefix *ge*.

*b.* When it is **at the same time** of the **weak** conjugation, because then the past participle has the same ending (*t* or *et*) as the third person singular, present indicative.

Examples :

<b>gewähren,</b>	<i>afford ;</i>	<b>er gewährt ;</b>	<b>p.p. gewährt</b>
<b>verstecken,</b>	<i>hide ;</i>	<b>er versteckt ;</b>	<b>p.p. versteckt</b>
<b>berühren,</b>	<i>touch ;</i>	<b>er berührt ;</b>	<b>p.p. berührt</b>
<b>entkleiden,</b>	<i>undress ;</i>	<b>er entkleidet ;</b>	<b>p.p. entkleidet</b>

3. The past participle of a **simple** verb may be the same in form as that of a compound with the **inseparable** prefix *ge* :

<b>fallen,</b>	<b>fiel,</b>	<b>gefallen,</b>	<i>fall</i>
<b>gefallen,</b>	<b>gefiel,</b>	<b>gefallen,</b>	<i>please</i>
<b>hören,</b>	<b>hörte,</b>	<b>gehört,</b>	<i>hear</i>
<b>gehören,</b>	<b>gehörte,</b>	<b>gehört,</b>	<i>belong</i>

## TRANSLATION 21 a

NOTE. Henceforth, no Vocabularies will precede the Exercises for translation. The **new** words are to be looked for in the **German-English** Vocabulary (pp. 341 ff.). In the Exercises for translation, these new words are *in bold-face type*; the others have occurred before and are found in the **German Vocabulary** (pp. 201-214).

A. 1. **Zerfallen**<sup>1</sup> ist jetzt die alte **Burg**, mit **Trümmern** bedeckt **ragt** der Berg hoch in die Luft. 2. Zur<sup>2</sup> Zeit, da unsere Geschichte beginnt, **trug**<sup>3</sup> der Berg schon **Turm** und **Manern**, es war eine starke **Burg**. Dort hatte der Herzog von Schwaben (Swabia) **gehaust**. 3. Er war ein fester Degen gewesen; die Feinde **zerstoben**<sup>3</sup> vor seiner **mächtigen** Faust. 4. **Manchen**<sup>4</sup> **Kriegszug** hatte er für seinen Kaiser getan (226) und **dabei** gab<sup>5</sup> es **natürlich** immer Arbeit. 5. **Wenn** es in **Italien** (Italy) **ruhig** war, **begannen**<sup>3</sup> die **Normänner** (Normans) und wenn die<sup>6</sup> **geworfen**<sup>7</sup> waren, kamen die Ungarn (Hungarians) **geritten**<sup>8</sup> und **zerstörten** das Land. 6. **So** war der Herzog seit Jahren mehr im **Sattel** als im **Lehnstuhl** **gesehen**.<sup>9</sup> In **hohem** **Alter**, nach einer **kriegerischen** **Laufbahn** **ohnegleichen**, ward<sup>10</sup> er zu seinen Vätern **versammelt**. 7. Die **Wittwe** **begrub**<sup>3</sup> ihn in der **Gruft** seiner Ahnen<sup>11</sup> und **errichtete** ihm von **grauem** **Sandstein** ein **Grabmal**.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. 240 and 243, 1. <sup>2</sup> Cf. 57, 2 a. <sup>3</sup> Cf. Appendix II, p. 334. <sup>4</sup> Cf. Exercise 3, 2, p. 26. <sup>5</sup> Cf. Exercise 16, I, 1, p. 155. <sup>6</sup> Cf. Exercise 13, II, 4, p. 117. <sup>7</sup> Cf. Appendix III, p. 336. <sup>8</sup> Cf. Exercise 18, 4, p. 180 and Appendix III, p. 336. <sup>9</sup> Cf. Appendix III, p. 336. <sup>10</sup> Cf. Exercise 9, 2, p. 66. <sup>11</sup> Cf. 106, 2.

B. 1. High on the mountain (dative) arose the castles of the old knights (Ritter). 2. Ruins cover the mountain now.<sup>1</sup> 3. The strong walls and towers fell to pieces at the time [when] the war (Krieg, m.) began. 4. The powerful duke went (ziehen) with his emperor to (nach) Italy, where he engaged in many military expeditions for him and destroyed

the cities of the land. 5. He had always been in the saddle, but in his old age, when (nachdem) he had ended (beendigen) his warlike career, he <sup>2</sup> assembled his vassals <sup>3</sup> in the hall of the knights (Rittersaal, *m.*) and sat quietly in his armchair. 6. He was buried in the churchyard (Kirchhof, *m.*), where a <sup>4</sup> tomb was erected for him by his widow.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Exercise 16, I, 3, p. 155. <sup>2</sup> Cf. Exercise 4, 3, Note, p. 33. <sup>3</sup> Cf. Mann in 134. <sup>4</sup> Order of words: *to him by his widow a tomb.*

C. 1. Das Böglein entwischte durch <sup>1</sup> einen Spalt am <sup>2</sup> Fenster, bald war es verschwunden.<sup>3</sup> 2. Ihr seid mir im (in a) Traum erschienen,<sup>3</sup> sagte der Prinz,<sup>4</sup> und viel Glück hatte ich von euch erhofft. 3. Gefährliche Abenteuer hatten die Ritter auf ihren Kreuzzügen bestanden (225); erst nach vielen Jahren kamen <sup>5</sup> sie wieder in die alte Heimat. 4. Da fanden <sup>5</sup> sie, daß ihre Burgen zerstört waren; ihre treuen Mannen<sup>6</sup> hatten den Tod von Feindes Hand erlitten.<sup>3</sup> 5. Die dummen Jungen hatten die ganze Nacht im Spielsaal verbracht und beinahe all ihr Geld verloren,<sup>3</sup> das sie mühsam in der Stadt erworben<sup>3</sup> hatten. 6. Niemand entging (224) seinem Spotte; sogar seine besten Freunde bekamen <sup>5</sup> etwas zu hören, das <sup>7</sup> ihnen gar nicht gefiel.<sup>5</sup> 7. Das<sup>8</sup> könnte<sup>9</sup> man ihm am Ende noch verzeihen, wenn er nur nicht jedermann so schändlich betrogen<sup>3</sup> hätte. 8. Unfre Großmutter hatte die ganze Geschichte den Kindern wieder erzählt.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Exercise 6, 5, p. 46. <sup>2</sup> Cf. 57, 2. <sup>3</sup> Cf. Appendix III, p. 336. <sup>4</sup> Cf. 106, 2. <sup>5</sup> Cf. Appendix II, p. 334. <sup>6</sup> Cf. 134. <sup>7</sup> Cf. Exercise 13, II, 5, p. 117. <sup>8</sup> Cf. Exercise 13, II, 4, p. 117. <sup>9</sup> Cf. Exercise, II, 4, p. 89.

## LESSON XXII

### SEPARABLE VERBS

**244.** 1. Verbs compounded with other prefixes than those given in 232 are called separable verbs.

NOTE. A small number of prefixes (durch, über, um, unter and wieder) may, according to circumstances, be separable or inseparable; cf. Lesson XXIII



2. There are many separable prefixes ; all of them occur as independent words. Some are prepositions, others are adverbs.

NOTE. There is no need of committing the **separable** prefixes to memory. After eliminating the inseparable prefixes of 232, and bearing in mind that the five prefixes given in the Note to 244, 1 may be separable or inseparable, we know that all others **must** be separable. For the sake of convenience, however, the **most common separable prefixes** are given in 245, below.

### 245. Separable Prefixes :

ab, <i>off, away, down</i>	her, <i>hither, toward</i> (the speaker)
an, <i>at, on</i>	hin, <i>thither, away</i> (from the speaker)
auf, <i>on, upon, up</i>	mit, <i>with, along</i>
aus, <i>out, from, away</i>	nach, <i>after, to</i>
bei, <i>beside, by, with</i>	nieder, <i>(neath), down</i>
da or dar, <i>there</i>	ob, <i>over, above</i>
ein, <i>in, into</i>	vor, <i>before</i>
empor, <i>up, on high</i>	weg, <i>away</i>
entzwei, <i>(in twain), asunder,</i> <i>apart, in two</i>	zu, <i>to</i>
fort, <i>forth, off, away</i>	zurück, <i>back, again</i>
heim, <i>home</i>	zusammen, <i>together</i>

246. The separable prefix has the chief accent :

auf'stehen, *stand up, arise*, but  
 ver'stehen, *understand*, cf. 234.

247. Separable verbs are inflected like simple verbs, except :

1. In the simple tenses (Present and Preterit) in the **normal and inverted order**, and in the imperative, the prefix is detached from its verb and placed at the end of the clause : ich **stand** gestern sehr früh **auf**, *I arose very early yesterday* ; mir **kam** die Sache sonderbar **vor**, *to me the matter seemed strange* ; geh um acht Uhr **fort**, *go away at eight o'clock*.

2. The sign of the past participle „ge“ comes **between** the separable prefix and the verb, all three elements forming but one word : aus'gekauft, from aus'laufen ; auf'gestanden, from auf'stehen ; fort'geblieben, from fort'bleiben.

3. The sign of the infinitive „zu," whenever used, comes **between** the separable prefix and the verb, the three elements forming but **one** word: *weg'zugehen*, from *weg'gehen*; *zu'zubereiten*, from *zu'bereiten*, *prepare for*; *aus'zufahren*, *drive out*, from *aus'fahren*.

**248.** The prefix remains before the verb, forming **one** word with it :

1. In the present participle and, of course, in the infinitive (without „zu") : *auf'gehend*, *auf'gehen*; *vor'stehend*, *vor'stehen*.

2. In the **transposed** order with the present and preterit : *als er heute morgen aufstand*, *when he got up this morning*; *weil wir zu spät kamen* (**not** *kamen an*), *because we arrived too late*.

NOTE. Remember (Exercise 4, 1-3, p. 33) that in the **compound** tenses in the **transposed** order the **auxiliary verb** comes **last**, the non-personal part of the verb (infinitive or past participle) **last but one**: *obgleich er wieder eingeschlafen war*, *although he had fallen asleep again*; *während wir ihn mit Vergnügen einladen werden*, *while we shall invite him with pleasure*.

**249.** 1. *ausliefern*, *lieferte*. . . *aus*, *ausgeliefert*, *hand over*, *deliver up*.

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
PRESENT		PRESENT	
Singular		Singular	
1. ich liefre aus		ich lief(e)re aus	
2. du lieferst aus		du lief(e)rest aus	
3. er liefert aus		er lief(e)re aus	
Plural		Plural	
1. wir liefern aus		wir liefern aus	
2. ihr liefert aus		ihr liefert aus	
3. sie liefern aus		sie liefern aus	
PRETERIT		PRETERIT	
Singular		Singular	
1. ich lieferte aus, etc.		ich lieferte aus, etc.	
PERFECT		PERFECT	
1. ich habe ausgeliefert		ich habe ausgeliefert	
2. du hast " " etc.		du habest " " etc.	

## PLUPERFECT

1. ich hatte ausgeliefert, etc.      ich hätte ausgeliefert, etc.

## FUTURE

1. ich werde ausliefern      ich werde ausgeliefert  
 2. du wirst " etc.      du werdest " etc.

## FUTURE PERFECT

1. ich werde ausgeliefert haben      ich werde ausgeliefert haben  
 2. du wirst " " "      du werdest " " " etc.  
 etc.

## CONDITIONAL PRESENT

1. ich würde ausliefern, etc.

## CONDITIONAL PAST

1. ich würde ausgeliefert haben, etc.

## IMPERATIVE

2. liefre aus, etc.

## INFINITIVE

PRESENT	PERFECT
ausliefern, auszuliefern	ausgeliefert haben ausgeliefert zu haben

## PARTICIPLE

	PAST
ausliefernd	ausgeliefert

2. fortlaufen, lief . . . fort, fortgelaufen, *run away*.

## INDICATIVE

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## Singular

## PRESENT

## Singular

1. ich laufe . . . fort  
 2. du läufst (läufst) fort  
 3. er läuft (läuft) fort

- ich laufe fort  
 du laufest fort  
 er laufe fort

## Plural

## Plural

1. wir laufen fort  
 2. ihr lauft fort  
 3. sie laufen fort

- wir laufen fort  
 ihr lauset fort  
 sie laufen fort

## Singular

## PRETERIT

## Singular

- |                          |                        |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. ich lief fort         | ich liefste fort       |
| 2. du lieffst fort, etc. | du lieffest fort, etc. |

## PERFECT

- |                         |                        |
|-------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. ich bin fortgelaufen | ich seist fortgelaufen |
| 2. du bist " " etc.     | du seiest " " etc.     |

## PLUPERFECT

- |                               |                             |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. ich war fortgelaufen, etc. | ich wäre fortgelaufen, etc. |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|

## FUTURE

- |                               |                            |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. ich werde fortlaufen, etc. | ich werde fortlaufen, etc. |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------|

## FUTURE PERFECT

- |                                      |                                   |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. ich werde fortgelaufen sein, etc. | ich werde fortgelaufen sein, etc. |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|

## CONDITIONAL PRESENT

- |                               |
|-------------------------------|
| 1. ich würde fortlaufen, etc. |
|-------------------------------|

## CONDITIONAL PAST

- |                                      |
|--------------------------------------|
| 1. ich würde fortgelaufen sein, etc. |
|--------------------------------------|

## IMPERATIVE

- |                    |
|--------------------|
| 2. lauf fort, etc. |
|--------------------|

## INFINITIVE

## PRESENT

fortlaufen, fortzulaufen

## PERFECT

fortgelaufen sein  
fortgelaufen zu sein

## PARTICIPLE

fortlaufend

fortgelaufen

## TRANSLATION 22 a

A. 1. Nach den ersten trüben Tagen im<sup>1</sup> Frühling war endlich ein sehr herrlicher Morgen über<sup>2</sup> der Reichsstadt Ulm<sup>3</sup> aufgegangen (224). 2. Die große breite Straße stand (225) an diesem Morgen voll von Menschen, die sich wie eine Mauer an<sup>2</sup>

den beiden Seiten der Häuser hinzogen.<sup>4</sup> 3. Noch (still) **dichter** aber war das **Gedränge** da, wo die Straße auf<sup>2</sup> den **Platz** vor dem **Rathaus** **einbiegt**. 4. Dort hatten **sich** die **Zünfte** **aufgestellt**. 5. Bald darauf kam ein Brief an<sup>2</sup> den jungen Ritter an, worin (in which) ihm sein **Onkel** die Frage **vorlegte**, ob er jetzt, nach vier Jahren, noch nicht **gelehrt** genug sei.<sup>5</sup> 6. Vor **Beginn** des **Mahles** hatte ihm sein **väterlicher** Freund einen **Sitz** gezeigt, den er ihm als (as) einen ganz **vorzüglichen** **anpries**.<sup>6</sup> 7. „**Ich** hätte<sup>7</sup> **Euch**,“ sagte der alte Herr, „zu (near) den **vornehmen** Rittern setzen können,<sup>7</sup> aber in **solcher** Gesellschaft kann man den **Hunger** nicht mit **gehöriger** **Ruhe** stillen.“

<sup>1</sup> Cf. 57, 2 and 3. <sup>2</sup> Cf. Exercise 7, 3, p. 52. <sup>3</sup> die Reichsstadt Ulm, *the imperial city of Ulm*, now a town in the kingdom of Wirtemberg. <sup>4</sup> Cf. 230, 3. <sup>5</sup> Cf. Exercise 13, II, 3, p. 116. <sup>6</sup> Cf. Appendix II, p. 334. <sup>7</sup> Cf. 168, 1, and Exercise 11, 5, p. 90.

B. 1. The sun (Sonne, f.) was rising over the magnificent city; the gloomy days had (144) at last disappeared (verschwinden). 2. It was on<sup>1</sup> a beautiful morning in spring when (als) a great crowd (Menge, f.) of people drew up (sich<sup>2</sup> aufstellen) on the broad streets near (bei) the city hall. 3. The walls of the city extended for<sup>3</sup> two miles. 4. One of the broad streets turned (bent) into (auf) the large square where the guilds of the various (verschieden) trades (Gewerbe, n.) were assembled (versammelt). 5. He would have become<sup>4</sup> learned enough, if he had imitated (nachahmen) the example (Beispiel, n.) of the old knight, his uncle. 6. It was long (lang) after the beginning of the banquet that the most distinguished knights entered (eintreten in) the hall (Saal, m.).

<sup>1</sup> Omit preposition and put *a beautiful morning* in the genitive. <sup>2</sup> Put sich after als. <sup>3</sup> Omit preposition and add lang after *two miles*. <sup>4</sup> Cf. 170, 8.

C. 1. Als der junge Maler nach der Gegend im Walde hinschaute, kam<sup>1</sup> es ihm vor, als ob ein **dichter** Rauch über jenem<sup>2</sup>

Teile des Tales läge.<sup>3</sup> 2. Das junge Mädchen (girl) stand plötzlich auf und sagte: ich muß fort<sup>4</sup> — der Tag ist so kurz und man erwartet mich daheim. 3. Das seltsame Benehmen der Bauern<sup>5</sup> fiel<sup>6</sup> dem Fremden auf; er wußte (172) nicht, was er davon denken sollte. 4. Aber heute bist du lang ausgeblieben,<sup>7</sup> mein alter Freund; wir haben dich schon seit mehreren Stunden erwartet. 5. Obgleich wir die Gewohnheit des deutschen Bauers<sup>8</sup> kannten (161), der sich in seinem Zimmer vor jeder frischen Luft abschließt und selbst (even) im Sommer nicht selten einheizt, fiel<sup>6</sup> es uns auf. 6. So ernst<sup>8</sup> und schweigsam der Bauer vorher gewesen,<sup>9</sup> so (as) lustig wurde er jetzt und sein Gast konnte sich dem Einflusse dieses seltsamen Mannes nicht entziehen. 7. Plötzlich ward es still im großen Zimmer, und als der junge Herr erstaunt auf seinen Wirt blickte, sah er, wie dieser mit seinem Violinbogen nach dem Fenster deutete. 8. Von dort sah man, wie draußen auf der Straße ein Sarg vorbeigebracht<sup>7</sup> wurde.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Exercise 4, 3, Note, p. 33. <sup>2</sup> Cf. Exercise 3, 2, p. 26. <sup>3</sup> Cf. 228, 1, and Appendix II, p. 334. <sup>4</sup> Cf. Exercise 14, III, p. 136. <sup>5</sup> Cf. 127. <sup>6</sup> Cf. Appendix II, p. 334. <sup>7</sup> Cf. Appendix III, p. 336. <sup>8</sup> Cf. Exercise 17, 6, p. 173. <sup>9</sup> Cf. Exercise 4, 3 a, p. 33.

## LESSON XXIII

### VERBS, SEPARABLE OR INSEPARABLE

**250.** As has been indicated above (244, 1, Note), the prepositions *durch*, *through*; *über*, *over*; *um*, *about*, *around*; *unter*, *under*, and the adverb *wieder*, *again*, may serve to form separable or inseparable verbs.

**251.** They are accented and inflected according to the rules given above (insep. verbs, cf. 234 and 242; sep. verbs, cf. 246 and 249).

**252.** When separable, the verb is used, **as a rule**, in the literal sense of the word; when inseparable, it **often** assumes a figurative meaning.

Examples :

1. wie'berholen, holte wieder, wiedergeholt, *bring back* ;  
wiederho'len, wiederhol'te, wiederholt', *repeat*.
2. um'gehen, ging um, umgegangen (intransitive), *go around*,  
*go out of one's way* ; (impersonal) *walk about* (of ghosts) : in  
dem alten Schloß geht es um, *the old castle is haunted*.  
umge'hen, umging', umgan'gen (transitive), *elude*, *evade*.
3. ü'bersetzen, setzte über, ü'bergesetzt, *set across* (a river, etc.).  
übersetz'en, übersetz'te, übersetzt', *translate*.

NOTE 1. The dictionary must, after all, be consulted in regard to the meaning of most verbs of this class. The same or nearly the same signification is sometimes expressed by either manner of composition. Again, the inseparable verb does not always convey a figurative meaning: er wurde ü'bergefahren, *he was taken across* (in der Fähre, *in the ferry*); er wurde überfa'hren, *he was run over* (by a carriage, etc.).

NOTE 2. Although in English there is nothing that can be said to correspond exactly to the German usage, we may refer here to phrases like: *set up and upset* ; *run over and overrun*, etc.

**253.** durch'dringen, drang durch, durch'gedrungen (intrans.), *crowd or press through* ; *carry out* (with the preposition mit).

## INDICATIVE

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

## Singular

## Singular

1. ich dringe durch
2. du dringst durch
3. er dringt durch, etc.

- ich dringe durch
- du dringest durch
- er dringe durch, etc.

## PRETERIT

1. ich drang durch, etc.

- ich dränge durch, etc.

## PERFECT

1. ich bin durch'gedrungen, etc.

- ich sei durch'gedrungen, etc.

## PLUPERFECT

1. ich war durch'gedrungen, etc.

- ich wäre durch'gedrungen, etc.

## FUTURE

1. *ich werde durch'dringen*      *ich werde durch'dringen, etc.*

## CONDITIONAL PAST

1. *ich würde durch'gedrungen sein*

## IMPERATIVE

2. *bringe durch*

## INFINITIVE

## PRESENT

*durch'dringen*  
(*durch'zudringen*)

## PERFECT

*durch'gedrungen sein*  
(*durch'gedrungen zu sein*)

## PARTICIPLE

## PAST

*durch'dringend*

*durch'gedrungen*

**254.** *durchbring'en, durchdrang', durchdrung'en, pierce, penetrate, permeate.*

## INDICATIVE

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

**Singular**

1. *ich durchbring'e*  
2. *du durchbringst'*  
3. *er durchbringt', etc.*

**Singular**

- ich durchbring'e*  
*du durchbring'est*  
*er durchbring'e*

## PRETERIT

1. *ich durchdrang', etc.*

*ich durchdräng'e, etc.*

## PERFECT

1. *ich habe durchdrung'en, etc.*      *ich habe durchdrung'en, etc.*

## FUTURE

1. *ich werde durchbring'en, etc.*      *ich werde durchbring'en, etc.*

## CONDITIONAL PAST

1. *ich würde durchdrung'en haben, etc.*

## IMPERATIVE

2. *durchbring'e*



## INFINITIVE

## PRESENT

durchbring'en  
(zu durchbring'en)

## PERFECT

durchbrung'en haben  
(durchbrung'en zu haben)

## PARTICIPLE

durchbring'end

durchbrung'en

## EXERCISE 23

USE OF *lassen*. — TRANSLATIONS

1. In a **literal** translation of *lassen*, *cause*, *order*, with an active infinitive dependent on it, change the latter to the **passive** infinitive: *er ließ ihn verhaften*, *he caused him to be arrested*.

a. A more idiomatic rendering is obtained by substituting the verb *have* for *cause*, and the past participle for the passive infinitive: *he had him arrested*; *er ließ sich ein Paar Schuhe machen*, (*he caused a pair of shoes to be made for himself*) *he had a pair of shoes made (for himself)*.

b. Be careful to put the past participle in English in its proper place: *he had made a pair of shoes*, *er hatte ein Paar Schuhe gemacht*, is very different in meaning from *he had a pair of shoes made*.

## REVIEW OF THE CONJUGATION OF COMPOUND VERBS.

## TRANSLATION 23 a

A. 1. Die Nacht, welche diesem **entscheidenden** Tag folgte, brachten der Herzog und seine **Begleiter** in einer **engen Schlucht** zu, die durch **Felsen**<sup>1</sup> und **Gesträuche** einen **sichern Versteck** gewährte. 2. Der Herzog hatte **beschlossen**,<sup>2</sup> hier zu **rasten**, um<sup>3</sup> dann, sobald der Tag **graute**, seine **Flucht** nach der Schweiz **fortzusetzen**. 3. „Ihr habt ihn **entfliehen lassen**,“ rief<sup>5</sup> der Oberst **zornig**, „ruft die **Wache** herbei; ich **lasse**<sup>6</sup> euch **aufhängen**.“ 4. „Also Ihr habt heute den Herzog **vorge stellt**,“ sagte er zu dem jungen Ritter, der still dieser **Scene** **zugesehen** hatte. 5. Die alte Magd **unterhielt**<sup>5</sup> den fremden Herrn mit **langen Reden** von (about) der **Haushaltung**. 6. Bitte, **wiederhole**,<sup>7</sup> was du **vorhin**

gesagt hast; ich habe dich nicht ganz verstanden. 7. Man sagt, in dem alten Hause ginge<sup>8</sup> es um,<sup>8</sup> aber ich glaube es nicht; die Leute im Dorfe erzählen allerlei dummes Zeug.<sup>9</sup> 8. Da der Advokat auf die scharfen Fragen des Richters nichts zu antworten fand, umging<sup>10</sup> er den ganzen Gegenstand.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. 125, Note 1. <sup>2</sup> Cf. Appendix III, p. 336. <sup>3</sup> Cf. Exercise 18, 3, p. 180. <sup>4</sup> Cf. 171; the meaning of lassen here is *permit, let, not cause or order*. <sup>5</sup> Cf. Appendix II, p. 334. <sup>6</sup> Cf. Exercise 23, 1 a, above. <sup>7</sup> Cf. 252, Example 1. <sup>8</sup> Cf. 252, Example 2, and Exercise 13, II, 3, p. 116. <sup>9</sup> dummes Zeug (*silly stuff*), *nonsense*. <sup>10</sup> Cf. 252, Example 2.

B. 1. The companions of the duke are said<sup>1</sup> to have passed<sup>2</sup> the following<sup>3</sup> night in the ravine which was surrounded (umgeben) with (von) steep (steil) rocks. 2. The duke continued his flight as soon as [the] night had approached (herannahen)<sup>4</sup>. 3. "He has fled," exclaimed the angry soldiers of the guard (watch); "whoever (wer) has<sup>5</sup> let him escape (entkommen) will<sup>6</sup> be shot (erschießen)." 4. I have never (nie) comprehended (begreifen) how it happened (geschehen) that you represented the duke. 5. The ladies (Dame) were very pleasantly (angenehm) entertained by the old servant-girl who had been so long in our family (Familie, f.). 6. The gentleman did not quite understand what she answered, although (obgleich) she repeated the same (dieselben) words (Wort)<sup>7</sup> that she had said before. 7. Please tell us what the people say about<sup>8</sup> the old house in the village. 8. They (man) relate all sorts of silly<sup>9</sup> stories (Geschichte, f.) about it (darüber). 9. We should<sup>10</sup> have evaded the whole subject, if<sup>11</sup> our lawyers had not advised (ermahnen) us to tell [to] the judges the real (rein) truth (Wahrheit).

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Exercise 14, II, 5 d, p. 133. <sup>2</sup> Cf. Exercise 11, 6, p. 90. <sup>3</sup> Cf. Exercise 13, II, 1, p. 116. <sup>4</sup> Cf. 144, 1. <sup>5</sup> Cf. 168, 2. <sup>6</sup> Use present for English future; cf. Exercise 5, 4, p. 38. <sup>7</sup> Cf. 134. <sup>8</sup> über (with accusative). <sup>9</sup> Cf. Exercise 17, 4, p. 173. <sup>10</sup> Cf. Exercise 11, 4, p. 89. <sup>11</sup> Order of words: *if us our lawyers*.

C. 1. **Holen**<sup>1</sup> Sie doch<sup>2</sup> die Bücher wieder,<sup>1</sup> die Sie unserm Freund vor ein paar Wochen **geliehen**<sup>3</sup> hatten. 2. Der **Minister** der königlichen Regierung ist mit seinem neuen **Plane** nicht durchgedrungen<sup>4</sup>; die Bürger in den großen Städten **widerstanden** allen seinen **Wünschen**, weil die **Ausführung** solcher Ideen zu viel Geld **erfordert** hätte.<sup>5</sup> 3. Die Feinde hatten endlich den **dichten** Wald trotz eines grausamen **Kugelregens** durchdrungen<sup>6</sup> und auch das erste Dorf auf dem steilen **Berge** **eingenommen**.<sup>3</sup> 4. Die Sache war<sup>7</sup> nicht zu umgehen,<sup>8</sup> obgleich der kommandierende Offizier wußte,<sup>9</sup> daß ihn die Spione **hintergingen**.<sup>10</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Cf. 252, Example 1. <sup>2</sup> Cf. Exercise 10, 1 a, p. 75. <sup>3</sup> Cf. Appendix III, p. 336. <sup>4</sup> Cf. 253. <sup>5</sup> Cf. Exercise 16, I, 2, p. 155. <sup>6</sup> Cf. 254. <sup>7</sup> Cf. Exercise 11, I, p. 89. <sup>8</sup> Cf. 252, Example 2. <sup>9</sup> Cf. 172. <sup>10</sup> The prefix *hinter* is always inseparable.

D. 1. Martin Luther,<sup>1</sup> sagt Heine,<sup>2</sup> gab<sup>3</sup> uns nicht bloß die Freiheit der **Bewegung**, sondern auch das **Mittel** der **Bewegung**; dem Geist gab er einen **Leib**. 2. Er gab dem Gedanken<sup>4</sup> auch das Wort. Er **schuf**<sup>3</sup> die deutsche Sprache. Dieses **geschah**, indem<sup>5</sup> er die Bibel übersehte. 3. Es ist gar nicht **gleichgültig**, von wem ein Buch überseht wird. 4. Gott (God) **verlieh**<sup>3</sup> dem **Übersetzer** der Bibel die **wundersame** Kraft aus einer toten Sprache, die **gleichsam** schon begraben<sup>6</sup> war, in eine andere Sprache zu übersezen, die noch [as yet] gar nicht **lebte**.

<sup>1</sup> Born in 1483, died in 1546. <sup>2</sup> The famous poet, Heinrich Heine, born in 1799, died in 1856. <sup>3</sup> Cf. Appendix II, p. 334. <sup>4</sup> Cf. 125. <sup>5</sup> *indem*, literally *while*. Render *indem* er ... übersehte by *through his translating of*. <sup>6</sup> Cf. Appendix III, p. 336.

## LESSON XXIV

### REFLEXIVE VERBS

**255. Reflexive verbs** are conjugated like other verbs; they may be of the strong or weak conjugation, simple or compound, separable or inseparable.

**256.** The immediate object in a reflexive verb is always a **pronoun**, representing the same person or thing as the subject.

1. With reflexive verbs, properly speaking, the object is always in the **accusative**: ich erinnere mich (*I remind myself*), *I remember*.

2. However, some verbs are used with a reflexive object in the **dative**: ich schmeichle mir, *I flatter myself*; ich denke mir, *I imagine*. They are sometimes called improper reflexives.

a. A few verbs may occur with the genitive: (die Chemie) spottet ihrer selbst, (*chemistry*) *mocks at itself*.

**257.** The reflexive pronouns of the first and second persons are the same as the personal; that of the third person is sich, for all genders, singular and plural, dative and accusative.

1. The personal pronouns were given in Exercise 5, 1, p. 37.

2. The reflexive pronouns are :

		<b>Singular</b>			
	<b>FIRST PERSON</b>	<b>SECOND PERSON</b>	<b>THIRD PERSON</b>		
			<b>MASC.</b>	<b>FEM.</b>	<b>NEUT.</b>
<b>Gen.</b>	meiner (mein)	deiner (dein)	seiner	ihrer	seiner
<b>Dat.</b>	mir	dir	sich	sich	sich
<b>Acc.</b>	mich	dich	sich	sich	sich
		<b>Plural</b>			
<b>Gen.</b>	unser	euer	ihrer	ihrer	ihrer
<b>Dat.</b>	uns	euch	sich	sich	sich
<b>Acc.</b>	uns	euch	sich	sich	sich

**258.** Reflexive verbs, whether proper or improper, take the auxiliary haben for their past compound tenses: ich habe mich erinnert, *I have remembered*; wir hatten uns nach Paris begeben, *we had betaken ourselves (gone) to Paris*; er würde sich seines Reichthums bedient haben, *he would have availed himself of his riches*; wir hatten uns geschmeichelt, *we had flattered ourselves*.

**259.** Thus, in the conjugation of reflexive verbs, there are only two new features to be observed :

1. The **necessary** connection of a reflexive pronoun with the verb.

2. The correct **position** of the reflexive pronoun in the different orders of words.

**260.** The reflexive pronoun is generally placed where any other personal pronoun would stand as object of the verb; cf. Exercise 15, 2, page 145: *sie gaben ihm die Ehre; sie gaben sich die Ehre.*

**261.** In the **normal** order, the reflexive pronoun is placed immediately after the inflected (personal) part of the verb (in the simple forms after the principal verb, in the compound forms after the auxiliary): *ich rettete mich, I saved myself; sie hätten sich gerettet, they might have saved themselves; wir würden uns dieses Mittels bedienen, we should avail ourselves of this means.*

**262.** In the inverted and transposed order, the reflexive pronoun, like any personal pronoun when the object of the verb, is placed **before** the subject, if the latter is a **noun** or a word used as a noun: *mit Vergnügen erinnerten sich diese Herren unserer alten Freundschaft, these gentlemen remembered (reminded themselves of) our old friendship with pleasure; mit Bedauern hatten sich die Meinigen dieses Mittels bedient, my people (family) had availed themselves of this means with regret; als sich diese Herren mit Vergnügen unserer alten Freundschaft erinnerten; nachdem sich die Meinigen mit Bedauern dieses Mittels bedient hatten.*

NOTE 1. Thus, in the inverted order, rule 261 holds good: reflexive pronoun after verb.

NOTE 2. In the transposed order, the application of rule 261 would be impossible, since the verb must stand at the end of the clause.

**263.** In the inverted and transposed order, the reflexive pronoun stands **after** the subject, if the latter is a **personal pronoun**: *mit Vergnügen erinnerten sie sich; mit Bedauern hatte sie sich dieses Mittels bedient; als sie sich erinnerten; nachdem sie sich . . . bedient hatten.*

**264.** A verb may be reflexive in one language, although its equivalent in meaning in another language is not, the idea

being expressed in some other way: *ich schäme mich* (*I shame myself*) *I am ashamed*; *ich fürchte mich vor . . .*, (*I frighten myself*) *I am afraid of . . .*

NOTE. Any transitive verb may be used reflexively, if the sense permits it.

**265.** Some verbs are exclusively reflexive: *ich befeige mich*, *I devote myself*; *ich finde mich ein*, *I appear, I arrive*; *ich sehne mich*, *I long*; *ich schäme mich*, *I am ashamed*; others are frequently used so: *ich bediene mich*, *I avail myself*; *ich freue mich*, *I rejoice (I gladden myself)*; *ich hüte mich vor*, *I protect myself from (I guard myself against)*; *ich erinnere mich*, *I remember (I remind myself)*.

**266.** Many reflexive verbs take, besides the reflexive pronoun, a secondary object in the genitive: *ich erbarmte mich seiner*, *I took pity on him*; *sie bemächtigten sich seines Gutes*, *they took possession of his estate*.

**267.** Some reflexive verbs with the reflexive pronoun in the dative (improper reflexives) take, besides that pronoun, a direct object in the accusative: *ich hatte mir Verschiedenes vorgestellt*, *I had imagined various things*; *ich hätte mir das denken können*, *I might have fancied (realized) that*. *Ich schmeichle mir*, *I flatter myself*, is intransitive.

**268.** The secondary object is sometimes expressed by a prepositional phrase: *wir hatten uns auf seine Großmut verlassen*, *we had relied on his generosity*; *sie hüteten sich vor seinen Nachstellungen*, *they protected themselves from (guarded themselves against) his pursuits (snares)*.

**269.** A German reflexive verb is often equivalent in meaning to the corresponding English intransitive, and much more frequently to the passive (285): *sie bewegten sich*, *they moved (themselves)*; *wir wandten uns gegen ihn*, *we turned (ourselves) towards him*; *ich beeile mich*, *I hasten (myself)*; *das Fenster öffnete sich eben*, *(the window opened itself just then) the window was opened just then*.

1. A few verbs have nearly the same meaning whether used intransitively or reflexively: *sie stritten* or *sie stritten sich mit dem Mann*, *they quarrelled with the man*.

**270.** The reflexive pronouns in the plural (*uns*, *euch*, *sich*), both in the dative and accusative, may be used with a reciprocal force, meaning then *one another*, *each other*: *wir schmeicheln uns*, *we flatter each other*; *sie betrügen sich*, *they deceive one another*.

1. Since *wir schmeicheln uns, sie betrügen sich*, etc., may also mean, *we flatter ourselves; they deceive themselves*, etc., the indeclinable *selbst* (or *selber*), *self*; is added when it is **necessary** to distinguish the purely reflexive forms from the reciprocal ones: *wir lieben uns selbst*, can only mean: *we love ourselves*; but *wir lieben uns* **may** also mean: *we love one another*; *sie loben sich selbst*, *they praise themselves*; *sie loben sich* **may** also mean: *they praise each other*.

2. *Selbst* may also be added to the reflexive pronoun to express particular emphasis: *er tötete sich selbst*, *he killed himself* (no one else).

**271.** In giving the principal parts of a reflexive verb, the pronoun of the third person, *sich*, is placed before the infinitive. This *sich*, *one's self*, is meant, of course, to represent also the other reflexive pronouns as they occur in the course of the verbal inflection: *sich loben*, *lobte sich*, *gelobt*, *praise one's self*.

**272.** 1. Example of a common reflexive verb (reflexive pronoun in the accusative), **weak** conjugation:

*sich retten, rettete sich, gerettet, save one's self.*

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
PRESENT		PRESENT	
Singular		Singular	
1. <i>ich rette mich</i>		<i>ich rette mich</i>	
2. <i>du rettetest dich</i>		<i>du rettetest dich</i>	
3. <i>er rettet sich</i>		<i>er rette sich</i>	
Plural		Plural	
1. <i>wir retten uns</i>		<i>wir retten uns</i>	
2. <i>ihr rettet euch</i>		<i>ihr rettet euch</i>	
3. <i>sie retten sich</i>		<i>sie retten sich</i>	
PRETERIT		PRETERIT	
Singular		Singular	
1. <i>ich rettete mich</i> , etc.		<i>ich rettete mich</i> , etc.	
PERFECT		PERFECT	
1. <i>ich habe mich gerettet</i>		<i>ich habe mich gerettet</i>	
2. <i>du hast dich</i> " etc.		<i>du habest dich</i> " etc.	
PLUPERFECT		PLUPERFECT	
1. <i>ich hatte mich gerettet</i> , etc.		<i>ich hätte mich gerettet</i> , etc.	

## FUTURE

- |                                 |                               |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. <i>ich werde mich retten</i> | <i>ich werde mich retten</i>  |
| 2. <i>du wirst dich</i> „ etc.  | <i>du werdest dich</i> „ etc. |

## FUTURE PERFECT

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>ich werde mich gerettet haben,</i><br>etc. | <i>ich werde mich gerettet haben,</i><br>etc. |
|--|---|

## CONDITIONAL PRESENT

1. *ich würde mich retten, etc.*

## CONDITIONAL PAST

1. *ich würde mich gerettet haben, etc.*

## IMPERATIVE

- |                           |                             |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------|
|                           | <b>Plural</b>               |
| 1. ———                    | 1. <i>retten wir uns</i>    |
| 2. <i>rette (du) dich</i> | 2. <i>rettet (ihr) euch</i> |
| 3. <i>rette er sich</i>   | 3. <i>retten sie sich</i>   |

## INFINITIVE

- |                         |                                 |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <b>PRESENT</b>          | <b>PERFECT</b>                  |
| <i>sich (zu) retten</i> | <i>sich gerettet (zu) haben</i> |

## PARTICIPLE

- |                     |                 |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| <i>sich rettend</i> | <i>gerettet</i> |
|---------------------|-----------------|

*a.* The past participle of a reflexive verb occurs only in connection with the auxiliary in the formation of the compound tenses.

2. Example of a common reflexive verb (reflexive pronoun in the accusative), **strong** conjugation :

*sich befehlen, befehl sich, befohlen, devote one's self, study.*

## INDICATIVE

## SUBJUNCTIVE

- |                                  |                               |                 |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------|
| <b>Singular</b>                  | <b>PRESENT</b>                | <b>Singular</b> |
| 1. <i>ich befehle mich, etc.</i> | <i>ich befehle mich, etc.</i> |                 |
|                                  | <b>PRETERIT</b>               |                 |
| 1. <i>ich befleß mich, etc.</i>  | <i>ich befleße mich</i>       |                 |



## PERFECT

1. *ich habe mich beflissen*, etc.      *ich habe mich beflissen*, etc.

## FUTURE

1. *ich werde mich beflissen*      *ich werde mich beflissen*, etc.

## IMPERATIVE

2. *befleisse dich*, etc.

3. Example of a reflexive verb (reflexive pronoun in the dative) :

*sich schmeicheln, schmeichelte sich, geschmeichelt, flatter one's self.*

## INDICATIVE

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

## Singular

## Singular

1. *ich schmeichle mir*  
2. *du schmeichelst dir*  
3. *er schmeichelt sich*

- ich schmeich(e)le mir*  
*du schmeichelst dir*  
*er schmeich(e)le sich*

## Plural

## Plural

1. *wir schmeicheln uns*, etc.

- wir schmeicheln uns*, etc.

## PRETERIT

## Singular

## Singular

1. *ich schmeichelte mir*  
2. *du schmeicheltest dir*, etc.

- ich schmeichelte mir*  
*du schmeicheltest dir*, etc.

## PERFECT

1. *ich habe mir geschmeichelt*  
2. *du hast dir*      "  
3. *er hat sich*      "

- ich habe mir geschmeichelt*  
*du habest dir*      "  
*er habe sich*      "

## Plural

## Plural

1. *wir haben uns geschmeichelt*,  
etc.

- wir haben uns geschmeichelt*,  
etc.

## PLUPERFECT

## Singular

## Singular

1. *ich hatte mir geschmeichelt*,  
etc.

- ich hätte mir geschmeichelt*, etc.

## FUTURE

- |                                     |                                  |                              |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. <i>ich werde mir schmeicheln</i> | <i>ich werde mir schmeicheln</i> |                              |
| 2. <i>du wirst dir</i>              | " etc.                           | <i>du werdest dir</i> " etc. |

## FUTURE PERFECT

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>ich werde mir geschmeichelt haben, etc.</i> | <i>ich werde mir geschmeichelt haben, etc.</i> |
|---|--|

## CONDITIONAL PRESENT

1. *ich würde mir schmeicheln, et*

## CONDITIONAL PAST

1. *ich würde mir geschmeichelt haben, etc.*

## IMPERATIVE

## Plural

- |                               |                                  |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. —                          | 1. <i>schmeicheln wir uns</i>    |
| 2. <i>schmeichle (du) dir</i> | 2. <i>schmeichelt (ihr) euch</i> |
| 3. <i>schmeichle er sich</i>  | 3. <i>schmeicheln sie sich</i>   |

## INFINITIVE

## PRESENT

*sich (zu) schmeicheln*

## PERFECT

*sich geschmeichelt (zu) haben*

## PARTICIPLE

*sich schmeichelnd*

*geschmeichelt*

4. As indicated above (256, 2 a), there are a few reflexive verbs taking the genitive as their sole object. They occur in this form chiefly in poetry, stately prose or archaic style. There is no difficulty as to the formation of the first and second persons singular and plural, the corresponding pronouns being: *ich*—*meiner* (*mein*); *du*—*deiner* (*dein*); *wir*—*unser*; *ihr*—*euer*. In the third person singular and plural, the indeclinable *selbst* is added to the personal pronoun in the genitive to show unmistakably that the latter is used in a reflexive sense.

Thus from *schonen*, *spare*, "*er schont seiner*" may mean "*he spares him*" as well as "*he spares himself*"; but the latter meaning is unequivocally conveyed by "*er schont seiner selbst*."

## EXERCISE 24

USE OF *sich lassen*—TRANSLATIONS

1. Note the use of *sich lassen* (*let, allow one's self*), personally or impersonally, with the **active** infinitive of another verb: *diese beiden Gegenstände lassen sich nicht trennen, these two objects cannot (do not allow themselves to) be separated.*

a. As is apparent from the above example, translate *sich lassen* by the corresponding tense of *können, can, may*, and substitute the **passive** infinitive for the German active infinitive: *die Sache ließ sich nicht begreifen, the matter could not be understood; es läßt sich sehen, it can be seen; wenn es sich tun läßt, if it can be done; er ließ sich nicht bewegen, he could not be induced.*

2. The above rule does not apply when *lassen* means *cause, order, command* and the like: *er ließ sich rasieren, he had (got) himself shaved*; cf. Exercise 23, p. 230.

a. Nor can it apply when *sich* is in the dative: *er ließ sich sagen, daß etc., he was told that, etc. (he allowed to be told to him that . . .)*

## TRANSLATION 24 a

A. 1. Bald nach dem fürchterlichen Ausbruch seines Zornes hatte sich der General wieder gefaßt, aber seine Augen <sup>1</sup> blickten noch <sup>2</sup> wie in höchster Aufregung. 2. Wenn wir zu rechter Zeit an den Bahnhof gelangen wollen, müssen <sup>3</sup> wir uns beeilen. 3. Erinnern Sie sich noch an <sup>4</sup> die schönen Tage, die wir letzten Sommer in der Schweiz zugebracht haben? 4. Der Winter ist so lang und rauh gewesen, wir sehnen uns nach der Ankunft des Frühlings. 5. Nehmen Sie sich in acht! Sie können sich durch ein einziges Wort verraten. 6. Einer guten Tat braucht man sich nie zu schämen, <sup>5</sup> auch (even) wenn man kein <sup>6</sup> Lob darum (for it) erhält. 7. Wie befinden Sie sich heute, wenn ich fragen darf? <sup>7</sup> Sie scheinen sich von ihrer Krankheit erholt zu haben. 8. Ich darf mir schmeicheln, den Herrn <sup>8</sup> Grafen <sup>9</sup> sehr wohl gekannt <sup>10</sup> zu haben, obgleich ich mir nie angemaßt habe, sein Geheimnis durchdringen <sup>11</sup> zu wollen.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. 132. <sup>2</sup> Cf. Exercise 2, 6, p. 21. <sup>3</sup> Cf. Exercise 4, 3, Note p. 33.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. 268. <sup>5</sup> Cf. 264. <sup>6</sup> Cf. Exercise 3, 3, p. 26. <sup>7</sup> Cf. Exercise 14, 1, 1 a, p. 127. <sup>8</sup> Herr, used for politeness, needs no translation. <sup>9</sup> Cf. 106, 2.

<sup>10</sup> Cf. 164, 1. <sup>11</sup> Cf. 254.

*B.* 1. Compose yourself! The fearful anger of our general has subsided (*sich legen*). 2. You should<sup>1</sup> make haste, if you would like<sup>2</sup> to see my father before (*ehe*) he arrives at the station. 3. Did you not remember what you promised<sup>3</sup> us last year (*Jahr, n.*), when (*als*) we spent the winter together<sup>4</sup> in Spain (*Spanien*)? 4. You cannot imagine<sup>5</sup> how much (*sehr*) we longed for the arrival of our friends. 5. He ought<sup>6</sup> to have taken care; a single word could have betrayed him. 6. They have been ashamed of their conduct (*Benahmen, n.*). 7. Has your friend recovered from his illness? Please tell me how he is to-day. 8. Do not flatter yourself; you could never have penetrated our secret if we had not<sup>7</sup> told it<sup>8</sup> to you.

<sup>1</sup> sollen. <sup>2</sup> Cf. Exercise 14, I, 3 *b*, p. 128. <sup>3</sup> *promise, versprechen.* <sup>4</sup> *together, zusammen.* <sup>5</sup> Cf. 256, 2. <sup>6</sup> *ought to = should; cf. 170.* <sup>7</sup> Cf. Exercise 16, I, 4, p. 155. <sup>8</sup> Cf. Exercise 15, 3, p. 145.

TRANSLATION 24 *b*

*A.* 1. Wir haben nie begreifen können,<sup>1</sup> warum sich die beiden Brüder so heftig stritten.<sup>2</sup> 2. Der König und seine Minister wußten wohl, daß sie sich auf den Chef des Generalstabs verlassen<sup>3</sup> konnten. 3. Der Preis dieses Tuches stellt sich auf zehn Mark<sup>4</sup> die (a) Elle; wir haben auch billigeres, aber es hält die Farbe nicht so lang. 4. Freut euch des<sup>5</sup> Lebens! aber gewöhnt euch auch daran,<sup>6</sup> gegen eure Mitmenschen gütig zu sein. 5. Vor dem feindlichen Heere brauchen wir uns nicht zu fürchten,<sup>7</sup> aber vor Spionen und Verrätern müssen wir uns hüten.<sup>8</sup> . Bitte, bemühen Sie sich nicht; Sie haben uns ja<sup>9</sup> schon so oft Beweise Ihrer großen Freundschaft gegeben.<sup>10</sup> 7. Wenn sich der Kriegsminister nicht sogleich unserer Sache<sup>5</sup> angenommen hätte,<sup>11</sup> wäre es<sup>12</sup> uns nie gelungen,<sup>10</sup> den König von unserem Rechte zu überzeugen.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. 168, 1. <sup>2</sup> Cf. 269, 1. <sup>3</sup> Cf. 268. <sup>4</sup> die Mark, *mark* (about twenty-five cents). <sup>5</sup> Cf. 266. <sup>6</sup> *an* (*to it, that is, what follows*) not to be translated. <sup>7</sup> Cf. 264. <sup>8</sup> Cf. 265. <sup>9</sup> Cf. Exercise 10, 2, p. 76. <sup>10</sup> Cf. Appendix III, p. 336. <sup>11</sup> Cf. Exercise 11, 3 and 4, p. 89. <sup>12</sup> Cf. Exercise 4, 3, Note, p. 33.

**B.** 1. Finden<sup>1</sup> Sie sich zur rechten Zeit auf meinem Bureau ein<sup>1</sup>; Sie können dann die verschiedenen Papiere durchlesen und sich also selbst überzeugen, wie viel Mühe ich mir in Ihrer Angelegenheit gegeben habe. 2. Das Gerücht ging, er habe<sup>2</sup> sich selbst erschossen, doch ist<sup>3</sup> es kaum zu glauben; von einigen Umständen dürften<sup>4</sup> wir vermuten, daß es kein<sup>5</sup> Selbstmord war. 3. Die beiden Schwestern liebten sich sehr; als die eine<sup>6</sup> von ihnen starb,<sup>7</sup> grämte sich die andere zu Tode. 4. Erlauben Sie mir Ihnen zu bemerken, daß Sie sich sehr geirrt haben. Der Herr, von dem Sie sprachen, ist kein geborner<sup>8</sup> Franzose; er hat sich nur ein paar Jahre in Frankreich aufgehalten. 5. Daraus erklärt sich also sein Benehmen; ich dachte mir (256, 2), er strengte<sup>2</sup> sich an,<sup>2</sup> französische Manieren nachzuahmen. 9. Darüber (as to that) läßt sich nichts sagen; die meisten Leute hier teilen Ihre Meinung nicht. 10. Dieser Satz ließ sich sehr leicht übersetzen (252, 3), aber am Ende der Lektion standen mehrere (several) Redensarten, die sich nur schwer<sup>9</sup> begreifen ließen.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. 265. <sup>2</sup> Cf. Exercise 13, II, 3, p. 116. <sup>3</sup> Cf. Exercise 11, I, p. 89.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. Exercise 14, I d, p. 127. <sup>5</sup> Cf. Exercise 3, 3, p. 26. <sup>6</sup> die eine, *one*.  
<sup>7</sup> Cf. Appendix II, p. 334. <sup>8</sup> geboren, *born*, past part. of *gebären*, *bear*, *bring forth*, used as an adjective, *native*; cf. Exercise 13, II, 1, p. 116 and 17, I, p. 172. <sup>9</sup> *schwer*, *with difficulty*.

## LESSON XXV

### IMPERSONAL VERBS

**273.** Impersonal verbs are used only in the third person singular with (or, sometimes, without) the indefinite subject *es*, *it*.

1. Impersonal verbs may be of the strong or weak conjugation, simple or compound, separable or inseparable.

**274.** The indefinite subject *es* is always used:

1. With impersonal verbs, describing the weather and other natural phenomena, whether the clause is in the normal, inverted

or transposed order: *es schneit, it snows; gestern regnete es, it rained yesterday; während es gedonnert hat, while it has thundered.*

2. With verbs that occur but occasionally in the impersonal form: *es geht nicht, (it does not go) it won't do; dabei bleibt es, (it remains with it) agreed! or done! or it is settled; da es Ihrer Fürsprache nicht bedarf, (since it does not need your intercession,) since your good offices are not required; es schlägt zwölf, it strikes twelve; es klopft, (it) some one knocks; es brennt, (it burns) there is a fire.*

3. With reflexive verbs used impersonally, in certain idiomatic phrases: *es findet sich mit der Zeit, (it finds itself with time), time will prove, we shall see; es handelt sich nicht darum, that is not the question (point); es traf sich so, it happened so, it turned out so; es wird sich machen, it is likely to be arranged, it is going to be settled.*

**275.** The indefinite subject *es* is usually, but not necessarily, omitted in the inverted order:

With verbs that are **mainly** used in the impersonal form, especially such as describe mental or physical conditions: *mir scheint (mir scheint es), it seems to me; mich friert (es), I am cold (it freezes me); mich dünkt (es), it seems to me (methinks); mich rent (es), I am sorry, I regret, I repent (it rues me); mich schaubert or mir graut (es), I am horror stricken.*

**276.** *Es* must be omitted in the inverted and transposed orders with the impersonal passive (283): *gestern wurde gesungen, there was singing yesterday; als gesungen wurde, when there was singing, when they sang.*

NOTE. In the normal order *es* must be used: *es wurde gesungen.*

**277.** The verbs *sein* and *werden* are used impersonally in connection with adverbs or adjectives referring to personal conditions, feelings, impressions and the like. The logical subject is then in the dative.

1. Such phrases are especially common with *zumute* or „zu Mut“ (*Mut* = *mood, disposition, mind*; **not** „*courage*” in this connection).

A good translation is generally obtained by substituting the nominative in English for the dative in German. At the same

time render zu Mut sein or werden by the verb *feel*: es wird mir sonderbar zu Mut or mir wird sonderbar zu Mut, *I feel strangely*.

2. The same manner of translation may also be used with sein, even when „zu Mute“ does not occur in the phrase: es war ihm angst (ihm war angst), *he felt anxious*; uns war es (es war uns) als ob wir mit ihm sprechen müßten, *we felt as if we had to speak to him*; es war uns sehr warm, *we felt very warm*.

3. Translate werden in the usual way: *become, grow, get*: es ward mir übel, *I grew ill*.

**278.** Many idiomatic phrases are formed by some verbs when used impersonally. In such cases the dictionary must be consulted. However, a few expressions of common occurrence may be noted here.

1. Es gibt, etc., cf. Exercise 16, I, 1, p. 155.

2. Gelten, *be worth*, cf. Exercise 16, III, 1 b and c, p. 166.

3. Es liegt mir viel an . . . , *I am greatly interested (concerned) in . . . , I care a good deal for . . .*

4. Es setzt, *there is, there are*; es wird Hiebe setzen, *it will come to blows*.

5. Es hat gute Wege, *there is no hurry about it*; es hat Gefahr, *there is danger*; es hat keine Eile, *there is no hurry*; es hat keine Not, *no fear for that; there is no need; never fear*.

6. Es half nichts, *it was of no avail (it helped nothing)*.

7. Es lohnt sich der Mühe, *it is worth while (the trouble)*.

8. Wovon handelt es sich? *what is the point in question?* es handelt sich um unsere Ehre, *it is a question of our honor, our honor is at stake*.

9. Es ist schade, *it is a pity*.

NOTE. For sich lassen cf. Exercise 24, I, p. 240.

**279.** Geschehen, geschah, geschehen, *happen*: es geschieht, es geschehe; es geschah, es geschehe; es ist geschehen, es sei geschehen; es war geschehen, es wäre geschehen; es wird geschehen, es werde geschehen; es wird geschehen sein, es werde geschehen sein; es würde geschehen; es würde geschehen sein.

#### TRANSLATION 25 a

A. 1. Es traf sich,<sup>1</sup> daß wir alles Mögliche getan hatten, aber es half<sup>2</sup> doch nichts. 2. Auch uns ist es nicht gelungen,<sup>3</sup> die

Sache endlich in Ordnung zu bringen; was hinter unserm Rücken geschah,<sup>4</sup> wissen wir nicht; daß<sup>5</sup> läßt<sup>6</sup> sich nur vermuten. 3. Wie ist es denn auf der Bauernhochzeit im Dorf zugegangen<sup>7</sup>? Sie sollen<sup>8</sup> sich ja<sup>9</sup> dabei (there) eingefunden<sup>10</sup> haben. 4. Ich hielt<sup>11</sup> mich nur kurze Zeit dort auf; aber seitdem hab' ich mir sagen lassen,<sup>12</sup> daß es gegen Abend Hiebe gesetzt<sup>13</sup> hat. 5. Mich reut,<sup>14</sup> daß ich meinen Nessen habe<sup>15</sup> hingehen lassen<sup>16</sup>; es<sup>17</sup> lag ihm nicht viel an der ganzen Sache, nur die Neugierde trieb<sup>11</sup> ihn hin.<sup>18</sup> 6. Was den<sup>5</sup> betrifft,<sup>19</sup> da hat es keine Not<sup>20</sup>; im schlimmsten Fall ist er mit einem blauen Auge davongekommen. 7. Aus dem Jungen ließe<sup>21</sup> sich etwas machen, wenn er nur nicht so leichtsinnig wäre.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. 274, 3. <sup>2</sup> Cf. 278, 6. <sup>3</sup> Cf. Appendix III, p. 336. <sup>4</sup> Cf. 279. <sup>5</sup> Cf. Exercise 13, II, 4, p. 117. <sup>6</sup> Cf. Exercise 24, 1 a, p. 240. <sup>7</sup> Cf. 224. <sup>8</sup> Cf. Exercise 14, II, 5 d, p. 133. <sup>9</sup> Cf. Exercise 10, 2, p. 76. <sup>10</sup> Cf. 265. <sup>11</sup> Cf. Appendix II, p. 334. <sup>12</sup> Cf. Exercise 24, 2 a, p. 240. <sup>13</sup> Cf. 278, 4. <sup>14</sup> Cf. 275. <sup>15</sup> Cf. 168, 2. <sup>16</sup> Cf. 171. <sup>17</sup> Cf. 278, 3. <sup>18</sup> hin, there (thither). <sup>19</sup> Cf. 203, 2. <sup>20</sup> Cf. 278, 5. <sup>21</sup> Cf. Exercise 11, 3 and 4, p. 89, and 24, 1 a, p. 240.

B. 1. How did it happen that your father did not do all in his power for (für) that poor old man? 2. Did you know (172) how we finally succeeded in aiding (to aid<sup>1</sup>) our friends? 3. How could<sup>2</sup> it be supposed that such a thing (so etwas) could<sup>3</sup> have taken place behind our back? 4. How long did you stay<sup>4</sup> in the city? Not very long. My nephew told [to] me that the peasants in our village had been quarreling<sup>5</sup> with one another (einander). 5. It even<sup>6</sup> (jogar) seems (scheinen) that it came to blows. 6. It cannot<sup>2</sup> be assumed (annehmen) that we are much interested<sup>7</sup> in this matter. 7. There was no danger; we knew<sup>8</sup> the man, and as far as he was concerned, it<sup>9</sup> was not worth the while to think of<sup>10</sup> him.

<sup>1</sup> aid, helfen (with dative). <sup>2</sup> Cf. Exercise 24, 1, p. 240. <sup>3</sup> Cf. Exercise 16, I, 2, p. 155, also 170, 1 to 8 and 168, 2. <sup>4</sup> did stay, translate by the perfect. <sup>5</sup> Cf. 269, 1. <sup>6</sup> Cf. Exercise 16, I, 3 a, p. 155. <sup>7</sup> Cf. 278, 3. <sup>8</sup> know, kennen; cf. 164. <sup>9</sup> Cf. 278, 7, and Exercise 4, 3, Note, p. 33. <sup>10</sup> of, an with accusative.



C. 1. Hören Sie, wie es in der Ferne donnert<sup>1</sup>? Ein Gewitter naht heran. Machen Sie schnell alle Fenster zu! 2. Man sagt, es habe<sup>2</sup> Gefahr, wenn ein Zug (draught) durch die Zimmer geht. 3. Es freute uns sehr, daß wir von unserem Lehrer gelobt wurden, denn an seiner guten Meinung von uns liegt<sup>3</sup> uns sehr viel. 4. Die armen Leute in dem kleinen Haus fürchteten<sup>4</sup> sich vor dem Gewitter, aber es hatte keine Not<sup>5</sup>; es regnete sehr stark, und die Gewitterwolken zogen schnell vorüber. 5. Es klopft,<sup>6</sup> nicht wahr?<sup>7</sup> Bitte, machen Sie die Thür auf! 6. Dem armen Bauer war sehr wohl zu Mute,<sup>8</sup> als er die Nachricht von der Erbschaft erhielt, die ihm plötzlich zufiel. 7. Unseren Freunden ward angst,<sup>9</sup> als man ihnen sagte, daß es in der nächsten Straße brennte.<sup>10</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Cf. 274. <sup>2</sup> Cf. 278, 5, and Exercise 13, II, 3, p. 116. <sup>3</sup> Cf. 278, 3. <sup>4</sup> Cf. 264. <sup>5</sup> Cf. 278, 5. <sup>6</sup> Cf. 274, 2. <sup>7</sup> Cf. Exercise 9, 3 a, p. 66. <sup>8</sup> Cf. 277, 1. <sup>9</sup> Cf. 277, 2. <sup>10</sup> Is brennte indicative or subjunctive? Cf. 164, 1 a.

D. 1. Den Soldaten ward<sup>1</sup> es immer heißer; die Sonne schoß<sup>2</sup> ihre Strahlen auf das Schlachtfeld. 2. Doch es galt<sup>3</sup> Sieg oder Tod und keine Stimme ließ<sup>4</sup> sich hören, die von Rückzug oder Übergabe sprach.<sup>2</sup> 3. Mich schaudert an die Anzahl der Toten<sup>6</sup> und Verwundeten<sup>7</sup> zu denken; es ist mir<sup>8</sup> als ob ich den Tag nie vergessen könnte. 4. Es schien fast, als ob sich eine Träne in sein Auge drängen wollte; sein leichtes,<sup>9</sup> frohes Herz aber ließ<sup>2</sup> die trüben Gedanken<sup>10</sup> nicht aufkommen. 5. Es hat sich kaum der Mühe gelohnt,<sup>11</sup> die Sache noch weiter zu besprechen. 6. Die meisten Leute wußten gar nicht, daß es sich um unser Leben handelte.<sup>12</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Cf. 277, 2 and 3. <sup>2</sup> Cf. Appendix II, p. 334. <sup>3</sup> Cf. Exercise 16, III, 1, p. 166. <sup>4</sup> Cf. Exercise 24, 1 a, p. 240. <sup>5</sup> Cf. 275. <sup>6</sup> der Tote, adjective used as a noun. <sup>7</sup> Cf. Exercise 13, II, 1, p. 116, and 13, I, 3, p. 110. <sup>8</sup> Cf. 277, 2. <sup>9</sup> Cf. Exercise 17, 1 and 2, p. 172. <sup>10</sup> Cf. 125. <sup>11</sup> Cf. 278, 7. <sup>12</sup> Cf. 278, 8.

## LESSON XXVI

## PASSIVE VOICE

**280.** The German passive differs from the English as to the **auxiliary verb** by which it is formed. While the English uses the verb *be*, the German does **not** employ the corresponding auxiliary *sein*, but instead takes the verb **werden** (138).

1. The **past participle** of the **principal verb** is placed after the **simple tenses** and the **imperative** of *werden*, as in the corresponding forms in English. But in the **compound tenses**, it is put **before** the infinitive (*werden*) and participle (*worden*) of the auxiliary.

2. In this connection, the past participle of the auxiliary *werden* loses its prefix *ge* and becomes **worden** instead of *geworden*. •

**281.** Passive voice of *führen*, *führte*, *geführt*, *lead*.

NOTE. Review the conjugation of *werden* (138).

## INDICATIVE

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

*ich werde geführt, I am led, etc.*    *ich werde geführt, etc.*

## PRETERIT

*ich wurde (ward) geführt, I was led, etc.*    *ich würde geführt, etc.*

## FUTURE

*ich werde geführt werden, I shall be led, etc.*    *ich werde geführt werden, etc.*

## PERFECT

*ich bin geführt worden, I have been led, etc.*    *ich sei geführt worden, etc.*

## PLUPERFECT

*ich war geführt worden, I had been led, etc.*    *ich wäre geführt worden, etc.*

## FUTURE PERFECT

ich werde geführt worden sein, *I* ich werde geführt worden sein,  
*shall have been led*, etc. *etc.*

## CONDITIONAL PRESENT

ich würde geführt werden, *I should be led*, etc.

## CONDITIONAL PAST

ich würde geführt worden sein, *I should have been led*

## IMPERATIVE

## Singular

werde geführt, *be led*

## Plural

werdet geführt, *be led*

## INFINITIVE

## PRESENT

geführt (zu) werden, (*to*) *be led*

## PERFECT

geführt worden (zu) sein, (*to*)  
*have been led*

## PARTICIPLE

## PRESENT

geführt werdend, *being led*

## PAST

geführt worden,\* *been led*

## GERUNDIVE

zu führend,† *to be led*

**282.** Nearly every **transitive** verb can be used in the passive: der Knabe verlor das Geld, *the boy lost the money*; das Geld wurde vom Knaben verloren, *the money was lost by the boy*; gute Gesetze regieren das Land, *good laws govern the country*; das Land wird durch gute Gesetze regiert, *the land is governed by good laws*.

1. The accusative of the active verb becomes the subject in the passive voice; the nominative of the active verb is changed to the dative with *von*, if it denotes a personal agent (cf. first example above), or to the accusative with *durch*, if a non-personal agent or means is denoted (cf. second example above).

2. *Haben*, *have*, does not occur in the passive. Translate *it is to be had* by *es ist zu haben* (Exercise 11, 1, p. 89); *it can be had* by *man kann es haben*, etc.

\* Only in connection with the compound tenses.

† Used only as an attributive adjective.

**283. Intransitive verbs** are used in the passive only in the third person singular, and thus form an **impersonal passive**. Such phrases are commonly rendered by a participial noun or a real substantive; in some cases a more idiomatic expression may be required: *da wurde viel gelacht, there was much laughter; während gesungen und gejubelt wird, while there is singing and shouting.*

1. It will readily appear that such phrases indicate a general statement without any distinct reference to a particular agent.

2. For the omission of *es* cf. 276.

3. Verbs that are usually transitive, when used intransitively, are then virtually equivalent to intransitive verbs and treated as such: *davon wurde nicht gesprochen, there was no talking (talk) about that.*

**284. 1.** As stated above, the auxiliary for the passive is *werden*, **not** *sein*. Yet the forms of *sein* occur with the past participle of another verb: *das Haus wird gebaut* and *das Haus ist gebaut*. These two expressions are by no means identical in meaning: the former, the real passive, signifies "*the house is being built*"; the latter, "*the house is built*," that is, it has been built and is built now.

2. Participles are in reality verbal adjectives; this characteristic feature is prominently seen in the above combination with *sein*; the past participle fulfills then the office of a predicate adjective; the real passive form points out distinctly the **action**, while the predicate-adjective expression denotes the **state** or **condition** which follows from such action: *die Festung wurde zerstört, the fortress was (being) destroyed* (the **action** of destruction was going on); *die Festung war zerstört, the fortress was destroyed* (it had been destroyed by some agency and therefore was then in the **state** or **condition** of destruction).

3. The difficulty is due to the fact that in English the verb *be* serves in both meanings. To clearly express the idea of the German passive, we have often to resort to the phrase *be being*; cf. *is being built* and *was being destroyed* in the examples 1 and 2 above.

4. In some instances *be* with the present participle of the **principal verb** is considered a good rendering by some scholars: *das Haus wurde gebaut, the house was building.*

**285.** There is, of course, no difficulty in distinguishing the German forms with *werden* (real passive) from those with *sein*. As to the English forms with *be* to be rendered into German, a

convenient rule applicable in many cases is as follows: When the phrase in English is in the present or preterit (past) and can be changed to a corresponding phrase in the active with the **same tense**, the real passive with *werden* must be used: *the castle was besieged by the French*. If the sense is *the French besieged the castle*, we say *die Burg wurde von den Franzosen belagert*. If we mean *the French had besieged it*, the translation must be *die Burg war von den Franzosen belagert*.

**286.** The passive is used less frequently in German than in English. On the other hand the construction with the indefinite pronoun *man*, *one*, and the active is much more common than the corresponding literal equivalent in English: *man hat es oft gehört*, (*one has often heard it*) *it has often been heard*.

**287.** Besides, verbs used reflexively take the place of the passive in many cases: *es fand sich*, (*it found itself*) *it was found*; *das läßt sich denken*, *that can be imagined*; *es versteht sich*, *it is understood, it is a matter of course*; *die Thür wird sich öffnen*, *the door will be opened*.

1. Sometimes an impersonal idiom is used where the English uses the passive, as: *es bedarf keiner Erklärung*, *no explanation is needed*.

2. Sometimes, in order to preserve the emphasis of position, the English passive should be used to translate the German active, as: *den Schiffer im kleinen Schiffe ergreift es mit wilden Weh*, *the boatman in his little boat is seized with a wild longing*; *den Jüngling lockte des Schlosses Zauberpracht*, *the youth was allured by the magic splendor of the castle*.

3. The long forms with *worden sein* are very uncommon.

**288.** Note the order of words:

**Normal:** *Er ist zum König geführt worden*, *he has been led to the king*; *er wird dem Minister vorgestellt worden sein*, *he will have been presented to the minister*.

**Inverted:** *Daher ist er zum König geführt worden*; *wahr-scheinlich wird er dem Minister vorgestellt worden sein*.

**Transposed:** *Während er zum König geführt worden ist*; *so-bald er dem Minister vorgestellt worden sein wird*; or, at times, *wird vorgestellt worden sein*.

## TRANSLATION 26 a

A. 1. Die Stadt<sup>1</sup> Magdeburg<sup>2</sup> wurde vom Feinde beinahe ganz zerstört und viele Menschen<sup>3</sup> verloren<sup>4</sup> dabei<sup>5</sup> ihr Leben. 2. Die Bürger werden im Kriege oft grausam von den Soldaten behandelt. 3. Dort liegen die Ruinen des alten Hauses; nicht weit davon (from it) ist eine neue Burg gebaut worden. 4. Als sich die Schlüssel zur Tür nicht sogleich vorfanden,<sup>4</sup> zertrümmerte der zornige Offizier alles, was ihm<sup>6</sup> in die Hände<sup>1</sup> fiel.<sup>4</sup> 5. In welchem<sup>7</sup> Jahre die Märchen zuerst gedruckt wurden, wissen wir nicht; aber<sup>8</sup> wir erinnern<sup>9</sup> uns, mit welchem Vergnügen wir das Buch durchlasen. 6. Dieser Brief liest<sup>10</sup> sich nicht leicht, er ist so schlecht geschrieben.<sup>11</sup> 7. Jetzt wird der Armeebefehl von dem Kriegsminister niedergeschrieben, morgen wird er den Offizieren vorgelesen<sup>11</sup> werden. 8. Am Rande des Waldes wurde vom frühen<sup>12</sup> Morgen bis (until) spät am Abend gekämpft.<sup>13</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Cf. list in 90. <sup>2</sup> Magdeburg, now the capital of the Prussian province of Saxony, was stormed and sacked by Tilly in 1631, during the Thirty Years' War. <sup>3</sup> Cf. list in 106, 2. <sup>4</sup> Cf. Appendix II, p. 334. <sup>5</sup> dabei, *on that occasion, not thereby*. <sup>6</sup> Cf. Exercise 17, 5, p. 173. <sup>7</sup> Cf. Exercise 3, 2, p. 26. <sup>8</sup> Cf. Exercise 2, p. 21, last two lines. <sup>9</sup> Cf. 256, 1. <sup>10</sup> Cf. 287, and Appendix V, p. 339. <sup>11</sup> Cf. Appendix III, p. 336. <sup>12</sup> Cf. Exercise 13, 1, 3, p. 110. <sup>13</sup> Cf. 283.

B. 1. Many cities and fortresses (Festung, f.) are besieged (belagern) and destroyed by the Japanese (Japaner) in this war. 2. Were<sup>1</sup> our soldiers well (gut) treated by the enemy after (nachdem) they had been made<sup>2</sup> captives? 3. The city hall (Rathaus, n.) on (an, 57, 2) Charles Square (der Karlsplatz) was built last year; it is situated near<sup>3</sup> the ruins of the old castle which was torn down (niederreißen) in<sup>4</sup> (the) spring. 4. Has the key been found? It was lost yesterday. 5. The furniture<sup>5</sup> in our house was dashed to pieces by the angry officers and soldiers while (während) they were looking for<sup>6</sup> the spy (Spion, m.), who — as (wie)

they said — was hidden (verbergen) in our dwelling (Wohnung, f.). 6. Do you remember in what year the last edition (Ausgabe, f.) of this book was printed? We have read it through with great (groß) pleasure. 7. Your (Dein) letter was badly written; it could<sup>7</sup> not be read so easily as (wie) you (du) imagined.<sup>8</sup> 8. The order of the day has been read aloud to the officers this morning<sup>9</sup>; it had been written down by the general day<sup>10</sup> before yesterday. 9. There was singing and shouting (schreien) when our city was abandoned<sup>11</sup> by the enemy.

<sup>1</sup> Were . . . treated, use the perfect. Order of words: *by the enemy well*.  
<sup>2</sup> make captive, gefangen nehmen. <sup>3</sup> near, nahe bei, with dative. <sup>4</sup> Cf. 57, 2 and 3. <sup>5</sup> furniture, Möbel (plur.). <sup>6</sup> to look for, suchen. <sup>7</sup> Cf. Exercise 24, I, p. 240. <sup>8</sup> Cf. 256, 2. <sup>9</sup> this morning, heute morgen, cf. Exercise 16, I, 3 p. 155. <sup>10</sup> Begin the clause with *day before yesterday*, vorgestern. <sup>11</sup> abandon, verlassen.

C. 1. Das große Schloß (lock) zum Tor ist **erbrochen**<sup>1</sup> und der Schlüssel findet<sup>2</sup> sich nirgends. 2. Der **Schlosser** zeigte uns, wie **sogar** feste Schlösser oft von **gelübten**<sup>3</sup> Dieben **erbrochen** werden. 3. Als **sich** die Nachricht von der verlorenen Schlacht in der Stadt **verbreitete**, wurde überall **geweint**<sup>4</sup> und **gejammert**. 4. Man<sup>5</sup> erzählt allerlei Geschichten über (about) die Art, wie sich der alte **Stadtschreiber** die großen Reichtümer<sup>6</sup> **erworben**<sup>1</sup> hat. 5. Es versteht sich,<sup>2</sup> daß in dem **Wartesaal** für Damen nicht **geraucht**<sup>4</sup> wird. 6. Der **Eintritt** ins **Muse'um** zwischen<sup>7</sup> zwei und drei Uhr ist verboten.<sup>1</sup> 7. Gestern war es mir so schlecht zu Mute,<sup>8</sup> daß ich kaum wußte,<sup>9</sup> wovon (of what) **gesprochen**<sup>1</sup> wurde.<sup>4</sup> 8. Das Wort war gesprochen, der **Würfel** war **gefallen**<sup>1</sup>; ein **Zurückgehen**<sup>10</sup> gab es<sup>11</sup> nicht mehr; nun galt<sup>12</sup> es Freiheit oder Tod.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Appendix III, p. 336. <sup>2</sup> Cf. 287. <sup>3</sup> Cf. Exercise 13, II, I, p. 116, and 17, 4, p. 173. <sup>4</sup> Cf. 283. <sup>5</sup> Cf. 286. <sup>6</sup> Cf. 95, 2. <sup>7</sup> Cf. Exercise 7, 3, p. 52. <sup>8</sup> Cf. 277, I. <sup>9</sup> Cf. 172. <sup>10</sup> Cf. 48. <sup>11</sup> Cf. Exercise 16, I, 1, p. 155. <sup>12</sup> Cf. Exercise 16, III, 1 b and c, pp. 166–167.

*D.* 1. Change the passive construction of sentences 1, 2, 3, 5, 7, 8 in 26 *A*, p. 251, and of 2, 3, 5, 7 in 26 *C*, p. 252, to the active form. When no agent is indicated, use *man*.

2. Change the following sentences from the active to the passive construction :

1. Das hast du **Flug** gemacht. 2. Der Ritter **unterbrach** den Herzog in seiner Rede. 3. Schnell **benützte** der General diesen Augenblick. 4. Du hast mich nicht erwartet. 5. Mancher' Mann wird uns darum (for that) **achten**. 6. Der Soldat hatte die Thür schnell aufgemacht. 7. Der alte Vater faßte die Hand des Sohnes. 8. Die Bürger hatten die Feinde durch ihr grausames **Betragen gereizt**. 9. Als die Ritter das Land wieder erobert hatten, **beherrschten** sie es wie früher. 10. Nachdem der König das ganze feindliche Heer **beseigt** hatte, **verurteilte** er die Verräter zum<sup>2</sup> Tode. 11. Dann **entließ** er seine treuen Freunde. 12. Wer entdeckte Amerika?

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Exercise 3, 2, p. 26. <sup>2</sup> Contraction of *zu* and *dem* (*the*); the latter is not translated into English; say *to death*.

## LESSON XXVII.

### ADJECTIVES. — ATTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVES. — THEIR DECLENSION

**289.** The adjective remains undeclined when used as a predicate, in apposition (chiefly in poetry) or adverbially: Das Haus ist schön, *the house is beautiful*; zwei Kinder, schön wie Engel, *two children, beautiful as angels*; das war schön getan, *that was done beautifully*.

**290.** In other positions, that is, when used attributively or as a substantive, the adjective is declined.



## I

**Attributive Adjectives**

**291.** The attributive adjective generally precedes the noun it qualifies and agrees with it in number, gender and case.

NOTE. — Participles when used as attributive adjectives are declined like the latter.

**292.** There are two declensions of adjectives, the **strong** and the **weak**.

NOTE. — The main facts as to the declension of adjectives were stated in Exercise 13, I, pages 110 and 111, and Exercise 17, I, page 172, although the terms "strong" and "weak" were not used.

**I. Endings in the Adjective Declension.**

STRONG DECLENSION				WEAK DECLENSION			
<b>Singular</b>				<b>Singular</b>			
	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
Nom.	-er	-e	-es		-e	-e	-e
Gen.	-es(en)	-er	-es(en)		-en	-en	-en
Dat.	-em	-er	-em		-en	-en	-en
Acc.	-en	-e	-es		-en	-e	-e
<b>Plural</b>				<b>Plural</b>			
	M. F. N.				M. F. N.		
Nom.	-e				-en		
Gen.	-er				-en		
Dat.	-en				-en		
Acc.	-e				-en		

*a.* The accusative singular masculine, the nominative and accusative singular feminine, and the dative plural have the same endings in both declensions.

*b.* The endings of the strong declension are the same as those of *dieſer*, *dieſe*, *dieſes* (Exercise 3, 1 *a* and 2, pp. 25, 26), yet the genitive singular masculine and neuter of the strong declension have now generally the form of the weak declension, *-en*.

*c.* The weak declension has only two endings: *e* for the nominative singular of all genders and the accusative singular

feminine and neuter; **en** for all the other cases, singular and plural.

2. When the attributive adjective is preceded by a pronominal adjective with strong endings (293, 1 *a*), the attributive adjective takes the weak endings; otherwise, the strong.

3. Some adjectives are used mostly or only as attributives, and are therefore always declined. The most important of these are adjectives of place and time, adjectives of material, some derivatives in *isch* and *lich* and most pronominal adjectives: *die dortigen Verhältnisse, the conditions there*; *die gestrige Zeitung, yesterday's newspaper*; *die gläserne Kugel, the glass ball*; *die nordischen Völker, the Northern nations*; *seine anfängliche Meinung, his (initial) first opinion*; *jene Umstände, those circumstances*; *der selbige Unfall, the same accident*.

*a.* When used as predicates, they are declined with the noun understood: *die Zeitung war die gestrige (Zeitung), not gestrig*. In such cases, a noun with *von* takes the place of an adjective of material: *die Kugel war von Glas, not gläsern*.

*b.* The ordinals and superlatives are also used, almost exclusively, as attributives, cf. 300.

#### WEAK DECLENSION

**293.** The adjective follows the weak declension when preceded by:

1. The definite article *der*, or pronouns declined like it: *dieser, jener, jeder, solcher, welcher, mancher*, etc. (Exercise 3, 2, p. 26).

*a.* The foregoing words have themselves distinctive (strong) endings, and, as two strong forms must not follow each other, the adjective takes the fewer and less distinctive endings (*-e* and *-en*) of the weak declension (292, 2).

2. The indefinite article *ein*, its opposite *kein*, *no*, or the possessive adjectives, *mein, dein, sein, ihr, Ihr, unser, euer* (Exercise 3, 1 *b* and 3, pp. 25, 26) except in three forms: the nominative singular masculine and the accusative feminine and neuter.

a. In these three forms *mein*, etc., have no ending, and therefore the adjective assumes the **strong** endings.

**294.** Hence, the endings of the adjective under these circumstances are :

	Singular			Plural
	M.	F.	N.	M. F. N.
Nom.	-er	-e	-es	-en
Gen.	-en	-en	-en	-en
Dat.	-en	-en	-en	-en
Acc.	-en	-e	-es	-en

a. This declension (after *mein*, etc.) is often called the "**mixed**" declension, since three forms agree with the strong declension and all the others with the weak.

#### STRONG DECLENSION

**295.** The adjective follows the strong declension :

1. When **not** preceded by any of the limiting words of **293**.
2. After cardinal numbers: *vier große Häuser*, *four large houses*.

3. After *manch*, *many*, *many a*; *solch*, *such*; *welch*, *which*, *what*; *all*, *all*; *viel*, *much*; *mehr*, *more*, in case they be **not** declined: *manch schöner Baum*, *many a beautiful tree*, but *mancher schöne Baum*; *welch großes Land*! *what a great country*, but *welches große Land*!

a. The prevailing motive referred to in **292**, 2, is also found here: when the preceding word, like *manch*, has no distinctive ending, the adjective must have it and therefore follow the strong declension; when the preceding word, like *mancher*, has a strong ending, the adjective adopts the weak declension.

4. After *allerlei*, *all kinds of*; *mancherlei*, *many kinds of*; *welcherlei*, *what kinds of*, etc.: *vielerlei schlimme Nachrichten*, *many kinds of bad reports*.

NOTE 1. In the case of adjectives, the terms "**strong**" and "**weak**" have not the same signification as when applied to substantives. Any adjective may at one time belong to the strong declension and at other times to the weak. The distinction depends on what other word, if any, precedes the adjective. On the other hand, substantives belong under any and all circumstances **only** to the strong or **only** to the weak declension.

## 296. Examples :

Alter Mann, *old man* ; große Birne, *large pear* ; kleines Haus, *little house*.

## STRONG DECLENSION

## WEAK DECLENSION

## Singular

## MASCULINE

N.	alter Mann	jener alte Mann
G.	alt(es)en Mannes	jenes alten Mannes
D.	altem Mann(e)	jenem alten Mann(e)
A.	alten Mann	jenen alten Mann

## FEMININE

N.	große Birne	jene große Birne
G.	großer Birne	jener großen Birne
D.	großer Birne	jener großen Birne
A.	große Birne	jene große Birne

## NEUTER

N.	kleines Haus	manches kleine Haus
G.	klein(es)en Hauses	manches kleinen Hauses
D.	kleinem Hause	manchem kleinen Hause
A.	kleines Haus	manches kleine Haus

## Plural

## M. F. N.

## M. F. N.

N.	alte Männer	jene alten Männer
G.	großer Birnen	welcher großen Birnen
D.	kleinen Häusern	manchen kleinen Häusern
A.	alte Männer	jene alten Männer

## (MIXED DECLENSION)

## a. After mein, etc. (294).

## Singular

	M.	N.
N.	mein alter Freund	sein kleines Haus
A.		Ihr schönes Land

The remaining cases are like the weak declension.

b. It will appear that the feminine after mein, etc., is declined **throughout** like an adjective of the weak declension.

**297.** 1. Adjectives ending in *e*, *el*, *er*, *en*, generally drop the *e* of those syllables, or sometimes the *e* of the case-ending *-en*; thus, *leise*, *low*, *soft*, **not** *leise=er*, *leise=e*, *leise-es*, but *leiser*, *leise*, *leise-s*; *gerade*, *straight*, *gerader*, *gerade*, *gerade-s*; *dunkel*, *dark*, *dunkler*, *dunkle*, *dunkle-s*; *lauter*, *pure*, *genuine*, *lautrer*, *lautre*, *lautre-s*; *offen*, *open*, *offner*, *offne*, *offne-s*.

*a.* The forms *lauterm*, *lautern*, *dunkeln*, etc., instead of *lautrem*, *lautren*, *dunklen*, also occur.

*b.* The full forms are also often met with, especially of adjectives in *-er*; thus, *lauterem*, *lautere-s*.

2. *Hoch*, *high*, drops its *c* when inflected; the *h* is silent; thus, *höher*, *hohe*, *höhe-s*, *höhem*, *hohen*.

**298.** When the same noun is preceded by two or more adjectives, each of them is generally declined in the same manner: *ein schöner, klarer Fluß*, *a beautiful, clear river*; *des Kaisers große, herrliche Macht*, *the emperor's great, glorious power*; *ich gedenke schöner, herrlicher längst vergangener Tage* (genitive), *I am mindful of beautiful, glorious days, long gone by*.

*a.* Many exceptions to this rule are found in poetry or poetic prose.

**299.** After the personal pronouns, the adjective is usually declined according to the mixed declension (294): *ich armer Mann*, *du liebe Frau*, *du armes Kind*, *mir armen Mann*, etc.

**300.** The ordinal numbers (398) and superlatives (312, 2) hardly ever appear in their simple, uninflected form, as *erst*, *zweit*, *größt*, etc. They are usually preceded by the definite article, sometimes by a pronominal adjective: *der erste Feldherr*, *the first commander-in chief*; *dieser höchste Baum*, *this highest tree*.

## II

### Adjectives used as Substantives

**301.** 1. The adjective, when used as a substantive, is inflected. However, it is **not** declined like a substantive, but follows the **adjective** declension, either strong or weak, according to the rules previously given: *geben Sie mir Ihre Rechte*, *give me your right (hand)*; *Ihr Geehrtes* (supply *Schreiben*, *writing*, *letter*) *your honored (letter), your favor*; *die Ersten werden die Letzten sein*, *the first will be the last*; *der*

Gute tut immer seine Pflicht, *the good (one or man) always does his duty*; zur Rechten, *at the right (hand)*.

2. The adjective used as a substantive is written with a capital letter.

3. Adjectives used as substantives after personal pronouns follow the declension of other adjectives (299): ich (du) Arm-seliger, *I (thou) pitiful man*.

**302.** 1. Adjectives used in the neuter singular generally denote an abstract idea: das Schöne, *the beautiful*; in the masculine and feminine, they often denote persons: die Schöne, *the beautiful (lady)*; die Guten, *the good (people)*; das ist das Los des Schönen auf der Erde! *this is the lot of the beautiful (what is beautiful) on earth!*

2. After etwas (abbreviated was), *something, anything*, was? *what?* and nichts, *nothing*, the adjective is of the strong declension, neuter singular: wissen Sie etwas (was) Neues? *do you know anything new?* das ist etwas Hübsches, *that is something pretty*.

.. Forms like Neues, Hübsches, in these combinations were originally a genitive singular: nichts Neues meant *nothing of new*.

**303.** The names of languages and colors are not inflected: Sprechen Sie Deutsch? *do you speak German?* er versteht Italienisch, *he understands Italian*; wie sagen Sie das auf Französisch? *how do you say that in French?* das Grün ist eine angenehme Farbe für die Augen, *green is an agreeable color for the eyes*; also, certain set phrases, as alt und jung, *old and young*; groß und klein, *rich and poor*; das Mein und Dein, *what is mine and what is thine*.

### III

#### Adjectives used as Predicates

**304.** A comparatively small number of adjectives are used **only** predicatively and therefore are uninflected: er war dessen eingedenk, *he was mindful of that*; er ist mir feind, *he is hostile to me*.

**305.** When the predicative adjective is found inflected, the noun is understood and the adjective is treated as an attributive: dieses Haus ist ein schwarzes (Haus), jenes ist ein weißes (Haus), *this house is a black one, that one is a white one*; der Möbelhändler hat viele Möbel zum Verkauf, diese hier sind sehr billige und auch sehr schöne (Möbel), *the upholsterer has many pieces of furniture for sale; these here are very cheap and also very beautiful ones*.

a. In rendering English into German, the English "one" or "ones" after an adjective must be omitted: "the good ones," die Guten: *please show me your knives; this is a beautiful one*, bitte, zeigen Sie mir Ihre Messer; dieses ist ein schönes.

#### TRANSLATION 27 a

A. 1. Wie lang mußten Sie in dem hübschen Dorfe bleiben?  
 2. Glücklicherweise nur kurze Zeit; die Leute dort sind so dumm und langweilig; ich bin kaum ein paar Stunden da gewesen, so (when) wollte ich schon wieder fort.<sup>1</sup> 3. Natürlich einen Sinn für das Schöne, für Kunst und Literatur kann man von den armen Leuten nicht erwarten; sie müssen so viel arbeiten, daß sie nur wenig Zeit haben an etwas Anderes zu denken. 4. Das ist wahr und Sie haben<sup>2</sup> so weit (so far) recht; doch anstatt<sup>3</sup> die paar Stunden, die sie jeden Abend frei haben, mit etwas Nützlichem zu verbringen, denken sie nur an allerlei dumme Streiche. 5. Ich glaube, Sie sind etwas zu streng; wenn die armen Bauern<sup>4</sup> Abends (in the evening) müde nach Hause kommen, wollen Sie ausruhen oder sich amüsieren, so gut<sup>5</sup> sie können.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Exercise 14, III, 8, p. 136. <sup>2</sup> recht haben, *be right*. <sup>3</sup> Cf. Exercise 19, 2, p. 186. <sup>4</sup> Cf. 134. <sup>5</sup> Cf. Exercise 17, 6, p. 173.

B. 1. This village is very pretty; we have stayed<sup>1</sup> here many hours. Pretty villages are not often found<sup>2</sup> on those mountains; there are<sup>3</sup> no pretty villages at all<sup>4</sup> near<sup>5</sup> our city (Stadt, f.). 2. These<sup>6</sup> are stupid and tedious people. I could<sup>7</sup> not help staying (a) short time with (bei) them; I was glad<sup>8</sup> when (als) I could (get) away after a few days.

3. What (Was) can<sup>9</sup> be expected under<sup>10</sup> such sad (traurig) circumstances<sup>11</sup>? The people are poor; of course they cannot<sup>12</sup> think of anything<sup>13</sup> else but (als) of their hard (hart) work (Arbeit, f.). Just<sup>13</sup> imagine<sup>14</sup> how little time they have for other things (Sache, f.)! 4. That may<sup>15</sup> be the true cause (Ursache, f.) of their ignorance (Unwissenheit f.); but you (du), dear friend, why (warum) have you not spent these long days with something useful instead of wasting (verschwenden) your valuable (wertvolle) time? You are said<sup>16</sup> to have thought of nothing else but (als) of silly tricks since (seitdem) you have<sup>17</sup> been here. 5. I would<sup>18</sup> never (nie) have believed (glauben) that you could<sup>19</sup> be such a severe judge (Richter, m.). Did you not amuse yourself with your rich friends while (während) you were in the old imperial city (Reichsstadt, f.)?

<sup>1</sup> Cf. 144, 2; for *here*, cf. Exercise 7, 6, p. 52. <sup>2</sup> Cf. 287, 2. <sup>3</sup> Cf. Exercise 16, I, 1, p. 155. <sup>4</sup> *at all*, gar, to be placed before *no*. <sup>5</sup> *near*, nahe bei, with dative. <sup>6</sup> Cf. Exercise 13, II, 6, p. 117. <sup>7</sup> Cf. Exercise 14, II, 4 a, Note, p. 132. <sup>8</sup> *I was glad*, es freute mich. <sup>9</sup> Cf. Exercise 24, I, p. 240. <sup>10</sup> Cf. Exercise 7, 3, p. 52. <sup>11</sup> *circumstance*, Umstand, m. <sup>12</sup> *not* . . . anything, nichts. <sup>13</sup> *just*, nur, after imperative. <sup>14</sup> Cf. 256, 2. <sup>15</sup> Cf. Exercise 14, I, 2 b, p. 127. <sup>16</sup> Use modal auxiliary. <sup>17</sup> Cf. Exercise 11, 2, p. 89. <sup>18</sup> Cf. 170, 8. <sup>19</sup> Cf. Exercise 16, I, 2, p. 155.

C. 1. *Rette und Schmutz* geben dem (to him), der das goldne *Bließ* trägt, die edelsten Freiheiten. 2. Zwei so verschiedene *Charakte're*, wie *Egmont* und *Alba*, konnten nie ehrliche Freunde werden und sind es nie gewesen. 3. Die ganze Stadt *Brüssel* (*Brussels*) schien uns wie ein großes Feld, wenn ein furchtbares *Gewitter* von weitem (from afar) leuchtet. 4. Er ist mir feind<sup>1</sup>; ich weiß es wohl; er möchte<sup>2</sup> gern das große, schöne Haus besitzen, in dem wir wohnen; er ist immer neidisch gewesen und neidische Menschen kann ich nicht leiden. 5. Es tat uns leid, daß wir Sie gestern nicht besuchen konnten; unsere Mutter war plötzlich sehr krank geworden und wir erwarteten den Arzt jeden



Augenblick. 6. Haben Sie etwas Neues gehört? 7. Nein, gar nichts; ich bin kein Freund von den täglichen Zeitungen, sie berichten sehr oft falsche Nachrichten.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. 304. <sup>2</sup> Cf. Exercise 14, I, 3 b, Note, p. 129.

*D. Supply the proper endings of the adjectives :*

1. Den alt . . Bauern erschien der Friede als (as) ein groß . . Glück; sie sahen im Geiste die reich . . Ernten ihrer Kinderzeit und die gut . . Stunden, die<sup>1</sup> sie mit ihren Jugendgenossen verlebt hatten. 2. Die Folgen des dreißigjährig . . Krieges waren schrecklich; anstatt<sup>2</sup> reich . . , prächtig . . Häuser, deren<sup>1</sup> es vor dem Kriege so viele in den deutsch . . Städten gab,<sup>3</sup> sah man nur groß . Haufen (von) Ruinen. 3. Doch waren die Völker froh, daß der lang . , blutig . Krieg vorüber war. 4. „Ich, unglücklich . Mann,“ rief der arm . Bauer, „und du, meine lieb . Frau, wir mußten auf dem hart . . Felde unter<sup>4</sup> der heiß . . Sonne arbeiten.“ 5. „Ihr, stolz . . Fürsten,<sup>5</sup> auf euren hoch . . Schlössern bleibt ihr müßig; und durch unsrer Hände<sup>6</sup> Arbeit seid ihr reich geworden; die arm . . , elend . . Bauern solltet ihr deshalb nicht verachten.“ 6. Auf dem schneeig . . Gipfel des hoch . . Berges gaben die Schweizer (Swiss) einander die Rechte<sup>7</sup> und schworen einen feierlich . . Eid, dem lieb . . Vaterlande stets treu zu bleiben.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Exercise 13, II, 5, p. 117. <sup>2</sup> anstatt, prep. with genitive. <sup>3</sup> Cf. Exercise 16, I, p. 155. <sup>4</sup> Cf. Exercise 7, 3, p. 52. <sup>5</sup> Cf. 106, 2. <sup>6</sup> Cf. 90. <sup>7</sup> Cf. 301, 1.

## LESSON XXVIII

### I

#### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

**306.** Adjectives are compared; that is, a **comparative** and **superlative** degree are formed from the simple adjective. In comparison, the latter form is called **positive**.\*

\* The subject of the comparison of adjectives has been anticipated, at least in part; cf. Exercise 13, I, 5, p. 111.

The endings for the comparative and superlative are respectively **-er** and **-(e)st**, not only for monosyllabics but for all adjectives; thus, *reich*, *rich*, *reicher*, *richer*, *reichst*, *richest*; *angenehm*, *agreeable*, *angenehm-er*, *-st*; *wissenschaftlich*, *scientific*, *wissenschaftlich-er*, *-st*; (*Wissenschaft*, *science*, *wissen*, *know*). For the pronunciation of *st* before *i*, see 24, 3.

1. Adjectives ending in *e*, *el*, *er*, *en* drop this *e* before the comparative ending **-er**; they retain it before the superlative ending **-st**: *leise*, *low*, *soft*, *leis-er*, *leise-st*; *dunkel*, *dark*, *dunkler*, *dunkelst*.

2. After sibilants (*ß*, *ß*, *z*, *sch*) and generally after *b*, *t* and *st*, the superlative takes the ending **est** to avoid any harsh or unpronounceable combination: *schwarz*, *black*, *schwärzer*, *schwärzest*; *stolz*, *proud*, *stolzer*, *stolzest*; *frisch*, *fresh*, *frischer*, *frischest*; *weiß*, *white*, *weißer*, *weißest*; *hübsch*, *pretty*, *hübscher*, *hübschest*.

a. After *isch*, the superlative ending is either **est** or only **t**: *der modischste Anzug*, *der modischste Anzug*, *the most fashionable attire*; *der herrlichste Fürst*, *der herrlichste Fürst*, *the most imperious prince*.

3. After a vowel, except *e*, the ending of the superlative may be **st** or **est**: *grau*, *grey*, *grauer*, *grauest* or *grauft*.

4. Adjectives that are used as predicates only (304) are generally neither compared nor declined.

5. Participles, unless used in the sense of adjectives, ought not to be compared: *die besorgteste Frau*, *the most apprehensive (anxious) woman*. There are many violations of this rule both in the literary and colloquial language.

6. When of two qualities, appertaining to the same object, one is asserted to surpass the other, the comparison is properly indicated by *mehr*, *more*: *Hannibal war mehr schlau als tapfer*, *Hannibal was more cunning than brave*.

7. When of two qualities one is claimed to be less than the other, the comparison is denoted by *weniger* or *minder*, *less*: *er ist weniger dumm als böshaft*, *he is less stupid than malicious*.

8. As in English, the comparative and not the superlative is used when only two objects are to be compared: *das schlimmere von zwei Übeln*, *the worse of two evils*.

9. When two objects are said to possess the same qualities in an equal degree, or when one object is said to possess two or more qualities in an equal degree, *so* (*as*) or *ebenso* (*just as*) is placed before the adjective and

wie (as) after it: der Kronprinz war ebenso despotisch wie der Kaiser, *the crown prince was just as despotic as the emperor*; die Königin ist ebenso gültig wie schön, *the queen is just as kind as (she is) beautiful*.

**307.** Some adjectives take the **umlaut** in the comparative and superlative; the commonest among them are:

alt,	älter,	älteste,	old
arg,	ärger,	ärgste,	bad
arm,	ärmer,	ärmste,	poor
hart,	härter,	härteste,	hard
jung,	jünger,	jüngste,	young
kalt,	kälter,	kälteste,	cold
krank,	kranker,	kränkst,	ill
klug,	klüger,	klügste,	wise
kurz,	kürzer,	kürzeste,	short
lang,	länger,	längste,	long
rot,	röter,	röteste,	red
scharf,	schärfer,	schärfste,	sharp
schwarz,	schwärzer,	schwärzeste,	black
stark,	stärker,	stärkste,	strong
warm,	wärmer,	wärmste,	warm

**308.** Adjectives with the stem-diphthong *au* do not take the umlaut: blau, blauer, blauest or blaueſt.

NOTE. Several adjectives, not given in 307, occur at times with the umlaut: bang, *afraid*; blaß, *pale*; dumm, *stupid*; fromm, *pious*; farg, *miserly*; klar, *clear*; naß, *wet*; schmal, *narrow*; zahm, *tame*; gesund, *healthy*; zart, *tender*. However, it is preferable not to use the umlaut.

**309. Irregular comparison:**

gut,	good,	besser,	best
viel,	much,	mehr,	meist
hoch,	high,	höher,	höchſt
nah,	near,	näher,	nächſt
groß,	great, large,	größer,	größt

a. By way of exception, another comparative is formed of *mehr*; this double comparative „mehrere“ is used almost exclusively in the plural „mehrere“, *several*, although the neuter singular is found in phrases like darüber läßt sich noch mehreres sagen, *still more can (lets itself) be said about it*; später ein mehreres, *more (I shall write or say) later on*.

b. The only irregularity in *hoch* is the *h* instead of *ch* in the comparative „höher“; cf. also declension of *hoch*, 297, 2. In *nahe*, the *h* is changed to *ch* in the superlative „nächst.“

*Groß* takes merely *t* instead of *st* in the superlative „größt“; the regular form *größest* occurs but rarely.

## II

### Declension of Comparatives

**310.** Comparatives follow the same rules as simple adjectives in regard to declension.

**311.** They are therefore uninflected, when used as predicates, in apposition, or as adverbs; they are declined, when used as attributives or substantives, and then follow either the strong or weak (or mixed) declension of adjectives: *dein Haus ist schöner als das meines Bruders*, *your house is more beautiful than that of my brother*; *jenes Bergschloß, stärker als andere Festen im Lande, gehört dem König*, *that mountain-castle, stronger than all the other fortresses in the country, belongs to the king*; *er hat schöner gehandelt als sein Sohn*, *he has acted more beautifully than his son*; *einen schöneren Wald als diesen habe ich nie gesehen*, *I have never seen a more beautiful forest than this one*.

1. The beginner is apt to mistake the comparative ending *er* for the declensional ending *er*: *ein reicher Mann* is “a rich man”; “a richer man” is „*ein reich-er-er Mann*,“ the first *er* being the comparative ending, the second *er* the declensional. Of course the uninflected comparative has the same ending as the positive of the strong (or mixed) declension: *er ist reicher als ich*, *he is richer than I*; *Sie sind ein reicher Mann*, *you are a rich man*.

### 312. Examples :

*Reicherer Mann*, *richer man*; *schönere Blume*, *more beautiful flower*; *größeres Haus*, *larger house*.

#### STRONG DECLENSION

#### WEAK DECLENSION

##### Singular

##### MASCULINE

N. *reicherer Mann*  
G. *reicher(es)en Mannes*  
D. *reicherem Manne*  
A. *reicheren Mann*

jeder *reichere Mann*  
jedes *reicheren Mannes*  
jedem *reicheren Manne*  
jeden *reicheren Mann*

## FEMININE

N.	schönere Blume	diese schönere Blume
G.	schönerer Blume	dieser schöneren Blume
D.	schönerer Blume	dieser schöneren Blume
A.	schönere Blume	diese schönere Blume

## NEUTER

N.	größeres Haus	manches größere Haus
G.	größer(es)en Hauses	manches größeres(en) Hauses
D.	größere(m) Hause	manchem größerem Hause
A.	größeres Haus	manches größere Haus

## Plural

	M. F. N.		M. F. N.
N.	reichere Männer	alle reicheren Männer	
G.	schönerer Blumen	jener schöneren Blumen	
D.	größeren Häusern	manchen größeren Häusern	
A.	reichere Männer	alle reicheren Männer	

## (MIXED DECLENSION)

a. After mein, etc. (294).

## Singular

	M.		N.
N.	ein reicherer Mann	sein größeres Haus	
A.		Ihr schöneres Land	

The remaining cases are like the weak declension.

## TRANSLATION 28 a

A. 1. Du mußt stärker<sup>1</sup> und größer werden und vielleicht auch etwas klüger,<sup>1</sup> ehe du eine solche<sup>2</sup> schwere Arbeit beginnen kannst.  
 2. Gestern ist es viel wärmer<sup>1</sup> gewesen als es heute ist; wir werden heute<sup>3</sup> Nachmittag aufs (to the) Land gehen; unsere kleinen Schwestern sind schon vor ein paar Stunden hingegangen.  
 3. Bitte, entschuldigen Sie mich; wollten Sie nicht die Güte haben, uns frischere Äpfel zu bringen? 4. Es schien mir auch, als ob diese Milch noch viel saurer wäre als die, welche wir gestern tranken. 5. Mein Bruder ist zwei Jahre älter<sup>1</sup> als ich und meine Schwester ist vier Jahre jünger<sup>1</sup>; sie würde in die (to) Schule gehen, wenn sie nicht zu jung wäre. 6. Schwarze Nacht

bedeckte das Schlachtfeld; die Blitze erhellten es auf (for a) kürzere<sup>1</sup> Zeit und darnach schien es noch schwärzer<sup>1</sup> als vorher. 7. Gestern wurden mein älterer<sup>1</sup> Bruder und ich von unserem Onkel zum Diner eingeladen, aber meine jüngere<sup>1</sup> Schwester war plötzlich sehr krank geworden und deshalb sind wir Alle zu Hause geblieben.

<sup>1</sup>Cf. 307. <sup>2</sup>Cf. 295, 3. <sup>3</sup>heute, here, *this*.

### III

#### Declension of Superlatives

**313.** Superlatives are declined when used as attributives or substantives, and then follow either the strong or weak (or mixed) declension of simple adjectives.

1. They are seldom found without an article or some other limiting word before them (293), and therefore occur chiefly in the weak (or mixed) declension: das größte Glück, *the greatest happiness*; sein höchster Ehrgeiz, *his highest ambition*; mein liebste Kind! *my dearest child*!

2. However, they are met occasionally without any limiting words before them, especially in exclamations: liebster Freund! *dearest friend*! du schönste Göttin! *thou most beautiful goddess*! auf der Insel höchstem Berge, *on the island's highest mountain*. In such cases they belong to the strong declension.

#### 314. Examples:

Ältester Mann, *oldest man*; kürzeste Nacht, *shortest night*; kleinstes Kind, *smallest child*.

#### STRONG DECLENSION

#### WEAK DECLENSION

##### Singular

##### MASCULINE

N. ältester Mann  
G. ältest(es)en Mannes  
D. ältestem Manne  
A. ältesten Mann

jeder älteste Mann  
jedes ältesten Mannes  
jedem ältesten Manne  
jeden ältesten Mann

## FEMININE

N.	kürzeste Nacht	jene kürzeste Nacht
G.	kürzester Nacht	jener kürzesten Nacht
D.	kürzester Nacht	jener kürzesten Nacht
A.	kürzeste Nacht	jene kürzeste Nacht

## NEUTER

N.	kleinstes Kind	welches kleinste Kind
G.	kleinst(en) Kindes	welches kleinst(en) Kindes
D.	kleinstem Kinde	welchem kleinsten Kinde
A.	kleinstes Kind	welches kleinstes Kind

## Plural

	M. F. N.		M. F. N.
N.	älteste Männer	die ältesten Männer	
G.	kürzester Nächte	der kürzesten Nächte	
D.	kleinsten Kindern	den kleinsten Kindern	
A.	älteste Männer	die ältesten Männer	

## (MIXED DECLENSION)

a. After mein, etc. (294).

## Singular

	M.		N.
N.	mein schönster Baum	mein kleinstes Kind	
A.		sein größtes Haus	

The remaining cases are like the weak declension.

**315. Absolute Superlative.**

The absolute superlative conveys the idea, without implying any comparison with other objects, of general preponderance, excellence, supremacy, etc.

1. It is often expressed by an adverb and the adjective in the positive; the adverbs thus used are *sehr*, *very*; *recht*, *right* (equivalent to *very*); *überaus*, *extremely*; *höchst*, *in the highest degree*; *äußerst*, *utmost, exceedingly*; *außerordentlich*, *extraordinarily*; *herzlich*, *heartily*; *ungeheuer*, *enormously*, etc.: *sehr süßes Obst*, *very sweet fruit*; *recht schöne Äpfel*, *very beautiful apples*; *es ist mir überaus angenehm*, *it is extremely pleasant to me*; *ich bin höchst überrascht*, *I am greatly surprised*; *er war herzlich froh*, *he was heartily glad*.

a. Notice that the adverb *recht* is very properly used to form a superlative with the following adjective; „*recht schön*“ is very good German, although “right beautiful” is not considered good English.

2. From the examples given in 1 above, it is evident that this absolute superlative is used attributively as well as predicatively.

### 316. Predicate Relative Superlative.

The **superlative** is used as a **predicate** to denote **relative** comparisons.

1. The idea of comparison may be expressed by the superlative preceded by the definite article: *dieser Garten ist der schönste*, *this garden is the most beautiful (one)*.

a. This superlative conveys the idea of direct comparison or, in other words, denotes a relation to **other** objects. In the above example, *this garden* is compared with another garden or other gardens.

b. The relative superlative may be qualified by *aller*: *das ist der aller-schönste Garten*, *that is the most beautiful garden of all*, or by a phrase with *von* or other prepositions: *der jüngste war der unglücklichste von seinen Söhnen*, *the youngest was the unhappiest of his sons*; *ich bin der traurigste unter den Göttern*, *I am the saddest among the gods*.

2. The predicate of the superlative may also be denoted by a **prepositional phrase**; that is, by *an* with the definite article, dative singular neuter, *dem*, and in this case **always** contracted to *am*: *am schönsten*.

a. This superlative also expresses relation, not, however, to other objects, but to the **same object** under different circumstances of time, place, accomplishments, etc.: *in der Nähe dieses großen Baumes ist unser Garten am schönsten und schattigsten*, *our garden is most beautiful and shady in the neighborhood of this large tree*.

NOTE. In this case we do not refer to the relation of “*our garden*” to other gardens as in 316, 1 a; we merely express a comparison between one place “in the neighborhood of this large tree” and some different place where “*our garden*” would not be so “*beautiful and shady*.”

b. Another example will illustrate the same idea: *Als Strategier war von Moltke am größten*, *von Moltke was greatest (at the greatest) as a strategist*. In this case *the strategist von Moltke* is not compared with different objects, that is, with other strategists in the German or any other army. We



simply refer to him and to him alone, that is, to the relation of one of his accomplishments to any other **he** possessed and compare the former with the latter. As a strategist, he was **greatest**; as a general of the cavalry, for instance, he was not so great.

3. A predicate relative superlative is not used in its uninflected (stem) form, except in *allerliebſt*, **most lovely**.

### 317. Adverbial Relative Superlative.

The superlative is not used in its uninflected form, like the positive and comparative, to denote the function of an adverb.\*

1. The adverbial idea is expressed by *am* and the dative of the superlative to denote or imply the comparison of one object with another or with others (relative comparison): *von allen Fürſten des Landes hatte ſich Graf Egmont am meiſten ausgezeichnet*, *of all the princes of the country Count Egmont had distinguished himself the most* (more than any other); *er verkaufte dieſe Schuhe am billigſten*, *he sold these shoes the cheapest* (cheaper than any one else); *der König hat ihn am freundlichſten behandelt*, *the king has treated him in the most friendly manner* (more so than he has treated any one else).

### 318. Adverbial Absolute Superlative.

The adverbial idea is expressed by *aufſ* (*auf daß*) and the accusative neuter singular of the superlative to denote an absolute fact. There is no comparison of one object with another or with others: *er verkaufte dieſe Schuhe aufſ billigſte* (as cheap as he could); *der König hat ihn aufſ freundlichſte behandelt* (in the friendliest manner possible, without any reference to the manner in which he treated others).

319. 1. Some adverbs are formed from superlatives by adding the suffix *enſ* to the stem: *erſtenſ*, *first*, *in the first*

---

\* A few exceptions in 319, 2.

*place; bestens, in the best way, very much; höchstens, at the highest, at the most.*

2. A few superlatives, used adverbially, are found in their uninflected form: *ergebenst, most devotedly; gefälltst, if you please; gehoramt, most obedient; jüngst, recently.*

## TRANSLATION 28 b

*A.* 1. Die großen Dörfer dort könnte man die **malerischsten** in dieser Gegend nennen, wenn nicht so oft ein starker (thick) Nebel darüber (over them) **hing**e. 2. Unsere lieben Freunde wurden von ihrem Lehrer **gelobt**, weil sie am fleißigsten gewesen waren. 3. Ich war weniger fleißig, weil ich krank zu Hause war. 4. Die **Gefangenen** wurden aufs **härteste** behandelt; unsere Freunde behandelte der feindliche **Feldherr** am **härtesten**. 5. Er ist der allerärmste in unserm Dorf; er hat **jüngst**<sup>1</sup> seine **Eltern** verloren und ist ohne Freunde in der **Welt**. 6. Wissen Sie schon, daß jene großen Güter gestern aufs **billigste** verkauft wurden? 7. Von den höchsten Bergen in dieser Gegend ist die **Aussicht** recht<sup>2</sup> hübsch; es ist schade,<sup>3</sup> daß es hier immer so stark regnet. 8. Jener **kleine Knabe** wurde von seinem Lehrer aufs strengste bestraft, weil er am faulsten und **unartigsten** gewesen war.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. 319, 2. <sup>2</sup> Cf. 315, 1 a. <sup>3</sup> Cf. 278, 9.

*B.* 1. The fog was thicker on the mountains than (als) in the valleys (Tal, n.). A thicker fog prevailed (herrschte) along<sup>1</sup> this region near (bei) the great lake,<sup>2</sup> but the fog was thickest on<sup>3</sup> the sea-coast (Meeresküste, f.). 2. The most industrious pupils (Schüler, m.) received (erhalten) the highest prizes (Preis, m.) from our teachers. 3. His father was a very sick man; his greatest joy (Freude, f.) was to read<sup>4</sup> the best books<sup>5</sup> he could obtain (bekommen) from (aus) the nearest library (Bibliothek, f.). 4. The enemy (pl. of Feind,

m.) pretend<sup>6</sup> to have treated<sup>4</sup> their prisoners in the most humane (menshlich) manner. 5. Our parents were the poorest people (Leute) in the village, yet (doch) they had better friends in the city than the richest peasants<sup>7</sup> (had). 6. The richer merchants<sup>8</sup> sold their goods (Waare, f.) cheaper than the others<sup>9</sup> (did). 7. The mountains in Switzerland (die Schweiz) are higher than those<sup>10</sup> in Bavaria (Bayern); there are<sup>11</sup> no high mountains in our region; the highest mountains are found<sup>12</sup> in Asia (Asien) and South America (Südamerika). The view from the tops (Spitze, f.) of [the] most mountains in Switzerland is the finest (schön) one<sup>5</sup> (man) can imagine.<sup>13</sup> 8. It rained harder<sup>14</sup> on the high mountains yesterday than (it did) in the city. 9. The<sup>15</sup> stricter the teachers are, the<sup>15</sup> more the pupils will learn; lazy and naughty pupils are expelled (ausschließen) from our school.

<sup>1</sup> *along, längs*, with genitive. <sup>2</sup> *lake, der See*. <sup>3</sup> *on, an*; cf. Exercise 7, 3, p. 52. <sup>4</sup> Cf. Exercise, 11, 6, p. 90. <sup>5</sup> Relative pronoun cannot be omitted in German. <sup>6</sup> Use modal auxiliary. <sup>7</sup> *peasant, Bauer*; cf. 134. <sup>8</sup> *merchant, Kaufmann*, plur. *Kaufleute*. <sup>9</sup> *other, ander*. <sup>10</sup> Cf. Exercise 13, II, 4, p. 117. <sup>11</sup> Cf. Exercise 16, I, 1, p. 155. <sup>12</sup> Cf. 287. <sup>13</sup> Cf. 256, 2. <sup>14</sup> Order of words: *yesterday on the high mountains harder*. <sup>15</sup> *the . . . the, je . . . desto*; after the comparative with *je*, use the transposed order; after the comparative with *desto*, the inverted.

C. 1. Es war allerliebste<sup>1</sup> von Ihnen, daß Sie mir die schönsten Rosen aus Ihrem Garten zu meinem Geburtstage schickten; es freute<sup>2</sup> mich, daß Sie an mich dachten. 2. Es ist sehr spät; die Tore der Stadt sind<sup>3</sup> geschlossen; die Bürger müssen äußerst<sup>4</sup> vorsichtig sein, da die Feinde, obschon sie von unsern tapfern Soldaten geschlagen wurden, wieder näher zu kommen scheinen. 3. Er war mir der nächste, der teuerste Freund; meine ganze Familie wurde von ihm aufs treueste beschützt. 4. Der niedere Adel ist immer auf den höheren Adel eifersüchtig gewesen, beide auf die Fürsten, und alle drei Stände waren die eifersüchtigsten auf die reichen, freien Reichsstädte. 5. Die Arbeit, welche Sie

zu tun hatten, war recht leicht und **doch** haben Sie dieselbe am **langsamsten** getan und noch dazu<sup>5</sup> auf's **nurrichtigste**. 6. Sagen Sie mir gefälligst,<sup>6</sup> welche von Schillers Gedichten Ihnen am meisten gefallen haben; unser Lehrer hat uns seit **Anfang** des Jahres die besten davon (of them) auf's schönste **vorgelesen**.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. 316, 3. <sup>2</sup> Es freute mich, *I was glad (it rejoiced me)*. <sup>3</sup> Why not werden? <sup>4</sup> Cf. 315, 1. <sup>5</sup> noch dazu, *moreover, besides*. <sup>6</sup> Cf. 319, 2.

## LESSON XXIX

### PRONOUNS. — PERSONAL PRONOUNS

**320.** The pronouns are divided into :

1. **Personal.**
2. **Possessive.**
3. **Demonstrative.**
4. **Interrogative.**
5. **Relative.**
6. **Indefinite.**

### **321. Personal Pronouns.**

The personal pronouns are:

#### FIRST PERSON

	<b>Singular</b>		<b>Plural</b>	
N.	ich	<i>I</i>	wir	<i>we</i>
G.	meiner (mein)	<i>of me</i>	unser (unsrer)	<i>of us</i>
D.	mir	<i>to me</i>	uns	<i>to us</i>
A.	mich	<i>me</i>	uns	<i>us</i>

#### SECOND PERSON

N.	du	<i>thou</i>	ihr	<i>ye</i>
G.	deiner (dein)	<i>of thee</i>	euer (eurer)	<i>of you</i>
D.	dir	<i>to thee</i>	euch	<i>to you</i>
A.	dich	<i>thee</i>	euch	<i>you</i>

## THIRD PERSON

Singular					
MASCULINE			FEMININE		NEUTER
N.	er	<i>he</i>	sie	<i>she</i>	es <i>it</i>
G.	seiner (sein)	<i>of him</i>	ihrer	<i>of her</i>	seiner (sein) (es) <i>of it</i>
D.	ihm	<i>to him</i>	ihr	<i>to her</i>	ihm <i>to it</i>
A.	ihn	<i>him</i>	sie	<i>her</i>	es <i>it</i>

## Plural

## M. F. N.

N.	sie	<i>they</i>
G.	ihrer	<i>of them</i>
D.	ihnen	<i>to them</i>
A.	sie	<i>them</i>

**322.** 1. The personal pronouns are of common gender throughout, except that the singular of the third person has a different form for each gender: *ich*, armer Mann, *I, poor man*; *du*, ehrliche Frau, *thou, honest woman*; *wir*, arme Männer und Frauen, *we, poor men and women*; *du*, armes Geschöpf, *thou, poor creature*; *er*, der reiche Graf, *he, the rich count*; *sie*, die große Königin, *she, the great queen*.

2. The shorter and older forms of the genitive singular, *mein*, *bein*, *sein*, instead of *meiner*, *deiner*, *seiner*, occur now mainly in poetry or archaic style: *gedenke sein*, *remember him*; *ihr spottet mein*, *ye mock at me*.

**323.** 1. The personal pronouns in English often have precisely the **same** form for the indirect (dative) and the direct (accusative) objects, the preposition *to* to distinguish the former from the latter not always being a necessary element. But the German pronouns have a **different** form in the dative and in the accusative for the first and second persons singular (*mir*, *miß*; *dir*, *diß*), and for the third person singular (*ihm*, *ihn*; *ihr*, *sie*), and plural (*ihnen*, *Shnen*; *sie*, *Sie*).

NOTE. In the first and second persons plural, the dative and accusative are alike in form: *uns*, *euch*.

2. The beginner is inclined to make mistakes, especially in translating the English indirect object (dative) by the German accusative. The best way to avoid such errors is to ascertain what is the direct object; for instance, in the phrase "*I wrote him a letter*," it is not "*him*" I wrote, but "*a letter*" which I wrote "*to him*," ich schrieb ihm (not ihn) einen Brief. Again, in "*I bought them a house*," it is "*the house*" I bought "*for them*," ich kaufte ihnen ein Haus. This question can be further determined by asking one's self whether a preposition, "*to*" or "*for*," can be inserted before one of the nouns without changing the meaning of the sentence.

### 324. Omission of Personal Pronouns.

1. The nominative of the personal pronouns is usually expressed in connection with the verb.

2. In the imperative (152), Sie, er, sie, wir, always accompany the verb, but du and ihr occur only to denote emphasis: *Reihen Sie mir den Bleistift, lend me the pencil; gebe er mir das Bild, let him give me the picture; schreibe sie mir einen Brief, let her write me a letter; gehen wir ins Haus, let us go into the house; komm du mit mir, denn deine Schwestern sind zu müde, do (thou) come with me, for thy sisters are too tired, but komm mit mir.*

3. In poetry, commercial letters and colloquial use, as in English, the pronouns ich and du are often omitted. The omission of er, wir, ihr, sie (plural) is less common: *Habe nun ach! Philosophie . . . studiert! I have now alas! studied philosophy . . . ; möchte wohl selbst ihn kennen lernen, I should like myself to get acquainted with him; hast or hast's bemerkt? (colloquially) have you noticed it? Ihr Geehrtes vom ersten Mai habe erhalten, I have received your favor (honored letter) of May 1.*

4. Remember the colloquial phrase (ich) bitte (*I pray, I beg*), *please*, when asking a favor, but in reply to *I thank you*, bitte means *you are welcome*; bitte sehr, *you are entirely welcome*.

5. (Ich) danke or danke Ihnen, or danke sehr or danke bestens or danke schön or schönstens = *I thank you, thank you very much, ever so much, etc.*

6. At table, however, *ich danke* means *no, I thank you*; e. g., *wollen Sie eine Tasse Tee haben? Ich danke, will you have a cup of tea? No, I thank you.* On the other hand, *I thank you (I'll thank you) for a cup of tea*, is in German, *darf ich Sie um eine Tasse Tee bitten?* or, *geben Sie mir gefälligst eine Tasse Tee.*

7. *Sehr verbunden* for *ich bin Ihnen sehr verbunden, I am very much obliged to you.*

### 325. The Personal Pronouns in Address.

1. In German, as in other languages, the second person singular was originally the only pronoun employed in addressing one person.

2. In the language of every-day life, *du* is used in familiar intercourse such as prevails in the family circle between parents and children, husband and wife, also among intimate friends and children, and likewise in addressing inferiors, animals, inanimate objects, etc.

3. As *thou* in English, *du* is used in addressing God, in all religious forms, and in poetry.

4. The pronoun *ihr*, plural of *du*, is used in addressing several persons each one of whom would, singly, be addressed with *du*; thus *ihr* is properly used only in a plural sense in the language of to-day. It is then written *Ihr*.

a. During an earlier period of the language, *Ihr* was the polite way of addressing one person. It is the prevailing form in classical literature before the 19th century.

5. Except under the circumstances just mentioned in 2, 3 and 4 (hence in the **large majority** of cases met with by any foreigner), the third person plural pronoun *sie*, *they*, is used in addressing one person or more than one. It is then, for distinction, written with a capital initial: **Sie**.

6. It is, therefore, obvious that *du* is **always** used for *thou* and sometimes for *you* (2 above).

NOTE. It is self-evident that *du*, *ihr*, **Sie**, and their different cases must be used in connection with the proper corresponding possessives *dein*, *euer*, *Ihr*, etc. (Exercise 3, 3, p. 26); yet the beginner is inclined to make mistakes. Do not use *dein*, *thy*, with **Sie**, *you*, or *Ihr*, *ihr*, *your*, with *du*, *thou*: "*Have you seen your father?*" not *hast du Ihren Vater gesehen* or *haben Sie deinen Vater gesehen*, but *hast du deinen Vater gesehen* or *haben Sie Ihren Vater gesehen?*

**326. Agreement of Pronoun and Noun.**

1. As in other languages, the pronouns of the third person agree with the noun to which they refer in gender and number. Since many inanimate objects in German are masculine or feminine, *er* or *sie*, when representing the former, lose their characteristics as 'personal' pronouns in the strict sense of the word; *es* rarely refers to a person.

**Examples:** *ich brauche ihn* (den Stuhl), *I need it (the chair)*; *wir müssen sie* (die Feder) *haben, we must have it (the pen)*; *sie verkauften es* (das Haus), *they sold it (the house)*.

NOTE 1. This subject of agreement of pronoun and noun had to be anticipated; cf. Exercise 5, 3, p. 38.

NOTE 2. *Es* is often abbreviated to *'s*, especially in colloquial language.

2. With such neuters as *Weib, woman, wife*; *Fräulein, young lady, Miss*; *Mädchen, Mädchen, girl*, the natural and not the grammatical gender is usually indicated by the personal pronoun: *gestern besuchte uns das Fräulein Müller, sie blieb den ganzen Nachmittag bei uns, Miss Müller called on us yesterday, she stayed with us (at our house) the whole afternoon.*

a. Yet *das Kind, child*, is represented by *es*; likewise *das Männlein, little man*; *das Söhnlein, little son*.

**327.** When referring to inanimate objects, the pronouns of the third person are rarely found in the genitive or dative, or after a preposition. Instead of the genitive or dative, the demonstrative pronoun *derselbe* (355) is sometimes used; if the pronoun be governed by a preposition, the adverb *da* (before vowels, "dar") is used, followed by the preposition and written as one word with it: *davon, of it, from it*; *daraus, out of it*; *damit, with it*; *dadurch, through it*; *dabei, at it, near it*, etc., *haben Sie schon die Geschichte gehört? Nein, ich weiß nichts davon, have you already heard the story? No, I know nothing about it*; *ich nehme Ihr Wort dafür, I take your word for it*; *daraus sehen Sie, from this you see.*

a. Compare *thereof, thereby, therefrom, therewith*, etc., in English.

**The Pronoun *es***

**328.** The fact that *es* agrees with the neuter noun to which it refers has been previously mentioned (Exercise 5, 3, p. 38, and 326, 1).



SPECIAL USES OF *es*

**329.** For *es* as the indefinite subject of impersonal verbs, or verbs sometimes used impersonally, cf. 274 and 275.

1. For the peculiar use of *geben* as an impersonal verb, cf. Exercise 16, I, 1, p. 155.

**330.** For *es* as the indefinite subject of verbs used impersonally in the passive, cf. 275 and 283.

**331.** *Es*, used as the subject of *sein*, *to be*, denotes identity, regardless of the gender or number of the predicate noun; in the singular it corresponds to *it*, in the plural to *they*; *es ist mein Schwager*, *it is my brother-in-law*; *es war meine Schwiegermutter*, *it was my mother-in-law*; *es ist eine Schmach*, *it is a disgrace*; *es sind meine Geschwister*, *they are my brothers and sisters*; *es sind Engländer*, *they are Englishmen*; *kennen Sie diese Grammatik?* *gewiß, es ist die meinige*, *do you know this grammar? certainly, it is mine*.

a. If the subject has just been clearly mentioned, the definite personal pronouns *must* be used: *die Schwestern meiner Frau werden uns bald besuchen, sie sind Französinen*, *my wife's sisters will visit us soon; they are French ladies*.

**332.** When the predicate is itself a personal pronoun, as in *it is I*; *it was you*; *it was they*, the order of words is reversed in German and the verb agrees in number and person with the new subject: *Sie sind es*, *it is you*; *wir waren es*, *it was we*; *er war es*, *it was he*; *ich bin es*, *it is I*; *waren Sie es?* *was ist you?* *ich bin es nicht*, *it is not I*.

**333.** The pronoun *es* frequently serves as the apparent subject, while the real subject follows later, that is, after the verb, and thus *es* introduces the inverted order. The verb agrees in number with the real subject. *Es*, in this sense, unless it can be rendered by *there*, is untranslatable: *es war einmal ein König*, *there was once a king*; *es ließ sich Vieles davon sagen*, *much might be said about it (would allow itself to be said)*; *es warnte mich ein Traum*, *a dream warned me*.

a This *es* is called an "expletive." While it may serve a rhetorical purpose, its use is unnecessary as far as the bare meaning of the phrase is

concerned, and even the inversion can often be brought about by some other word being placed at the beginning of the sentence: einmal war ein König; davon ließ sich Vieles sagen; mich warnte ein Traum.

**334.** As *indefinite subject or object*, es serves to represent words of a general, indefinite character, like *it, matters, affairs, business, things*, etc., es geht zurück mit diesem edlen Haus, *the affairs of this noble house are in a bad way*; es leidet keinen Aufschub, *the matter brooks no delay*; bis dahin haben Sie's gebracht! *you carried matters as far as that (to that extremity)!*

**335.** As *indefinite predicate*, es represents the idea previously expressed by some word or a whole clause. It either requires no translation at all, or may be rendered by *so*: denken Sie, daß er bald gesund wird? Ich hoffe es, *do you think he will be well soon? I hope so*; kühn war das Wort, weil es die Tat nicht war, *the word was bold, because the deed was not (so)*.

**336.** As *subject or object*, es may anticipate the idea of the following clause: es gefällt mir nicht, daß er sich gerade jetzt so still verhält, *I do not like his keeping so quiet just now (his . . . now pleases me not)*; ich weiß es, daß er uns nicht glaubt, *I know that he does not believe us*.

### 337. Reflexive Use of the Personal Pronouns.

1. A reflexive pronoun is a pronoun which, as the object of the verb (in the genitive, dative or accusative), or when governed by a preposition, indicates the same person or thing as the subject of the sentence.

a. For the reflexive pronouns, cf. 257; when used in a reciprocal sense, cf. 270.

#### TRANSLATION 29 \*

- A. 1. Friede! Was gibt's<sup>1</sup> mit dem Bauer da?  
 2. 's<sup>2</sup> ist ein Schelm, hat<sup>3</sup> im Spiel betrogen.  
 3. Hat er dich betrogen etwa?  
 4. Ja, und hat mich rein<sup>4</sup> ausgezogen.

---

\* From Schiller's "Wallenstein," first part; "Wallensteins Lager," 'Wallenstein's Camp.' The speakers are soldiers of different regiments encamped in Pilsen, Bohemia, and typically represent the opinions of their generals.

5. Wie? Du bist ein Friedländischer<sup>5</sup> Mann,  
Kannst dich so wegwerfen und blamieren,  
Mit einem Bauer dein Glück zu probieren?  
Der<sup>6</sup> laufe,<sup>7</sup> was er laufen kann.
6. Liebe Herren, bedenkt's<sup>8</sup> mit Fleiß,<sup>8</sup>  
's<sup>9</sup> ist des Kaisers Will' und Geheiß.
7. Werden<sup>3</sup> uns viel um den Kaiser scheren.
8. Laß er<sup>9</sup> mich das<sup>6</sup> nicht zweimal hören.
9. 's<sup>9</sup> ist aber doch so, wie ich gesagt,<sup>10</sup>
10. Ja, ja, ich hört's<sup>11</sup> immer so erzählen,<sup>12</sup>  
Der Friedländer<sup>13</sup> hab'<sup>14</sup> hier allein zu befehlen.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Exercise 16, I, 1, p. 155. <sup>2</sup> Cf. 326, Note 2. <sup>3</sup> Cf. 324, 3. <sup>4</sup> rein ausziehen, colloquial, *clean out altogether, fleece altogether*. <sup>5</sup> One of Wallenstein's titles was Herzog von Friedland, *duke of Friedland*; Friedländisch is the adjective derived from the noun. Friedländischer Mann may be translated by *man in (Friedland's) Wallenstein's army*. <sup>6</sup> Cf. Exercise 13, II, 4, p. 117. <sup>7</sup> Subjunctive in the sense of the imperative; was, idiomatic, *as fast as*. <sup>8</sup> mit Fleiß, *carefully (with industry)*. The idea that the emperor is, after all, the supreme commander-in-chief of the army is expressed in the lines of 6 and 8, while the sentiment of absolute obedience to Wallenstein alone is denoted in 7, 9 and 10. <sup>9</sup> er, here pronoun of address = du. <sup>10</sup> Cf. Exercise 4, 3 a, p. 33. <sup>11</sup> Cf. 336. <sup>12</sup> Translate by infinitive passive. <sup>13</sup> Friedländer familiar for Herzog von Friedland, cf. 5 above. <sup>14</sup> Cf. Exercise 13, II, 3, p. 116.

B. 1. Bitte, nehmen Sie Platz; es ist mir sehr angenehm Ihre Bekanntschaft zu machen. 2. Sehr verbunden<sup>1</sup> für Ihre Güte; seit einigen Wochen schon wünsche<sup>2</sup> ich Ihnen meine Aufmerksamkeit zu machen. 3. Sie haben uns die größte Freude gemacht, da Sie uns gestern so unerwartet besuchten und uns allen so schöne Geschenke mitbrachten, wir danken Ihnen bestens<sup>3</sup> dafür. 4. Bitte sehr,<sup>4</sup> es macht<sup>5</sup> mir immer das höchste Vergnügen meinen Freunden eine Überraschung zu bereiten. 5. Fräulein Braun hat Ihnen gestern geschrieben, nicht wahr<sup>6</sup>? Ich hoffe, daß es ihr gut geht; wenn Sie ihr schreiben, bitte, empfehlen<sup>7</sup> Sie mich ihr aufs beste. 6. Wer klopft? Ich bin es. Wer sind Sie? Wie heißen<sup>8</sup> Sie? Was wollen Sie? 7. Sie sind es, nicht

wahr,<sup>6</sup> der vorgestern Abend einen Brief für uns ins Haus gebracht hat? 8. War sie es nicht, die euch das lange Märchen erzählte? 9. Er muß es wohl<sup>9</sup> gewesen sein, durch den das ganze Geheimnis in der Stadt bekannt wurde.

<sup>1</sup>Cf. 324, 7. <sup>2</sup>Cf. Exercise 11, 2, p. 89. <sup>3</sup>Cf. 319, 1. <sup>4</sup>Cf. 324, 4. <sup>5</sup>machen, here = give. <sup>6</sup>Cf. Exercise 9, 3 a, p. 66. <sup>7</sup>empfehlen, etc., give her my best regards. <sup>8</sup>heißen, intransitive, here, be called; wie heißen Sie, what is your name (how are you called). <sup>9</sup>Cf. Exercise 9, 3 b, p. 66.

C. 1. Was it you whose<sup>1</sup> acquaintance we made at<sup>2</sup> our neighbor's house? 2. It would have been<sup>3</sup> very agreeable to us<sup>4</sup> to take a seat and [to] stay<sup>5</sup> with<sup>6</sup> you in order to<sup>7</sup> make the acquaintance of your cousins.<sup>8</sup> 3. Do you wish to pay your respects to the ladies? They have been in the city<sup>9</sup> some weeks. 4. It would<sup>10</sup> have given them the greatest pleasure, if you (du) could have<sup>11</sup> visited them. 5. May<sup>12</sup> I thank you (dative) for (für) these presents? They are beautiful. 6. You are entirely welcome<sup>13</sup>; it has always<sup>14</sup> given me great joy to show<sup>15</sup> you (323, 2) my friendship (Freundschaft, f.). 7. You have brought those letters along, have you not? 8. You (Du) had been hoping, I suppose,<sup>16</sup> to meet<sup>17</sup> us here. 9. Some one<sup>18</sup> is knocking. Who is it? It is I. What is your name? 10. I wonder<sup>16</sup> who can<sup>19</sup> be the man that brought those letters for you (thee)? 11. Please tell us the beautiful fairy story of<sup>20</sup> the enchanted princess. 12. I<sup>21</sup> do not like<sup>22</sup> people (Leute) who are always pretending<sup>23</sup> to know<sup>24</sup> the secrets of the whole city.

<sup>1</sup>Cf. Exercise 13, II, 5, p. 117. <sup>2</sup>at the house of, bei. <sup>3</sup>Cf. Exercise 11, 5, p. 90. <sup>4</sup>Order of words: to us very agreeable. <sup>5</sup>stay, bleiben. <sup>6</sup>with, bei. <sup>7</sup>Cf. Exercise 18, 3, p. 180. <sup>8</sup>cousin, der Vetter (127). <sup>9</sup>Cf. Exercise 7, 6, p. 52, and Exercise 11, 2, p. 89. <sup>10</sup>Cf. 170, 8. <sup>11</sup>Cf. 168, 2. <sup>12</sup>Use dürfen. <sup>13</sup>Cf. 324, 4. <sup>14</sup>always after (to) me. <sup>15</sup>show, zeigen. <sup>16</sup>Cf. Exercise 9, 3 b, p. 66 and Exercise 16, I, 3, p. 155. <sup>17</sup>meet, antreffen, cf. 247, 3. <sup>18</sup>Some one, man. <sup>19</sup>Use mögen. <sup>20</sup>of, von; enchant, verzaubern, cf. Exercise 13, II, 1, p. 116; princess, Prinzessin. <sup>21</sup>Begin the sentence with: People who. <sup>22</sup>Cf. Exercise 14, I, 3 b, p. 128. <sup>23</sup>Cf. Exercise 14, II, 6 d, p. 133, and 2, 4, p. 21. <sup>24</sup>know, wissen; cf. Exercise 11, 8, p. 90.

D. 1. Warum freuen Sie sich nicht, Herr<sup>1</sup> Kapitän? Sie haben sehr gute Nachrichten von Ihrem Herrn<sup>1</sup> Vater erhalten, nicht wahr? 2. Gewiß, aber mir selbst ist nicht sehr wohl<sup>2</sup>; ich bin eben von einer langen Reise zurückgekehrt und habe mich sehr ermüdet. 3. Was gibt's<sup>3</sup> Neues in der Stadt, Herr<sup>1</sup> Regierungsrat? 4. Nichts Besondere<sup>4</sup>; die Wahlen zum (for the) Reichstag haben eben stattgefunden und auf den Straßen wird gesungen,<sup>5</sup> geschrien, gesprungen und gerauft. 5. Bedienen Sie sich jetzt dieser Feder, Herr<sup>1</sup> Major? 6. Nein, ich habe nichts zu schreiben, wenigstens jetzt nicht; vielleicht morgen nach Ankunft der Post werde ich einige Briefe zu beantworten haben. 7. Wie befinden Sie sich heute morgen, lieber Herr<sup>1</sup> Onkel? 8. Sehr wohl, danke<sup>6</sup> euch, Kinder; wie geht's euch? 9. Ganz gut, danke schön,<sup>6</sup> wir freuen uns sehr Sie wieder bei uns<sup>7</sup> zu sehen; wir, Kinder, haben uns schon lang auf<sup>8</sup> Ihre Ankunft gefreut.

<sup>1</sup> Title for politeness. <sup>2</sup> Cf. 277, 2. <sup>3</sup> Cf. Exercise 16, I, 1, p. 155.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. 302, 2. <sup>5</sup> Cf. 283. <sup>6</sup> Cf. 324, 3 and 5. <sup>7</sup> bei uns, (with us) at our house (French, "chez nous"). <sup>8</sup> auf, in anticipation of.

## LESSON XXX

### POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

338. 1. The possessives are :

mein, <i>my</i>	corresponding to	ich, genitive	mein(er)
dein, <i>thy</i>	"	du	dein(er)
sein, <i>his</i>	"	er	sein(er)
ihr, <i>her</i>	"	sie	ihrer
sein, <i>its</i>	"	es	sein(er)
unser, <i>our</i>	"	wir	unser
euer, <i>your</i>	"	ihr	euer
ihr, <i>their</i>	"	sie	ihrer
Ihr, <i>your</i>	"	Sie	Ihrer

NOTE 1. For practical reasons, the declension of the possessives had to be given before (Exercise 3, 1 *b* and 3, p. 25); a restatement of the paradigms in this place is, however, demanded by a systematic presentation of the subject.

2. The possessive adjective, when used **attributively** (before its noun), must agree in gender, number and case with the word expressing the **object possessed**; the latter follows the possessive adjective: *mein Tisch, my table; unsere Bitte, our request; Ihr Eigentum, your property.*

**339.** 1. The declension of the possessive **adjectives** in the singular is the same as that of the indefinite article *ein* (57, 1); in the plural, they are declined like *dieſer* (Exercise 3, 1 *a*, p. 26).

### *Mein, my*

	MASCULINE	Singular FEMININE	NEUTER	Plural M. F. N.
N.	mein	meine	mein	meine
G.	meines	meiner	meines	meiner
D.	meinem	meiner	meinem	meinen
A.	meinen	meine	mein	meine

### *Unſer, our*

N.	unſer	unſ(e)re	unſer	unſere
G.	unſ(e)reſ	unſ(e)rer	unſ(e)reſ	unſ(e)rer
D.	unſ(e)rem	unſ(e)rer	unſ(e)rem	unſ(e)ren
A.	unſ(e)ren	unſ(e)re	unſer	unſ(e)re

NOTE 1. For the dropping of *e* in *unſer* and *euer*, cf. Exercise 3, 3, Notes 1 and 2, p. 26 (like the adjectives in 297).

NOTE 2. The only forms without case-endings are the nom. sing. masc. and the nom. and acc. sing. neuter.

### 2. Examples :

*Sein Onkel, his uncle; ihre Mutter, their mother; unſer Kind, our child.*

### **Singular**

N.	ſein Onkel	ihre Mutter	unſer Kind
G.	ſeines Onkels	ihrer Mutter	unſ(e)reſ Kindes
D.	ſeinem Onkel	ihrer Mutter	unſ(e)rem Kinde
A.	ſeinen Onkel	ihre Mutter	unſer Kind

Plural		
N. seine Onkel	ihre Mütter	unf(e)re Kinder
G. seiner Onkel	ihrer Mütter	unf(e)rer Kinder
D. seinen Onkeln	ihren Müttern	unf(e)ren Kindern
A. seine Onkel	ihre Mütter	unf(e)re Kinder

**340.** The possessive adjective may, exceptionally, be used as a predicate; it remains then uninflected (like any other adjective in the same position, 289): *das Heer ist dein, the army is yours.*

**341.** As stated in 57, 4, when no ambiguity can arise, the definite article with or without the dative of the corresponding personal (or reflexive) pronoun **may** be used instead of the possessive, especially when reference is made to mental or moral conditions, or to parts of the body or to clothing: *er hat den Verstand verloren, he has lost his reason (mind)*; *es will mir nicht aus dem Sinn (kommen), I cannot get it out of my mind*; *er schüttelte den Kopf, he shook his head*; *er hat es sich in den Kopf gesetzt, he has taken it into his head*; *er hat den Hals gebrochen, he has broken his neck*; *ziehen Sie den Rock an, put on your coat.*

NOTE. It is by no means wrong to use the possessive: *er hat seinen Verstand verloren*; *er schüttelte seinen Kopf*, but the forms with the definite article are more common.

**342.** 1. The possessives are often used **absolutely**, representing a noun understood. They are then genuine pronouns and correspond to **mine, thine, yours, ours, theirs**, not to *my, thy, your, our, their*.

2. The form *his* is the only one that can be an adjective as well as a pronoun: *his house*; *this house is his*.

**343.** 1. The possessive pronouns, used **absolutely**, are declined like *dieser* (Exercise 3, 1 a, p. 25), or like strong adjectives (295, 1).

Singular			Plural
MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER	M. F. N.
<i>Mine</i>			
N. meiner	meine	meines	meine
G. meines	meiner	meines	meiner
D. meinem	meiner	meinem	meinen
A. meinen	meine	meines	meine

*Ours*

N.	unf(e)rer	unf(e)re	unf(e)reß	unf(e)re
G.	unf(e)reß	unf(e)rer	unf(e)reß	unf(e)rer
D.	unf(e)rem	unf(e)rer	unf(e)rem	unf(e)ren
A.	unf(e)ren	unf(e)re	unf(e)reß	unf(e)re

NOTE. The only difference between this declension and the paradigms in 339, 1, is in the nominative singular masculine and the nominative and accusative singular neuter. These cases (of the possessive adjective) have no declensional endings.

2. Or, when preceded by the **definite article**, the possessive pronouns have but **two** endings: **e** or **en**; the former (e) in the **whole nominative singular** and the **accusative feminine and neuter singular**; the latter (en) in all the other cases (like weak adjectives, 295, 2):

	<b>Singular</b>			<b>Plural</b>
	<b>MASCULINE</b>	<b>FEMININE</b>	<b>NEUTER</b>	<b>M. F. N.</b>
	<i>Mine</i>			
N.	der meine	die meine	daß meine	die meinen
G.	deß meinen	der meinen	deß meinen	der meinen
D.	dem meinen	der meinen	dem meinen	den meinen
A.	den meinen	die meine	daß meine	die meinen

*Yours*

N.	der eu(e)re	die eu(e)re	daß eu(e)re	die eu(e)ren
G.	deß eu(e)ren	der eu(e)ren	deß eu(e)ren	der eu(e)ren
D.	dem eu(e)ren	der eu(e)ren	dem eu(e)ren	den eu(e)ren
A.	den eu(e)ren	die eu(e)re	daß eu(e)re	die eu(e)ren

NOTE 1. The nominative and accusative feminine singular have the same ending (e) in all forms (cf. 339, 1, and 347, 1 and 2)

NOTE 2. The accusative singular masculine has the same ending (en) in all forms (cf. 339, 1, and 343, 1 and 2).

3. Or the possessive pronouns may add the derivative ending *ig* (*unſer* and *euer* drop their *e*) to their stem. They are preceded by the definite article and therefore have the same endings as *der meine*, etc., in 2 above.



<b>Singular</b>		
<b>MASCULINE</b>	<b>FEMININE</b>	<b>NEUTER</b>
N. der deinige	die deinige	das deinige, <i>thine</i>
G. des deinigen	der deinigen	des deinigen "
D. dem deinigen	der deinigen	dem deinigen "
A. den deinigen	die deinige	das deinige "

**Plural**

M. F. N.

die deinigen  
 der deinigen  
 den deinigen  
 die deinigen

NOTE. Notes 1 and 2 to 2 above apply also here.

1. There is no essential difference between *der meine* and *der meinige*, etc. The former, however, is used in literature more frequently than the latter.

2. The principle underlying the distinction as to the declensional endings between *meiner*, etc. on the one hand, and *der meine* or *der seinige*, etc. on the other, is the same as that stated in 292, 2.

**344.** 1. In the **predicate**, four forms of the possessive **pronoun** may be used: *das Haus ist mein* (uninflected), *meines*, *das meine*, *das meinige*.

2. The uninflected *mein*, etc., indicates merely the idea of property, while the other forms may be used to express emphasis: *das Pferd hier ist sein, aber das Pferd dort ist meines*, *the horse here (this horse) is his, but the horse there (that horse) is mine*; *sein Los ist meines*, *his lot (fate) is mine*.

3. After the indefinite subjects *es*, *das*, *dieß*, the uninflected form cannot be used: *wessen Haus ist das?* *Es ist meines*, *das meine* or *das meinige* (not *mein*), *whose house is that?* *It is mine*.

**345.** When the possessive **pronouns** are not used as predicates, one of the three forms in 343 may be selected; the uninflected *mein*, *dein*, etc., must not be employed: *deines*, *das deine* or *das deinige* (referring to *das Pferd*, *horse*) *hat das Wettrennen gewonnen*, *yours has won the race*; *ich habe den meinigen* (referring to *der Ring*, *ring*) *gefunden*, *I have found mine*.

**346.** The possessive pronouns may be used as substantives. They are then written with a capital initial letter, the masculine and feminine forms referring to people that are part of our family, acquaintances, friends and the like. Cf. Latin "mei, nostri." The neuter singular denotes material property, "meum et tuum," moral duty, etc.

Examples :

Die Meinigen waren damit zufrieden, den Ihrigen aber gefiel es nicht, *my friends (the members of my family) were satisfied with it, but it did not please yours*; jedem das Seinige geben, *give every one his due*.

**347.** 1. Note the phrases: ein Bekannter von mir, *an acquaintance of mine*; ein Freund von Ihnen, *a friend of yours*, and the like.

2. The German uses the **personal** pronoun, the English the **possessive pronoun** and the French the **possessive adjective** (*un de mes amis*).

**348.** The usual forms of ending a letter are: *Ergebenst* or ganz *Ergebenst* (*most devotedly*) or *Achtungsvollst*, *Hochachtungsvollst* (*with high(est) esteem*; *most respectfully*); *Ihr* or *der Ihre* or *der Ihrige* or *der Deine* (*yours*).

**349.** 1. The prepositions *wegen*, *halben*, *um . . . willen*, are found in combination with the possessive pronouns: *meinetwegen*, *for my sake*, *for aught I care*, *I do not care*; *deinethalben*, *for your sake*, *in your behalf*; *um seinetwillen*, *for his sake*.

NOTE. *Meinet*, *deinet*, *seinet*, *ihret*, *unsert*, *euer* come, in these combinations, from earlier dative plural forms: *meinen Wegen*, *seinen Halben* (from *Halb*, *half*, *behalf*), etc. In the sixteenth century, we find *meinentwegen*, *deinenthalben*, an excrescent *t* having developed in the meantime. Thence come the present forms: *meinet*, *deinet*, etc.

*Meinet*, in *um meinethwillen*, was originally an accusative: *um meinen Willen*, *for my sake*.

2. The adjective *gleich* used as a noun occurs in similar combinations: *meinesgleichen*, *ihrerergleichen*, *like me*, *like her*, *like them*.

#### TRANSLATION 30

- A. 1. Ich werde das Meinige tun, tun Sie das Ihrige.  
2. Wessen<sup>1</sup> Garten ist das<sup>2</sup>? Es ist der meine, und das große,

rote Haus an der Ecke der langen Straße ist auch mein. 3. Ein Bekannter von Ihnen hat mir eben gesagt, daß Sie sich entschlossen hätten,<sup>3</sup> unsre Stadt auf (for) ein paar Jahre zu verlassen. 4. Wir fürchten<sup>4</sup> uns vor seinesgleichen; solchen herzlosen Leuten kann man nicht trauen. 5. Benjamin Franklin hat den Blitzableiter erfunden, Columbus hat Amerika entdeckt. Manche Schüler vergessen zuweilen den Unterschied zwischen „erfinden“ und „entdecken.“ 6. Bitte, machen Sie die Tür auf, die in mein Zimmer führt. 7. Er hatte das Fenster schon aufgemacht, ehe wir ihn darum<sup>5</sup> gebeten hatten. 8. Sie kennen Herrn von Zedlig, nicht wahr? Er ist ein sehr guter Freund von uns.

<sup>1</sup> Wessen, *whose*. <sup>2</sup> Cf. Exercise 13, II, 4 and 6, p. 117. <sup>3</sup> Cf. Exercise 13, II, 3, p. 116. <sup>4</sup> Cf. 264. <sup>5</sup> darum, literally, *for it*; translate *to* or *to do so*.

B. 1. What has he been doing<sup>1</sup>? He has been visiting<sup>1</sup> (besuchen) his friends in the city and we have written (schreiben) to ours. 2. Is that house with the red roof (Dach, n.) yours? Your house is very large, is it not? It was<sup>2</sup> built (bauen) last (leßt) year, I presume.<sup>3</sup> 3. A friend of ours is said<sup>4</sup> to<sup>5</sup> have decided to spend<sup>6</sup> a few years in our city. 4. You<sup>7</sup> (Du) may<sup>8</sup> trust him (dat.) for aught I care; but I have always been afraid of people who can be so heartless as (wie) he is. 5. By<sup>9</sup> whom<sup>10</sup> was<sup>2</sup> the lightning-rod invented? Do you not remember<sup>11</sup> that I told you (dat.) in what (welch) year America was<sup>2</sup> discovered by<sup>9</sup> Columbus? 6. You (Du) have lost<sup>12</sup> your hat (Hut, m.) and coat (Rock, m.), have you not? Do not forget<sup>13</sup> what I tell you<sup>14</sup>! It seems (scheinen) as if<sup>15</sup> you, too,<sup>16</sup> had lost<sup>12</sup> your mind. 7. You will break<sup>17</sup> your neck if you run (laufen) so fast (schnell). An acquaintance of mine broke his leg (Wein, n.) when (als) he was about<sup>18</sup> to<sup>5</sup> alight<sup>19</sup> from his horse. 8. Why (Warum) have you not put<sup>20</sup> your coat on? A friend of yours is waiting<sup>21</sup> for you. 9. Please do it for my sake;

your friends and mine wish (wünschen) it. 10. That house is his; his garden is at the corner of the street that leads to (zu) the theatre (Theater). 11. Whose horse has won<sup>22</sup> the race? It was yours, I suppose,<sup>23</sup> or (oder) can it have been mine? 12. These<sup>24</sup> are our rings (Ring, m.); where (wo) are hers?

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Exercise 2, 4, p. 21. <sup>2</sup> Cf. 284 and 285. <sup>3</sup> Use adverb for *I presume*, and cf. Exercise 16, 1, 3, p. 155. <sup>4</sup> Use modal auxiliary for *is said*. <sup>5</sup> Is to be translated here? <sup>6</sup> spend, zubringen, cf. 247, 3. <sup>7</sup> Begin this sentence with *for aught I care*. <sup>8</sup> Use können. <sup>9</sup> Cf. 282, 1. <sup>10</sup> whom, wem. <sup>11</sup> Cf. last example in 265. <sup>12</sup> Cf. first example in 341. <sup>13</sup> Use second person singular; cf. Note to 193, 2. <sup>14</sup> Cf. 323, 2. <sup>15</sup> as if, als ob, followed by subjunctive. <sup>16</sup> too, auch. <sup>17</sup> Cf. last example but one in 341. <sup>18</sup> Use modal auxiliary for *was about*. <sup>19</sup> alight, steigen. <sup>20</sup> Cf. last example in 341. <sup>21</sup> wait for, warten auf (with accusative). <sup>22</sup> Cf. first example in 345. <sup>23</sup> Use adverb for *I suppose*. <sup>24</sup> Cf. Exercise 13, 6, p. 117.

C. 1. Herr Braun hat seinen Diener hergeschickt und läßt Sie fragen,<sup>1</sup> ob der Herr Oberst schon angekommen sei?<sup>2</sup> 2. Sagen Sie dem Mann, der Herr Oberst hat bis zwölf Uhr Dienst.<sup>3</sup> Hernach wird er wohl kommen. 3. Es<sup>4</sup> sind wohl nicht viele Töchter aus guten Familien beim Theater engagiert? 4. Nein, gnädige Frau,<sup>5</sup> die<sup>6</sup> sind meistens zu dumm dazu.<sup>7</sup> 5. Mehrere<sup>8</sup> gute Freundinnen von Ihnen sind heute morgen nach Leipzig abgereist, nicht wahr? 6. Ja, Punkt fünf Uhr haben sie den Gilzug dahin<sup>9</sup> genommen. 7. Mein Better und die Seinigen werden auch bald abreisen. 8. Es versteht sich<sup>10</sup> wohl von selbst, daß Sie Ihren Herrn Better begleiten werden. 9. Ich möchte gern,<sup>11</sup> aber es ist jetzt so viel bei uns (at our place) zu tun,<sup>12</sup> daß ich nicht leicht fortkommen kann. 10. Herr General, gehen Sie doch<sup>13</sup> zu Ihrem Arzt! Ich begreife nicht, warum Sie es nicht schon früher getan haben; Sie sind ja<sup>14</sup> krank. 11. Ich mag<sup>15</sup> den Arzt nicht; es<sup>16</sup> wird sich schon geben; es ist wohl weiter nichts als eine Erkältung.

<sup>1</sup> läßt Sie fragen, literally, *causes you to be asked*; translate, *makes inquiries or wants to know*. <sup>2</sup> Why subjunctive? <sup>3</sup> Dienst haben, *be on duty*. <sup>4</sup> Cf. 333. <sup>5</sup> gnädige Frau, literally, *gracious lady*; translate, *Madam or my*

*Lady.* <sup>6</sup> Cf. Exercise 13, II, 4, p. 117. <sup>7</sup> dazu, *for that.* <sup>8</sup> Cf. 309, a. <sup>9</sup> da-  
hin, literally, *thither*, may be omitted in translation. <sup>10</sup> Cf. 286, 2. <sup>11</sup> Cf.  
Exercise 14, I, 3 b, Note, p. 129. <sup>12</sup> Cf. Exercise 11, I, p. 89. <sup>13</sup> Cf. Exer-  
cise 10, I a, p. 75. <sup>14</sup> Cf. Exercise 10, 2, p. 76. <sup>15</sup> Cf. Exercise 14, I, 3 b,  
p. 128. <sup>16</sup> etc., *etc.*, *it will turn out all right.*

D. 1. Unser Onkel hat das Seinige den beiden Cousinen hin-  
terlassen, die bei ihm wohnten, nicht wahr? 2. Ja, **wenigstens**  
mir und den Meinigen hat er nichts **vermacht**. 3. Ja doch,<sup>1</sup> Sie  
haben ja<sup>2</sup> Ihr Haus von ihm erhalten. Sie **erinnern sich wohl**<sup>3</sup>  
nicht mehr? 4. Haben Ihre Pferde im **Wettrennen gewonnen**?  
Sie haben es ja<sup>2</sup> **bestimmt** erwartet. 5. Nein, die meinigen nicht;  
aber die<sup>4</sup> des Obersten, meines **Schwagers**.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Exercise 10, I b, p. 75. <sup>2</sup> Cf. Exercise 10, 2, p. 76. <sup>3</sup> Cf. Exercise  
9, 3 b, p. 66. <sup>4</sup> Cf. Exercise 13, II, 4, p. 117.

In the following sentences, substitute the personal pro-  
nouns and the corresponding possessive adjectives, as used  
in polite conversation, for those common in familiar  
language : \*

E. 1. Bist du mit deinem Schneider **zufrieden**? 2. Wo hast  
du deinen Brief **hingelegt**? 3. Du wirst wohl<sup>1</sup> nicht denken, daß  
deinem Lehrer eine **solche** Entschuldigung **genügt**. 4. Du hättest  
**dir einbilden können**,<sup>2</sup> daß dich deine Freunde nicht im Stiche  
lassen<sup>3</sup> würden. 5. Warum hast du deinem Vater nicht die ganze  
Wahrheit gesagt? 6. Es scheint mir, daß du wieder **recht**<sup>4</sup> faul  
gewesen bist; du kannst dir denken,<sup>5</sup> daß deine Eltern gar nicht  
mit dir **zufrieden** sind.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Exercise 9, 3 b, p. 66. <sup>2</sup> Cf. 170. <sup>3</sup> im Stiche lassen, *leave in the  
lurch.* <sup>4</sup> Cf. 315, I a. <sup>5</sup> Cf. 256, 2.

In the following sentences, substitute the personal pro-  
nouns and the corresponding possessive adjectives used  
in familiar language for those common in polite conversa-  
tion : \*

---

\* Cf. 325, 4, Note.

*F.* 1. Gehen Sie doch<sup>1</sup> mit uns, Sie haben ja<sup>2</sup> Zeit genug und Ihren Bruder sollten Sie auch **mitnehmen**. 2. Ihre Schwester hat unsere Tante besucht; Sie wissen wohl<sup>3</sup> schon, daß sie sich beide sehr gut amüsiert haben. 3. Sie treffen mich um (at) fünf Uhr zu Hause. 4. Fahren Sie heute<sup>4</sup> Abend in die Stadt? 5. Geben Sie mir gefälligst die Zeitungen, nachdem sie Ihr Bruder gelesen hat! 6. Treten Sie doch<sup>1</sup> nicht immer den Leuten<sup>5</sup> auf die Behen! 7. Sprechen Sie jetzt gut Deutsch? 8. Gute<sup>6</sup> Nacht! Schlafen Sie wohl! 9. Tragen Sie noch<sup>7</sup> immer Ihren alten Hut? 10. Messen Sie mir einen neuen Rock an!

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Exercise 10, 1 a, p. 75. <sup>2</sup> Cf. Exercise 10, 2, p. 76. <sup>3</sup> Cf. Exercise 9, 3 b, p. 66. <sup>4</sup> heute Abend, literally, *to-day evening*, translate *this evening*. <sup>5</sup> den Leuten, dative for genitive; translate as if it were auf den Behen der Leute or auf der Leute Behen. <sup>6</sup> Accusative; supply *I wish you*. <sup>7</sup> Cf. Exercise 2, 6, p. 21.

## LESSON XXXI

### DEMONSTRATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

#### I

#### Demonstrative Pronouns

**350.** The demonstratives are *der, die, das, that; dieser, diese, dieses, this; jener, jene, jenes, that; derjenige, diejenige, dasjenige, he, that; derselbe, dieselbe, dasselbe, the same; solch(er), solch(e), solch(es), such.\**

1. Derjenige, derselbe und solch are often called determinative pronouns.

2. All the pronouns given above may be used either as adjectives or as substantives.

#### DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVE: *der, die, das, that*

**351.** When used as a demonstrative adjective, *der* is pronounced with greater emphasis, which is sometimes indicated in

---

\* A few rules on the declension of the demonstrative pronouns have already been given. Cf. Exercise 13, II, 4, p. 117.

print by spaced type. It is declined like the definite article (55): *Den Bleistift will ich haben, den andern dort mag ich nicht, that pencil I want, the other one there I do not like.*

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN: *der, die, das, that, that one*

352. When used as a real pronoun (for a substantive), the declension of *der* differs from that of the definite article **only** in the **genitives singular and plural** and in the **dative plural**; in these cases **en** is added to the forms of the definite article and final **s** is doubled (becomes **ss**). The force of *der* as a demonstrative pronoun is also often indicated by a strong emphasis in pronunciation.

As a demonstrative pronoun, *der* is declined thus :

	Singular			Plural
	M.	F.	N.	M. F. N.
N.	<i>der</i>	<i>die</i>	<i>das</i>	<i>die</i>
G.	<i>dessen</i>	<i>derer</i>	<i>dessen</i>	<i>deren (derer)</i>
D.	<i>dem</i>	<i>der</i>	<i>dem</i>	<i>denen</i>
A.	<i>den</i>	<i>die</i>	<i>das</i>	<i>die</i>

1. The genitive plural *derer* is used instead of *deren* before a relative clause: *ich erinnere mich gern derer, die mich befreundeten, I gladly remember (remind myself of) those who befriended me.*

2. The neuters singular *das*, *dieses* (*dieß*) and sometimes *jenes* are used like *es* (299) as indefinite subjects, no matter what may be the gender or number of the predicate noun to which they refer; the intransitive verb (generally *sein* or *werden*), however, must agree with the predicate noun in number: *das ist die Blume, die ich gestern im Garten gepflückt habe, this is the flower I picked in the garden yesterday; dieß sind meine Handschuhe, these are my gloves; das wird ein Spitzbube werden, he will become a rascal.*

3. The pronoun *der* (like English *that* or *those*) is used to avoid the repetition of a word mentioned before; this is the case especially before a genitive or a phrase with *von*: *meine Pferde sind schneller als die des Grafen, my horses are swifter than those of the count; die Paläste von Paris zeichnen sich von denen Londons durch größere Schönheit aus, the palaces of Paris are distinguished (distinguish themselves) from those of London by (their) greater beauty.*

4. As in the case of the personal pronouns of the third person in connection with a preposition (326), combinations of *da* and the preposition are used instead of the demonstrative *der*, when the latter refers to **inanimate objects**: *wer sprach davon?* *who spoke of that?* *wir glaubten nicht daran*, *we did not believe in that.*

5. When the demonstrative happens to be the antecedent of a relative pronoun (*that which* or *what*), *da* must **not** be used, but instead the preposition followed by the appropriate case of the demonstrative: *an das, auf das, mit dem, not daran, darauf, damit*; *wir glaubten nicht an das, was er uns erzählte*, *we did not believe in what (that which) he related to us*; *er verließ sich nicht auf das, was ihm sein Freund versprach*, *he did not rely on what his friend promised him.*

6. The forms *des, der, deß*, for the genitive singular are no longer used, except in a few compounds: *deswegen, deshalb, on that account*; *desgleichen, dergleichen, such like, the like of that.*

### 353. The demonstrative adjectives and pronouns are :

*dieser, diese, dieses, this, this one.*

*jener, jene, jenes, that, that one.*

**NOTE.** The manner of inflecting these demonstratives was previously indicated (Exercise 3, I, p. 26), but as their proper place is among the pronouns, the declension of *dieser*, the type for *jener, jeder, mancher, solcher* and *welcher*, is again given.

#### Declension of *dieser* :

	Singular			Plural
	M.	F.	N.	M. F. N.
N.	<i>dieser</i>	<i>diese</i>	<i>dieses</i> ( <i>dieß</i> )	<i>diese</i>
G.	<i>dieses</i>	<i>dieser</i>	<i>dieses</i>	<i>dieser</i>
D.	<i>diesem</i>	<i>dieser</i>	<i>diesem</i>	<i>diesen</i>
A.	<i>diesen</i>	<i>diese</i>	<i>dieses</i> ( <i>dieß</i> )	<i>diese</i>

1. Generally speaking, *dieser* expresses nearness as to time and place; *jener*, remoteness. In reference to two objects recently mentioned, *dieser* corresponds to *the latter* and *jener* to *the former*. However, when no particular emphasis or distinction is necessary, *dieser* may stand for *that* as well as for *this*: *dieser Baum ist höher als jener*, *this tree is higher than that one*; *sehen Sie die zwei Gärten?* *jener ist groß und schön, dieser ist klein und armfelig*,



*do you see the two gardens, that one (the former) is large and beautiful, this one (the latter) is small and wretched.*

2. For the use of *dieses* (*dieß*) and *jenes* as indefinite subjects of intransitive verbs, see 352, 2.

3. The stem *jen* is the same as English *yon*; this fact ought to be borne in mind, as students often mistake *jener* for *jeder*, *each*, *every*, and vice versa.

**354.** The demonstrative, also called **determinative**, *derjenige, diejenige, dasjenige, he, that*, is a compound of the definite article and *jenig* (from *jen, yon, that*). Although written as one word, each component part is declined separately in its own way, *jenig* having the same endings (*e* or *en*) as *der meine* (343, 2) or *der deinige* (343, 3), or those of the weak declension of adjectives (295, 2). The chief stress rests on the article.

	Singular			Plural
	M.	F.	N.	M. F. N.
N.	<i>derjenige</i>	<i>diejenige</i>	<i>dasjenige</i>	<i>diejenigen</i>
G.	<i>desjenigen</i>	<i>derjenigen</i>	<i>desjenigen</i>	<i>derjenigen</i>
D.	<i>demjenigen</i>	<i>derjenigen</i>	<i>demjenigen</i>	<i>denjenigen</i>
A.	<i>denjenigen</i>	<i>diejenige</i>	<i>dasjenige</i>	<i>diejenigen</i>

1. *Derjenige* is **mainly** used as a **substantive**; it then forms the antecedent to a relative pronoun, *he (who), those (who), that (which)*, or is followed by a genitive or a prepositional phrase, *he, that one, those*; it is then more emphatic than the pronoun *der*: *diejenigen, welche das nicht begreifen können, those who cannot comprehend this*; *diejenigen von uns, unter Ihnen, those of us, among you*; *derjenige der Fürsten, he (that one) of the princes*.

2. Used as an **adjective**, *derjenige* is sometimes followed by a relative clause; it represents then the pronoun *der*, which can always be substituted for it: *diejenigen (die) Reden, welche Demosthenes hielt, those orations which Demosthenes delivered*; *dasjenige (das) Drama, welches Schiller schrieb, that drama which Schiller wrote*.

**355.** The demonstrative, also called **determinative**, *derselbe, dieselbe, dasselbe* (*der* and *selbe*), *the same*, is declined like *derjenige*, *der* and *selb* being inflected separately, but written as one word: *derselbe* is used as an adject-

tive or a substantive: er sagte mir dasselbe, *he told me the same (thing)*; es ist derselbe Mann, den Sie auch kennen, *it is the same man whom you also know*.

1. Derselbe, meaning *the same*, must have reference to some one or something **previously** indicated; however, besides this usage, it is often found as a substitute for the pronouns of the third person, er, sie, es (291):

Das war dieselbe Geschichte, *that was the same story*; das war derselbe, den wir in Paris angetroffen hatten, *that was the same man whom we had met in Paris*; wir fanden beide Damen zu Hause, eine derselben (von ihnen) war sehr krank, *we found both ladies at home; one of the same (of them) was very ill*; kennen Sie dieselbe? *do you know her (the same)?* instead of kennen Sie sie? to avoid the repetition of the same sound.

2. Derselbige and selbiger for derselbe are but very rarely met with in the language of to-day.

3. Notice the contracted forms am selben, zur selben, im selben: am selben Abend for an demselben Abend, *at the same evening*; im selben Monat for in demselben Monat, *in the same month*; zur selben Stunde for zu derselben Stunde, *at the same hour*.

4. Selber and selbst (*self*) are **never inflected**; they emphasize the noun or pronoun they qualify, following the latter, although not always immediately: die Feinde selbst bewunderten seinen Mut, *the enemies themselves admired his courage*; der König hat es selber (selbst) befohlen, *the king himself has ordered it*.

a. Selbst often occurs as an **adverb** meaning *even*, and then usually precedes the noun or pronoun which it qualifies; selber is **never** used adverbially: cf. er selbst gestand es, *he himself confessed it*, and selbst er gestand es, *even he confessed it*; er hat dem König selber getrotzt, *he has defied the king himself*; selbst dem König hat er getrotzt, *even the king he has defied*.

5. Notice the phrases von selbst, *of its own accord*; ein und derselbe, *one and the same*.

**356.** 1. The demonstrative, also called **determinative**,  
solch, *such*,

is used **adjectively** or **substantively**; its declension is like that of dieser (or an adjective of the strong declension, 295, 1): solche Männer, *such men*; solches Schicksal erwartete

er nicht, *such (a) fate he did not expect*; man glaubt solchen Leuten nicht gern, die uns einmal betrogen haben, *one does not like to believe such people as have once deceived us*.

2. Solch may be **preceded** by the indefinite article and is then of course declined like an adjective under the same circumstances (295, 3), ein solcher, eine solche, ein solches (*such a*): ein solches Selbstvertrauen, *such a self-confidence*.

3. Solch may be **followed** by the indefinite article; then it is not declined: solch ein Selbstvertrauen, solch ein Mann.

4. Notice that English *as* after *such* is translated by the relative pronoun *der* or *welche*: solche Leute, welche es glauben wollen, *such people as want to believe it*.

## II

### Interrogative Pronouns

**357.** The interrogatives are: *wer, who*; *was, what*; *welcher, welche, welches, what, which*; *was für ein, what kind of*.

1. *Wer, who*, and *was, what*, occur **only as pronouns** and consequently are never found in immediate connection with a noun. They have one and the same form for the singular and plural; *wer*, like *who*, refers to persons only, *was*, like *what*, to things.

NOTE. Distinguish *wer, who*, from *wo, where*.

2. *Welcher*, is used both as an **adjective**, in the sense of *what* or *which*, and as a **real pronoun**, meaning *which, which one, which ones*: welche Blumen haben Sie gekauft? *what flowers have you bought?* welche von diesen Uhren gefällt Ihnen am besten, *which one of these watches pleases you most (best)?*

**358.** Declension of *wer* and *was*:

N.	<i>wer, who</i>	<i>was, what</i>
G.	<i>wessen, wes, whose</i>	<i>wessen, wes, of what</i>
D.	<i>wem, to whom</i>	
A.	<i>wen, whom</i>	<i>was, what</i>

1. The genitive *wes* of *was* is found in combinations like *weswegen*, *weshalb*, *why*, *wherefore*, *on what account*, *for what reason*, correlatives of *deswegen*, *deshalb* (352, 6); otherwise *wes* occurs very rarely.

2. *Was* has no dative; in combination with a preposition governing the dative, *wo* (before vowels, *wor*) is substituted: *womit*, *with what (wherewith)*; *wobon*, *of what (whereof)*; *worin*, *in what (wherein)*; *worauf*, *on what (whereon)*: *wobon sprachen Sie?* *of what were you speaking?* *worauf bestand er?* *on what did he insist?*

a. Although there is the accusative *was*, the same combinations with *wo* or *wor* are frequently used with a preposition governing the accusative: *wodurch*, *through what*; *worum*, *about (around) what*; *wofür*, *for what*; yet *durch was*, *um was*, *für was*, etc., also occur: *wodurch ist er so reich geworden?* (*through what*) *how has he become so rich?* *worum handelt es sich?* *what is the question?* *wodurch (durch was) hat er sich ausgezeichnet?* *by what has he distinguished himself?*

b. The accusative of *wer*, referring to persons, and that of *was* in reference to things, must not be used indiscriminately, as is sometimes done in colloquial language: *für wen (not wofür) hielten Sie ihn?* *whom did you take him for?*

3. *Was* is often used in the sense of *warum*, *why*, and *wie*, *how*; *was scheltet ihr die Tochter?* *why do you scold your daughter?* *was rennt das Volk?* *why do the people run?* *was sucht ihr, mächtig und gelind, ihr Him-melstöne, mich im Staube?* *why do you, ye heavenly sounds, powerful and gentle, seek me here in the dust?*

359. *Welcher* (357, 2) may refer to persons or things; it is declined like *dieser*.

		Singular		Plural	
	M.	F.	N.	M. F. N.	
N.	<i>welcher</i>	<i>welche</i>	<i>welches</i>	<i>welche</i>	
G.	<i>welches</i>	<i>welcher</i>	<i>welches</i>	<i>welcher</i>	
D.	<i>welchem</i>	<i>welcher</i>	<i>welchem</i>	<i>welchen</i>	
A.	<i>welchen</i>	<i>welche</i>	<i>welches</i>	<i>welche</i>	

1. Regularly before the indefinite article and frequently before an adjective, *welcher* loses its ending, — the adjective in such cases changing to the strong declension: *welch ein Schauspiel!* *what a spectacle!* *welch schönes Land!* *what a beautiful country!*

360. *Was für*, *was für ein*, *what sort of*, *what kind of*, may refer to persons or things; *was für* is always used as

an adjective, was für ein, generally so, but sometimes as a real pronoun, in which case ein is declined like dieser (einer, eine, eines); für or für ein may be separated from was: was für ein Tuch ist das? *what kind of cloth is this?* was sind das für Leute? *what sort of people are those?* was wecken aus dem Schlummer mich für süße Klänge doch? *pray (tell me) what sweet sounds awaken me from my slumber?*

**361.** All the interrogatives are used also as relatives.

TRANSLATION 31 a

A. 1. Weshalb gibt<sup>1</sup> es ein solches **Geschrei** auf den Straßen und wessen **Hund** ist das? 2. Das ist der Hund unserer **Gräfin**; es ist derselbe, der gestern abend ins Dorf **gelaufen** ist. Er ist **toll**, man muß ihn **umbringen**; aber diese **Bauern** fürchten sich vor ihm und **laufen davon**. 3. Liebet diejenigen, die euch **hassen**, und segnet die, die euch **fluchen**. 4. Diejenigen Studenten, welche ihre Prüfungen bestanden haben, dürfen jetzt **Medizin praktizieren**. 5. Wir wurden von jenem **Pferdehändler** betrogen und mein alter **Onkel** hat mir immer gesagt, daß **jeder** Pferdehändler ein Dieb ist. 6. **Jedes** Fenster im Schlosse des Grafen ging auf einen **Balkon** und war **offen**, jene Türen aber waren zu (closed). 7. Ist das nicht derselbe **Pfarrer**, der auch letzten Sonntag hier **gepredigt** hat? 8. Gewiß, er predigt **zweimal** im selben **Monat** in der Hauptstadt und einmal in jenem Dorf. 9. Die **spanischen Granden** dürfen sich selbst vor dem König bedecken, sie sind sehr stolz darauf. 10. Womit wollen wir unsre **heutige Lektion anfangen**? Wir haben dieses und jenes gelernt; aber was für eine **ungeheure Masse Gegenstände** gibt<sup>1</sup> es **noch**, die wir gar nicht **betrachtet** haben!

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Exercise 16, I, 1, p. 155.

B. 1. These are the mad dogs we<sup>1</sup> saw last night. To whom do they belong<sup>2</sup>? Do you know<sup>3</sup> that one? Who

has killed that dog? 2. Has my dog run into your courtyard<sup>4</sup>? No, not yours; that of the countess. Your dog ran away; it was afraid of those peasants. 3. Of whom did you speak (ipredhen)? With what did you busy<sup>5</sup> yourself? 4. These<sup>6</sup> were the same students who, contrary<sup>7</sup> to [the] law, practised medicine before<sup>8</sup> they could pass<sup>9</sup> their examinations. 5. The streets of Berlin<sup>10</sup> are kept<sup>11</sup> just as clean<sup>12</sup> as those of Hamburg<sup>10</sup>; can the former be compared<sup>13</sup> with those of (von) Leipsic (Leipzig)? 6. Why (358, 1) did the parson preach in the old castle of the count instead of<sup>14</sup> in the same church<sup>15</sup> where he preached last week<sup>16</sup>? 7. Of what were the wives<sup>17</sup> of those Spanish Grandees proud and of whom were they afraid? 8. Let us remember<sup>18</sup> those who loved and blessed us and [let us] forgive<sup>19</sup> those who hated us. 9. Have you begun to learn your lesson? No, what kind of a lesson is it? 10. What sort of pictures<sup>20</sup> were on the balcony that faces the street near<sup>21</sup> [the] Frederick Square?

<sup>1</sup> Relative pronoun may not be omitted in German. <sup>2</sup> *belong*, gehören. <sup>3</sup> *know*, kennen. <sup>4</sup> *courtyard*, Hof, m. <sup>5</sup> *busy one's self*, sich beschäftigen. <sup>6</sup> Cf. 352, 2. <sup>7</sup> *contrary*, preposition, gegen; *law*, Gesetz, n. <sup>8</sup> *before*, ehe. <sup>9</sup> Cf. Exercise 11, 8, p. 90. <sup>10</sup> Genitive, strong declension. <sup>11</sup> *keep*, halten, cf. 284 and 285. <sup>12</sup> *just as clean as*, ebenso reinlich wie. <sup>13</sup> *compare*, vergleichen; cf. Exercise 24, 1, 240 and Exercise 11, 7, p. 90. <sup>14</sup> *instead of*, anstatt. <sup>15</sup> *church*, Kirche, f. <sup>16</sup> *week*, Woche, f. <sup>17</sup> *wife*, Frau. <sup>18</sup> *remember*, sich erinnern, with genitive. <sup>19</sup> *forgive*, vergeben, with dative. <sup>20</sup> *picture*, Bild, n. <sup>21</sup> *near*, bei; Frederick Square, Friedrichsplatz.

C.\* 1. Wo bin ich? Welches schöne Land!  
 Weinberge? Seh ich recht?  
 Und Trauben gleich zur Hand!  
 Hier unter diesem grünen Laube,  
 Seht, welch ein Stod! Seht, welche Traube!

\* From the scene in Auerbachs Keller in Göthe's *Faust*.

*D.\* Faust.* Hör, du mußt mir die Dirne schaffen!

*Mephistopheles.* Nun, welche?

*Faust.* Sie ging jußt vorbei.

*Mephistopheles.* Da die? Sie kam von ihrem Pfaffen,  
Der sprach<sup>1</sup> sie aller Sünden frei;  
Ich schlich mich hart am Stuhl<sup>2</sup> vorbei;  
Es ist ein gar<sup>3</sup> unschuldig<sup>4</sup> Ding,<sup>5</sup>  
Das eben für nichts zur Beichte ging;  
Über die hab' ich keine Gewalt.

<sup>1</sup> freisprechen, with genitive, acquit, absolve. <sup>2</sup> Stuhl here for Beichtstuhl; confessional (chair). <sup>3</sup> gar, absolutely, entirely. <sup>4</sup> unschuldig for unschuldiges; the ending es is sometimes omitted in poetry. <sup>5</sup> Ding, colloquially or poetically, creature.

*E.* 1. Kennen Sie die beiden Herren? Einer<sup>1</sup> derselben ist ein guter Bekannter von mir. 2. Der junge Offizier, welcher heute in seiner Garnison eintraf, ist wohl ein Freund von Ihnen, nicht wahr? 3. Nein, den kenn' ich gar nicht; er soll einer<sup>1</sup> von denen sein, die im letzten Jahre den Feldzug mitgemacht haben. 4. Ich gedenke derer, die mich in meiner Not befreundeten. 5. Der alte Hofnarr! Was für dummes Zeug<sup>2</sup> der schwätzt! Weshwegen schwätzt er so viel? Man kann kein Wort davon verstehen. 6. Es war ein Dieb, derselbe, der sich gestern hart an unsrem Garten vorbeigeschliffen hatte.

<sup>1</sup> Einer used here as a pronoun and declined like dieser. <sup>2</sup> dummes Zeug, nonsense (stupid stuff).

*F.* 1. Nur solche Leute, welche ernstlich studiert haben und ihr Fach gründlich verstehen, dürfen hoffen, auf unsrer Universität Lehrer zu werden. 2. Was für schöne Trauben Sie da haben! Solch schöne habe ich nie gesehen. 3. Die Sitten<sup>1</sup> und Gebräuche in Italien sind sehr verschieden von denen in den nördlichen Teilen Europas.

<sup>1</sup> Sitten und Gebräuche, manners and customs.

---

\* From Göthe's *Faust*; the maiden referred to is "Gretchen" (Marguerite).

## LESSON XXXII

## RELATIVE PRONOUNS

**362.** The relative pronouns are : **der, welcher, who, which, that ; wer, who (he who), whoever ; was, what, whatever, that which, a thing which ; was für, what sort of.**

The relatives **der** and **welcher, who, which, that**

**363.** 1. The relative **der** is declined like the demonstrative **der (352)** with the exception of the genitive plural, which is always **deren**, never **derer**.

2. The relative **welcher** is declined like the interrogative **welcher (359)**.

3. **Der** is a **pronoun only** ; **welcher** may serve as adjective or pronoun : **wir, die (wir) ihn kennen, we who know him ; sagen Sie mir, welches Haus gehört dem Künstler, tell me which house belongs to the artist ; Sie wissen wohl, welcher von jenen Herren es gesehen hat, you probably know which one of those gentlemen has seen it.**

4. Relative pronouns may **not** be omitted in German as they often are in English : **der Mann, den wir sahen, the man we saw.**

5. After **personal** pronouns, **der** is used in preference to **welcher** ; the personal pronoun is often repeated after the relative : **ich, der nichts davon wußte, I who knew nothing about it ; ihr, die ihr die Wahrheit gesagt habt, you who have told the truth.**

a. If the personal pronoun of the first and second person is repeated, the verb agrees with it, otherwise the verb is in the third person : **du, der du nichts davon verstehst, but du, der nichts davon versteht, you who do not understand anything about it.**

6. It is to a great extent a matter of taste, of euphony and rhythm, and of style, whether to use **der** or **welcher**, as in the case of *that* versus *which* in English ; yet phrases like **der, der der General war, he who was the general**, must be avoided ; say **der, welcher.**

7. The use of the genitive of **welcher** as a **pronoun** is exceedingly rare ; **der (dessen, deren)** ought to be used : **die Spanier, deren (not welcher) Stolz bekannt ist, the Spaniards, whose pride**



is known; das Haus, dessen Bewohner uns befreundeten, *the house, whose inhabitants befriended us.*

8. But if the relative is in the position of an adjective, **welcher** **must** be used, as **der** is a **pronoun only**: die Philosophen reden viel über Weisheit und Menschenliebe, **welcher** Tugenden sie selbst zuerst eingedenk sein sollten, *the philosophers talk a great deal about wisdom and philanthropy, of which virtues they should themselves be first mindful.*

9. Frequently the **demonstrative der** is used for the relative **der** or **welcher**: es war einmal eine Königstochter, die war sehr schön (instead of die sehr schön war), *there was once a king's daughter (and) she was very beautiful.*

**364.** **Der** and **welcher** may refer to persons or things: **der** Mann, **der** or **welcher**; **das** Haus, **das** or **welches**.

**365.** 1. For the dative and accusative of the relative pronouns **der** or **welcher**, if governed by a preposition and referring to inanimate objects, combinations of **wo**, *where*, with the preposition are often used; before a vowel **wor** is substituted for **wo**. Examples: **der** Berg, **woraus** die Lava floß, *the mountain from which (wherefrom) the lava flowed*; **die** Mittel, **wodurch** er reich wurde, *the means through which he became rich*; cf. 352, 4 and 358, 2.

a. Yet the preposition with the ordinary relative pronoun **may** be used: **der** Berg, **aus dem** or **aus welchem**; **die** Mittel, **durch die** or **durch welche**.

2. The combinations with **wo** (**wor**) **must** be used when the relative refers to a whole clause or to **etwas**, **nichts**, **alles**. Examples: **das** ist etwas **worauf** (not **auf dem** or **auf welchem**) er besteht, *that is something on which he insists*; es ist ihm ganz gleich, **worüber** die Leute reden, *it is all the same to him about what the people are talking*; Sie wissen **worauf** es ankommt, *you know on what it depends*; **das** ist es, **wovor** ich zittere, *that it is before which (in anticipation of which) I tremble.*

The relatives **wer**, *who (he who), whoever*; **was**, *what, whatever, that which, a thing which*, and **was für**, *what sort of*.

**366.** 1. **Wer** and **was** are declined like the corresponding interrogatives (358).

2. **Wer** and **was** are **pronouns only**: *wer es nicht begreifen kann, muß sehr dumm sein, (he) who cannot comprehend it must be very stupid*; *was er weiß, ist nicht viel, what (whatever) he knows is not much*.

3. **Wer** and **was** are **compound** relatives or, in other words, they each comprise the antecedent **and** the relative. Thus, logically, neither ought to be preceded by an antecedent.

4. **Wer** has no antecedent: *wer das gesagt hat (not der, wer), who (whoever) has said this*.

a. But the **demonstrative der** **may** be used **after** the clause beginning with the compound relative: *wer das getan hat, der hat nicht recht getan, who has done this, has not done right*.

b. When the cases of declension are **not** the same, the demonstrative **der** **must** be used **after** **wer**; the latter represents only the nominative: *wer seine Aufgabe nicht weiß, den bestraft der Lehrer, the teacher punishes him who does not know his lesson*. This use of **der**, etc., is common, if emphasis is to be added to the statement.

5. **Was** may have as antecedent a neuter pronoun like **es**, **das**, **alles**, **manches**, **viel**, **wenig**, **etwas**, **nichts**, or an adjective used as a noun (mostly in the superlative), or a whole clause: *Alles, was ich hier sehe, erinnert mich an meine Jugend, all that I see here reminds me of my youth*; *das Schönste, was es auf der Welt gibt, the most beautiful thing that there is in the world*; *die Leute wollten ihm nicht glauben, was er sehr übel nahm, people would not believe him, a thing which he took very much amiss*; *das ist es, was mir fehlt, that is it (the thing) what I am lacking (what is wanting to me)*; *manches, was er erzählt, many a thing (story) that he relates*; *das Erste und Letzte, was wir taten, the first and last things that we did*.

NOTE. Remember: the relative *that* in "*all that*" is **not** **das**, but **was**: *alles, was er weiß, all (everything) that he knows*.

6. **Wer** and **was** are often followed (immediately or not) by **auch**, *even*; **nur**, *only*, or **immer**, *ever*, to give an unmistakable emphatic force to those pronouns: *wer es auch getan hat, whoever has done it*; *was immer sein Plan sei, whatever may be his plan*. The meaning of *whoever*, *whatever*, may, however, be conveyed without the addition of the above adverbs.

7. Der is sometimes found as a compound relative: die uns kennen, denken besser von uns, *those who know us, think better of us (have a higher opinion of us)*; der uns sendet, kennt eure Pläne, *he who sends us, knows your plans*. In such cases der refers to a definite antecedent, wer does not.

8. The old genitive form wes as a relative pronoun is found only in compounds now: weshalb, weshalb, *wherefore, on which account*.

9. The forms of the relative was für, was für ein, *what sort of*, are the same as those of the corresponding interrogative (360): sehen Sie nur, was für ein schönes Kleid sie gekauft hat, *just see what sort (kind) of a beautiful dress she has bought*; sagen Sie mir doch, was für Blumen das sind, *pray tell me what kind of flowers these are*.

#### TRANSLATION 32 a\*

A. 1. Wann wird der dritte Mann kommen, der vollbringt, was Luther begonnen,<sup>1</sup> was Lessing fortgesetzt,<sup>1</sup> und dessen das deutsche Vaterland so sehr bedarf, der dritte Befreier? 2. Junger Freund, Sie werden nicht finden, was Sie suchen. Sie mögen recht haben,<sup>2</sup> daß die Freiheit eine neue Religion ist, die sich über die ganze Erde verbreitet. 3. Aber wie einst jedes Volk, indem<sup>3</sup> es das Christentum annahm, solches nach seinen Bedürfnissen und seinem eignen Charakter modelte, so wird jedes Volk, von der neuen Religion, von der Freiheit, nur dasjenige annehmen, was seinen<sup>4</sup> Lokalbedürfnissen und seinem Nationalcharakter gemäß<sup>4</sup> ist. 4. Ich, der ich Jahre lang mein Leben den höchsten moralischen Ideen gewidmet habe, kann nicht begreifen, wie du, der ein Mann von solch edlem Charakter ist, diese Ansichten teilen kannst. 5. Eine Frau wie sie, deren Wohltaten und Tugenden in der ganzen Stadt weit<sup>5</sup> und breit bekannt sind, kann sich<sup>6</sup> über das Geschwätz von Leuten, denen nichts in der Welt heilig ist, ruhig hinwegsetzen.<sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Exercise 4, 3 a, p. 33. <sup>2</sup> recht haben, *be right*. <sup>3</sup> indem ... annahm, literally, *while it accepted Christianity*, translate: *by accepting Christianity*.

\* The first three sentences are from Heinrich Heine's prose works.

<sup>4</sup> seinen . . . gemäß, according to its local (special) needs and its national character; the dative governed by the preposition gemäß often precedes the latter. <sup>5</sup> weit und breit, far and wide. <sup>6</sup> sich hinwegsetzen über, literally, set (put) one's self over (above) = disregard, pay no attention to.

B. 1. The man whose <sup>1</sup> services (Dienst, m.) we need so much has <sup>2</sup> not appeared. 2. You (Du), my friend, who began this work <sup>3</sup> so earnestly, pray <sup>4</sup> tell me when you will continue it. 3. Am I right or not in all that I said in the report <sup>5</sup> I have sent you? 4. What kind of political <sup>6</sup> freedom was this? The rich thought <sup>7</sup> only of their own needs and the poor people had to <sup>8</sup> work for them. 5. This is something we must think <sup>7</sup> of. 6. That is all (that) I knew <sup>9</sup> about it. 7. Whoever has said this, you must not believe him. <sup>10</sup> 8. These noble men who devoted their whole life to high ideals <sup>11</sup> cannot comprehend how those rich people whose selfishness <sup>12</sup> is known far and wide can feel <sup>13</sup> [themselves] happy. 9. The means <sup>14</sup> through which they acquired <sup>15</sup> their riches are to be despised. <sup>16</sup> 10. We know of what virtues these people boasted <sup>17</sup> and how little <sup>18</sup> they deserved the honors <sup>19</sup> bestowed upon them.

<sup>1</sup> whose = of whom is a pronoun. <sup>2</sup> Cf. 144, 1. <sup>3</sup> work, Arbeit, f; earnest, ernsthaft; use perfect for began. <sup>4</sup> Cf. Exercise 10, 1 a, p. 75. <sup>5</sup> report, Bericht, m.; send, senden. <sup>6</sup> political, politisch. <sup>7</sup> think of, denken an. <sup>8</sup> have to, müssen; work, arbeiten, cf. Exercise 11, 6, p. 90. <sup>9</sup> know about, wissen über. <sup>10</sup> Cf. 366, 4 b. <sup>11</sup> ideal, Ideal, n. (3d class, strong). <sup>12</sup> selfishness, Selbstsucht, f. <sup>13</sup> feel, fühlen; cf. Exercise 11, 8, p. 90 and 262. <sup>14</sup> Cf. last example in 365, 1. <sup>15</sup> acquire, erwerben, use perfect; riches, Reichthum, m.; use the plural, cf. 95, 2. <sup>16</sup> despise, verachten, cf. Exercise 11, 1, p. 89. <sup>17</sup> boast of, sich rühmen, with, genitive; cf. 262. <sup>18</sup> little, wenig; deserve, verdienen. <sup>19</sup> Translate: the honors (Ehre, f.) which one bestowed upon them; erweisen, with dative = bestow upon.

## LESSON XXXIII

## INDEFINITE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

**367. All.** All, *all*, whether **pronoun** or **adjective**, if declined at all, follows the strong declension of adjectives, (*aller, alle, alles*): *aller Ruhm ist dein, all the glory is thine*; *alle Freude ist dahin, all joy is gone*; *alles Unglück kam von seinem Leichtfinn, all misfortune came from his thoughtlessness*; *Alle haben es bemerkt, all have noticed it*.

1. The adjective *all* has the strong declension when it is immediately followed by its noun, as in the examples just given; before a possessive or *der*, it is usually and preferably not declined: *all sein Ruhm, all his glory*; *all die Freude, all the joy*; *all mein Unglück, all my misfortune*; *all mein Sehnen will ich, all my yearning, in der Lethe stillen Strom versenken, all my yearning, I will sink (immerse) in Lethe's tranquil stream*.

a. In a few phrases, especially after prepositions, *all* is declined: *bei or trotz alle dem or bei dem allen, in spite of all that*; *von alle dem, from all that*.

2. The neuter singular *alles*, if used alone, signifies "*everything*": *wir haben alles verloren, we have lost everything*.

3. *Alles* may refer to persons: *alles schreit und rennt, all (of them) shout and run*.

4. *All* cannot be used for *all* when the latter means *whole, entire*; the word *ganz* is substituted: *all the year round, das ganze Jahr hindurch*; *I have waited for him all night, die ganze Nacht habe ich auf ihn gewartet*; yet *alle Welt, all the world, everybody*, "*tout le monde*," is as correct as *die ganze Welt*.

5. *All* is often used in a distributive sense for *every*: *alle zwei Tage, every other day*; *alle drei Jahre, every third year*; *alle paar Minuten, every few minutes*; *alle Stunden, every hour*.

6. Other common phrases are: *wir haben allen Grund, allen Anlaß, we have every reason*; *in aller Frühe, very early in the morning*; *in aller Stille, as quietly as possible*.

7. *All* is used indefinitely for *any*, especially after *ohne, without*: *ohne allen Grund, without any reason*; *ohne allen Geschmack, without any taste*; *alles nur nicht das, anything but that*; *lieber alles (andere) als das, anything (else) rather than that*.

**368. 1. Ander, other**, whether pronoun or adjective, is declined like an adjective under the same circumstances: ein anderer (andrer), eine andere (andre), ein anderes (andres), der andre, die anderen (andern): etwas anderes, *something else*; die anderen Leute, *the other people*.

a. Ein anderer means *another*, that is, a *different one*: wir haben einen anderen Diener genommen, *we have taken another (different) servant*; noch ein means *one more*: er hat noch ein Haus gekauft, *he has bought another house* (in addition to the one he had before).

**369. 1. Beide, both**, may be preceded but **not** followed by the definite article, possessive adjective, personal or indefinite pronouns: seine beiden Schwestern, *both his sisters*; it is thus often found in the sense of *two*: die beiden Könige, *the two kings*; wir Beide, *we two, both of us*; alle Beide, *both one and the other*.

a. Beide is declined like an adjective in the plural; the singular, especially in the neuter, also occurs, meaning then usually *either* or *each* (the original signification of the singular *beide*): das Abendmal unter beider Gestalt, *the communion (evening meal) in either form*; when no noun follows, the missing word can be inferred from the connection: Beides ist möglich, *either (statement, fact, etc.) is possible*; Beides läßt sich beweisen, *either (argument, etc.) can (lets itself) be proved*.

b. Beides — und, *both — and*, are occasionally met with: Beides, Männer und Frauen, fürchteten den unbekannten Ritter, *both men and women dreaded the unknown knight*; but the common form is sowohl — wie, or nicht nur — sondern auch: sowohl er wie ich fürchten ihn, *both he and I fear him*; nicht nur sein Vater, sondern auch seine Mutter wünschten es, *both his father and mother desired it*.

**370. Einer, eine, eines** (declined like dieser, 353), *one*, takes the place of man in the oblique cases (378); das schmeichelt einem, *that flatters one*.

**371. 1. Einig, etlich, some**, whether pronouns or adjectives, are declined like adjectives under the same circumstances: einiges (nom. or acc. sing. neuter), einige Männer, das einige. The singular is rarely met with and, in the neuter, etwas is generally used instead of einiges; etlich is less often found than enig: ich möchte Ihnen gern einiges (etwas) erzählen, was ich gestern gehört habe; *I should like to tell you something that I heard yesterday*.

2. In the singular, ein, irgend ein, ein wenig are commonly substituted for enig in ordinary speech: es war (einige) ein wenig Gefahr, *there was some danger*; Sie müssen (einige Zeit) ein wenig warten, *you must wait some (a little) time*.

**372. Etwas, something, anything, some, somewhat**, is invariable.

1. It occurs alone, used adverbially: *Sie haben etwas übertrieben, you have somewhat exaggerated*; or before a substantive: *etwas Stolz, some pride*; or before an adjective used substantively: *etwas Schönes, something beautiful*; *haben Sie etwas Neues gehört? have you heard anything new?*

2. In an interrogative-negative sentence, *nicht etwas* may mean *not anything* or *not something*: *haben Sie nicht etwas verloren? have you not lost anything? hatten Sie mir nicht etwas zu sagen? did you not have something to tell me?*

a. In other situations, *not anything* must be rendered by *nichts (nothing)*: *we had not lost anything, wir hatten nichts verloren.*

3. *So etwas* means *some (any) such thing*: *ich merkte so etwas, I noticed some such thing.*

4. *Was* is commonly used in the sense of *etwas*, especially in conversation: *haben Sie was Neues? have you any news (anything new)?*

5. *Etwas* may refer to persons, *etwas kam heran, some one drew near.*

**373.** *Jrgend, some, any*, may precede *ein, etwas, was, wer, jemand, welche, einige*, to emphasize their meaning: *irgend etwas, something, anything whatsoever*; *irgend jemand, any one (whosoever it may be)*; *irgend einer kann das sagen, any one (you please) can say that.* *Jrgend* is itself invariable and is very seldom found alone.

**374.** *Jed-, jeglich-, each, every, everybody*, whether pronouns or adjectives, are inflected like *dieser (353)* unless they be preceded by *ein*, when they are declined like any other adjective under the same circumstances (293, 2; 295, 3): *eines jeden (or jedes) Menschen Schicksal, the fate of every man*; *jedem das Seine, (to) every one his own*; *alle und jede, all and every one.*

*Jeglich-* is less often found than *jed-*; *jedwed-*, also meaning *each, every*, is rarely used; it cannot be preceded by *ein*.

The neuter singular *jedes*, like *alles*, etc., may sometimes refer to persons: *jedes hat seine Last, every one has his burden.*

**375.** *Jedermann, every one*, can be used only as pronoun; although it is a compound of *jeder* and *Mann*, it may refer to persons of either sex. Its only variation is in the genitive, where it takes *s*: *jedermann begreift das, everybody comprehends that*; *der König kann nicht jedermann zufrieden stellen, the king cannot content everybody*; *das ist nicht jedermanns Sache, that is not everybody's business.*

**376.** Jemand, *some one*, niemand, *no one*, are used as pronouns only. Since they are compounds of *je*, *ever*, or *nie*, *never*, with *Mann*, they ought to be regarded as substantives of the strong declension and consequently their only variation should be in the genitive singular (adding *-s*); this is indeed **the rule**, but colloquially or when the meaning would otherwise be obscure, they take *em* or *en* for the dative and *en* for the accusative: *erwarten Sie jemand?* *do you expect some one?* *ich warte auf niemand*, *I wait for no one*; *hat sie niemand angetroffen?* may mean *has she met no one?* or *has no one met her?* *hat sie jemanden angetroffen?* can have only the former meaning.

**377.** *Kein*, *no*, *no one*, *none*, is the negative of *ein*; it is used as adjective or pronoun: *kein Freund von mir*, *no friend of mine*; *keiner meiner Freunde*, *no one of my friends*; *keines von beiden*, *none of the two*, *neither*. As an adjective, *kein* is declined like *mein*, *meine*, *mein* (339); as a pronoun, like adjectives of the strong declension.

**378.** 1. *Man*, *one*, *they*, *people*: *man sagt*, *one says*; *they say*; *people say*.

2. *Man* is found only in the nominative; the other cases are made up from *einer* (370): *wenn man vom Gipfel des Berges hinabschaut*, *wird es einem schwindlich*, *if one looks down from the summit of the mountain, he (one) feels dizzy*.

3. In English, *he* is often found in reference to a previous *one*; in German, *er* can not be used in such cases; *man* must be repeated: *wenn man alles auf einmal tun will*, *tut man gar nichts recht*, *if one wants to do everything at once, he does nothing right (properly)*.

4. The corresponding possessive of *man* is *sein*: *man kann seinen Zweck nicht immer erreichen*, *one cannot always carry one's point (attain his purpose)*.

5. The best translation of *man* is often given by the passive voice: *man hat es geglaubt*, *it has been believed*; a phrase with *there* may also be used: *man schwieg*, *there was silence*.

a. The personal pronouns, *I*, *we*, *you*, may be used: *was braucht man heute vom Fleischer?* *what do we (you) want (need) from the butcher to-day?*

6. *Man* is sometimes found with the third person singular of the imperative (subjunctive); the command appears then somewhat softened: *man lasse mich in Frieden*, *let me alone (in peace)*, instead of *laß mich*.

**379.** *Manch*, *many a* in the singular, *many* in the plural, may be pronoun or adjective. If no adjective follows, *manch*



is declined according to the strong declension of adjectives: *mancher Satz*, *many a sentence*; *manche Frau*, *manches Kind*; otherwise it **may** remain uninflected: *manch großer Mann* or *mancher große Mann*; *manch schöne Frau* or *manche schöne Frau*; *manche Häuser*, *manche großen Häuser*.

**380.** 1. **Mehr**, *mehrer*-. **Mehr**, *more*, is invariable: *mehr Geld*, *more money*; *mehr als einer*, *more than one*; *es ist nicht mehr als billig*, *it is but (no more than) fair*; *wer noch mehr?* *who else?*

2. **Mehrere** (sometimes *mehre*) means *several*, *many*, and is declined: *mehrere Freunde Rat*, *the advice of several friends*; *von mehreren Quellen*, *from several sources*; *durch mehrere Umstände*, *through several circumstances*.

3. Note the phrases: *morgen ein Mehreres* or *morgen mehr*, *more to-morrow*.

**381.** **Nichts**, *nothing*, is invariable.

1. The form of an older dative is found in a few phrases: *mit nichts*, *by no means*, *not at all*; *zu nichts werden*, *come to naught*, *perish*; *zu nichts machen*, *annihilate*; *zu nichts schlagen*, *strike to pieces*.

a. **Nichts** was originally a substantive, the genitive of "*nicht*" from "*ni-wiht*" (cf. "*naught*" = *na-wiht*").

2. As to **nichts**, *not anything*, cf. 372, 2 a.

**382.** **Niemand**, *no one*, cf. 376.

i. **Niemand** corresponds to *not any one*, except in interrogative sentences: *wir haben niemand gesehen*, *we have not seen any one*; *haben Sie mit niemand gesprochen?* *have you spoken to no one?*

**383.** **Viel**, *much*, plural *many*; **wenig**, *little*, plural *few*, may be used as pronouns or adjectives: *viele dieser Leute*, *many of these people*; *viele Leute*, *many people*; *wenige von diesen Personen*, *few of these persons*; *mit wenigen Soldaten*, *with few soldiers*; *viel Geld*, *much money*; *wenig Verstand*, *little understanding*.

1. **Viel** and **wenig** are sometimes declined and at other times remain uninflected; no absolutely unfailing rule can be given covering every particular case.

2. **Viel** and **wenig** are declined, like an adjective under the same circumstances, after a possessive or *der*: *die vielen Gärten*; *die wenigen Häuser*;

seine vielen Geschäfte, *his many (numerous) affairs*; mein Weniges, *my little (property), my few possessions*; bei seinen vielen Anlagen, *with his many gifts*; Ihren wenigen Andeutungen verdanke ich es, *I owe it to (your few suggestions) those few suggestions of yours*; die Wenigen, die es je erkannt haben, *the few who have ever recognised it*.

3. Otherwise (when not preceded by *der* or a possessive) they generally remain unchanged to convey a collective sense and are declined to give a distributive meaning: allwissend bin ich nicht, doch viel ist mir bewußt, *I am not omniscient, but much is known to me*; er hat vieles studiert und wenig gelernt, *he has studied many things and learned (but) little*; viel Fleisch, *much (a great amount of) meat*; vieles Fleisch, *many pieces of meat*.

4. Wenig is often found uninflected after *ein*: haben Sie nur ein wenig Mut, *just have a little courage*.

5. Ein wenig is always equivalent to *a little*, if the latter is not followed by any other words: ein wenig ist besser als nichts, *a little is better than nothing*.

**384. Welch, wer, some, some one, any, any one.** These interrogatives occur sometimes, in conversation, as indefinites: ich möchte gern etwas Fleisch essen, haben Sie welches? *I should like to eat some meat; have you any (some)?* haben Sie wen auf der Straße gesehen? *have you seen any one on the street?*

#### TRANSLATION 33 a

A. 1. Wissen Sie was Neues? 2. Ich habe einige **Neuigkeiten** in der Zeitung gelesen, aber es (there) ist nicht viel daran (to it). 3. Wie geht's mit Ihren Studien? 4. So ziemlich<sup>2</sup>; aller Anfang ist schwer und besonders die Mathematik (mathematics) macht<sup>3</sup> mir viele **Schwierigkeiten**. 5. Was andere tun können, das sollten Sie auch fertig bringen; wenn man die Sache recht angreift,<sup>4</sup> dann ist es gar keine **Hexerei**<sup>5</sup>; haben Sie nur<sup>6</sup> etwas mehr Mut! 6. Das ist alles recht<sup>7</sup> schön, was Sie da sagen, aber ich habe gar keine **Anlage** dazu.<sup>8</sup> 7. Es tut mir leid, daß Sie das denken; vielleicht ist es doch nicht so schlimm. 8. Haben Sie jemand um (for) Rat gefragt? 9. Ich kenne niemand hier, den ich **beschäftigen** möchte.

<sup>1</sup> Studium, n. plural Studien, study. <sup>2</sup> So ziemlich, pretty well, fairly well. <sup>3</sup> machen, here cause or give. <sup>4</sup> recht angreifen, go the right way to work, lay hold of . . . the right way. <sup>5</sup> Hexerei, f. literally witchcraft, sorcery; here great difficulty. <sup>6</sup> nur, with imperative, just. <sup>7</sup> Cf. 315, 1 a. <sup>8</sup> Cf. 352, 4.

B. 1. Ich sprach gestern mit jedermann, dem ich auf der Straße begegnete; ich wollte wissen, ob niemand von der Ankunft

des **Dampfsschiffes** in Bremen gehört hatte. 2. Ihr Herr Bruder fuhr mit (by) demselben<sup>1</sup> vor **acht** Tagen nach Europa, nicht wahr?<sup>2</sup> 3. Der Pfarrer hat gestern in unsrer Kirche **gepredigt**; alles war über seine **Predigt** **erfreut**.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. 355, 1. <sup>2</sup> Cf. Exercise 9, 3 a, p. 66.

C. 1. Ich möchte irgend etwas essen, was ein wenig **Geschmack** hätte. Das **Frühstück** ist fertig. Wollen Sie etwas **Zucker** zu Ihrem **Kaffee**? Bitte, nehmen Sie welchen. 2. Was haben wir sonst zum (for) **Frühstück**? Haben Sie etwas gute, frische **Butter**? 3. Ich möchte gern ein paar Eier haben; haben Sie welche? sind sie weich (soft) gekocht<sup>1</sup>? 4. Ihr **Kaffee** wird kalt, ich werde Ihnen eine Tasse (cup of) **Tea** geben, wenn Sie es wünschen. 5. Ich danke Ihnen sehr; ich habe genug; mit (by) dem **nächsten** Zug muß ich **abreisen**. Sie sehen, ich habe nur sehr wenig Zeit. 6. Alles, was ich über diese Sache hören werde, wird Ihnen mein Vater sofort berichten; wenn etwas **Besonderes** **vorfallen** sollte, telegraphie're<sup>2</sup> ich Ihnen. 7. Du, der du so viele freie Zeit hast, kannst wohl das Geschäft für mich besorgen. 8. Was er Ihnen auch erzählen mag, glauben Sie nicht jedes Wort, das er spricht; jemand hat mir gesagt, daß er alles **über-treibt**. 9. Die ihre Pflicht tun, wird man **loben** und **belohnen**. 10. Das Buch, woraus er liest, **enthält merkwürdige** Geschichten. 11. Wir wissen, worauf es ankommt<sup>3</sup> und wir werden auf unserm Recht bestehen gegen wen es auch sei. 12. Niemand wird Ihre **Partei** nehmen, was Sie auch über die Sache **bemerken** werden.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Tabular View, Appendix III, p. 336. <sup>2</sup> telegraphieren, *telegraph, wire*. <sup>3</sup> es ankommt, *it depends*.

D. 1. Da stand ein **Haufen Volks**, das einem neuen Prediger **zuhörte**, einem von denen, die aus Deutschland gekommen sind. 2. Der sprach von der Leber weg<sup>1</sup> und das bewies er alles aus der **Bibel**. 3. Das ist einer von denen, die immer von der Leber weg<sup>1</sup> sprechen. 4. Diese Briefe **melden** wenig Erfreuliches, was

ich **jedoch** erwartete. 5. Keiner weiß von dem andern, jeder glaubt, der Befehl **gehe**<sup>2</sup> ihn allein an.

<sup>1</sup> die Leber, *liver*; von der Leber weg sprechen, *speak frankly*; *speak out*; *speak unreservedly*. <sup>2</sup> Why subjunctive?

E.\* 1. Eben **fi**ng ich an mein **Herz** zu **erheben**, als **da**cht hinter mir etwas<sup>1</sup> seinen **Platz** nahm<sup>2</sup>; es sprach von Schönheit, von Liebe; es **klagte**, daß dieser Tag, welcher mein **Glück** mache,<sup>3</sup> sein Unglück auf (for) immer entscheide<sup>3</sup>; hören muß<sup>3</sup> ich dies alles. 2. Jetzt weiß ich von dem allen nichts; meine **Sinne** hatten mich verlassen. 3. Was auf den **Liebhaber** keinen **Eindruck** macht, kann ihn auf den **Gemahl** machen. 4. **Später** wird oft aus dem **Liebhaber** ein ganz anderes **Geschöpf**. 5. Was für ein **albernes**, **furchtames** Ding ich bin! 6. Welch ein Mann, Ihr Vater! Zu was für **Gefinnungen** erhebt sich meine Seele in seiner **Gegenwart**! 7. Alles, was ich sehe, alles, was ich höre, alles, was ich **träume**, **predigt** mir seit gestern diese Wahrheit.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. 372, 5. <sup>2</sup> Platz nehmen, *take a seat*. <sup>3</sup> Why subjunctive?

F.† 1. Bei dem allen, was tut das<sup>1</sup>? Wovon ich gesprochen,<sup>2</sup> **geschieht**.<sup>3</sup> Nur vergessen Sie nicht, **wissen**<sup>4</sup> Sie mich eben **versichert**.<sup>2</sup> 2. Haben Sie **noch** was zu **befehlen**? Mein **Weg** ist der **weiteste**; **wenn** wieder etwas **vorfällt** — Sie wissen, wo ich zu **erfragen**<sup>5</sup> bin. 3. Was **sich** ein andrer zu tun **getraut**, wird für mich auch keine **Hererei**<sup>6</sup> sein; und **billiger** bin ich als jeder andere. 4. Auf das alles weiß ich **freilich** **noch** nichts zu **antworten**. Der **hob** sie<sup>7</sup> aus dem **Wagen**! Der **führte** sie<sup>7</sup> fort! ich **erkenne** dich.

<sup>1</sup> was tut das, *what is the difference? what does it matter?* <sup>2</sup> Cf. Exercise 4, 3 4, p. 33. <sup>3</sup> Cf. Exercise 16, III, 2, p. 167. <sup>4</sup> wissen is neuter here. <sup>5</sup> erfragen, *find out by asking*; wo . . . bin, *where I may be found*. <sup>6</sup> Cf. note 5 to translation A, above. <sup>7</sup> sie, that is, *Emilia Galotti*.

\* From Lessing's *Emilia Galotti*. Sentences 1, 2 and 5 are spoken by the heroine of the drama, Emilia Galotti; 3 and 4 by her mother; 6 and 7 by Emilia's affianced.

† Sentences 1, 2 and 3 are spoken by one of the hired assassins who killed Emilia's affianced; the 4th sentence is spoken by Emilia's mother; Der refers to the assassin.

## LESSON XXXIV

## NUMERALS

## I

## 385. Cardinal Numerals:

1 ein	16 sechzehn	80 achtzig
2 zwei	17 siebzehn	90 neunzig
3 drei	18 achtzehn	100 hundert
4 vier	19 neunzehn	121 hundert ein und zwanzig
5 fünf	20 zwanzig	200 zweihundert
6 sechs	21 einundzwanzig	1,000 tausend
7 sieben	22 zweiundzwanzig	1,905 tausend neun- hundert und fünf or neun- zehn hundert und fünf
8 acht	23 dreiundzwanzig	100,000 hunderttausend
9 neun	30 dreißig	1,000,000 eine Million'
10 zehn	31 einunddreißig	
11 elf	32 zweiunddreißig	
12 zwölf	40 vierzig	
13 dreizehn	50 fünfzig	
14 vierzehn	60 sechzig	
15 fünfzehn	70 siebzig	

386. The cardinal numbers are uninflected, except ein, zwei and drei.

1. Ein is fully declined; zwei and drei are inflected only in the genitive and dative: zweier, zweien; dreier, dreien, when otherwise the case would not be distinctly shown; generally they remain undeclined.

2. When used attributively (before a noun), ein, one, is declined like the indefinite article ein, a, an; when used substantively (not immediately followed by a noun), it is inflected like an adjective of the strong declension, or, what is the same, like dieser:

Nom.	einer	eine	eines
Gen.	eines	einer	eines
Dat.	einem	einer	einem
Acc.	einen	eine	eines

3. When emphatic, the forms of ein are often printed in spaced type or (more rarely) distinguished by a capital letter: die Fürsten waren einer Meinung, the princes were of one opinion; ich sage dir, Eines ist notwendig, I tell you one thing is necessary.

4. The neuter eins is used in enumeration: eins, zwei, drei, vier, etc.; also, at times, when speaking of persons in an indefi-

nite manner: daß beweise mir eins, *let some one prove this to me*; unser (genitive plural of the personal pronoun) eins, *one of us*; also daß Einmaleins (*one times one*), *multiplication table*, and in expressions of time, halb eins, *half past twelve* (390, 8).

5. When ein is preceded by the definite article or some other limiting word (133, 1, 2), it follows the same declension as any adjective after the same word: der eine große Fehler, *the one great mistake*; sein eines großes Talent, *his one great talent*. In the plural, die einen (*the ones*), *some*, is often used correlatively with die andern, *others*: die einen glauben dies, die andern daß, *some believe this, others that*.

6. When ein occurs in the compound numbers, einundzwanzig, einunddreißig, etc., it remains uninflected.

7. One after an adjective or pronoun has no equivalent in German a nice one, ein hübscher; *this one, dieser*.

**387.** Siebenzehn and siebenzig, instead of the contracted forms siebzehn and siebzig, are sometimes met with; also funfzehn and funfzig instead of fünfzehn and fünfzig; elf (older einlif) for elf is now archaic. Sechzehn and sechzig occur now and then instead of the shorter and more easily pronounceable sechzehn and sechzig.

2. A hundred, a thousand, are hundert, tausend, without the article; ein hundert, ein tausend, are *one hundred, one thousand*. Das Hundert, das Tausend are nouns following the third class of the strong declension; plural, die Hunderte; Tausende von Menschen, *thousands of men*. Die Million', die Milliar'de, die Billion' are always regular nouns following the weak declension, die Mil'io'nen, etc. As in English, they are used in the plural after the cardinals: zwanzig Millio'nen, *twenty millions*.

3. The cardinals, when used as substantives, may follow the third class of the strong declension or remain uninflected; from 2 to 19 inclusive, they are generally declined, especially in the spoken language: fünf(e) von uns, *five of us*; es waren ihrer drei(e), *there were three of them*; auf allen Vieren kriechen, *to crawl along on all fours*. The figure itself, when used as a substantive, is of the feminine gender and sometimes takes e in the singular: eine böse Sieben, *a shrew, a scold*; diese Neun(e) sieht sonderbar aus, *this nine looks strange*; die Eins, die Einsen, *the (figure) one, the ones*.

**388.** The cardinals take er for the whole plural, when followed by a noun, in phrases like: die zwanziger Jahre waren für

die armen Leute schrecklich, *the twenties (1820-30) were terrible for the poor people*; der dreißiger Jahre or der Dreißiger (1830-40) erinnere ich mich, *I remember (remind myself of) the thirties*; in den vierziger Jahren (1840-50) herrschte große Hungersnot, *a great famine prevailed in the forties*.

2. When used as **nouns**, they take **n** in the dative plural like other nouns: in den Sechzigern (1860-70) drohte verschiedene Male ein europäischer Krieg (but in den sechziger Jahren), *a European war was threatening at various times in the sixties*.

3. These numbers may also refer to the age of a person: sie war in den Siebzigern, *she was between 70 and 80 years old, in the seventies*.

4. Notice also: die Fünfziger fochten wie Löwen, *the soldiers of the fiftieth regiment fought like lions*; die Achtundvierziger sind nach Amerika ausgewandert, *the forty-eighters (of the revolution of 1848 in Germany) emigrated to America*.

5. The ending **er** is found also to denote the names of the unit, ten, etc.: das kleine Kind kann nur Einer herjagen, nicht die Zehner, *the little child can recite only the units, not the tens*.

**389.** Between 21 and 100, the name of the unit, followed by **und**, **and**, always precedes the name of the ten: einundzwanzig, neunundneunzig, never zwanzig-eins, neunzig-neun, as in English *twenty-one, ninety-nine*.

**390. The time of the day** is expressed in the following ways:

### A

In accordance with the English idiom:

1. Eine Minute, zwei, drei, fünf, zehn, neunundzwanzig Minuten **vor** or **nach** (über) eins, zwei, drei or ein Uhr, zwei Uhr, etc., *one minute, two, three, five, ten, twenty-nine minutes of (before) or past one, two, three or one o'clock, two o'clock, etc.*

2. "**A quarter past**," ein Viertel **nach** (über): *a quarter past seven*, ein Viertel nach sieben (Uhr); ein Viertel über acht, *a quarter past eight*.

3. "**A quarter of (to)**," ein Viertel **vor** or **bis** (until): *a quarter to twelve*, ein Viertel bis zwölf; ein Viertel vor fünf, *a quarter of five*.

## B

4. "*A quarter past*" may be expressed by ein Viertel auf (*towards, in the direction of*) and the name of the **following** hour: ein Viertel auf neun or auf neun Uhr, *a quarter past eight*; ein Viertel auf eins, *a quarter past twelve*.

5. "*A quarter of (to)*" may be expressed by drei Viertel auf (*three quarters towards*): *a quarter of twelve*, drei Viertel auf zwölf (there are three-quarters of an hour towards twelve, starting from the **preceding** hour, *eleven*).

6. The preposition auf is often omitted: ein Viertel neun (4 above); drei Viertel zwölf (5 above).

7. Note also the following phrases: es fehlen noch fünf Minuten auf (bis) zwei, (*there are still lacking five minutes to two*), *it is five minutes of two*; es geht auf Mittag, *it is getting on to noon*.

## C

8. The "*half hour*" is invariably expressed by halb, *half*, and the name of the **following** hour after it: *half past ten*, halb elf or halb elf Uhr; *half past twelve*, halb eins or halb ein Uhr, the underlying idea being that of the **following** hour — in the preceding examples the eleventh and first — only one-half is past.

**391.** Questions as to the time of the day may be asked in various manners: Wie viel Uhr ist es? Was or wie viel ist die Uhr? Wie viel Uhr haben Sie? Welche Zeit ist es? Wie viel or wie hoch ist's an der Zeit? Um welche Zeit ist es?

**392.** The year is expressed either by the cardinal number only: Schiller wurde 1759 geboren, or by the cardinal preceded by im Jahre, *in the year*: Schiller wurde im Jahre 1759 geboren, *Schiller was born in 1759*. To follow the English idiom, *in* preceding the cardinal, as "in 1759," is not good German.

**393.** By combining the cardinal with mal (*das Mal, time, period*), numeral adverbs are formed: einmal, *once*; zweimal, *twice*; dreimal drei sind neun; viermal zehn sind vierzig; sechsmal elf sind sechsundsechzig; achtmal elf sind achtundachtzig.

a. The word mal may be used as a noun: zwanzig Mal, *twenty times*.

b. The above combinations are called "iteratives."



**394.** To denote variety of kinds, the cardinals form a combination with the suffix *-lei* (originally a feminine noun, meaning *kind, sort*); the adjective always takes the declensional ending *-er* before *-lei*: *zweiertei, of two kinds*. The ending *-er* indicates the genitive plural feminine, strong declension, except of course in *einerlei, of one sort*, where it is in the singular: *vierertei, of four kinds*. The whole combination is treated like an adjective, but remains uninflected: *dreierlei Tuch, cloth of three kinds*.

a. The above combinations are called "variatives."

**395.** By combining the cardinals with *-fach* (das *Fach, compartment, partition*) or *-fältig, fold*, we have *einfach, simple*; *zweifach, double*; *dreifach, triple*; *vierfach, quadruple*; *einfältig, simple*; *zweifältig, two-fold*; *zehnältig, ten-fold*; *hundertfältig, a hundred-fold*. These words are adjectives and are declined like other adjectives: *eine zehnältige or zehnfache Ernte, a ten-fold harvest*.

a. The above combinations with *fach* and *fältig* are called "multiplicatives."

### 396. Ordinal Numbers:

The 1st (der) erste	the	18th (der) achtzehnte
" 2d " zweite	"	19th " neunzehnte
" 3d " dritte	"	20th " zwanzigste
" 4th " vierte	"	21st " einundzwanzigste
" 5th " fünfte	"	22d " zweiundzwanzigste
" 6th " sechste	"	23d " dreiundzwanzigste
" 7th " siebente	"	30th " dreißigste
" 8th " achte	"	40th " vierzigste
" 9th " neunte	"	50th " fünfzigste
" 10th " zehnte	"	60th " sechzigste
" 11th " elfte	"	70th " siebenzigste
" 12th " zwölfte	"	80th " achtzigste
" 13th " dreizehnte	"	90th " neunzigste
" 14th " vierzehnte	"	100th " hundertste
" 15th " fünfzehnte	"	101st " hundertunderste
" 16th " sechzehnte	"	500th " fünfhundertste
" 17th " siebzehnte	"	1,000th " tausendste

**397.** The ordinals are derived from the cardinals by adding *-t* to the numbers from 2 to 19 inclusive, and *-st* to the higher

numbers. They are declined like adjectives: *jeder dritte Mann, every third man*; *ein zweites Beispiel, a second example*.

**398.** The ordinals, except in composition, as *erstgenannt, first-named*; *brittel, third* (401); *britthalb, two and a half* (399, 5), do not appear in their uninflected form, as *erst, zweit, dritt, viert*, etc.

1. When used as predicates, they are declined, agreeing with the noun understood: *jener Mann war der zweite, that man was the second (one)*; cf. 386, 7.

2. When used as adverbs, they add *-ens* to the uninflected form: *erstens, firstly*; *fünftens, fifthly*.

**399.** 1. The suffixes *-t* and *-ft* were originally superlative suffixes.

2. The ordinal of *eint* is *erst, first*; it is a real superlative like English *erst*; the positive *ehe, ere*, is of recent origin.

3. *Zweit* dates only from the 15th century. Instead of it, *ander, other*, was used; *ander* occurs even now in certain phrases, for instance: *zum ersten, zum andern und zum dritten Male*, (literally) *for the first, second and third time*; (at auctions), *going, going, gone*.

4. *Dritt* is irregularly formed from *drei*; *acht* (instead of *açht*) from *açt*; cf. *eighth* (instead of *eighth*) from *eight*.

5. *One and a half* is *anderthalb*; *two and a half, dritthalb*; *three and a half, vierthalb*, etc. These so-called dimidiatives are formed (with the exception of *anderthalb*) by appending *halb* to the stem of the ordinal number. Instead of the addition of *half* to the preceding cardinal number, as is done in English (*three and a half*), in the German idiom the next higher number (*four*) is taken, and *a half, halb*, is subtracted from it (in the form of the corresponding ordinal): *vierthalb*.

**400.** The same order of words as in the cardinals between 21 and 100 — where the name of the unit followed by *und, and*, precedes the name of the ten — is also observed in the ordinals: *der einundzwanzigste*. As in English, *only the last member of the combination has the ordinal ending*, but of course in German the *last member* is the *ten*, while in English it is the *unit*: *der achtundachtzigste, the eighty-eighth*.

**401.** The fractions are formed by adding *tel* (abbreviated from *Teil, part*) to the ordinals in their uninflected form, *dritt, viert, fünft*, etc.; in this combination, the final *t* of the ordinal is omitted: *brittel* (instead of *dritt-tel*), *third*; *viertel* (instead of *vierttel*), *fourth*; *siebentel, seventh*; *zwanzigstel, twentieth*.

When used as nouns, the fractions are neuter: *ein Viertel, das Fünftel*.

a. For "half," *halb* is used: *ein halb, a half, one half*; *zwei Halbe machen ein Ganzes, two halves make a whole*. The noun is *die Hälfte*: *die erste Hälfte dieses Buches, the first half of this book*.

**402. Day of the month.** The date is designated in a manner somewhat different from the English; the ordinal is not placed after the month, as *on October first*, nor is the preposition *of* translated, as in *the first of October*; instead, we use the combination *am (at the, on the)* followed by the ordinal in the dative masculine singular: *am 2. or 2ten September 1905, on September 2d, 1905*.

The use of the accusative without the preposition is the common way for dating a letter: *den 18. (18ten) August, 1905, August 18, 1905*.

### EXERCISE 34

#### I

1. The student should read aloud and distinctly the following numbers:

3. 8. 16. 22. 28. 31. 36. 43. 55. 66. 77. 88. 112. 187. 253. 346. 478. 555. 666. 782. 888. 963. 1,214. 1,817. 1,902. 2,575. 8,796. 12,947. 15,783. 18,988. 19,827. 25,783. 2,889,788. 5,756,666.

Der 1. 3. 7. 8. 12. 14. 28. 33. 78. 88. 92. 114. 275. 327. 466. 782. 891. 988. 1,022. 3,736. 4,875. 19,765.

2. The following questions are to be answered by the student in complete German sentences:

1. Wie viel ist 6 und (plus) 10? 2. Wie viel sind 5+7; 8+9; 9+11; 12+17? 3. Wie viel machen 8+11; 7+14; 4+19; 13+27?

4. Wie viel macht 35+18; 37+24; 45+32; 67+24; 86+39? 5. Wie viel bekommt man, wenn man 12 und 9 addiert? 6. Wie viel bleibt übrig, wenn man 7 von 13 subtrahiert? 7. Wie viel erhält man, wenn man 9 von 12 abzieht? 8. Was bleibt, wenn man 8 von 13 wegnimmt? 9. Was ist der Rest?

wenn 19 von 33 abgezogen<sup>4</sup> wird? 10. Was haben Sie, wenn Sie 15 von 31 subtrahie'ren<sup>5</sup>?

11. Wie viel ist 6 mal 6 ( $6 \times 6$ );  $7 \times 8$ ;  $9 \times 9$ ;  $11 \times 11$ ;  $15 \times 3$ ? 12. Multiplizie'ren<sup>6</sup> Sie 12 mit 3; 17 mit 5; 19 mit 7; 21 mit 9; 43 mit 6.

13. Was ist das Produkt<sup>7</sup>, wenn man 7 mit 11 multipliziert?

14. Wie oft ist 2 in 6 enthalten<sup>8</sup>? 15. Wie oft 3 in 9; 4 in 12; 16 in 32; 5 in 60; 8 in 80; 9 in 81; 10 in 120; 11 in 66? 16. Dividie'ren<sup>9</sup> Sie 8 durch 2, was ist der Quotient<sup>10</sup>? (42, 2).

17. Wie viele Stunden hat der Tag, wie viele Tage die Woche?

18. Wie viele Monate<sup>11</sup> hat das Jahr, wie viele Wochen hat es?

19. Wie viele Tage sind in einem Jahr, in einem Schaltjahr<sup>12</sup>?

20. Den<sup>13</sup> wievielten (wievielften) des Monats haben wir heute?

21. Welches ist der kürzeste Monat<sup>11</sup>? 22. Welches ist der längste Tag?

<sup>1</sup> addieren, *add.* <sup>2</sup> übrig bleiben, *remain (left).* <sup>3</sup> subtrahieren, *subtract.* <sup>4</sup> abziehen or wegnehmen, *take away, subtract.* <sup>5</sup> Rest, *remainder.* <sup>6</sup> Multiplizieren, *multiply.* <sup>7</sup> Produkt, *product.* <sup>8</sup> enthalten, *contain.* <sup>9</sup> Dividieren, *divide.* <sup>10</sup> Quotient, *quotient.* <sup>11</sup> Monat, *m. month.* <sup>12</sup> Schaltjahr, *n. leap-year.* <sup>13</sup> den . . . Monats, *what day of the month.*

## TRANSLATION 34 a

A. 1. Wollten Sie mir gefälligst<sup>1</sup> sagen, wieviel Uhr es<sup>2</sup> ist? 2. Es ist beinahe halb fünf. 3. Wer kann mir sofort sagen, wann Friedrich Schiller geboren<sup>3</sup> wurde? 4. Dieser große Dichter wurde am 10. November 1759 geboren. 5. Sie werden wohl wissen, wann Göthe geboren wurde, nicht wahr? 6. Göthe wurde am 28. August 1749 geboren. 7. Und Lessing? 8. Am 22. Januar 1729. 9. Was ist in Bezug<sup>4</sup> auf diese Geburtsjahre<sup>5</sup> merkwürdig? 10. Sie enthalten alle drei eine Neun(e). 11. Er wollte gestern wissen, wann die Schlacht bei (at) Leipzig geschlagen<sup>6</sup> wurde, in welcher Napoleon besiegt<sup>7</sup> ward. 12. Konnte ihm Ihr

kleiner Bruder das nicht sagen? 13. Gewiß; er sagte ihm, es war am 18. Oktober 1813.

<sup>1</sup> gefälligst, *if you please*. <sup>2</sup> Cf. 391. <sup>3</sup> geboren, *born*, cf. 199, 1 b. <sup>4</sup> in Bezug auf, *in regard to*. <sup>5</sup> Geburtsjahr, *n. year of birth*. <sup>6</sup> schlagen, *here fight*. <sup>7</sup> besiegen (*not besiege*), *defeat, conquer*.

B. 1. In den Zwanzigern im letzten Jahrhundert herrschte überall in Rußland (Russia) große Hungersnot. 2. Die Siebziger haben in den Schlachten im letzten Kriege auß<sup>1</sup> tapferste<sup>1</sup> gekochten.<sup>2</sup> 3. Um (At) wieviel Uhr fing der Kampf an? Um ein Viertel auf zwölf. Sene Leute sagen, es wäre<sup>3</sup> um drei Viertel auf eins gewesen.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. 318. <sup>2</sup> Cf. Appendix III, p. 336. <sup>3</sup> Cf. Exercise 13, II, 3, p. 116.

C. 1. Was waren die bedeutendsten Ereignisse in den vierziger Jahren im vorigen Jahrhundert? Am 5. Mai 1842 war das große Feuer in Hamburg, das einen beträchtlichen Teil dieser reichen Stadt zerstörte. 2. Im Jahre 1843 brach<sup>1</sup> eine Revolution in Spanien aus; 1848 am 20. Dezember ward Louis Napoleon Präsident der französischen Republik. 3. Im selben (355, 3) Jahre bricht die Revolution überall in Deutschland aus. 4. Wann fand die Schlacht bei Waterloo statt? 5. Diese Schlacht, in welcher viele Tausende von Menschen ihren Tod fanden, wurde am 18. Juni 1815 geschlagen.<sup>2</sup> 6. Durch welche Schlacht wurde der Krieg zwischen Osterreich (Austria) und Preußen<sup>3</sup> im Jahre 1866 entschieden? 7. Durch die Schlacht bei Sadowa oder Königgrätz am 3. Juli. 8. Wann starben<sup>1</sup> Daniel Webster und Henry Clay? 9. In demselben Jahre, in welchem Louis Napoleon zum<sup>4</sup> Kaiser der Franzosen ausgerufen wurde, 1852. 10. Das wichtigste Ereignis vom<sup>5</sup> deutschen Standpunkte aus war die Schlacht bei Sedan am 2. September 1870.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Appendix II, p. 334. <sup>2</sup> Cf. note 6 to A above. <sup>3</sup> Preußen, *n. Prussia*; der Preuße, die Preußin, *the Prussian*; the adjective is preußisch. <sup>4</sup> zum is not to be translated. <sup>5</sup> von . . . aus, *from*.

## LESSON XXXV

## ADVERBS. — PREPOSITIONS. — CONJUNCTIONS

## I

## Adverbs

**403. 1. Adverbs qualify verbs, adjectives or other adverbs:** er hat ſchlecht gehandelt, *he has acted badly*; eſ war ſehr ſchön, *it was very beautiful*; er wird ſehr bald kommen, *he will come very soon*.

*a.* Adverbs may occasionally stand in close relation to a substantive: die Frau da, *the woman there*.

*b.* Adverbs occur at times alone in the position of predicates: das Geld war dahin, *the money was gone*.

**2.** Adverbs are uninflected. The great majority of adjectives can be used adverbially in their thematic or stem-form: grauſam, *cruelly*; ſtreng, *severely*.

*a.* At an earlier period of the language, adjectives took a distinctive ending to express the adverbial idea. Thence, we occasionally find the ending *e* in a few adverbs in Modern German: gerne, *gladly*; lange, *a long time*; ferne, *far*; ſtille, *quietly*; ſanfte, *softly, gently*.

## COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

**404. 1.** Adjectives used adverbially may have a comparative and superlative: ſchöner, *more beautifully*; am ſchönſten (auß ſchönſte), *most beautifully* (317, 1 and 2).

**2.** Adverbs, occurring only as such (**not** as adjectives), are rarely compared. Exceptions are: oft, *often*, öfter, am öfteſten; occasionally bald, *soon*, bald, am baldſten, but eher, am eheſten, are preferable.

**3.** The comparative of gern(e), *gladly*, is lieber; the superlative, am liebſten.

*a.* In connection with a verb. gern adds the idea of *liking*, lieber, that of *comparative preference* and am liebſten that of *liking best or highest preference*: ich leſe gern, *I like to read*; ich leſe

lieber Bücher über Geschichte als Romane, *I prefer reading (to read) books on history to (reading) novels*; ich lese Göthes Gedichte am liebsten, *I like to read Göthe's poems best.*

**405. Some words are found as adverbs only:** schon, *already*; nie, *never*; oft, *often*; beinahe, *almost*; sehr, *very, very much*; nur, *only*; nun, *now*; doch, *yet*; bald, *soon*.

#### **406. CLASSIFICATION OF ADVERBS ACCORDING TO THEIR MEANING**

Adverbs may denote:

1. Place: dort, *there*; hier, *here*; wo, *where*.
2. Time: jetzt, *now*; dann, *then*; einst, *once*; gestern, *yesterday*.
3. Manner: göttig, *kindly*; leicht, *easily*.
4. Degree: sehr, *very*; beinahe, *almost*.
5. The logical connection between a preceding and the following clause: das ist möglich, vielleicht sogar wahrscheinlich, *that is possible, perhaps even probable*; ich wußte es, daher handelte ich so, *I knew it, therefore I acted thus*.

NOTE. The foregoing divisions indicate only some of the most important relations expressed by adverbs.

#### **DERIVATION OF ADVERBS**

**407. 1. Adverbs may be derived from nouns.** This is generally done by adding the simple genitive ending *s* to the noun: morgens, *in the morning*; theils, *in part*; anfangs, *in the beginning*.

*a.* The fact of *s* being really a case-ending was sometimes lost sight of and *s* came to be considered a distinct adverbial sign; thus it was added to feminine nouns. The most conspicuous example in this instance is nachts, *by night* (die Nacht).

**2. Adverbs may be derived from adjectives.** The fact that adjectives in their uninflected (thematic) form are used as adverbs has been mentioned above (403, 2).

*a* Although there is now no distinct adverbial ending in German, corresponding to the common and extensive use of

English *ly*, there are nevertheless some (about twenty) words ending in *lich* = *ly*, which occur as adverbs **only** and never as adjectives: *freilich*, *of course, to be sure (not freely)*; *wahrlich*, *truly*; *sicherlich*, *surely*; *treulich*, *faithfully*; *neulich*, *newly, recently*; *hoffentlich*, *as we hope (not hopefully)*; *schwerlich*, *hardly*; *folglich*, *consequently*.

*b.* Some adverbs are formed from adjectives and participles by adding the genitive ending *s*: *links*, *on the left*; *rechts*, *on the right*; *anders*, *otherwise*; *eilends*, *hastily*.

*c.* Adverbs are formed from superlatives and from the ordinal numbers by adding *ens* to the stem: *meistens*, *mostly, chiefly*; *drittens*, *thirdly*.

NOTE. This *en* is the declensional adjective ending to which *s* is added.

**408. 1.** Some words occur as adverbs and conjunctions: *da nahm er ihn bei der Hand*, *then he took him by his hand*; *da er ihn bei der Hand nahm*, *as he took him by his hand*.

**2.** Others occur as prepositions and adverbs; in the latter case, especially as prefixes to separable verbs: *bei uns*, *at our house, with us*; *beifommen*, *get near, get at*; *an seinem Finger*, *at his finger*; *anfallen*, *fall on (one), attack*. Besides *an* and *bei*, the most common words of this class are: *auf*, *aus*, *durch*, *vor*, *um*, *zu*: *er flog dem Dorfe zu*, *he fled towards the village*.

**3.** The general adverbs of direction, *her*, *hither*, and *hin*, *thither*, often combine with prepositions and follow the prepositional phrase to emphasize the latter: *durch den ganzen Wald hindurch*, *throughout the whole forest*; *aus dem Meere heraus*, *out of the sea*.

*a.* *Her* denotes direction towards the speaker; *hin*, away from the speaker: *kommen Sie die Treppe herauf!* *come upstairs!* *gehen Sie den Berg hinunter!* *go down the hill!* *wo kommt er her* or *woher kommt er?* *whence does he come?* *wohin sehen Sie?* *whither (in what direction) are you looking?* *wir haben den Brief*



hierher geschickt, *we have sent the letter here (hither, to this place)*; gehen Sie wieder dorthin, wo Sie mich gestern erwarteten, *go again there (thither, to that place) where you expected me yesterday*.

### POSITION OF ADVERBS

**409.** 1. In the normal order, the adverb stands after the simple forms of the verb: er gehorcht nie, *he never obeys*; in the compound tenses it precedes the non-personal part of the verb (infinitive or participle): er wird den Rat seiner Freunde immer befolgen, *he will always follow the advice of his friends*; wir haben es ihm heute schon zweimal gesagt, *we have told it to him already twice to-day*.

2. In the inverted order, the adverb may be at the beginning of the clause, especially for emphasis: nie gehorcht er seinen Eltern, *he never obeys his parents*; otherwise, its position is the same as in the normal order: den Rat seiner Freunde wird er immer befolgen; seinen Eltern gehorcht er nie.

3. In the transposed order, the adverb must be, of course, before the simple as well as the compound forms of the verb: da er nie gehorchte; während er den Rat seiner Freunde nie befolgt hat.

4. Adverbs of time usually stand before those of place: wir werden morgen dort ankommen, *we shall arrive there to-morrow*.

5. Adverbs of time and place precede those of kind and manner: die ganze Sache wird morgen früh hier aufs freundlichste besprochen werden, *the whole matter will be discussed here in the most friendly manner to-morrow morning*.

## II

### Prepositions

**410.** Some prepositions govern **only** the genitive, or **only** the dative, or **only** the accusative. Others occur with the dative **or** accusative according to certain conditions.

**411. Twenty-three prepositions with the genitive only :**

|  |   |
|--|---|
| anstatt or statt, <i>instead of</i>            | ob, † <i>on account of</i>              |
| außerhalb, <i>outside of</i>                   | oberhalb, <i>above</i>                  |
| diesseit(s), <i>on this side of</i>            | trotz, † <i>in spite of</i>             |
| halb, halben, halber, * <i>for the sake of</i> | um . . . willen, <i>for the sake of</i> |
| infolge, <i>in consequence of</i>              | ungeachtet, <i>notwithstanding</i>      |
| inmitten, <i>in the midst of</i>               | unterhalb, <i>beneath</i>               |
| innerhalb, <i>inside of, within</i>            | unweit, <i>not far from</i>             |
| jenseits, <i>beyond, on that side</i>          | vermöge, <i>by virtue of, in pursu-</i> |
| kraft, <i>by virtue of</i>                     | ance of                                 |
| längs, † <i>along</i>                          | während, <i>during</i>                  |
| laut, <i>according to</i>                      | wegen, <i>on account of</i>             |
| (ver)mittelt, <i>by means of</i>               | zufolge, † <i>in consequence of</i>     |

**412. Seventeen prepositions with the dative only :**

|                                      |                             |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| aus, <i>out of, from</i>             | nächst, <i>next to</i>      |
| außer, <i>besides</i>                | nebst, <i>along with</i>    |
| bei, <i>at, near by</i>              | ob, <i>above</i>            |
| binnen, § <i>within</i>              | samt, <i>together with</i>  |
| entgegen, <i>against</i>             | seit, <i>since</i>          |
| gegenüber, <i>opposite</i>           | von, of, <i>from, by</i>    |
| gemäß, <i>in accordance with</i>     | zu, <i>to</i>               |
| mit, <i>with</i>                     | zuwider, <i>contrary to</i> |
| nach, <i>after, according to, to</i> |                             |

**413. Eight prepositions with the accusative only :**

|                               |                         |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------|
| bis, <i>till</i>              | ohne, <i>without</i>    |
| durch, <i>through</i>         | sonder, <i>without</i>  |
| für, <i>for</i>               | um, <i>round, about</i> |
| gegen, <i>toward, against</i> | wider, <i>against</i>   |

**414. Nine prepositions with the dative or accusative :**

|                         |                          |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| an, <i>at, on, near</i> | über, <i>over</i>        |
| auf, <i>on, upon</i>    | unter, <i>under</i>      |
| hinter, <i>behind</i>   | vor, <i>before</i>       |
| in, <i>in, into</i>     | zwischen, <i>between</i> |
| neben, <i>beside</i>    |                          |

\* Meinet halben, meinetwegen, um meinetwillen, have been mentioned previously (349, 1). † Sometimes found with the dative. ‡ Occurs but rarely in the language of to-day. § Often used with the genitive.

1. The common rule (as already indicated in Exercise 7, 3 a, p. 52) is: use the accusative with verbs of motion or direction answering the question "*whither?*" or "*how long?*" otherwise, when in answer to the question "*where?*" "*wherein?*" "*when?*" the dative is used: bitte, legen Sie den Hut auf den Tisch, *please, put the hat on the table*; der Hut liegt auf dem Tisch, *the hat lies on the table*.

2. The idea that a verb of motion or direction, under all circumstances, requires the phrase after one of the nine prepositions in 414 to be in the accusative is erroneous: das Metall bewegte sich in der Kugel hin und her: *the metal moved to and fro in the ball*; er ging im Zimmer auf und ab, *he walked up and down (to and fro) in his room*. The dative is used here in answer to the question "*where?*"

3. These prepositions, then, take the accusative whenever extent, action upon an object, direction, motion to a place, or change of position is implied or expressed; the dative is used with expressions of position or of motion in a place.

4. One of the most difficult subjects to be acquired in a foreign language is the correct use of the prepositions; to a great extent, the matter belongs to the dictionary rather than to the grammar. As to the nine prepositions in 414, the question sometimes arises what case is to be used when the verb denotes neither motion, direction nor rest, etc., or, in other words, when none of the questions "*whither?*" "*how long?*" "*where?*" "*wherein?*" or "*when?*" can be applied. In such instances, only familiarity with the best usage can guide the foreigner in his perplexity.

### III

#### Conjunctions

415. The connectives that have no influence on the order of words are:

aber, *but, yet, however*  
 allein, *only, but*  
 denn, *for, because*

oder, *or*  
 sondern, *but, on the contrary*  
 und, *and*

1. *Doch, yet, and entweder, either*, usually cause inversion of the order of words when they are at the beginning of the clause, but they occur also at times without having that influence: er sagte, er würde bald kommen, doch ist es jetzt schon zehn Uhr und er ist noch nicht hier (*doch es ist*, etc.), *he said he would come soon, yet it is now already ten o'clock, and he is not yet here*; *entweder kommen Sie sogleich mit mir oder Sie müssen zu Hause bleiben (entweder Sie kommen etc.), either you (will) come with me at once or you must stay at home.*

**416.** The **adverbial conjunctions** requiring the inverted order whenever they are placed at the beginning of a clause, are :

|  |  |
|--|--|
| also, then, therefore, hence (distinguish from <i>also</i> , auch) | freilich, of course, surely (not freely)       |
| außerdem, besides  | indessen, in the meantime, however             |
| da, then, there  | jedoch, nevertheless                           |
| daher, hence   | noch, yet, still (weder — noch, neither — nor) |
| dann, then   | nun, now                                       |
| darauf, thereon  | so, so   |
| darum, therefore   | sonst, else, otherwise                         |
| dennoch, yet   | vielleicht, perhaps                            |
| deshalb, } therefore   | vielmehr, rather                               |
| deswegen, }  | wohl, possibly, perhaps                        |
| doch, yet  | zwar, indeed                                   |
| endlich, at last   |  |
| folglich, consequently   |  |

**417.** **Subordinating conjunctions** requiring the transposed order are :

|                          |                          |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| als, when, as            | obgleich, although       |
| als ob, } as if          | ob schon, although       |
| als wenn, }              | obwohl, although         |
| bevor, before            | seit(dem), since         |
| bis, until               | sobald, as soon as       |
| da, since, as            | während, while           |
| damit, in order that     | wann, when               |
| daß, that, so that       | weil, because            |
| ehe, before              | wenn, if, when, whenever |
| indem, while             | wenn auch, even if       |
| indessen, meanwhile      | weshalb, wherefore       |
| nachdem, after           | wie, how                 |
| ob, whether (or not), if | wo, where                |

**418. 1.** Distinguish the adverbial *da, there, then*, from the subordinating conjunction *da, since, as*: *da ward es dunkel, then it grew dark; da es wieder dunkel ward, since it grew dark again.*

**2.** Distinguish *während, during*, from *während, while*; *bis*, preposition, from the conjunction *bis*; *denn*, connective, *for*, from *dann, then*; *indem, while*, from *in dem, in whom, in which*; *nach*, preposition, *after*, from the conjunction *nachdem*: *während meiner Abwesenheit, during my absence; während ich abwesend war, while I was absent; bis nächsten Juni, till next June; warten Sie, bis ich komme, wait until I come; ich glaube ihm nicht, denn er ist falsch, I do not believe him, for he is false; dann war es wahr, then it was true; nach dem ersten Mai, after the first of May; nachdem der Mai gekommen war, after (the month of) May had come; indem ich es bemerkte, while I noticed it; der Brief, in dem er mich um Hilfe bat, the letter in which he asked my assistance.*

#### TRANSLATION 35 a

**A. 1.** Sie werden wohl<sup>1</sup> zugeben, daß es sich um eine Sache von der äußersten Wichtigkeit handelt<sup>2</sup>, da der General selbst in die Hauptstadt berufen wurde. **2.** Da ward ihm erzählt, daß sich während der ersten Tage in der letzten Woche verschiedene Spione ins Lager geschlichen hätten.<sup>3</sup> **3.** Während die Sache im Kriegsrat besprochen wurde, kam ein Bote aus der Hauptstadt, der uns noch etwas Neues berichtete. **4.** Bis die Nachrichten bestätigt werden, dürfen<sup>4</sup> wir die Feinde nicht entfliehen lassen. **5.** Ein drohender Blick des Obersten fiel auf den Offizier, welcher die Wache kommandiert hatte. **6.** Warum schicken Sie die Gefangenen nicht nach der Stadt? **7.** Es hat<sup>5</sup> gar keine Gefahr, daß sie entweichen könnten. **8.** Weil ich fürchten muß, daß sie vom

**Volke gewaltsam befreit werden.** 9. Die Bauern sind wütend, seit wir die Hand an ihren Führer gelegt haben.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Exercise 9, 3 b, p. 66. <sup>2</sup> Cf. 278, 8. <sup>3</sup> Cf. Exercise 13, II, 3 b, p. 116.  
<sup>4</sup> Cf. Exercise 14, 1 c, p. 127. <sup>5</sup> Cf. 278, 5.

B. 1. Indem wir das Dorf passierten, in dem er verhaftet wurde, machten die Bauern Miene uns anzugreifen. 2. Seit gestern ist die ganze Gegend von Truppen entblößt. 3. Wir hatten jemand nach der Stadt senden müssen<sup>1</sup>; der Bote ist schon fort; trotz alledem<sup>2</sup> wird das Regiment nicht vor Abend hier sein<sup>3</sup> können. 4. Setzt wissen wir auch, daß der Feind da drüben stets sehr genau über unsere Stellung unterrichtet war. 5. Des Spions, der hier unter uns weilte, hätte er sich früher bemächtigen<sup>4</sup> sollen.<sup>5</sup> 6. Da wir nicht jeden einzelnen Verräter verhaften können, gilt es,<sup>6</sup> an dem Anführer ein Beispiel zu statuieren. 7. Mit dem einen<sup>7</sup> Mann haben wir die ganze Partei in Händen. 8. Sie sind der eigentliche Herr in diesem Schloß; also wende ich mich an Sie und an keinen andern. 9. Soeben bringt man den Gefangenen gefesselt hieher. 10. Man hat ihn binden lassen,<sup>8</sup> weil ein Spion auf keine Rücksicht Anspruch hat.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. 168, 1. <sup>2</sup> Cf. 367, 1 a. <sup>3</sup> Cf. 170, 6. <sup>4</sup> Cf. 266. <sup>5</sup> Cf. 170, 1-7.  
<sup>6</sup> Cf. Exercise 16, III, 1, p. 166. <sup>7</sup> Cf. 386, 5. <sup>8</sup> Cf. Exercise 23, 1, p. 230, and 171.

# APPENDIX

## TABULAR VIEW OF THE STRONG VERBS

### I. BASED ON THE VOWEL OF THE INFINITIVE

#### Class I. Infinitive in *a*.

##### 1. First Group: *a*, *u*, *a*.

Radical vowel of the infinitive immediately followed by any one of the **first six** consonants of the alphabet (*b*, *c*,\* *d*, *ff*,† *g*, *h*) or *sch*:

*backen*, *fahren*, *graben*, *laden*,  
*mahlen*, *schaffen*, *schlagen*, *tragen*,  
*wachsen*, *waschen* (179).

##### 2. Second Group: *a*, (*i* †) *ie*, *a*.

All other verbs with *a* in the infinitive (180).

#### Sole exception

*schallen*, *scholl*, *geschollen*.

\* Occurring only in *ch* and *st*.

† Remember *ſ* must be double.

‡ Only in *ſangen* and *ſangen*; former spelling *ſieng* and *hieng*.

#### Class II. Infinitive in *e*; *ä*, *ö* or *ü*.

##### 1. First Group: *e*, *a*, *e*.

*Geben*, and the following nine verbs whose radical *e* of the infinitive is immediately followed by *h* (not *ch* nor *ſch*), *f*, *ff* or *t*:

*essen*, *fressen*, *vergessen*, *lesen*,  
*meſſen*, *genesen*, *geſchehen*, *ſehen*,  
*treten* (189, 2).

##### 2. Second Group:

*a. e, ö, ö*      *c. ü, ü, ü*

*b. ä, ö, ö*      *d. ü, ö, ö*

*a. ſechten*, *flechten*, *heben*,  
*melken*, *pſlegen*, *quellen*, *ſcheren*,  
*ſchmelzen*, *ſchwellen*, *bewegen*,  
*weben* (194, a).

*b, c, d.* All verbs in *ä* (except *gebären*), *ö* and *ü* (194, *b, c, d*).

##### 3. Third Group:

*a. e, ä, ö*      *b. ä, ä, ö*

*a.* All the other verbs with *e* in the infinitive (199, *a*).

*b.* Only *gebären*.

NOTE. For irregular *gehen* and *ſtehen*, cf. 223.

**Class III. Infinitive in i.****1. First Group :**

*a. i, ä, ö      b. i, ü, ü*

*a. All verbs with root ending in iun and one verb in imm: schwimmen, (206, a).*

*b. The remaining two verbs in imm: glimmen, klimmen (206, b).*

**2. Second Group : i, ä, ü.**

All other verbs with i in the infinitive; their roots end in ind, ing\* or inf (207).

**Sole exception**

schinden, schund, geschunden.

NOTE 1. Remember:

bitten, bat, gebeten.

sitzen, saß, gegessen (204, 1).

NOTE 2. For wissen, cf. 172.

---

\* Bringen is weak and irregular (172).

**Class V. Infinitive in ie.****1. First Group : ie, ö, ü.**

Radical vowel (ie) of the infinitive immediately followed by d, f, k or ch (218).\*

**2. Second Group : ie, ö, ü.**

All other verbs with ie in the infinitive (219).

**Sole Exception**

legen, lag, gelegen.

---

\* Cf. 216, Note.

**Class IV. Infinitive in o, u or au.****1. Two verbs in o:**

kommen, kam, gekommen.  
stoßen, stieß, gestoßen (209).

**2. One verb \* in u:**

rufen, rief, gerufen (210).

**3. Six verbs in au:**

*a. hauen, hieb, gehauen.  
laufen, lief, gelaufen (211, a).*

*b. The other four have o in the preterit and past participle (211, b).*

NOTE. There are no other strong verbs with o, u or au in the infinitive.

---

\* Tun, is irregular (223).

**Class VI. Infinitive in ei.****1. First Group : ei, i, ü.**

All verbs with ei in the infinitive, immediately followed by t, f, k or ch,\* besides leiden and schneiden (221).

**2. Second Group : ei, ie, ic.**

All other verbs with ei in the infinitive (222).

NOTE. Seissen, hieß, geheissen (221, b).

---

\* Cf. 216, Note.



## II. BASED ON THE VOWEL OF THE PRETERIT

**NOTE.** Remember that the preterit and infinitive can never have the same vowel.

The only radical vowels found in the preterit are: *a*, *i*, *ie*, *o* or *u*.

Thus the vowel *e* and the diphthongs *ei* and *au* never occur in the preterit.

PRETERIT *a*

## Infinitive

1. *a. e* { Class II, 1st group: *laß*, *lesen*, etc. 189;
- b. e* {   "   " 3d   " : *half*, *helfen*, etc. 199, 1 *a*.
- c. ä*   Class II, 3d group: only *gebär*, *gebären*, 199, 1 *b*.
- d. i* { Class III, 1st group, *a*: *begann*, *beginnen*, etc. 206 *a*;
- e. i* { Class III, 2d group: *fañd*, *finden*, etc. 207;
- f. i* { only *bat*, *bitten*; *saß*, *sitzen*, 204, 1.
- g. ie*   only *lag*, *liegen*, 215, 1.
- h. o*    only *fam*, *fommen*, Class IV, 209.

PRETERIT *i*

2. *a. a*   only *fiñg*, *fangen*; *hiñg*, *hangen*; Class I, 2d group 180.
- b. ei*   Class VI, 1st group, 221: *schñitt*, *schneiden*, etc.

PRETERIT *ie*

3. *a. a*   Class I, 2d group, 180: *fiel*, *fallen*; *hielt*, *halten*, etc.  
       Exceptions: *fiñg*, *fangen*; *hiñg*, *hangen*.
- b. o*   only *stieß*, *stoßen*.
- c. u*   "   *rief*, *rufen*.
- d. au*  "   *hieb*, *hauen*.
- "   *lief*, *laufen*.
- } Class IV, 209, 210, 211 *a*.
- e. ei*   Class VI, 2d group, 222: *lieb*, *leihen*;  
                                   *blieb*, *bleiben*, etc.

PRETERIT **o****Infinitive**

4. *a. a* only scholl, schallen ; Class I (exception).  
*b. e* } *sch*ht, *sch*hten ; bewog, bewegen, etc.  
*c. ä* } only gor, gären ; rōch, rāchen ; schwor, schwären ;  
           } *w*og, wāgen.  
*d. ö* } only lōsch, löschen ; schwor, schwören.  
*e. ü* } *t*or, türen ; log, lügen, trog, trügen.  
*f. i* only glōmm, glimmen ; klōmm, klimmen, Class III,  
           206, *b*.  
*g. au* only soff, saufen ; sog, saugen ; schnob, schnauben ;  
           schrob, schrauben ; Class IV, 211 *b*.  
*h. ie* Class V, 215–220, froch, friechen ; flog, fliegen, etc.

PRETERIT **u**

5. *a. a* Class I, 1st group, 179 : schlug, schlagen, etc.  
*b. i* only schund, schinden, Class III (exception).

## III. BASED ON THE VOWEL OF THE PAST PARTICIPLE

**NOTE.** The past participle may have any one of the five vowels (a, e, i, o, u), or the digraph ie or the diphthong au.

The diphthong ei occurs only in one verb: heißen, hieß, geheißen.

**Past Part.  
and Inf.**

|           |   |
|-----------|---|
| <b>a</b>  | 1. <i>a.</i> Class I, both groups (179, 180):<br>getragen, tragen; gefallen, fallen.<br>Sole exception: geschollen, schallen. |
| <b>e</b>  | <i>b.</i> Class II, first group (189): gegeben, geben, etc.   |
| <b>o</b>  | <i>c.</i> Class IV (209): <b>only</b> gekommen, kommen;<br>gestoßen, stoßen.  |
| <b>u</b>  | <i>d.</i> Class IV (210): <b>only</b> gerufen, rufen.   |
| <b>au</b> | <i>e.</i> Class IV (211, <i>a</i> ): <b>only</b> gehauen, hauen;<br>gelaufen, laufen.   |
| <b>ei</b> | <i>f.</i> Class VI (222, <i>a</i> ): <b>only</b> geheißen, heißen.  |

**NOTE.** Heißen is the only strong verb with ei in the infinitive and past participle (exception to the rules of Class VI).

**Past  
Part.  
and  
Pret.****Inf.**

|          |   |
|----------|---|
| <b>a</b> | 2. <i>a.</i> Class I (179, 180): <b>only</b><br>geschollen, scholl, schallen<br>(Sole exception to the rules of Class I).   |
| <b>e</b> | <i>b.</i> gefochten, focht, fechten;<br>bewogen, bewog, bewegen, etc.<br><i>c.</i> <b>only</b> gegoren, gor, gären; gerochen, roch, rächen;<br>geschworen, schwor, schwären; gewogen, wog,<br>wägen.<br><i>d.</i> <b>only</b> geloschen, losch, lösch; geschworen,<br>schwor, schwören.<br><i>e.</i> <b>only</b> geforen, for, füren; gelogen, log, lügen;<br>getrogen, trog, trügen. |
| <b>ä</b> |   |
| <b>ö</b> |   |
| <b>ü</b> |   |
| <b>i</b> | <i>f.</i> Class III (206, <i>b</i> ): <b>only</b> geglommen, glomm,<br>glimmen; geflommen, flomm, flimmen.  |

| Past Part. and Pret.  | Infinitive |  |
|---|------------|--|
| <b>o</b>  | <b>au</b>  | g. Class IV (211, <i>b</i> ): <b>only</b> <i>ge</i> essen, <i>so</i> ff, <i>sa</i> ufen; <i>ge</i> sogen, <i>so</i> g, <i>sa</i> ugen; <i>ge</i> schoben, <i>sch</i> ob, <i>sch</i> nauben; <i>ge</i> schroben, <i>sch</i> rob, <i>sch</i> rauben. |
|   | <b>ie</b>  | h. Class V, both groups (215, 220) <i>ge</i> frohen, <i>fr</i> och, <i>fr</i> ieden; <i>ge</i> flogen, <i>fl</i> og, <i>fl</i> iegen, etc.   |
| <b>i</b>  | <b>ei</b>  | 3. Class VI, first group (220, 221) <i>ge</i> glitten, <i>gl</i> itt, <i>gl</i> eiten; <i>ge</i> schnitten, <i>sch</i> nitt, <i>sch</i> neiden, etc.   |
| <b>ie</b>   | <b>ei</b>  | 4. Class VI, second group (222) <i>ge</i> liehen, <i>lie</i> h, <i>lei</i> hen; <i>ge</i> schrieben, <i>sch</i> rieb, <i>sch</i> reiben, etc.  |
| NOTE. For <i>hei</i> ßen, the only exception, cf 1 f, Note, above.  |            |  |
| <b>u</b>  | <b>i</b>   | 5. Class III (205, 3): <b>only</b> <i>ge</i> schunden, <i>sch</i> und, <i>sch</i> inden (exception to rules of Class III.)   |
| 6. a. With the remaining verbs given below (7, 8, 9, 10), the infinitive, preterit and past participle have each a different vowel. |            |  |
| b. With verbs of this kind, the vowel of the past participle can only be <b>o</b> , <b>u</b> or <b>e</b> .                          |            |  |
| Infinitive  | Preterit   | Past Participle  |
|   |            | 7. Any verb with the past participle in <b>o</b> , not found in 1 c (only <i>ge</i> kommen) and 2 above, must belong here.   |
| <b>e</b>  | <b>a</b>   | <b>o</b> a. Class II, third group (199, 1 a): <i>br</i> echen, <i>br</i> ach, <i>gebr</i> ochen, etc.  |
| <b>ä</b>  | <b>a</b>   | <b>o</b> b. Class II, third group (199, 1 b): <b>only</b> <i>geb</i> ären, <i>geb</i> ar, <i>geb</i> oren.   |
| <b>i</b>  | <b>a</b>   | <b>o</b> c. Class III, first group (206, a): <i>beg</i> innen, <i>beg</i> ann, <i>beg</i> onnen, etc.  |
| NOTE. Remember that in this section of verbs all the preterits have <b>a</b> , and all the past participles take <b>o</b> .         |            |  |
|   |            | 8. All verbs with the past participle in <b>u</b> , except <i>gerufen</i> (1 d above) and <i>geschunden</i> (5 above) belong here.   |
| <b>i</b>  | <b>a</b>   | <b>u</b> Class III, second group (207): <i>fin</i> den, <i>fan</i> d, <i>gef</i> unden, etc.   |
| <b>i</b>  | <b>a</b>   | <b>e</b> 9. <b>Only</b> <i>b</i> itten, <i>bat</i> , <i>geb</i> eten; <i>si</i> ßen, <i>sa</i> ß, <i>ge</i> essen (204, 1).  |
| <b>ie</b>   | <b>a</b>   | <b>e</b> 10. <b>Only</b> <i>lie</i> gen, <i>lag</i> , <i>ge</i> legen (215, 1).  |

IV. CHANGING THE RADICAL VOWEL OF THE INFINITIVE IN  
THE SECOND AND THIRD PERSONS SINGULAR OF  
THE PRESENT INDICATIVE

**Class I (182), First group**

backen, bäckst, bäckt  
fahren, fährst, fährt  
graben, gräbst, gräbt  
laden, lädst, lädt  
schlagen, schlägst, schlägt  
tragen, trägst, trägt  
wachsen, wächst(e)t, wächst  
waschen, wäsch(e)st, wäscht

**Second group**

blasen, blä(ef)t, bläst  
braten, brätst, brät  
fallen, fälltst, fällt  
fangen, fängst, fängt  
halten, hältst, hält  
hängen, hängtst, hängt  
lassen, lässest(läfst), läßt  
raten, rätst, rät  
schlafen, schläfst, schläft

**Class IV (212, 1, 3)**

stoßen, stöß(ef)t, stößt  
laufen,\* läufst, läuft  
saufen,\* säufst, säuft

NOTE 1. Schaffen and schallen have no change of vowels.

NOTE 2. None of the above verbs change their vowels in the second person singular of the imperative.

---

\* Also without umlaut.

V. CHANGING THE RADICAL VOWEL OF THE INFINITIVE IN THE  
SECOND AND THIRD PERSONS SINGULAR OF THE INDICATIVE  
PRESENT AND ALSO IN THE SECOND PERSON SINGULAR  
OF THE IMPERATIVE

## CLASS II

**First group (190, 191)**

essen, (isst) ißt, ißt; iß!  
fressen, (frisst) frißt, frißt;  
friß!  
geben, gibst, gib; gib!  
vergessen, (vergisst) vergißt,  
vergißt; vergiß!  
lesen, (liest) liest, liest; lies!  
messen, (mißt) mißt, mißt;  
miß!  
geschehen, geschieht  
sehen, siehst, sieh; sieh!  
treten, trittst, tritt; tritt!

**Second group (195, 196)**

fechten ficht(e)st, ficht; ficht!  
flechten, flicht(es)t, flicht; flicht!  
melken, milchst, milch; milch!  
quellen, quillst, quill; quill!  
scheren, schierst, schiert; schier!  
schmelzen, schmilz(es)t, schmilzt;  
schmilz!  
schwellen, schwillst, schwillt;  
schwill!

**Third group (200, 201)**

bergen, birgst, birgt; birg!  
bersten, birst(es)t, birst; birst!  
brechen, brichst, brichst; brich!  
verderben, verdirbst, verdirbt;  
verdirb!  
dreschen, drisch(es)t, drisch;  
drisch!  
empfehlen, empfehlst, empfehlt;  
empfehl!  
gelten, giltst, gilt; gilt!  
helfen, hilfst, hilf; hilf!  
nehmen, nimmst, nimm; nimm!  
schelten, schiltst, schilt; schilt!  
schrecken, schrickst, schrick;  
schrick!  
sprechen, sprichst, sprich; sprich!  
stechen, stichst, stich; stich!  
stehlen, stiehst, stieh; stieh!  
sterben, stirbst, stirbt; stirb!  
treffen, triffst, tritt; tritt!  
werben, wirbst, wirbt; wirb!  
werfen, wirfst, wirft; wirf!

NOTE 1. The verbs *genesen* (first group); *heben*, *pflegen*, *bewegen*, *weben* (second group) have no change of vowel.

NOTE 2. *Gebären* has *gebärst*, *gebärt*; *gebäre*! or *gebierst*, *gebiert*; *gebier*! (200, 1 a).



# GERMAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY\*

## A.

**Abentener**, *n.* I, adventure.  
**abreisen**, *w.* depart, leave.  
**abschließen** (sich), *V.* seclude (one's self).  
**acht**, eight.  
**achten**, *w.* esteem, respect.  
**albern**, silly, foolish.  
**all**, all.  
**also**, therefore, thus (not also).  
**Alter**, *n.* I, age.  
**Anfang**, *m.* IV, beginning.  
**angaugen**, *I.* begin.  
**Anführer**, *m.* I, leader, chief.  
**angehen**, *irr. str.* (224) concern.  
**angreifen**, *VI.* attack.  
**Anlage**, *f. w.* gift, talent.  
**anmaßen** (sich, *dative*), *w.* presume.  
**anmessen**, *II.* measure, take the measure of.  
**annehmen** (*trans.*) *II.* accept, suppose, admit.  
**annehmen** (sich, *with genitive*), interest (one's self) in, take interest in.  
**anpreisen**, *VI.* praise, commend.  
**Ausicht**, *f. w.* view, prospect.  
**Ausspruch**, *m.* IV, claim, pretension.  
**Ausspruch haben** (auf), be entitled (to), claim.  
**anstatt** (*preposition*), instead of.

**anstrengen** (sich), *w.* exert (one's self), make every effort.  
**Anzahl**, *f. w.* number.  
**Apfel**, *m.* II, apple.  
**Armeebefehl**, *m.* III, order of the day.  
**Art**, *f. w.* kind, manner, sort (not art).  
**auffallen**, *I* (*with dative*), surprise, astonish.  
**aufgehen**, *irr. str.* (224) rise.  
**aufhalten** (sich), *I.* stay, remain.  
**aufhängen**, *w.* hang up.  
**aufkommen**, *IV.* rise, get up, come up.  
**Aufregung**, *f. w.* excitement.  
**aufstehen**, *irr. str.* (225) rise.  
**aufstellen** (sich), *w.* draw up, stand up.  
**Aufwartung**, *f. w.* attendance.  
**Aufwartung machen**, pay one's respects.  
**Auge**, *n.* (132) eye.  
**ausbleiben**, *VI.* stay away, fail to appear.  
**ausbrechen**, *II.* break out.  
**Ausbruch**, *m.* IV, outbreak.  
**Ausführung**, *f. w.* execution, realization.  
**ausrufen**, *IV.* exclaim.  
**ausrufen** (sich), rest, repose.  
**Aussicht**, *f. w.* prospect, view.

\* The abbreviations are the same as those used in the German Vocabulary; cf. Note, p. 201.



## B.

**Bahnhof**, *m.* IV, railroad station.

**Balkon'**, *m.* III, balcony.

**Bauer**, *m.* (127) peasant.

**Bauernhochzeit**, *f. w.* peasant's wedding.

**beantworten**, *w. trans.* answer.

**bedenken**, *w. irr.* consider, bear in mind.

**bedeutend**, important.

**bedienen** (sich, *with genitive*), *w.* avail one's self of, make use of.

**bedürfen** (like *dürfen*, 167, *with genitive*), need.

**Bedürfnis**, *f.* III, need, necessity.

**beeilen** (sich), *w.* hasten, make haste.

**befreien**, *w.* free, liberate.

**Befreier**, *m.* I, liberator.

**befreunden**, *w.* befriending.

**begegnen** (*with dative*), meet, encounter.

**Beginn**, *m. str.* beginning.

**begleiten**, *w.* accompany.

**Begleiter**, *m.* I, companion.

**beherrschen**, *w.* govern, rule over, control.

**Beichte**, *f. w.* confession.

**bekannt**, known.

**belästigen**, *w.* molest, annoy.

**belohnen**, *w.* reward, compensate.

**bemächtigen** (sich, *with genitive*), *w.* take possession of.

**bemerken**, *w.* observe, notice, remark.

**bemühen** (sich), *w.* trouble one's self, take pains.

**benützen**, *w.* make use of.

**bereiten**, *w.* prepare.

**Berg**, *m.* III, mountain.

**berufen**, IV, call, summon.

**beschützen**, *w.* protect.

**besiegen**, *w.* defeat (not besiege).

**besingen**, III, celebrate in song.

**besitzen** (204), possess.

**besonder** (*adj.*) particular, peculiar.

**besonders** (*adv.*) especially, in particular.

**besprechen**, II, discuss.

**bestätigen**, *w.* confirm, verify.

**bestimmt**, positive, certain.

**betrachten**, *w.* contemplate, view.

**beträchtlich**, considerable.

**Betragen**, *n. str.* behavior.

**betreffen**, II, concern (*was mich betrifft*, as far as I am concerned).

**Bewegung**, *f. w.* movement, motion.

**Beweis**, *m.* III, proof, evidence.

**Bibel**, *f. w.* Bible.

**billig**, fair, cheap.

**binden**, III, bind.

**blamie'ren** (sich), *w.* disgrace one's self.

**blau**, blue.

**bliden**, *w.* (auf), look (at).

**Blitz**, *m.* III, lightning.

**Blitzableiter**, *m.* I, lightning-rod.

**blitzen** (*impers.*) lighten; (*intrans.*) flash.

**blutig**, bloody.

**breit**, broad, wide.

**brennen**, *w. irr.* (164, 1), burn; (*impers.* 274, 2).

**Bureau**,\* office.

**Burg**, *f. w.* castle, stronghold.

**Butter**, *f.* butter.

\* Pronounce u like ü and eau like o, with the accent on the last syllable.

## C.

**Charak'ter**, \* *m.* III, character, disposition.

**Chef**, † *m. str. in singular* (Chefs, *in plural*); chief, principal, leader.

## D.

**dabei**, *adv.* on that occasion.

**daheim**, *adv.* at home.

**Dampfschiff**, *m.* III, steamboat, steamer.

**darnach**, *adv.* afterwards.

**davon**, *adv.* away.

**davonkommen**, IV, escape; mit einem blauen Auge davonkommen, come off with but a little hurt.

**deshalb**, therefore.

**deuten**, *w.* (auf), point (at).

**dicht**, *adj.* thick, close, dense; *adv.* (with an), close by.

**Dichter**, *m.* I, poet.

**Diener**, *m.* I, servant.

**Diner'**, *n. str. in singular* (Diners, *in plural*), dinner.

**Dirne**, *f. w.* girl, lass.

**doch**, yet.

**drängen** (sich), *w.* crowd, pass.

**draußen**, *adv.* without, out of doors.

**dreißigjährig**, thirty years'.

**dritt**, third.

**drüben**, *adv.* over there, beyond.

**drucken**, *w.* print.

**dumm**, stupid, silly; dummer Streich (III), stupid trick.

**durchlesen**, II, read through.

## E.

**edel**, noble.

**eifersüchtig** (auf), jealous (of).

**eigentlich**, real.

**Exzug**, *m.* IV, express train.

**einander**, (one) another.

**einbiegen**, V, *intr.* turn into.

**einbilden** (sich), *w.* imagine.

**Eindruck**, *m.* IV, impression.

**Einfluß**, *m.* IV, influence.

**einheizen**, *w.* light a fire.

**einladen**, I, invite.

**einnehmen**, II, capture, take.

**einst**, once, one time.

**eintreffen**, II, arrive.

**Eintritt**, *m.* III, entrance.

**einzel**, single.

**einzig**, sole, single.

**elend**, miserable, wretched.

**Elle**, *f. w.* ell, yard.

**Eltern** (*plur. only*), parents.

**eng**, narrow.

**engagieren**, † *w.* engage.

**entblößen**, *w.* denude.

**entgehen**, *str. irr. (with dative)* escape, get away from.

**enthalt**, I, contain.

**entlassen**, I, let go, dismiss, discharge.

**entscheidend**, decisive.

**entschließen** (sich), V, resolve, decide.

**entweichen**, *w.* slip away.

**entziehen** (sich), V, (*with dative*) withdraw from.

**erbrechen**, II, break open.

**Erbchaft**, *f. w.* inheritance.

**Erde**, *f. w.* earth.

\* In the plural, the accent rests on the third syllable. † Pronounce **Ch** like **C**.  
† Pronounce the first **g** like **g** in *garden*, the second **g** like **s** in *pleasure*; the accent is on the third syllable.

**Greignis**, *f.* III, event, occurrence.  
**erfordern**, *w.* demand, require.  
**erfreut**, *adj.* rejoiced, delighted.  
**erheben**, II, lift up, raise.  
**erhellen**, *w.* brighten, clear up.  
**erhoffen**, *w.* hope for, expect.  
**erholen** (sich), *w.* recover.  
**erinnern** (sich), *w.* remember.  
**Erfältung**, *f.* *w.* cold.  
**erkennen**, *irr. w.* (164, 1), recognize.  
**erklären** (sich) *w.* explain one's self;  
     *daraus erklärt sich*, that accounts  
     for.  
**erlauben**, *w.* permit.  
**erleiden**, VI, suffer, endure.  
**ermüden** (sich), *w.* tire one's self, get  
     fatigued.  
**ernstlich**, serious.  
**Ernte**, *f. w.* harvest, crop.  
**erscheinen**, VI, appear.  
**erschießen**, V, shoot.  
**erstaunt**, *adj.* astonished.  
**erwerben**, II, acquire.  
*etwa*, *adv.* perhaps.  
**Europa**, *n. str.* Europe.

**fest**, firm, strong, staunch.  
**fluchen**, *w.* curse.  
**Flucht**, *f.* flight.  
**Folge**, *f. w.* consequence.  
**fortkommen**, IV, get away, escape.  
**fortsetzen**, *w.* continue.  
**Fräulein**, *n. I*, Miss, young lady.  
**freilich**, *adv.* of course (not freely).  
**Freude**, *f. w.* joy (distinguish from  
     *Freunde, friends*).  
**freuen** (*impers.*) *w.* give pleasure to.  
**freuen** (sich), *w.* rejoice.  
**Freundin**, *f. w.* (105, Note 1) lady  
     friend.  
**Freundschaft**, *w. f.* friendship.  
**Friede**, *m.* (125) peace.  
**früh**, early.  
**Frühling**, *m. III*, spring.  
**Frühstück**, *n. III*, breakfast.  
**fünf**, five.  
**furchtbar**, fearful, terrible.  
**fürchterlich**, frightful.  
**furchtsam**, timid.  
**Fürst**, *m. w.* prince, chief.

## G.

## F.

**fahren**, I, *intr.* drive, go (by rail, by  
     carriage, by boat).  
**fallen**, I, fall.  
**Farbe**, *f. w.* color.  
**fassen** (sich), *w.* compose one's self.  
**Faust**, *f. IV*, fist.  
**fechten**, II, fight.  
**feierlich**, solemn.  
**Feldherr**, *m. w.* commander-in-chief.  
**Feldzug**, *m. IV*, campaign, expedi-  
     tion.  
**Ferne**, *f. w.* distance.  
**fesseln**, *w.* fetter, chain.

**Garnison**, *f. w.* garrison.  
**Gast**, *m. IV*, guest.  
**Geburtstag**, *m. III*, birthday.  
**gedenken**, *w. irr. with genitive* (164, 2),  
     think of, remember.  
**Gedränge**, *n. I*, throng, press, crowd.  
**Gefahr**, *f. w.* danger.  
**gefälligst**, *adv.* if you please.  
**Gefangene**, *m. w.* prisoner, captive.  
**Gegenstand**, *m. IV*, subject.  
**Gegenwart**, *f.* presence.  
**Geheimnis**, *n. III*, secret.  
**Geheiß**, *n. III*, command, behest.  
**gehörig**, proper, suitable.

**gelaugen** *w.* (an), arrive at, reach (distinguish from *gelingen*, III, be successful).

**gelehrt**, learned.

**Gemahl**, *m.* III, husband.

**genau**, accurate.

**Generalfstab**, *m.* IV, general staff.

**genügen**, *w.* suffice, be enough.

**geschehen**, III, *impers.* happen, take place.

**Geschmack**, *m.* IV, taste.

**Geschöpf**, *n.* III, creature.

**Geschrei**, *n. str.* cries, screaming.

**Geschwätz**, *n.* III, talk, chatter, gossip.

**Gefinnung**, *f. w.* sentiment.

**Gesträuch**, *n.* III, shrubs, shrubbery, bushes.

**getrauen** (*sich*), *w.* (trust one's self), dare, venture, make bold.

**gewähren**, *w.* accord, offer, grant.

**Gewalt**, *f. w.* force, power, might.

**gewaltfam**, forcible, violent.

**gewinnen**, III, win, gain.

**Gewitter**, *n.* I, thunderstorm.

**Gewitterwolke**, *f. w.* thundercloud.

**gewöhnen** (*sich*), *w.* accustom one's self.

**Gewohnheit**, *f. w.* custom.

**Gipfel**, *m.* I, top, summit.

**gleichgültig**, indifferent.

**gleichsam**, *adv.* as it were, so to say.

**Glück**, *n. str.* luck, happiness.

**glücklicherweise**, *adv.* fortunately.

**golden**, golden.

**Grabmal**, *n.* V, tomb, sepulchre.

**Gräfin**, *f. w.* (105, Note 1), countess.

**gräuen** (*sich*), *w.* grieve, sorrow.

**Gran'de**, *m. w.* grandee.

**gran**, gray.

**grauen**, *w. intr.* turn gray, dawn.

**grauen**, *w. impers.* dread, shudder.

**Grust**, *f.* IV, grave, vault.

**grün**, green.

**gründlich**, thorough.

**gütig**, kind.

## 6.

**hangen**, I, hang.

**hart**, *adj.* hard; *adv. with an*, hard by, close by.

**hassen**, *w.* hate.

**Haufen**, *m.* I, heap, mass, crowd.

**hausen**, *w.* dwell.

**Haushaltung**, *f. w.* housekeeping.

**heben**, II, raise, lift, help.

**heilig**, holy.

**heraunahen**, *w.* draw near, approach.

**herein**, *adv.* in, in here.

**hernach**, *adv.* afterwards.

**herschiden**, *w.* send hither.

**Herz**, *n.* (133), heart.

**herzlos**, heartless.

**heutig**, of this day, to-day's, present.

**hingehen**, *str. irr.* go there.

**hinlegen**, *w.* place there.

**hintergeh'en**, *str. irr.* deceive, impose upon.

**hinterlas'sen**, I, leave behind, bequeath.

**hinschauen**, *w.* (nach), look (at).

**hoffen**, *w.* hope.

**Hofnarr**, *m. w.* court jester.

**Hund**, *m.* III, dog.

**Hunger**, *m. str.* hunger.

**Hungerstnot**, *f.* famine.

## 3.

**irren** (*sich*), *w.* err, be mistaken.

**Italie'ner**, Italian.

## 3.

**Jahrhundert**, *n.* III, century.  
**jammern**, *w.* lament, mourn, grieve.  
**jeder**, every, each.  
**jedoch**, however, nevertheless.  
**Jugendgenosse**, *m. w.* companion of  
 one's youth, playfellow.  
**just**, *adv.* just, just now.

## Q.

**Kaffee**, *m. str.* coffee.  
**kämpfen**, *w.* fight.  
**Kapitän'**, *m.* III, captain (of a ship).  
**kein**, no.  
**Kette**, *f. w.* chain.  
**Kinderszeit**, *f. w.* time of childhood.  
**Klagen**, *w.* lament.  
**Klein**, little, small.  
**Klopfen**, *w.* knock.  
**klug**, prudent.  
**Knabe**, *m. w.* boy.  
**Kraft**, *f.* IV, strength, force (not  
*craft*).  
**Kreuzzug**, *m.* IV, crusade.  
**kriegerisch**, warlike.  
**Kriegsmini'ster**, *m.* I, (minister) sec-  
 retary of war.  
**Kriegsrat**, *m.* council of war.  
**Kriegszug**, *m.* IV, military expedi-  
 tion.  
**Kugelnregen**, *m. str.* (rain) shower of  
 bullets.  
**Kunst**, *f.* IV, art.

## Q.

**langsam**, slow.  
**langweilig**, tedious.  
**Laub**, *n. str.* foliage.  
**Laube**, *f. w.* bower, arbor.

**Laufbahn**, *f. w.* career.  
**laufen**, *IV*, run.  
**leben**, *w.* live.  
**Lehnstuhl**, *m.* IV, armchair.  
**Leib**, *m.* V, body.  
**leihen**, *VI*, lend.  
**leuchten**, *w.* shine.  
**lieb**, *adj.* dear.  
**Liebhaver**, *m.* I, lover.  
**Literatur**, *f. w.* literature.  
**Lob**, *n. str.* praise.  
**loben**, *w.* praise.  
**lustig**, merry, gay.

## M.

**mächtig**, mighty, powerful.  
**Mahl**, *n.* III, meal, banquet.  
**Major'**, *m.* III, major.  
**malerisch**, picturesque.  
**manch**, many, many a.  
**Masse**, *f. w.* mass, crowd, multitude.  
**Mauer**, *f. w.* wall.  
**Medizin'**, *f.* medicine.  
**mehrere**, several.  
**Meinung**, *f. w.* opinion.  
**meistens**, *adv.* mostly, chiefly.  
**melden**, *w.* announce.  
**Mensch**, *m. w.* man, human being;  
 (*plural*) people.  
**merkwürdig**, remarkable.  
**Miene**, *f. w.* mien, look; **Miene ma-**  
**chen**, look as if, seem, threaten.  
**Milch**, *f.* milk.  
**Mini'ster**, minister.  
**mitbringen**, *w. irr.* (164, 2) carry  
 along, bring along.  
**mitmachen**, *w.* take part in.  
**Mitmenschen**, *m. w.* fellow creature,  
 fellow being, fellow man.  
**mitnehmen**, *II*, take along.

**Mittel**, *n.* I, means.  
**modell**, *w.* model, mould.  
**Monat**, *m.* III, month.  
**mora'lish**, moral.  
**Mühe**, *f. w.* trouble, pain.  
**mühsam**, laborious, troublesome.  
**Muse'um**, *n. str. in singular (plural Muse'en)*, museum.  
**müßig**, idle, at leisure.  
**Mut**, *m. str.* courage.

## N.

**nachahmen**, *w.* imitate.  
**Nachmittag**, *m.* III, afternoon.  
**nächst**, next.  
**natürlich**, *adj.* natural; *adv.* naturally, of course.  
**Nesse**, *m. w.* nephew.  
**neidisch**, envious.  
**nennen**, *w. irr.* (164, 1) name.  
**Neugierde**, *f.* curiosity.  
**Neuigkeit**, *f. w.* news, novelty.  
**nieder**, *adj.* low.  
**niederschreiben**, VI, write down.  
**niemand**, no one.  
**noch**, *adv.* still, yet; (noch ein, 368, 1 a).  
**nördlich**, northern.  
**Not**, *f.* IV, need, necessity.  
**nützlich**, useful.

## O.

**oder**, or.  
**offen**, open.  
**ohnegleiches**, (without the like), unequalled.  
**Onkel**, *m.* I, uncle.

## P.

**Partei'**, *f. w.* party, part.  
**Partei nehmen**, side with, espouse a side.

**passieren**, *w. trans.* pass through.  
**Pfaffe**, *m. w.* priest.  
**Pferdehändler**, *m.* I, horse-dealer.  
**Plan**, *m.* IV, plan, design.  
**Platz**, *m.* IV, place, square.  
**Platz nehmen**, II, take a seat.  
**Post**, *f. w.* mail, post-office.  
**prächtigt**, magnificent.  
**praktizieren**, *w.* practice.  
**Präsident'**, *m. w.* president.  
**predigen**, *w.* preach.  
**Predigt**, *f. w.* sermon.  
**Preis**, *m.* III, price.  
**probieren**, *w.* try, attempt (not prove).  
**Punkt**, *m.* III, point; (time of the day, on the stroke of; sharp).

## R.

**ragen**, *w.* rise, tower.  
**Rand**, *m.* V, border, edge.  
**rasten**, *w.* rest, repose.  
**Rathaus**, *n.* V, city hall.  
**Rauch**, *m. str.* smoke.  
**rauchen**, *w.* smoke.  
**raufen**, *w.* fight, scuffle.  
**Rede**, *f. w.* speech, discourse.  
**Redensart**, *f. w.* phrase.  
**Regierungsrat**, *m.* IV, counsellor of the government.  
**Reichsstadt**, *f.* IV, imperial city.  
**Reichstag**, *m.* III, parliament, imperial diet.  
**reiten**, VI, ride (on horseback).  
**reizen**, *w.* irritate.  
**Republik'**, *f. w.* republic.  
**Rücken**, *m.* I, back.  
**Rücksicht**, *f. w.* consideration, regard.  
**Ruhe**, *f.* quiet, rest, peace.  
**ruhig**, quiet.  
**Ruine**, *f. w.* ruins.

## C.

**Sandstein**, *m.* III, sandstone.

**Sarg**, *m.* IV, coffin.

**Sattel**, *m.* II, saddle.

**sauer**, sour.

**Scene**, *f. w.* scene.

**schaffen**, I, create, produce; *w.* get, procure, do, work.

**schändlich**, shameful.

**Schelm**, *m.* III, rogue.

**sicheren** (sich), *w. colloquially*, trouble one's self, care about.

**schicken**, *w.* send.

**schießen**, V, shoot, dart.

**Schlachtfeld**, *n.* V, battlefield.

**schlafen**, I, sleep.

**schlagen**, I, strike, beat, defeat.

**schleichen** (sich), VI, steal along, crawl.

**schließen**, V, close.

**schlimm**, bad.

**Schloss**, *m.* I, locksmith (*distinct from* Schlösser, *plural of* Schloss, *n.* lock, castle).

**Schlucht**, *f. w.* ravine.

**Schmuck**, *m. str.* ornament, finery.

**schneeig**, snowy.

**schrecklich**, terrible.

**schreien**, VI, cry, scream.

**Schwager**, *m.* II, brother-in-law.

**schwarz**, black.

**schwätzen**, *w.* talk, chatter.

**schweigsam**, taciturn.

**schwer**, heavy.

**Schwierigkeit**, *f. w.* difficulty.

**schwören**, II, swear.

**segnen**, *w.* bless.

**sehnen** (sich) nach, *w.* long for, yearn after.

**sein**, *irr.* (137), be.

**seitdem**, *adv.* since, since then.

**Selbstmord**, *m.* III, suicide.

**seltsam**, strange.

**senden**, *w. irr.* (164, 1), send.

**singen**, III, sing.

**Sinn**, *m.* III, sense, mind.

**Sitz**, *m.* III, seat, chair.

**sitzen** (204), sit.

**so**, *adv.* so, in this way.

**sogar**, *adv.* even.

**sogleich**, *adv.* at once.

**suchen**, such.

**Spanien**, *n. str.* Spain.

**spanisch**, Spanish.

**später**, later.

**Spiel**, *n.* III, play, game.

**Spielsaal**, *m.* play-room, gambling hall.

**Spott**, *m. str.* scorn, mockery.

**springen**, III, jump, leap.

**Stadttschreiber**, *m.* I, city clerk, clerk of the city council.

**Staub**, *m.* IV, position, station, class.

**Standpunkt**, *m.* III, point of view.

**stattfinden**, III, take place.

**statuieren**, *w.* affirm; ein Beispiel statuieren, make an example.

**stehen**, *irr. str.* (225), stand.

**stellen** (sich), *w.* (auf) amount (to).

**Stellung**, *f. w.* position.

**sterben**, II, die.

**stets**, *adv.* ever, always (not a form of the verb stehen).

**stille**, *w.* quiet, appease, pacify.

**Stoß**, *m.* IV, for Weinstoß, vine.

**Strahl**, *m.* (127), ray, beam.

**Streich**, *m.* III, trick, prank.

**studieren**, *w.* study.

## Z.

täglich, daily.  
 Zante, *f. w.* aunt.  
 tapfer, brave.  
 Tee, *m. str.* tea.  
 Teil, *m. III*, part, share.  
 teilen, *w.* divide, share.  
 Thea'ter, *n. I*, theatre.  
 Tochter, *f. II*, daughter.  
 toll, mad.  
 Thor, *n. III*, gate (*distinguish from*  
 Thür, *f. w.* door).  
 tragen, *I*, bear, carry, wear.  
 Traube, *f. w.* grape, cluster of  
 grapes.  
 trauen, *w. with dative*, trust.  
 Traum, *m. IV*, dream.  
 träumen, *w.* dream.  
 treffen, *II*, strike, meet, encounter.  
 treten, *II (auf)*, step on.  
 trinken, *III*, drink.  
 trüb, dark, gloomy, dusky.  
 Trümmer (*plural of Trumm, n. V*),  
 ruins, fragments.  
 Tuch, *n. V*, cloth.  
 Tugend, *f. w.* virtue.  
 Turm, *m. IV*, tower.

## U.

Uhr, *f. w.* watch; (*time of the day*)  
 o'clock.  
 umbringen, *w. irr. (164, 2)* kill.  
 umge'hen, *irr. str. (224)* elude, avoid.  
 Umstand, *m. IV*, circumstance.  
 unartig, naughty.  
 unerwartet, unexpected.  
 ungeheuer, enormous, immense.  
 unrichtig, incorrect.  
 unschuldig, innocent.

unterbre'chen, *II*, interrupt.  
 unterhal'ten, *I*, entertain, amuse.  
 unterrich'ten, *w.* inform.  
 Unterschied, *m. III*, difference.

## Ü.

üben, *w.* practice.  
 Übergabe, *f.* surrender.  
 Überraschung, *f. w.* surprise.  
 Übersetzer, *m. I*, translator.  
 übertrei'ben, *VI*, exaggerate.

## V.

Vaterland, *n. V*, fatherland, native  
 country.  
 väterlich, fatherly, paternal.  
 verachten, *w.* despise.  
 verbreiten (*sich*), *w.* extend, spread.  
 verbringen, *w. irr. (164, 2)*, spend,  
 pass.  
 verhaften, *w.* arrest.  
 verleben, *w. pass.*  
 verleihen, *VI*, grant, confer on, be-  
 stow on.  
 vermachen, *w.* bequeath.  
 vermuten, *w.* suppose.  
 verraten, *I*, betray.  
 versammeln, *w.* assemble, gather.  
 Versteck, *n. III*, hiding-place.  
 verstehen, *irr. str. (225)*, understand.  
 verurteilen, *w.* condemn, sentence.  
 Vetter, *m. (127)*, (male) cousin.  
 Violinbogen, *m. (74, a)*, bow of a  
 violin.  
 Vließ, *n. III*, fleece.  
 Volk, *n. V*, people, nation.  
 vollbringen, *w. irr. (164, 2)*, accom-  
 plish, fulfil.  
 vorbeigehen, *irr. str. (224)*, pass by.



**vorbeisichleichen** (sich), VI, sneak by, steal by.  
**vorbeitragen**, I, carry past, bear along.  
**vorfallen**, I, happen, occur.  
**vorfinden** (sich), III, be found, be forthcoming.  
**vor'hin**, *adv.* just before.  
**vorig**, previous, preceding.  
**vorkommen**, IV, *with dative*, appear, seem.  
**vorlegen**, *w.* put, submit.  
**vorlesen**, II, read aloud.  
**vornehm**, distinguished.  
**vorsichtig**, cautious.  
**vorstellen**, *w.* represent.  
**vorüberziehen**, V, march by, pass by.  
**vorzüglich**, excellent.

### W.

**Wagen**, *m.* I, carriage.  
**Wahl**, *f. w.* election.  
**Wartesaal**, *m.* IV, waiting-room.  
**Weg**, *m.* III, way.  
**wegwerfen** (sich), II, degrade one's self, hold one's self cheap.  
**weilen**, *w.* stay, remain.  
**Weinberg**, *m.* III, vineyard.  
**weinen**, *w.* weep, cry.  
**weit**, *adj.* wide, large; *adv.* far.  
**weitest**, largest, farthest.  
**Welt**, *f. w.* world.  
**wenigstens**, *adv.* at least.  
**wenn**, if.  
**werfen**, II, throw, overthrow.  
**Wettrennen**, *n.* I, race.  
**Wichtigkeit**, *f. w.* importance.

**widerstehen**, *irr. str.* (225), resist, oppose.  
**widmen**, *w.* devote.  
**Wille**, *m.* (125), will.  
**Wirt**, *m.* III, host.  
**Wittwe**, *f. w.* widow.  
**wohl**, *adv.* well.  
**Wohltat**, *f. w.* kindness, favor.  
**wundersam**, wonderful.  
**Wunsch**, *m.* IV, wish.  
**wütend**, furious.

### Z.

**Zehe**, *f. w.* toe.  
**zerfallen**, I, fall to pieces, fall to ruin.  
**zerstören**, *w.* destroy.  
**zertrümmern**, *w.* shatter, wreck.  
**Zorn**, *m. str.* anger.  
**zubringen**, *w. irr.* (164, 2), spend, pass.  
**Zucker**, *m. str.* sugar.  
**zufallen**, I, *with dative*, fall (to one's lot), come (by chance).  
**zufrieden**, contented.  
**zugeben**, II, admit.  
**zugehen**, II, *irr. str.* (224), happen; *es geht zu*, things go on.  
**zuhören**, *w. with dative*, listen.  
**zumachen**, *w.* close.  
**Zunft**, *f.* IV, guild.  
**zurückgehen**, *irr. str.* (224), go back, return.  
**zusehen**, II, *with dative*, look at.  
**zuweilen**, *adv.* sometimes, at times.  
**zweimal**, twice.  
**zwischen**, between.  
**zwölf**, twelve.

# INDEX

In the references to sections in the **Lessons**, the numbers are preceded by §.

The references to the **Exercises** are to pages, and the numbers are preceded by p. or pp.

- a**, pronunciation of, § 4.  
**ä**, pronunciation of, § 11; as umlaut of **aa**, § 14.  
**Ablaut**, § 173.  
**accentuation**, § 51; in inseparable verbs, § 234; in separable verbs, § 246.  
**accusative**, general function of, § 56, 6; with prepositions § 413, 414; with pronouns, accusative precedes dative, Exercise 15, 3, p. 145.  
**active voice**, with passive force, Exercise 11, 1, p. 89; Exercise 24, 1, p. 240.  
**address**, use of pronouns in, § 325.  
**adjectives**, when declined, § 290; declension of, § 292-297; used as substantives, § 301-303; used as predicates, § 304-305; uninflected, § 289, 303; strong declension of, § 295; weak declension of, § 293, 1; mixed declension of, § 293, 2, 294; paradigms of declensions of, § 296; as adverbs, § 403, 2; how declined, after the personal pronouns, § 299, 301, 3; after *etwas*, *was*, *nicht*, § 302, 2; adjectives ending in *e*, *el*, *er*, *en*, § 297; used in the neuter singular, § 302, 1; adjectives denoting nationality, with small initials, § 48, 2, *b*; comparison of adjectives, § 306-315, *see* comparison.  
**adverbs**, function of, § 403, 1; adjectives used as, § 403, 2; comparison of, § 404; classification of, § 406; derivation of, § 407; derived from nouns, § 407, 1; formed from superlatives and from the ordinal numbers, § 407, 2 *c*; formed from adjectives and participles, § 407, 2 *b*; position of, § 409; adverbs of direction with modal auxiliaries, Exercise 14, III, 8, p. 136.  
**ai**, pronunciation of, § 15.  
**aii**, § 367; *alles*, § 367, 2, 3; after prefixed to superlatives, § 316, 1 *b*.  
**allerliebſt**, § 316, 3.  
**alphabet**, German, § 1; script, § 2; use of capitals, § 48.  
**am**, with superlative, § 316, 2; 317, 1.  
**an**, preposition, § 414.  
**ander**, § 368.  
**ändern**, paradigm of, § 163, 2.  
**anderthalb**, § 399, 5.  
**angſt**, § 277, 2.  
**anſtatt**, preposition, § 411; with infinitive, Exercise 19, 2, p. 186.  
**articles**, declension and use of, § 55-57; definite article in combination with prepositions, § 57, 2; repetition of article, § 57, 5.  
**attributive adjective**, § 290, 291.  
**au**, pronunciation of, § 17.  
**äu**, pronunciation of, § 18.  
**auf**, preposition, § 414.  
**aufſ**, with superlatives, § 318.  
**auß**, preposition, § 412.  
**außliefern**, paradigm of, § 249, 1.  
**auxiliaries**, of tense, § 136-141; use of, § 143-145; omission of, Exercise 4, 3 *a*, p. 33; auxiliary of the passive, § 280; auxiliaries of mood, *see* modal auxiliaries.

**b**, pronunciation of, § 23.  
**Bamb**, plural of, § 134.  
**Bant**, plural of, § 134.  
**Bauer**, plural of, § 134.  
**be-**, inseparable prefix, meaning of, § 235.  
**sich befeihen**, paradigm of, 272, 2.  
**bei**, preposition, § 412.  
**beide**, *beides*, § 369.  
**besuchen**, paradigm of, § 242, 1.  
**bevor**, conjunction, § 417.  
**biinnen**, preposition, § 412.  
**bis**, preposition, § 413.  
**bis**, conjunction, § 417.  
**bitte**, § 324, 4.  
**Bogen**, plural of, § 134.  
**Boot**, plural of, § 84.  
**brennte**, § 164, 1 a.

**c**, pronunciation of, § 23.  
**capital letters**, use of, § 48; in pronouns of address, § 325.  
**cases of declension**, § 56, 3 to 6.  
**ch**, pronunciation of, § 24.  
**-chen**, § 53, 3 a; § 69.  
**Chor**, plural of, § 87, c.  
**chs**, pronunciation of, § 24, 3.  
**ch**, pronunciation of, § 25.  
**classes**, in the strong declension, *see* declension of nouns.  
**classes**, in the strong conjugation, *see* verbs.  
**classification of strong nouns** according to their gender, § 98-101.  
**comma**, use of, § 49, 1.  
**comparison of adjectives**, § 306-315; modification of vowel, § 307; declension of comparatives, § 310-312; declension of superlatives, § 313, 314; irregular comparison, § 309; degrees and endings, § 306; absolute superlative, § 315; predicate relative superlative, § 316; adverbial relative superlative, § 317; adverbial absolute superlative, 318; suffix *ens*, § 319, 1.

**compound form of verbs**, § 153-158.  
**compound nouns**, gender of, § 54.  
**compound verbs**, § 231; *see* separable verbs and inseparable verbs.  
**compound words**, accentuation of, § 51, 2.  
**conditional mode**, formation of, § 157 and 158.  
**conditional sentences**, Exercise 11, 4, 5, pp. 89, 90.  
**conjugation**, § 136-288; weak, § 160; irregular weak, § 164; strong, § 173-223; irregular strong, § 228-226; *see* verbs.  
**conjunctions**, § 415-418; general connectives, § 415; adverbial conjunctions, § 416; subordinating conjunctions, § 417.  
**connecting vowel e**, § 161, 162, 184, 192, 197, 202, 214.  
**consonants**, pronunciation of, § 20-46; "voiced" or sonant, § 20, 1; "voiceless" or surd, § 20, 2; pronunciation of double consonants, § 21.

**b**, pronunciation of, § 26.  
**ba(r)**, in combination with prepositions, instead of pronoun of third person, § 327; instead of demonstrative, § 352, 4.  
**ba**, adverb, § 418, 1.  
**ba**, subordinating conjunction, § 418, 1.  
**banfen**, § 324, 5 and 6.  
**bas**, as indefinite subject, § 352, 2.  
**baß**, § 417.  
**dative**, § 56, 5; with prepositions, § 412, 414; with impersonal phrases, § 277; use or omission of *e* in dative singular of substantives, § 63 and 79, 2; dative of noun preceding accusative, Exercise 15, 1, p. 145.  
**day of the month**, expression of, § 402.  
**declension**, § 56.  
**declension of adjectives**, *see* adjectives.  
**declension of articles**, § 57, 1.  
**declension of nouns**, § 58-120; 125-

- 135; general rules, § 58-66; classification of strong nouns according to the form of their nominative plural, § 67; first class, § 68-72; second class, § 73-77; third class, § 78-85; fourth class, § 86-92; fifth class, § 93-97; classification of strong nouns according to their gender, § 98-101; weak declension, § 102-108; distribution of nouns among the two declensions according to gender, § 109-111; table of endings, § 112; irregular or mixed declension, § 125-134; tabular view of declensions, between pages 70 and 71.
- declension of numerals, *see* numerals.
- declension of pronouns, *see* pronouns.
- definite article, declension of, § 57, 1; used in German and not in English, § 57, 3; for possessive adjective, § 341.
- demonstratives, § 350-356.
- denken, § 164, 2.
- die denken, § 256, 2.
- Deutsch, plural of, § 134.
- deun, § 415.
- der, as article, § 55-57; as demonstrative, § 351; as relative, § 363.
- derer, § 352, 1.
- derjenige, § 354.
- derselbe, § 355.
- beschäft, beschweigen, § 352, 6.
- determinatives, § 354-356.
- dießer, declension, § 353; dieß (dießes), used as indefinite subject, § 352, 2.
- dimidiative numerals, § 399, 5.
- diminutive suffixes, § 53, 3 a.
- Ding, plural of, § 134.
- diphthongs, pronunciation of, § 15-19.
- do, not translated in interrogative and negative clauses, Exercise 2, 5, p. 21.
- doch, § 415; idiomatic use of, Exercise 10, 1, p. 75.
- double vowel, quantity of, § 3, 2; when modified in the plural, § 14.
- dt, pronunciation of, § 26, 3.
- du, in address, § 325; declension of, § 321; capital D in letter-writing, § 48, 1 a.
- dürfen, § 164, 2.
- durcheinbringen, paradigm of, § 253.
- durcheinbringen, paradigm of, § 254.
- dürfen, conjugation of, § 167; use of, Exercise 14, 1, p. 127.
- e, pronunciation of, § 5; omitted in unser, euer, Exercise 3, 3, Notes 1 and 2, p. 26; in declension of adjectives ending in e, el, er, en, § 297; in comparative, § 306, 1; use as connecting vowel in conjugation, § 161, 162; with class I, § 184, 185; class II, § 192, 197, 202; classes III and IV, § 214.
- e, ending of nominative plural, § 78, 86; of dative singular, § 79, 86, Note; omission of, in imperative, § 152, a, b, c and 191; a former ending of adverbs, § 403, 2 a.
- eben, denoting progressive forms of verb, Exercise 2, 6, p. 21.
- etc, etc, § 404, 2.
- ei, pronunciation of, § 16.
- ein, indefinite article, declension of, § 57, 1; indefinite pronoun, § 370; numeral, § 386.
- einig, § 371; declension of, Exercise 3, 2, p. 26.
- eins, § 386, 4.
- el, nouns in, § 69, 73; adjectives in, § 297.
- eln, weak verbs in, § 162, 5.
- emp- for entz, § 232, 1.
- en, nouns in, § 69, 73; as ending in the weak declension, § 103-105; in irregular declensions, § 125-133; adjectives in, § 297.
- endings of verbs in the simple tenses, § 159.
- ens, in genitive singular, § 125, 126, 128, 133; in adverbial absolute superlative, § 319, 1; in ordinal adverbs, § 398, 2.

ent-, § 236.

entweder, § 415.

er, pronoun, declension of, § 274.

-er, nouns in, § 69, 73; adjectives in, § 297; ending of the plural of cardinal numbers, § 388.

er-, § 237.

-erlei, with cardinal numbers, § 394; adjectives in, § 295, 4.

-ern, weak verbs in, § 162, 5.

es, declension of, § 321; special uses of, § 329-336; use or omission of, as impersonal subject, § 274-276.

etlich, § 371.

etwas, § 372; with adjectives, § 302, 2; used adverbially, § 372, 1.

eu, pronunciation of, § 19.

f, pronunciation of, § 27.

-fach, § 395.

-fältig, § 395.

fehl, declension of, § 125, Note 1.

feminine, gender, § 52, 2, 7; 53, 2; nouns, not declined in the singular, § 60; classification of nouns as to declension in the plural, § 99, 100, 107; feminine nouns of class II, § 74; of class IV, § 90.

first class of strong declension, § 67, a; 68, 69; of strong conjugation, § 176; 178-186.

fließ, § 87, c.

folgen, paradigm of, § 160, 2.

foreign words, pronunciation of ie in, § 6, 3 a, b; of y in, § 9; of c in, § 23; of t in, § 42, 2.

fortlaufen, paradigm of, § 249, 2.

fractional numerals, § 401.

Fräulein, gender of, § 52, 4.

führen, paradigm of, in the passive, § 281.

für, in was für, § 360, 366, 9; preposition, § 413.

future tense, formation of, § 155, 156; present in sense of future, Exercise 16, III, 2, p. 167.

g, pronunciation of, § 28.

ge-, as prefix of past participle, § 150, 233, 247, 2.

Gebante, declension of, § 126.

gegen, preposition, § 413.

gegeben, footnote f, page 152.

gehen, conjugation of, § 224; why irregular, § 223, Note 1.

gelten, idiomatic phrases with, Exercise 16, III, p. 166.

gender, § 52-54; of nouns according to meaning, § 52; according to endings, § 53; of compound nouns, § 54.

genitive case, formation of, § 59, 68, 79 a, 86, Note, 93 a; the English equivalent of, § 56, 4; with reflexive verbs, § 256, 2 a; § 272, 4; with prepositions, § 411.

gern, comparison of, § 404, 3; in connection with a verb, § 404, 3 a; with mögen, Exercise 14, I, 3 b, Note, p. 129.

geschehen, paradigm of, § 279.

Geficht, plural of, § 134.

gibt (es gibt), Exercise 16, I, 1, p. 155.

gradation of vowels, § 173.

h, pronunciation of, § 29.

haben, conjugation of, § 136; remarks on, § 139; use as auxiliary, § 143, 145; translation of *to be had*, § 282, 2; in idiomatic phrases, § 278, 5.

halb, § 390, 8.

hätte, § 139, 2.

heißen, conjugation of, § 222, a; use of infinitive for past participle, § 171.

helfen, use of infinitive for past participle, § 171.

her, § 408, 3.

Herr, plural of, § 105, Note 2.

Herr, declension of, § 133.

hin, § 408, 3.

hinter, preposition, § 414; prefix, § 232.

hoch, § 297, 2.

hören, use of infinitive for past participle, § 171; paradigm of, § 160, 1.

Horn, plural of, § 134.

hour of the day, § 390.

hundert, § 387, 2.

hyphen, § 49, 2.

hypothetical sentence, use of subjunctive in, Exercise 11, 4, 5, pp. 89, 90.

i, pronunciation of, § 6.

ið, declension of, § 321; omission of, § 324, 3, 4, 5.

idiomatic phrases, with boð, Exercise 10, 1, p. 75; with ja, Exercise 10, 2, p. 76; with maðr, Exercise 9, 3 a, p. 66; with wohl, Exercise 9, 3 b, p. 66; with modal auxiliaries, Exercise 14, III, 10, p. 136; with impersonal verbs, § 278.

ie, pronunciation of, § 6, 3; 16.

-ieren, verbs in, § 150, 1.

ihr, in address, § 325, 4.

imperative, § 152, 183, 191, 196, 201, 213; filled up from subjunctive present, § 152, 3.

impersonal verbs, § 273-279; omission of es, § 275, 276; idiomatic phrases with, § 278; in the passive, § 283; for the passive, § 287, 1; with dative of subject, § 277.

in, preposition, § 414.

-in, with feminines, § 105, Note 1.

indefinite article, declension of, § 57.

indefinite pronouns and adjectives, § 367-384.

indefinite subject of impersonal verbs, § 274-278.

indefinite subject or object of verbs, § 333, 334.

indicative present, § 159, 1, 4; with verbs in ein and em, § 162, 5.

indicative preterit, § 148, 149, 227.

indirect statement, use of subjunctive in, Exercise 13, II, 3, p. 116.

infinitive perfect, § 154.

infinitive present active, one of the principal parts, § 147; ending of, § 147, a; with zu, in the sense of the passive, Exercise 11, 1, p. 89; use of

infinitive for past participle with the modal auxiliaries, § 168-170; with other verbs, § 171; with zu, after prepositions, Exercise 18, 3, p. 180, and Exercise 19, 1, 2, p. 186; place of infinitive, Exercise 3, 6, p. 27; Exercise 4, 3, 7, 8, pp. 33, 34; with modal auxiliaries, § 168, 2, 169, a, 170, 2-7; order of words with infinitives depending upon any other verb or upon a noun, an adjective or a preposition, Exercise 11, 6-8, p. 90.

innerhalb, § 411.

inseparable prefixes, § 232; conjugation of verbs with, § 233-242; meaning of, § 235-240.

interrogative pronouns, § 357-361; used as indefinites, § 384.

intransitive verbs, § 146; auxiliary with, § 143, 2, 144; impersonal passive with, § 283; reflexive for, § 269.

inverted order of sentence, Exercise 2, 2, p. 21; Exercise 4, 3, Note, p. 33; position of past participle, Exercise 3, 5, p. 27; position of infinitive, Exercise 11, 7, p. 90.

irgend, § 373.

irregular declension of nouns, § 125-133; irregular conjugation of weak verbs, § 164; of strong verbs, § 223-226; irregular comparison of adjectives, § 309.

iterative numerals, § 393.

j, pronunciation of, § 30.

ja, idiomatic use of, Exercise 10, 2, p. 76.

jeder, § 374; declension of, § 353, Note.

jedermann, § 375.

jedweg, jeglið, § 374.

jemand, § 376.

jener, § 353.

z, pronunciation of, § 31.

kein, declension of, Exercise 3, 3, p. 26.

kommen, with past participle, Exercise 18, 4, p. 180.

**fönnen**, conjugation of, § 167, use of.  
Exercise 14, 2, pp. 127, 128.

**f**, pronunciation of, § 32.

**faben**, § 74 and *b*; also § 134.

**fand**, § 134.

**fassen**, infinitive for past participle,  
§ 171; in the sense of *cause, order*,

Exercise 23, p. 230; in the sense of  
*allow*, with *fiß*, Exercise 24, p. 240.

**feyren**, infinitive for past participle,  
§ 171.

**-lein**, § 53, 3; 69.

**fernen**, infinitive for past participle,  
§ 171.

letters, German, pp. 1 and 2.

**-lich**, § 407, 2 *a*.

**Sicht**, plural of, § 134.

**m**, pronunciation of, § 33.

**man**, § 378.

**maucher**, § 353, Note; 295, 3.

**Mann**, plural of, § 134.

masculine gender, § 52, 53.

**mehr**, § 309; in comparison, § 306, 6.

**mehrer**, § 309, *a*

**meist**, § 309.

**meistens**, § 407, 2 *c*.

**miß**, § 232, 234, 1.

**mit**, § 245; 412.

**mixed declension**, of adjectives, § 294;  
of nouns and verbs, *see irregular*.

**modal auxiliaries**, conjugation of,  
§ 165-171; idiomatic use of, Exer-  
cise 14, I, pp. 127-129; II, pp. 131-  
134; III, p. 136.

**modes**, *see conditional and impera-  
tive*.

**mögen**, conjugation of, § 167; idiomatic  
use of, Exercise 14, I, pp. 128 and  
129.

**Mond**, plural of, § 134.

**monosyllabic masculine nouns** capable  
of umlaut in the plural, but not taking  
it, § 82.

**monosyllabic neuter nouns**, without  
umlaut in the plural, § 84.

**multiplicative numerals**, § 395.

**müssen**, conjugation of, § 167, idiomatic  
use of, Exercise 14, II, pp. 131 and 132.

**Mut**, *ju* (*jumute*) with impersonal verbs,  
§ 277.

**n**, pronunciation of, § 34.

**nach**, prefix, § 245; preposition, § 412.

**nachts**, § 407, *a*.

**näher**, *nächst*, § 309.

**neben**, § 414.

**neunen**, conjugation of, § 164, 1.

**neuter gender**, § 52-53.

**ng**, pronunciation of, § 34, *b*.

**nicht**, position of, Exercise 16, I, 4 and  
5, p. 155.

**nichts**, pronunciation of, footnote †, p. 9;  
with adjectives, § 302, 2; for *not any-  
thing*, § 372, 2 *a*.

**niemand**, 376, § 382.

**-nis**, nouns in, declension of, § 80, *c, d*.

**nun**, denoting progressive form of verb,  
Exercise 2, 6, p. 21.

**nominative case**, § 56, 1; nominative  
plural of strong nouns, § 67.

**normal order of sentence**, Exercise 2,  
2, p. 21; position of past participle in,  
Exercise 3, 5, p. 27; of infinitive,  
Exercise 11, 6, p. 90.

**nouns**, declension of, *see under declen-  
sion*; distribution of nouns among  
the two declensions according to gen-  
der, § 109-111.

**number of nouns**, § 56, 2; *see plural  
and singular*.

**numerals**, § 385-402; cardinals, § 385-  
395; ordinals, § 396-402; iteratives,  
§ 393; variatives, § 394; multiplica-  
tives, § 395; dimidiatives, § 399, 5;  
fractional, § 401.

**o**, pronunciation of, § 7.

**ö**, pronunciation of, § 12.

- ab**, preposition, § 411; conjunction, § 417.
- abgelehnt, abgeworfen, abgesehen**, § 417.
- object**, direct = accusative, § 56, 6; indirect = dative, § 56, 5.
- aber**, § 415.
- ohne**, preposition, § 413; with infinitive, Exercise 19, 1, 2, p. 186.
- omission**, of auxiliary in transposed order, Exercise 4, 3 a, p. 33; of subject of impersonal verbs, § 275, 276.
- en**, nouns in, declension of, § 130.
- er**, nouns in, declension of, § 129.
- ordinal numbers**, § 396-402.
- Ort**, § 95.
- orthography**, § 47.
- ø**, pronunciation of, § 35.
- paar, Paar**, § 48, 1 a.
- participle**, present, § 151; past, 150, 229, 230; with *kommen*, Exercise 18, 4, p. 180; when declined, Exercise 13, II, 1, p. 116; position of past participle in normal, inverted and transposed order, Exercise 5, 4 a, p. 39; participles preceded by their modifiers, Exercise 18, 5, p. 180; past participle like infinitive in form, § 243, 1; like third person singular, present indicative, § 243, 2.
- passive voice**, § 280-288; conjugation of, § 281; impersonal use of, § 283; distinction of passive from past participle with *sein*, § 284, 285; infrequency of the use of the passive, § 286, 287; passive use of active infinitive, Exercise 11, 1, p. 89.
- perfect tense**, formation of, § 153; used in the sense of the English past tense, Exercise 6, 3, p. 46.
- personal pronouns**, § 321-337; declension of, § 321; same form in dative and accusative, § 323; omission of, § 324; in address, § 325; in agreement with noun, § 326; reflexive use of, § 337; special uses of *es*, § 329-336; adjective after, § 299.
- personal verb**, Exercise 2, 2 a, p. 21.
- persons**, second and third, of the present indicative, § 181, 182, 190, 195, 200, 212.
- persons of the verb**, endings of, § 159.
- pf**, pronunciation of, § 35 a.
- ph**, pronunciation of, § 35 b.
- pluperfect**, formation of, § 153.
- plural**, in the strong declension of nouns, § 67; in the weak declension, § 103, 104; in the irregular declension, § 125-133; double plurals, § 134; umlaut in, § 67, b, d, e; § 73-77; 86-92; 93-97.
- possessive adjectives**, declension of, § 339; use of, § 340-343; definite article for, § 341.
- possessive pronouns**, declension of, § 343, 1; 2, 3; use of, § 344-349.
- possessives**, § 338-349.
- possibility**, subjunctive of, Exercise 16, I, 2, p. 155.
- predicate**, nominative with *sein* and *werden*, Exercise 13, II, 6, p. 117; also § 331; the predicate a personal pronoun, § 332; *es*, indefinite predicate, § 335; predicate adjective, § 289, 304, 305; predicate relative superlative, § 316.
- prefixes**, inseparable, § 232; separable, § 245; separable or inseparable, § 250.
- prepositions**, § 410-414; with genitive, § 411; with dative, § 412; with accusative, § 413; with dative or accusative, § 414; combination of preposition with definite article, § 57, 2; followed by infinitive with *zu*, Exercise 18, 3, p. 180, and Exercise 19, 1, 2, p. 186; with *her* and *hin*, § 408, 3.
- present tense**, endings of, § 159; in sense of English perfect, Exercise 11, 2, p. 89; in sense of future, Exercise 16, III, 2, p. 167.



**preterit tense**, § 148, 149; endings of, § 159; formation of, § 227, 228.

**pronouns**, § 320-384, *see* under **personal, possessive**, etc.; pronoun, in the dative or accusative, precedes noun, Exercise 15, 2, p. 145.

**pronunciation**, § 3-46.

**q, qu**, pronunciation of, § 36.

**quantity of vowels**, § 3, 2-5.

**r**, pronunciation of, § 37.

**raten**, paradigm of, § 186, 2.

**reden**, paradigm of, § 163, 1.

**reflexive pronouns**, § 257, 2; position of, § 260-264; in a reciprocal sense, § 270.

**reflexive use of personal pronouns**, § 337.

**reflexive verbs**, § 255-272; conjugation of, § 272; with reflexive object in the dative, § 256, 2; in the genitive, § 256, 2 a; 272, 4.

**relative pronouns**, § 362-366; not omitted, § 363, 4; compound relatives, § 366, 3, 4; agreement of verb with, § 363, 5 a.

**sich retten**, paradigm of, § 272, 1.

**root of verb**, § 147, b.

**s**, pronunciation of, § 38.

**s**, final, § 1, a.

**-s**, ending of genitive singular in strong declension, § 59, 61, 68, 79, 86, Note, 93, a; as adverbial suffix, § 407.

**-sal**, nouns in, § 80, c, d.

**sch**, pronunciation of, § 39.

**sich schmeicheln**, paradigm of, § 272, 3.

**Schmerz**, declension of, § 128.

**schön**, denoting progressive form of verb, Exercise 2, 6, p. 21.

**script**, German, p. 2.

**sehen**, infinitive for past participle, § 171.

**sein**, conjugation of, § 136; remarks on, § 140; use as auxiliary, § 144, 145;

with **zu** and infinitive active, Exercise 11, 1, p. 89; with past participles, § 284, 285.

**sein**, possessive, § 338.

**seit**, preposition, § 412; conjunction, § 417.

**selber, selbst**, § 270, 1, 2; 272, 4.

**separable prefixes**, § 245; conjugation of verbs with, § 249; place of prefix, § 247, 248.

**separable or inseparable verbs**, § 250-252.

**should**, § 170, 8, 9.

**sich**, § 257.

**Sie**, § 325, 5.

**singular**, of feminine nouns, § 60.

**so**, Exercise 17, 6, p. 173.

**sold**, § 356.

**sollen**, conjugation of, § 167; idiomatic use of, Exercise 14, II, 5, pp. 132, 133.

**ß, ff**, pronunciation of, § 41.

**statt**, preposition, § 411; with infinitive, Exercise 19, 2, p. 186.

**stehen**, conjugation of, § 225.

**strong conjugation**, *see* under **verbs**.

**strong declension**, *see* under **declension**.

**subjunctive**, use of, Exercise 11, 3-5, pp. 89, 90; Exercise 13, II, 3, p. 116; Exercise 16, I, 2, p. 155.

**subjunctive**, preterit, § 159, 2; 228.

**superlative**, *see* under **comparison of adjectives**.

**syllabication**, § 50.

**t**, pronunciation of, § 42.

**tabular view** of declension of nouns, between pages 70 and 71.

**tabular view** of strong verbs, Appendix, pages 332-339.

**tenses**, compound forms of, § 153-158; simple, § 159; no progressive tense forms, Exercise 2, 2, 4, p. 21.

**th**, pronunciation of, § 42, 3; **h** of **th** omitted in new orthography, § 47, b.

- time**, expressions of, before those of place, Exercise 7, 6, p. 52.  
**time of the day**, § 390; questions as to, § 301.  
**tragen**, paradigm of, § 186, 1.  
**transitive verbs**, § 146; auxiliary with, § 143.  
**transposed order**, Exercise 4, 1-3, p. 33; 8, p. 34; position of modal auxiliary in, § 168, 2; place of reflexive pronouns in, § 262; with verbs in the passive, § 288; omission of *es* in, § 276; place of infinitive, Exercise 11, 8, p. 90.  
**trögen**, § 411.  
**Umf**, plural of, § 34.  
**-tum**, gender of nouns in, § 53, 3 *b*; declension of nouns in *-tum*, § 93, note; 95, 2; 96, 2.  
**tun**, conjugation of, § 226.
- u**, pronunciation of, § 8.  
**ü**, pronunciation of, § 13.  
**über**, § 414.  
**um**, § 413; *um* with *zu* and infinitive, Exercise 18, 3, p. 180.  
**Umlaut**, § 10-14; 18, 67, *b, d, e*; 175.
- u**, pronunciation of, § 43.  
**variative numerals**, § 394.  
**ver-**, inseparable prefix, 232, 234, 1; meaning of, § 239.  
**verbs**, general statements, § 146-159;  
     weak conjugation of, § 160; connecting vowel *e*, § 161; irregular weak, § 164; modal auxiliary, § 165-170; strong conjugation of, § 173-230; classification of strong verbs, § 174-177; class I, 178-186; class II, 187-203; class III, § 204-207; class IV, § 208-214; class V, § 215-219; class VI, § 220-222; irregular strong verbs, § 223-226.  
**verraten**, paradigm of, § 242, 2.
- viel**, comparison o., § 309; use of, § 383.  
**vocabulary**, German, pp. 201-214; German-English, pp. 341-350.  
**von**, § 412; with passive verbs, § 282, 1.  
**vowels**, § 3-14; modified vowels, § 10-14; double vowel, § 3, 2; 14.
- w**, pronunciation of, § 44.  
**wahr**, idiomatic use of, Exercise 9, 3 *a*, p. 66.  
**während**, preposition, § 411; conjunction, § 417.  
**wann**, § 417.  
**was**, interrogative, § 357, 358; in the sense of *warum*, § 358, 3; relative, § 362, 366; for *etwas*, § 372, 4.  
**was für**, interrogative, § 360; relative, § 366, 9.  
**weak conjugation**, *see* under **verbs**.  
**weak declension of adjectives**, *see* under **adjectives**.  
**weak declension of nouns**, *see* under **declension**.  
**wegen**, § 411.  
**-wegen**, § 349; 352, 6; 358, 1; 366, 8.  
**weil**, § 417.  
**welcher**, interrogative, § 359; relative, § 363-365; indefinite, § 384.  
**wenig**, § 383.  
**wenn**, § 417.  
**wer**, interrogative, § 357, 358; relative, § 366; indefinite, § 384.  
**werden**, conjugation of, § 138; remarks on, § 141; use as auxiliary for the future, § 155, 156; for the conditional, § 157, 158; for the passive, § 280; *ward* or *wurde*, § 141; *worben* for *geworben*, § 280, 2.  
**wes**, § 358, 1; 366, 8.  
**wider**, § 413.  
**wissen**, conjugation of, § 172.  
**wo**, § 417.  
**wo-** or **wer-**, § 358, 2; 365.  
**wohl**, idiomatic use of, Exercise 9, 3, *b*, p. 66.

**wollen**, conjugation of, § 167; idiomatic use of, Exercise 14, II, 6, p. 133.

**word-order**, *see* under **normal**, **inverted** and **transposed order**.

**Wort**, plural of, § 134.

**would**, § 170, 8, 9.

**z**, pronunciation of, § 45.

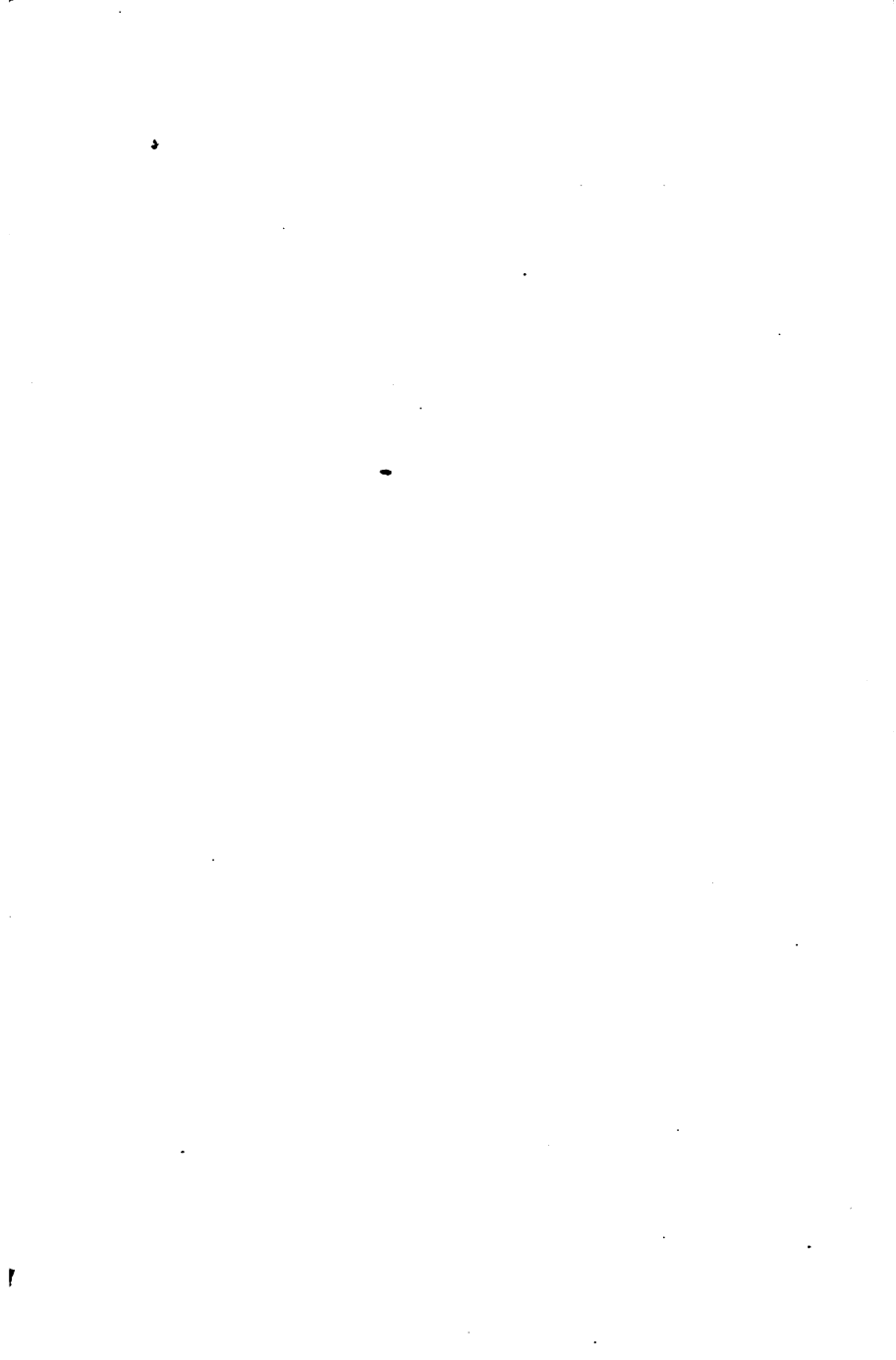
**z**, pronunciation of, § 9.

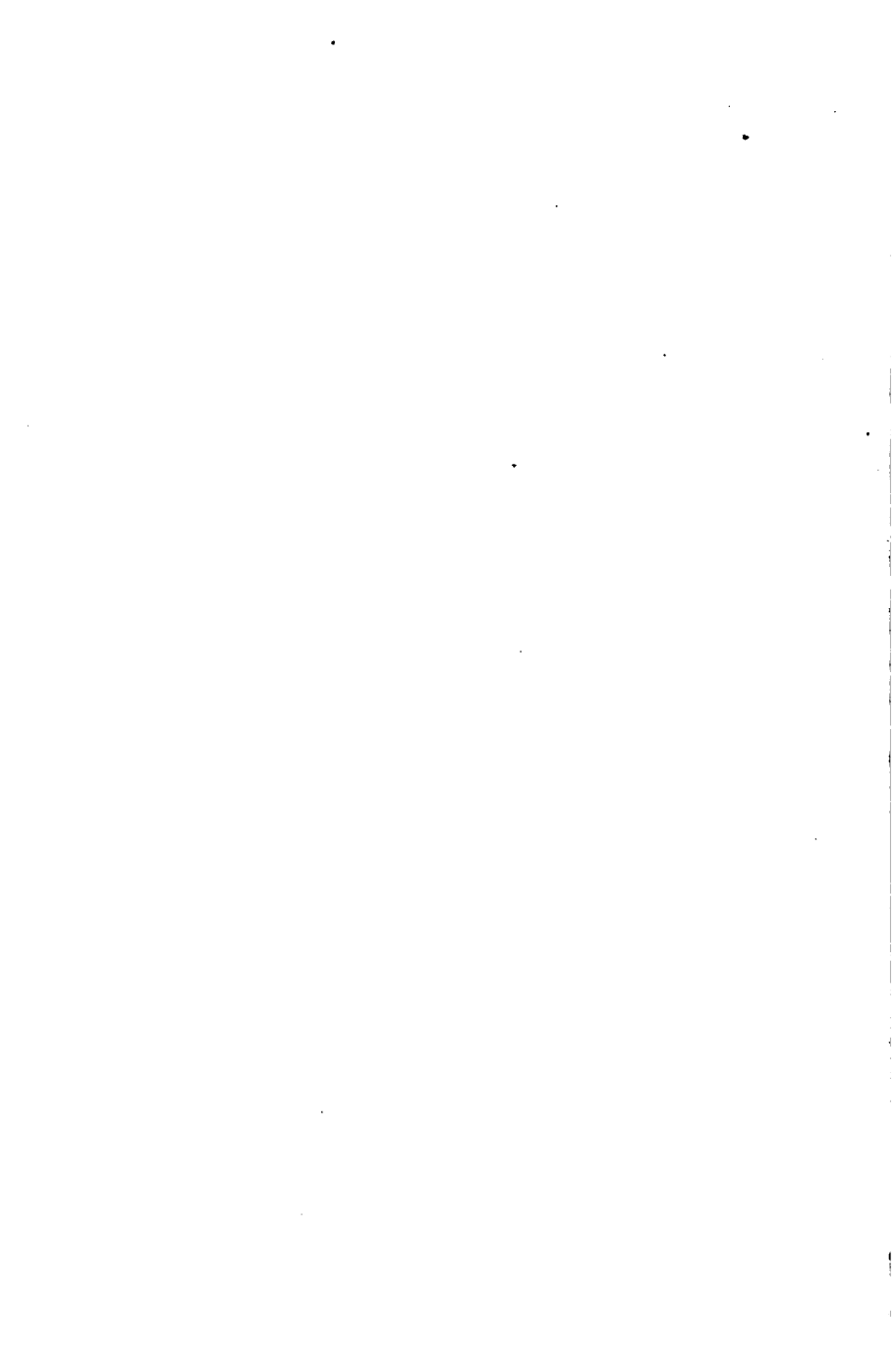
**z**, pronunciation of, § 46.

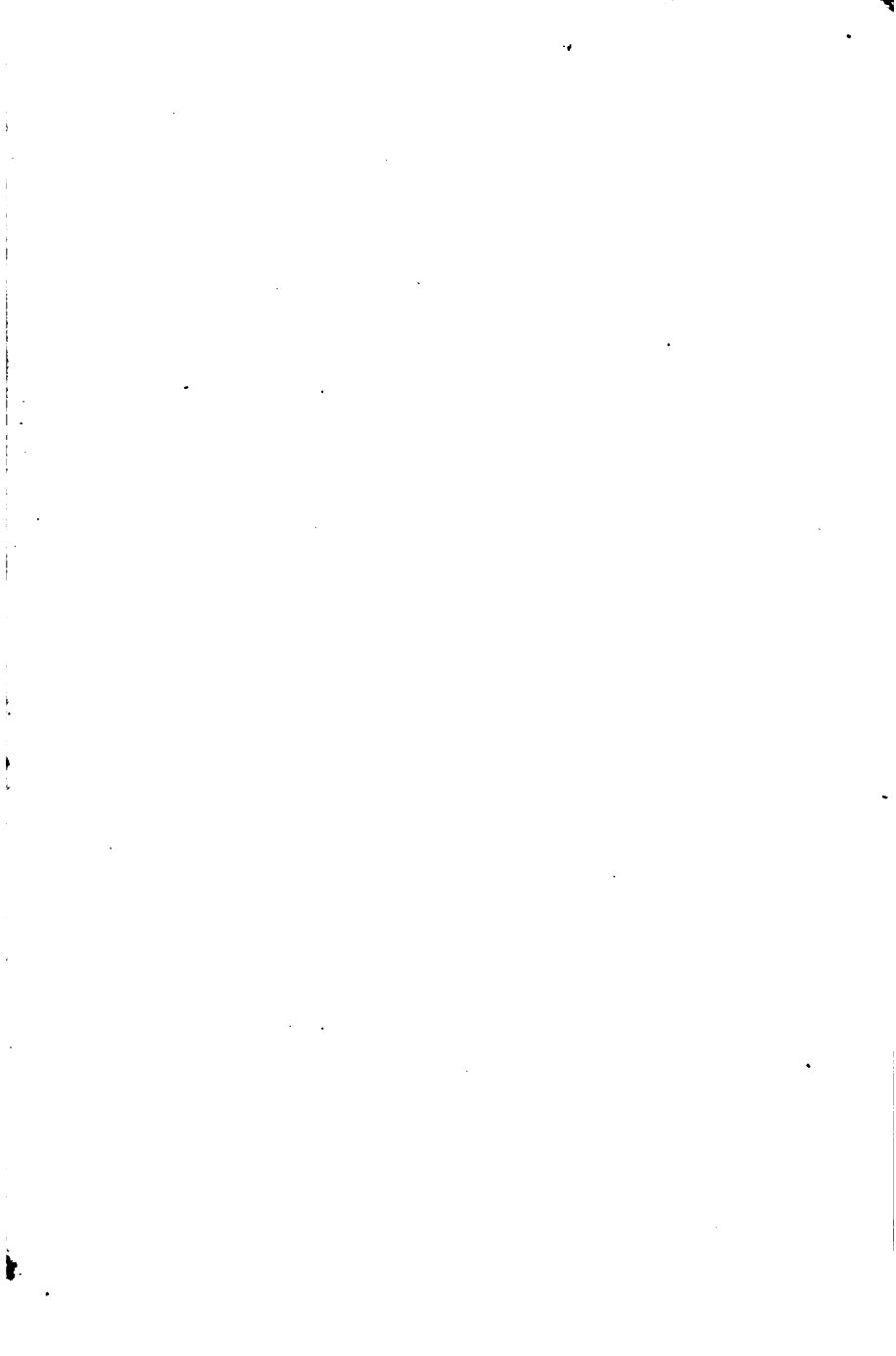
**zer-**, inseparable prefix, § 232, 234, 1; meaning of, § 240.

**zoll**, plural of, § 134.

**zweifeln**, § 414.







THIS BOOK IS DUE ON THE LAST DATE  
STAMPED BELOW

AN INITIAL FINE OF 25 CENTS  
WILL BE ASSESSED FOR FAILURE TO RETURN  
THIS BOOK ON THE DATE DUE. THE PENALTY  
WILL INCREASE TO 50 CENTS ON THE FOURTH  
DAY AND TO \$1.00 ON THE SEVENTH DAY  
OVERDUE.

SEP 1 1943

SEP 1 1943

INTERLIBRARY LOAN

JAN 24 1977

UNIV. OF CALIF. BERK.

YB 01518

926698

THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY



